

OHIO STATE UNIVERSITY.

Dan Michel's
Ayenbite of Inwyt,
or,
Remorse of Conscience.

EDINBURGH: T. G. STEVENSON, 22, SOUTH FREDERICK STREET.
GLASGOW: OGLE & CO., 1, ROYAL EXCHANGE SQUARE.
BERLIN: ASHER & CO., UNTER DEN LINDEN, 20.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.
BOSTON: DUTTON & CO.

Dan Michel's
Agenbite of Inwyrt,
or,
Remorse of Conscience.

IN THE KENTISH DIALECT, 1340 A.D.

EDITED FROM THE AUTOGRAPH MS. IN THE BRITISH MUSEUM, WITH AN
INTRODUCTION ON THE PECULIARITIES OF THE SOUTHERN DIALECT
AND A GLOSSARIAL INDEX,

BY

RICHARD MORRIS, ESQ.

LONDON:
PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 60, PATERNOSTER ROW.

MDCCCLXVI.

PREFACE.

ABOUT the same time that Richard Rolle the hermit completed the *Pricke of Conscience* for the use of his unlearned countrymen in the North of England, Dan Michel, of Northgate, Kent, furnished the Southern folk with a devotional manual, bearing the quaint but thoroughly English title of the *Ayenbite of Inwyte* (the again-biting of the inner wit), or the Remorse of Conscience.

The *Pricke of Conscience* is, as its author tells us, drawn out of divers books, but the *Ayenbite of Inwyte* is a literal translation of a French treatise, entitled *Le somme des Vices et de Vertues*, and sometimes, but incorrectly, styled *Li libres roiaux de Vices et de Vertus*; *Le livre des Commandemens*; *La somme le roi*; *Le miroir du monde*. It was composed in the year 1279 for use of Philip the Second of France, by Frère Lorens (or Laurentius Gallus, as he is designated in Latin), of the order of Friars Preachers.¹

Two copies of the French treatise are preserved in the British Museum collection—Cotton MS., Cleopatra, A v., and Royal MS., 19, c. II., the former of which has been frequently consulted and found useful in explaining some few difficulties in the English text.

Mr Stevenson notices two English prose versions much later than the one here printed.

The earlier copy, written in a Midland dialect about the year 1400, or perhaps a little earlier, is contained in Additional MS. 17013,

¹ No intimation of this is given in the Translator's preface. He speaks of the work as his own production. See pp. 1, 262. Mr Bond, of the British Museum, found it to be a translation, and pointed out to the Editor of the Roxburgh Club the MSS. containing the original French version. (See *Ayenbite of Inwyte*, p. vii-ix, edited by the Rev Jos. Stevenson, M.A., 1855.)

and is entitled *þe boc of vices and vertues*. The other, in the Bodleian Library, MS. 283 (formerly MS. E. 7.7), may be referred to about the year 1440, or perhaps a little later, and is entitled *The mirrour of the worlde that some calleth vice and vertu*.

The next prose version was made by Caxton, who calls his work *The book royal*, or *The book for a kyng*.¹

It was probably suggested by Chaucer's *Persones Tale*, which is an adaptation of some chapters of the French treatise,² to which it is of course much superior. The poet has introduced much original matter, as in the chapter on Pride, where he speaks of "inordinate scantiness and superfluity of clothing," and his treatment of the subject differs considerably from his author: thus Chaucer makes the *remedium* in each case immediately follow the description of any particular sin. Frère Lorens treats the *remedia* separately, as so many gifts of the Holy Ghost.

In the *Persones Tale* there occurs, but once only, the curious phrase "the *schipe* (or the hyre or the wages) of seruauntes," in which the term *schipe* is explained by the words *hyre* or *wages* (probably an addition of the scribe's). Tyrwhitt and subsequent editors have left the word unglossed, and its meaning was not so clearly evident until I had found the following corresponding phrase in the *Ayenbite of Inwyte*: "*þe ssepe* of hare sergons," the *pay* of their servants.³

As I have not succeeded in finding the word in any English writer of the 13th or 14th centuries, I am inclined to think that Chaucer was not altogether ignorant of Dan Michel's version.

For some years past a new edition of the *Ayenbite of Inwyte* has

¹ Mr Stevenson does not appear to have known of the existence of any metrical English versions of Frère Lorens' work. They were probably more abundant than the prose translation. A copy in the Northern dialect, ascribed to Hampole, is preserved in Cotton MS. Tib. E vii. (and a later fragment among the Sion College MSS.), which seems to have given rise to several dialectical versions, among which may be mentioned Harl. MS. 435, MS. Bodl. 48, MS. Langb. 5, MS. More 215, MS. Singer. See *Examination of the "Remarks on the Glossary to the Antient Metrical Romance of Havelok the Dane,"* &c. (p. 30.)

² Tyrwhitt and subsequent editors have been altogether in the dark as to the original of this tale.

³ *ssepe* is Kentish for *schipe*, for in this dialect an *e* is constantly put for a Northern and Midland *i*.

been greatly needed, and both Wright and Thorpe have at different times proposed its republication. The Roxburgh Club edition is both scarce and high-priced, and therefore entirely out of the reach of ordinary students of Early English. Moreover, it is much to be regretted that Mr Stevenson has considerably lessened the value of his edition of so important a work by suppressing the English author's Preface and Table of Contents, as well as two little treatises following the larger work, which, being included in the Contents, should have been printed, or, at any rate, some reason assigned for their omission.¹

From the Manuscript itself we learn that the *Ayenbite of Inwyt* was completed "ine þe yeare of oure lhordes beringe (birth) 1340," "ine þe eue of þe holy apostles Symon an Iudas," by Dan Michel of Northgate, a brother of the Cloister of Saint Austin of Canterbury. We cannot but regret that no more information is afforded us of one who so thoroughly identified himself with the country-folk among whom he dwelt as to choose this homely "English of Kent," in preference to a less provincial form of English, adopted by other Southern writers, in which he might teach, as he himself says, old and young, parents and children, to eschew all manner of sin, and to preserve a conscience void of all impurity.

Of all the English works written in the 14th century, the *Ayenbite of Inwyt* is, unquestionably, the most important and valuable that has hitherto been published; and we owe a debt of gratitude to Mr Stevenson who first called attention to its philological peculiarities.

Much uncertainty attaches itself to most of our Early English works of this period as to *authorship*, *date*, and *dialect*—particulars of

¹ Mr Stevenson has wrongly translated his author's title. *Ayenbite of Inwit* does not mean *Redemption of the Soul*. Dan Michel uses *Wipþegge* in the sense of to redeem, and the substantive formed from this is *wipþegginge* (Wicliffe has *Ayenbyng*), and the correct term for *soul* is *zauel*. Many of the mistakes in the Text and Glossary to the Roxburgh edition might have been avoided by a reference to the French MSS. Thus Mr Stevenson prints *tene* (= tin) for *teue* (yesterday evening), and explains *vendonginge* as *manure* instead of *uendage*, or sale; *russoles* he glosses as *reeds*, instead of cakes cooked in the frying-pan. With a boldness not to be commended, he occasionally alters his author's language, and in printing *þerne* (a genuine O. E. form) for *þesne*, he teaches us how rigidly Editors of Early English works should adhere to their MSS.

PREFACE.

the greatest importance to the philologist who seeks to gain any clear notions of Early English Grammar ; but with rare good fortune the *Ayenbite of Inwyt* comes to us as a philological monument, the value of which is not diminished by any uncertainty on these points. And as such it must ever be regarded as the standard of comparison for the language of the 14th century, by which a clearer knowledge of Early English inflexions may be gained than has, hitherto, been possible by means of the scanty materials within our reach.

As a small contribution towards a more systematic investigation of Early English Grammar, the editor of this volume has endeavoured to place before the reader the chief characteristics of the Southern dialect, and the points of difference between it and Northern English. He felt he could not do better than avail himself of the present opportunity for discussing these matters, in the hopes that others may be induced to devote some attention to this subject, so that the future historians of our language will have no cause to endorse the opinion of no mean authority, "that there is not a general agreement of scholars on many cardinal points of English inflection, and indeed that no thorough systematic and comprehensive attempt at the investigation of these questions has yet been made."

RICHARD MORRIS.

Tottenham, Dec., 1866.

I. DESCRIPTION OF THE MANUSCRIPT.

THE Arundel MS. 57, containing the *Ayenbite of Inwyȝt*, is a folio copy, written on vellum, and is the autograph of the author.

The printed catalogue thus describes the other contents of the volume :—

1. “Versus Gyldē de prophetia Aquilē,” fol. 4. b. Incip. *Tolle caput Martis bis.*

2. Ejusdem “Versus Northmannie,” fol. 4. b. Incip. *Anglia transmittet leopardum lilia Galli.*

3. “Expositio versuum Gyldæ de prophetia Aquilæ et Heremitæ,” fol. 5. Incip. *Continentur inter dicta heremite satis.*

4. Thomas de Erseldoune’s prophecy of King Edward II., fol. 8. b.

Thomas de Erseldoune escot & dysur dit au Rey Alisandre le paroles de suthdites du Rey Edward ke ore est kaunt yl fust auestre To nyȝt is boren a barn in Kaerneruam þat ssal wolden þe out ydlis ylc an þe kyng Alesandre acsede hwan ssal þat be. þe menstral ȝede hwan banockes bourne is y-det myd mannis bonis. hwan hares kendleþ in hertþ stanes hwan laddes wenddeþ¹ leuedes hwan me ledeþ men to selle wytþ rapis hwan Rokys burþ is no burþ hwan men gyven an foln of tuenti pound for an seme of hwete. E. ssel. uordo. P. þorȝ. viȝt and strengþe of al Miȝt. Er M. þri croked xl. alle bi hoked.

Ssel diuerse an daunce þet neur wes .y. mad. ine fronce.

5. Les propheties de Merlyn, fol. 8. b.

6. Prologus in Evangelium S. Matthæi, fol. 97.

7. Evangelium S. Matthæi cum expositione perampla, fol. 98.

¹ *weddþ*?

II. SPECIMEN OF THE FRENCH TEXT,

FROM COTTON MS. CLEOPATRA A V, FOL. 177 B.¹

On list en la uie des peres que .i. saint homme conta *comment* il estoit deuenue moine e disoit quil auoit este fiz dun paien qui estoit prestre as ydoles . e quant il estoit enfes vne foiz entra on temple auoec son pere repostement. Iloec uit .i. grant diable qui sasist sor .i. faudestuel e toute sa maisnee enuiron lui. Iloec uint .i. des princes e laoura. Lors li demanda cil qui seoit ou throne dont il uenoit . e il respondi quil uenoit dune terre ou il auoit esmeu e porchace mout de guerres e mout de troubles si *que* mout de genz i estoient mort . e mout de sanc i estoit espanduz. Le mestre demanda en *combien* de tens il auoit ce fet : e il respondi en .xxx. iors. Cil li dist en tant de tens as si poi fet . lors *commanda* quil fust batuz e mal menez ¶ apres celui uint .i. autre qui ensuit laoura com le premier. Le mestre li demanda dont il uenoit : Cil respondi quil uenoit de la mer ou il auoit fet mout de tempestes mout de niefs brisees . e mout de genz neez. ¶ Le mestre demanda *en combien* de tens. Il respondi en .xx. iours. Cil dist en tant de tens as si poi fet. ¶ Apres uint le tierz qui respondi qil uenoit dune cite ou il auoit eues nocces . e illoec auoit esmeu e pourchace tencons e mellees si *que* mout de gent i estoient mort . e enseur quetout il auoit occis le mari. Le mestre li demanda *combien* de tens il auoit mis a ce fere. Il respondi *que* .x. iors. Lors *commanda* quil feust bien batu por ce qil auoit tant demore a ce fere sanz plus. ¶ Audarrein uint .i. autre deuant le prince e laoura . e cil li demanda dont uiens tu. Il respondi quil uenoit del hermitage ou il auoit este .xl. anz pour tempter .i. moine de fornicacion cest pecche de luxure . e tant ai fait que cele nuit lai uaincu . e tresbuche en cel pecchie. ¶ Lors sailli sus le mestre e le baisa e acola e li mist la corone en la teste . e le fist seoir iouste lui . e li dist que grant chose auoit fet e grant proesce. ¶ Ore disoit le preudomme *que* quant il out ce oi : e ce ueu il pensa que grant chose estoit de moine e par cele acheson estoit il deuenue moine.

¹ For translation see pp. 238—240 of the present work.

CORRECTIONS.

Introduction, page iii, l. 25 ; for *provincialistics* read *provincialisms*

Page viii, foot note 2, l. 4 ; for *occur* read *occurs*

— xxviii, foot note ; for *and* read *to*

— xxxviii, l. 5 ; for *ute þe* read *ute we*

Page 128, l. 21 ; for *in prisone* read *ine prisone*

— 140, side notes, l. 31 ; for *ass is to its, &c.*, read *assassin to his, &c.*

Page 159, foot note ; for *answerieþ* read *ansuerieþ*

— 184, l. 12 ; for *wely-holpe* read *wel y-holpe*

— 187, l. 24 ; [*di*]aymont. The MS. may be right. Palsgrave has *aymant*.

Page 194, l. 19 ; for *hebbep* read *habbeþ*

— 223, l. 21 ; for *harten* read *herten*

— 231, l. 11 ; for *wy-oute* read *wy[þ]-oute*

— 244, l. 11 ; for *zayte* read *zay[n]te*

— 246, l. 3 ; for *yuelded* (so in MS.) read *yuelde*

— 246, l. 7 ; for *na3* read *na3[t]*

— 253, l. 25 ; for *zayte* read *zay[n]te*

— 262, l. 13 ; for *inwyttte* read *inwytte*

— 265, l. 8 from bottom ; for *ryuolliche* read *ry[3t]uolliche*

— 269, l. 9 from bottom ; for *broþen* read *broþren*

— 270, l. 4 ; for *uelezn* read *ulezen*

— 251, l. 2 from bottom ; ‘*huer þet is spek of þe wyttes,*’ &c. ; *is spek* at first sight looks like either an error for *ich speke* = I spake, or *is y-speke* = is spoken. The *is*, however, I believe to be an old and genuine form, corresponding to the modern provincial *es*, I.

Margery. Wull ye eat a couust o’ brid and chezee, cozen Andra ?

Andrew. No, *es* thankee, cozen Margery ; vor *es* eat a crub as *es* come along ; besides *es* went to dinner jest avore.—Well, bet, cozen Margery, whot onser dest gi’ ma to tha quesson *es* put vore now-reert.

(*An Exmoor Courtship.*)

GRAMMATICAL INTRODUCTION.

SOME CHARACTERISTICS OF THE SOUTHERN DIALECT DURING THE EARLY ENGLISH PERIOD (1250 TO 1340).

IN considering the characteristics of the Southern dialect, we shall not compare it with the Midland, which presents us with no one typical form, but with the Northern or Northumbrian, the grammatical forms and inflexions of which are more uniform and constant.

This appears to be the only mode of obtaining a clear conception of the great and distinctive features of these two extensive forms of our ancient speech, and it is, perhaps, the best means we could adopt to enable us to draw, as closely as possible, the line of demarcation between the dialects formerly spoken in the North and South of this country.

We shall discuss these peculiarities of dialect under the following heads :—

I. Orthographical Differences.

II. Grammatical ,,

III. Lexicographical ,,

I. Orthographical Differences.

A. Consonants.

1. *Ch* for *K*. The Southern dialect prefers the soft sound *ch* to that of *k*.¹ The following examples may be added to those contained in Preface to Hampole.

Southern.	Northern.	Southern.	Northern.
chele	kele (cold)	smech	smek (smoke)
crouch	crok (cross) ²	smach	smak (taste)
chef	caf (chaff)	zech	sek (sack) ³
cherl	carl (churl)		

¹ We find in the Sn dialect *durchede* for *dærknesse*, darkness.

² Exists in English *crook*, *crutch*.

³ Cp. sack and *satch-el*.

In the twelfth century we find *wlach* = *wluk* = *luke*(-warm) ; *bach* = *beck*, stream ; *folch*, folk, people.

In Wiltshire and Devonshire we may hear the following remnants of this pronunciation :—

blatch = black pritch, prutch = prick putch (= pitch) = pick

The pronominal and adjectival forms *each*, *such*, and *which*, were represented thus in the two dialects :—

Southern.	Northern.	Southern.	Northern.
ech }	ilk	swuch	
uch }		zuych }	swilk
		such }	
		whuch	whilk

The Semi-Saxon forms in the Southern dialect were

elch *swelch* and *welch*

The Midland forms are mostly like the Southern with respect to the substitution of *ch* for *k*, but a preference is given to the *i* sound, e. g. *yeh*, *swich* (*sich*), *wich*.

Adjectives in the Southern dialect ended in *-lich* (sing.), and *-liche* (pl.), and Adverbs in *-liche* ; but in the Northumbrian, when the final *-e* had no grammatical functions, the distinction between Adjectives and Adverbs could not well be kept up, so that the terminations *-lich* and *-liche* were represented by *-lic* (*-lik*, *like*), and *-ly*.¹ We have a trace of the double adverbial form *-like* and *-ly* in the Ormulum.

2. *V* for *F*. The use of *v* for *f*, as *vinger* for *finger*, *visch* for *fisch*, &c., is another well-known peculiarity of the old Southern dialect, which has, however, gradually become disused in the Eastern division of the Southern counties (in Kent and Sussex). In the xivth, and up to the middle of the xviith century, this usage was well marked.²

We never find the *v* for *f* in any Northumbrian production.

4. *Z* for *S*. The Ayenbite is the only work of the xivth century that contains examples of the use of *z* for *s*, as *zinge* for *singe*, *zour*

¹ *-ly* is of course a later form.

² In one or two instances, as *veteh* = fetch, *vat* = fat, we have retained the Southern and provincial form.

for *sour*, &c. But while this pronunciation is well marked in modern Southern dialect, as spoken in the Southern and Western counties, we find no trace of it in the chronicle of Robert of Gloucester. The modern Kentish vernacular has dropped this peculiarity, though it seems to have been common enough in Kent as late as the middle of the seventeenth century.

4. In the present dialect of the South of England (as spoken in Wiltshire, Devonshire, and Somersetshire) we find

birsh	= brush	hirsch	= rich
dird	= dread ¹	hirn	= run
dirsh	= thrush	hirsh	= rush
gurt	= great		

We have several good instances of this metathesis in the literature of the xiiith and xivth centuries.

Southern.	Northern.	Southern.	Northern.
berne (berne)	= brenne(burn)	curlle	= crulle (curl)
barnde	= brende(burnt)	fersch (versshe)	= fresch (fresh)
berste	= breste (burst)	forst	= frost
harst	= brast (burst, <i>pret.</i>)	gers	= gres (grass)
burde (birde)	= bride (lady, woman)	thirllle	= thrille(pierce)
		therste	= threste(thirst)
curd	= crud (curd)	yrne	= rinne (run)
		orn (arn)	= ran

5. PS for SP *Haps* = hasp, *waps* = wasp, are well-known modern Southern provincialisms, but with the exception of *crips* for *crisp* (in Wright's Fragments of Popular Science) I know of no ancient examples.

6. G for Y. The Southern dialects in some few instances retained a *g*, which in the Northern became softened into *y*, as in the modern English *buy* and *say*.

Southern.	Northern.	Southern.	Northern.
<i>begge</i>	<i>bye</i>	<i>segge</i>	<i>saye</i>

7. B for V. The Southern forms *libbe*, *habbe*, and *hebbe*, were represented by the Northern *live*, *have*, and *heve* (heave).

¹ Cf. *brid* = bird, still in use in the North of England.

B. Vowels.

1. *O* for *A*. I have previously pointed out in the preface to Hampole the substitution of *ō* in the place of *ā* in words of Anglo-Saxon origin.

Southern.	Northern.	Southern.	Northern.
bon	ban	lore	lare
bor	bar (bare)	&c.	&c.
hom	ham		

But we also find the following forms in the Southern literature of the xivth century, which are never met with in any pure Northumbrian production :—

con	= can	honge	= hang
hond	= hand	lome	= lame
lond	= land	plont	= plant
mon	= man	schome	= shame
stonde	= stand	stronde	= strand

In Wiltshire, Gloucestershire, and Somersetshire we still find examples of this pronunciation in *hond* (hand), *lond* (land), *dork* (dark), *lork* (lark), *opple* (apple).

The Ayenbite contains fewer examples of this than most specimens of the Southern dialect, and in some few instances a preference is given to the *a* sound, as

<i>blawe</i> (blow)	<i>knaue</i> (know)	<i>maue</i> (mow)
	<i>zange</i> (song)	<i>zawe</i> (sow)

This preference of *o* to *a*, which is also found in some of the Midland dialects, evidently explains the following curious forms :

Midland.	Northumbrian.	Midland.	Northumbrian.
fro	= fra (from)	slo	= sla (slay)
flo	= fla (flay)	thore	= thare (there)
gove	= gave	wore	= ware (were)
ond	= and (anger)	3o	= ya (yea)

E for *A*. In some few words we have *e* in the Southern dialect where the Northern prefers *a*.

Southern.	Northern.	Southern.	Northern.
a3en	agan (gan, gain) =	here	hare = hair
	against	reven	raven

Southern.	Northern.	Southern.	Northern.
bern	barn = bairn, (child, son)	sle	sla = slay
cle	claw (clar)	stre	stra = straw
ern	arn = eagle	wepen	wapen = weapon
fle ¹	fla = flay	3e	yha = yea

The following forms seem to come under this head :

Southern.	Northern.	Southern.	Northern.
blein	blain	grein	grain
clei	clai = (clay)	greithe	graithe = (prepare)
dei ²	dai = (day)	hei	hai = (hay)
eizt	aght = (eight)	kei	kai = (key)
eye (eie)	agh = (awe)		

With these we may compare the Midland forms of the Northumbrian personal pronouns :

Midland	<i>thei,</i>	<i>their,</i>	<i>theim,</i> for
Northern	<i>thai (tha),</i>	<i>thair (thar),</i>	<i>thaim (thain)</i>

The Southern preterites of one class of strong verbs often take an *e* when the Northumbrian has *a*.

Southern.	Northern.	Southern.	Northern.
ber	bar = bore	spek	spak = spoke
brek	brak = broke	swer	swar = swore
gef	gaf = gave		

In the modern dialect of Sussex we find *fleg* = flag ; *heng* = hang ; *mersh* = marsh ; *reg* = rag. In Devonshire, *kep* = cap ; *kerping* = carping.

The Old Frisian language presents us with similar forms, as, *stef* = staff ; *bend* = band ; *weter* = water.

Not only has the Ayenbite preserved similar forms in which *a* is replaced by *e*, but it presents us with a far larger number than any other Southern composition.

bend	= band	leste	= last
berk	= bark	mentle	= mantle
bleddre	= bladder	mere	= mare
blest	= blast	merss	= marsh

¹ *fle, sle*, may stand for *flea* and *slea*.

² In Dorsetshire *day* and *why* are pronounced *de, whe*, &c. See Outlines of Dorset Grammar in Philolog. Soc. Proceed., 1864, p. 12.

bren	= bran	ssel	= shall
bres	= brass	ssede	= shade
chef	= chaff	ssepe	= shape
clepper	= clapper	strepe	= stripe
creft	= craft	stef	= staff
ele	= awl	threl	= thrall
eppel	= apple	treppe	= trap
esshe	= ash	vet	= vat
gled	= glad	weter	= water
hedde	= had	zed	= sad
keste	= kast (<i>inf.</i>)	zeterday	= Saturday
leddre	= ladder		

Aw for *Ai*. (A.S. *ag.*) :

Southern.	Northern.	Southern.	Northern.
fawe	fain	y-flawe	flain (flayed)
hawel	hail	y-slawe	slain

U for *I*. In the works of the Southern writers of the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries we find the words *fist*, *hill*, *thin*, *sin*, &c., written *fust*, *hul*, *thun*, *thunne*, *sun*, &c.

Our modern pronunciation coincides generally with the Northern dialects, in which this substitution of *u* for *i* was unknown.

In Wiltshire we may still hear *blunk* (= *blink*), spark; *frum* (*N. frim*), fresh; *hud*, hide; *huz*, his; *lup*, lip: *putcher*, pitcher; *vur*, fire; *whuch*, which.

In the Old Kentish of the Ayenbite an *e* takes the place of the Southern *u* and the Northern *i*.

Southern.		Northern.
(a) Western.	(b) Eastern.	
hul	hel	hil
kunde	kende	kinde
kusse	kesse	kisse
munde	mende	minde
put	pet	pit
rug	reg	rig (back)
vur	vere	fire
&c.	&c.	&c.

In the following list of words taken from the Ayenbite, the *e* represents *u* or *i*.

bele = boil (bile)	melk = milk
bestle = bustle	mende = mind
besy = busy	pet, pette = pit
bredale = bridale	prede = pride
bredgrome = bridegroom	reg = rig = ridge = back
brenge = bring	skele = skill
gelt = guilt	steck = stick
hel = hill	stef = stiff
kechene = kitchen	stenge = sting
ken = kin	selk = silk
ken = kine	strepe = strip
kende = kind	velthe = filth
kesse = kiss	vere = fire
keth = kith = <i>cuth</i> or <i>couth</i> in un- <i>couth</i> .	zelf = self
kete = kite	zenge = singe
leme = limb	zenke = sink
melle = mill	zenne = sin

We find in O.Frisian *brenge*, to bring, *stek*, stick, together with the double forms *blenda* and *blinda*, *helpa* and *hilpa*.

In the modern Kentish and Sussex dialects we meet with *knet* = knit; *meece* = mice; *melk* = milk; *pet* = pit; *whelst* = whilst. This use of *e* for *i* still prevails in some of the Southern counties.

In Wiltshire we find *peg* = pig; *steel* = stile; *stenk* = stink, and the published specimens of the Exmoor dialect contain the following examples:

bed = bid	preck = prick
ded = did	rep = rip
desk = dusk	theng = thing
drenk = drink	trem = trim
meend = mind	veest = fist
mence = mince	zed = sad
peg = pig	zeck = sick
prent = print	

In some few instances we have retained the Southern orthography with the Northern pronunciation: *busy* = the Northern *bysy*, just as *dizzy* = the Southern *dusi*.

Builde, guilt, &c., in Southern orthography were written *bulde, gult*, and in the Northern, *bylde, gytt, &c.* In *stint* and *stunt* both dialectal forms have been preserved.

The *o* in *hop* and *slope* seem to have arisen out of a *u* sound, since the older Southern forms were *huppe* and *sluppe*, corresponding to the Northern *hippe* and *slippe*.

5. *Eo* for *E*. The Editor of the *Ormulum*, in pointing out some of the dialectical peculiarities of his author, notices the use of the simple vowel *e* for the compound *eo*. In no specimen of the Northumbrian dialect do we ever find the employment of the compound vowel. Thus the Southern forms *breoste* (breast); *cheose* (choose); *creope* (creep); *deop* (deep); *leose* (lose); *neose* (nose); *teon* (anger); *weoved* (altar), &c., are in Northern orthography *breste, chese, crepe, dep, lese, nese, tene, weved, &c.*

Occasionally in the Southern dialect the *eo* is written *u*, as *dupe* for *deope*, *durk* for *deork*, *mulk* for *meolk*; *duere* for *deore* (dear).¹ Cp. *Vul* for *feol*, *fell*, and *huld* for *heold*, *held*.

In the printed examples of the Herefordshire dialect *ue* often takes the place of *eo*, as *hue* (they), for *heo*; *huere* (their) for *heore*; *huem* (them) for *heom*; *buen* (to be) for *beon*; *buere* (bear) for *beore*; *duere* (dear) for *deore*; *huerte* (heart) for *heorte*, &c.²

In Kemble's paper on the North Anglian dialect, we are told that the West Saxon *eo* was represented in Kentish Manuscripts by *iu*, *io*, *ia*, and *ie*.

We find some traces of this in the Kentish specimens of the xivth century, for in the Ayenbite *ie* or *ye* is constantly employed for *eo*.³

¹ This may account for the modern pronunciation of *lese* (lose) and *chese* (choose) = the Sn *leose* and *cheose*.

² Since writing the above I have found both forms in Trevisa's translation of Higden's Polychronicon (Cotton MS. Tiberius D. vii. written in the Sn dialect, probably of Gloucestershire), e. g., *heo* and *hue*, she; *þeos* or *þues*, this, these; *ue* perhaps occur more frequently than *eo*, as *thuef*, thief; *wuesch*, for *weosch*, washed.

³ The modern Kentish dialect has *bly* (used by Shoreham) for *ble* (A.S. *bleo*), colour, likeness. In the Ayenbite and Shoreham's poems we find *by* for *beo*, be; *vy* for *freo*, free; *gly* for *gleo*, glee; *zy* for *seo*, see; *gryhond* for greyhound, &c.

Kentish.	Ordinary Southern form.	Kentish.	Ordinary Southern form.
bryest	breost (breast)	lieve	leove (lief, dear)
chiese	cheose (choose),	lyeve	
chyese		niede	neode (need)
chyew		nyede	
cryepe	creope (creep)	thiester	theoster (darkness)
diepe	deope (deep)	thyester	
dyepe		tiene	teone (anger)
diere	deore (dear)	tyene	
dyere		wieued	weoued (altar)
lierny	leorne (learn)	wyeued	
lyerny		wied	weod (weed)
liese	leose (lose)	vyend	feond (fiend)
lyese		vryend	freond (friend)

Many preterites in *eo* take *ie*, as *hield*, *hild*, *held*, *hielp*, *hilp*, helped.

6. In the South-west of England at the present day such words as *cart*, *card*, and *garden*, are pronounced as *kyart*, *kyard*, *gyarden*. Here the *ya* represents the original West Saxon *eä*, which in modern English is represented by *a*. In Somersetshire *calf*, *grape*, *leap*, *leave*, are pronounced *käave*, *gräup*, *läup*, *läave*. In the Eastern division, as in Kent and Sussex, we may hear *bëam*, *dëaw*, *gäut* (*gëat*), *këaf*, *täust*, for *beam*, *dew*, *gate*, *calf*, *taste*. (See Outlines of Dorset Grammar in Philolog. Soc. Proceedings, 1864, pp. 12, 13, 14.)

We have no trace of this in Robert of Gloucester, *Lives of the Saints*, &c., but in the works of Shoreham and Dan Michel, we find abundant evidence (as the following examples will show) that the old Kentish folk of the fourteenth century retained the ancient West Saxon pronunciation, for *ea* is written *yea*, *ya*.

byeam	} = beam	dyad	} = dead
byam		dyead	
bryead	} = bread	dyeath	= death
bryad		dycæf	= deaf
cheak	= cheek	dycæu	} = dew
cleape	= clepe (call)	dyau	
chyeaste	} = strife cheaste	hyealde	} = hold
chieaste		healde	
cheap	= cheep	heaued	= head

hyeap	}	= heap	sealve	=	salve
hyap			sleawth	=	sloth
heaw		= hue	spearck	=	spark
lyeaf		= leaf	sseaw	=	show
lheaþe		= leap	theaw	=	virtue
leawde		= lewd	threape	=	dispute
reave		= rob	tyear	=	tear
schreaw		= shrew	vealde	}	= fold
sealt		= salt	vyealde		

The Kentish preterites *bea3* (bent); *cheas* (chose); *leas* (lost); *leat* (bowed); *stea3* (ascended); *zeald* (sold); *teald* (told), correspond to the ordinary Southern *be3*, *ches*, *les*, *let*, *ste3*, *teld* (told).

Sometimes the initial *ea* is represented by *y*, as *yald*, old; *yarm*, arm; *yarn*, ran; *year*, ear; *yeast*, east; *yerne*, run; *yerthe*, earth; *yestre*, easter.

With these we may compare the modern Southern provincialisms *yarm* = arm; *yarth* = earth; *yeat* = eat; *yeast* = east, &c.

7. The only old Kentish forms corresponding to the modern *buoy* (boy), *cwoat* (coat), &c., are

buon	= bone	guos	= goose
guode	= good	zuol3	= (the Dorset <i>zull</i>) =
guo	= go		plough

GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES.

NOUNS.—PLURALS IN *EN*.¹

THE Ormulum, which is of Midland origin and abounds in Northern forms, contains scarcely any plural nouns terminating in the syllable *en*, while the Ancren Rewle, St Marherete and Lazamon's "Brut," written in the Southern dialect, abound in them.

In the longest and best specimens of the Northumbrian dialect of the early English period, I have not succeeded in finding more than three or four plural nouns in *en*, as *eghen* (eyes), *oxen*, and *schon* (shoes). But in Southern works of the same period they are almost as plentiful as in the earlier (Semi-Saxon) stage of the language.²

The following list of Southern plurals in *en* might no doubt be augmented, as they contain such forms only as have come under my own observation; they all, however, serve to corroborate the statement made as to the frequent use of this inflexion.

addren	adders	been	bees
aldren	elders	* bellen	bells
applen	apples	bemen	trumpets
arwen	arrows	* benen	prayers, boons
assen	asses	bischopen	bishops
axen	ashes	* blissen	blisses
ayren	} eggs	blomen	blooms (flower)
eyren		blosmen	blossoms
		bollen	bowls
* beden	petitions	* bougeren	heretics

¹ The modern dialect of the South-western counties still exhibits a fondness for this termination, as *housen*, *peasen*, *neighbourhooden*.

² All words marked thus (*) occur in the Ayenbite (1340); those marked with a dagger occur in Shoreham.

bronden	brands	doggen	dogs
* brothren	} brothers ¹	* doʒtren	} daughters
brethren		douʒtren	
browen	brows	doren	doors
bruggen	bridges	* dropen	} drops
* bryesten	} breasts	droppen	
breosten			
		* earen	} ears
calveren	calves	eren	
* carten	carts	* yearen	
* cellen	cells	* eddren	adders
cerclen	circles	* elmessen	alms
chambren	chambers	elven	elves
cheoken	cheeks	emeten	ants
cheoʒen	daws (choughs)	eveten	newts
* cherchen	} churches	eyren	eggs
churchen		* eʒen	} eyes
* children	children	eyen	
* clauen	} claws	ferden	} troops, armies
cleen		† verden	
clouden	clouds	fasten	} fasts
cneon	knees	festen	
colveren	doves	flon	arrows
condlen	candles	fon	} foes
corden	cords	* von	
crabben	crabs		
* crouchen	crosses	gomen	men
crowen	crows	gloven	gloves
dawen	days		
deden	deeds	* halewen	} hallows, saints
deovelen	} devils	halʒen	
develen		hattren	clothes, gar-
* dyeuelen			ments
* diaknen	deacons	hawen	haws

¹ *brethern* and *childern* occur in Early Eng. writers.

* heaveden	} heads	lomen	looms
heveden			
helen	tents	meden	rewards (meeds)
* hennen	hens	* messen	masses
heren	shirts of horse-	misdeden	misdeeds
	hair	* modren	mothers
* hesten	hests, com-	monen	moons
	mands	mylen	mules
* honden	hands	nylen	miles
honden	hounds		
hounten	hunters	neddren	adders
huden	hides	* nettlen	nettles
hunten	hunters	* nykeren	syrens
hurten	} hearts	* nykken	necks
heorten		nonnen	nuns
* herten		noten	nuts
hynen	servants		
† joyen	joys	peren	pears
* kempen	warriors	* pesen	pease
* ken	} cows	* pinen	pains
kine		precken	stings
keyen	keys	rabben	turnips
knotten	knots	* reven	sheriffs, reeves
kressen	cresses	roden	roods (crosses)
		* roten	roots
* lambren	lambs	rothern ¹	} rothers, oxen
lampen	} lamps	rutheren	
* lompen			
longon	lungs	saulen	} souls
* lenden	loins	* zaulen	
lesen	meadows	scheon	shoes
* lippen	lips	schrewen	shrews
† loken	locks	schiren	shires

¹ In Cott. MS. Tib. D. vii. *rotheron*, *oxon*, *chylðron*, are written for *rutheren*, *oxen*, *children*.

schoperden	shepherds	† tren	} trees
sennen		treon	
* zennen	} sins	trappen	} traps
sunnen			
scheten	sheets	* treppen	
scholdren	} shoulders	unclen	uncles
schuldren			
scourgen	} scourges	weden	weeds (clothes)
scurgen			
† sibben	relations	* wellen	wells
siden	} sides	wenchen	girls
* ziden			
sinuen	sinews	wepnen	weapons
sithen	times	* werren	wars
sithen	scythes	wetheren	wethers
snaken	snakes	widuen	} widows
snoden	pieces	* wodewen	
sorewen	sorrows	† woken	weeks
sostren	} sisters	* womben	wombs
sustren			
spannen	spans	* wonden	} wounds
* spearken	sparks	wunden	
sporen	spurs	* wrecchen	wretches
* stablen	stables	wrethen	wreaths
stappen	steps	* wychen	} witches
steden	steeds	wichen	
* sterren	} stars	* wyngen	} wings
steorren			
swopen	whips	wengen	
tiden	times	wingen	
thien	thighs	wyken	weeks
* tongen	} tongues	† wyken	offices
tungen			
tongen	tongs	* wysen	ways, modes
* toknen	tokens	* ympen	branches
† ton	toes	* vetheren	feathers
		* vlezen	} flies
		vlizen	
		* vorbisnen	examples
		zerden	} rods
		zurden	

The whole of these do not, of course, belong to the *n* declension. *Benen*, *deuelen*, *doren*, *honden*, *sunnen*, *soulen*, originally ended in *-a*; *brotheren*, *dohtren* (*doztren*), *heaveden*, *modren*, *sustren* (*sostren*), terminated in *-u*; and *calveren*, *childeren*, *lyren*, *lambren*,¹ formerly ended in *-ru*.

The A.-Saxon plural vowel inflexions *-a*, *-u*, &c., were represented in the Semi-Saxon by *-e*, and in the Early English period by *-en*.

The Northumbrian forms corresponding to the Southern *bretheren*, *childeren*, *kine*, were *brether*, *childer*, *kye*.

The A.S. plural *lendenu*² (loins) became *lenden* in Southern English; the Northern dialect employed the form *lends*, for which they formed a singular, *lend*, which is not to be found in any pure Southern writer.

Occasionally the *-en* is represented by a final *-e*, as *asse* = *assen*, asses; *honde* = *honden*, hands; *lippe* = *lippen*, lips; *sterre* = *sterren*, stars; *stede* = *steden*, steeds.

Dr Guest, in the second volume (p. 75) of the Philological Society's Proceedings, has noticed these forms, but considers them as Northern forms. His statement is as follows:—

“Anglo-Saxon nouns belonging to the *n* declension, as *steorra*, a star, *steda*, a steed, *assa*, an ass, &c., generally formed their plural in *-an*, as *steorran*, *stedan*, *assen*, &c. But in the Northern dialect they substituted a vowel for the ending *-an*; and it is probable that these Northern plurals are represented by the *sterre*, *stede*, *asse* of the following examples:—

- (1) The fife 3er he gan argument

Of the *sterre* and of the firmement.

(*Sevyn Sages*, 197.)

- (2) Whi kyng other eorl cam on hym to weorre,³

Quyke he lokyd in the *steorre*.—(*Kany Alis*. 76.)

- (3) As y you sey bothe heore *stede*

Feollen to grounde dede.—(*K. Alis*. 2263.)

¹ *Lambre* = lambs, occurs in the Ormulum.

² The *sing.* does not occur in A.S. authors.

³ The *-e* in *weorre* represents the *-en* in the infinitive.

- (4) And afftyr fyftene hundryd *asse*
 Bar wyn and oyle, more and lasse.
(*R. C. de Lion*, 6453.)"

The three works from which the quotations are made, adds Dr Guest, are strongly marked with *the peculiarities* of the Northern dialect.

They certainly do contain some Northern peculiarities, but not its distinctive peculiarities. The Seven Sages and the Rom. of King Richard are in a Midland dialect, and K. Alisander is in the dialect of a locality where both Southern and Midland forms were employed.

The substitution of a vowel for the *-an* (as *ego* = eyes; *witgo*, *witgu* = prophets) was undoubtedly a characteristic of the Northern dialect during the ninth and tenth centuries; but is not to be found in any Northern writer of the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries.

The substitution of *-e* for *-n*¹ is Southern rather than Northern, as the following examples will show:—

The niȝtingale bigon the speche
 In one hurne of one breche
 And sat upone vaire boȝe
 Thar were abute *blosme inoze*.²

(*Owl and Nightingale*, p. 1.)

Berne = *Bemen* (trumpets).

The engles in the dai-red
 Blewedh heore *beme*.—(*Relig. Poems*, p. 68.)

Angles . . blewe here *bemen*.

(*Lives of Saints*, Harl. MS. 2277, fol. 11 b.)

¹ The use of final *-e* for *-n* is quite common in the Southern dialect, not only in the plurals of nouns, but also in the *preterite* plural, infinitive mood, and gerund of verbs. In addition to these we find such forms as *aȝe* = *aȝen* (again); *oze* = *ozen* (own); *neoȝe* = *neoȝen* (nine); *blose*, *blosmen* (blossoms); *seove* = *seoven* (seven).

² *Blosme inoze* = flowers enough = many flowers. *Inoze* is the plural of *inoȝ*, enough. The *pl.* *Blosmen* occurs much later, as in the following extract;—

Lenten yo come with love to tounē
 With *blosmen* ant with briddes rounē
 That al this blisse bringeth.—(*Spec. of Lyric Poet*, p. 43.)

Browe = *Brouen* (brows).

(1) On heu hire her is fayr ynoh,

Hire *browe* broune, hire *e3e*¹ blake.

(*Spec. of Lyric Poet.* p. 28.)

(2) Hyre he3e¹ haueth wounded me y-wisse

Hire bende *brouen* that bringeth blisse.—(*Ibid.* p. 39.)

Chirche = *Chirchen* (churches).

(3) Horn let wurche

Chapeles and *chirche*.

(*K. Horn*, p. 39, E. E. Text Soc.)

(4) That folc hi gunne quelle

And *churchen* for to felle.—(*Ibid.* p. 2.)

Breste = *Bresten* (breasts).

Ther to me aneleth the wyttes fy3f,

And fe3et, and *breste* and lenden.—(*Shoreham*, p. 43.)

He het that me scholde hire lede : to the tounes ende

And hire *breosten* fram hire bodie, with kene hokes rende.

(*St Katherine*, p. 76.)

Crowe = *Crowen* (crows).

An hwanne heo habeth me of-slahe,

Heo hongeth me on heore hahe,

Thar ich a-schewe le pie an *crowe*

From than, the thar is i-sowe.—(*Owl and N.* p. 55.)

Wenestu that haueck bo the worse

Thoz *crowe* bigrede him bi the mersh,

And goth to him mid *hore* chirme,

Ri3t so hi wille wit him schirme.—(*Ibid.* p. 304.)

Seint Edmund & his felawe: as hit was ofte here wene

In a day fram Lenkenore : wende to Abyndone

As hi come in a gret faleye : blake monekes he se3

As hit *crowen* & *chozen* were : fleo bi their anhe3.

(*St Edmund*, p. 76.)

¹ *e3e* and *he3e* = *eyen* = eyes.

Dede = *Deden* (deeds).

My gode *deden* bueth fol smalle.

(*Spec. of Lyric Poet.* p. 99.)

Of myne *deden* fynde y non god.—(*Ibid.* p. 99.)

When we bueth dempned after ur *dede*,

A domesday, when ryhtes bueth tolde,

When we shule suen thy wounde blede,

To speke thenne we bueth unbolde.—(*Ibid.* p. 100.)

Fewe gode *dede* ich habbe ido.—(*St Brandan*, p. 27.)

E;e = *E;en* (eyes).

. . . . syththe bifore here *e;e*

He wende up to hevene as hi alle ise;e.

(*MS. Harl.* 2277, fol. 23.)

Gret fur heo let make bifore here alre *e;e*

(*Ibid.* fol. 40.)

Hyre *he;e* haueth wounded me y-wisse.

(*Spec. of Lyric Poet.* p. 39.)

Ne sholde he vor bothe his *e;e*

So don, 3if he the bet ne se;e.

(*Owl and Nightingale*, l. 381-2, p. 14.)

Hyre *ey;en* aren grete and gray ynoh.

(*Spec. of Lyric Poet.* p. 34.)

Fere = *Feren* (companions).

Coveytise myn keyes bere

Nithe ant onde were mi *fere*

That bueth folkes fyle.—(*Spec. of Lyric Poet.* p. 49.)

Hi weren ure *ifere*.—(*Moral Ode*, p. 25.)

This bosteres & this lieres as hi sitteth bi here *fere*

Bringeth wimmen in sclaudre

(*Harl. MS.* 2277, fol. 18 a.)

Tuey *feren* he hadde

That he with him ladde.—(*King Horn*, p. 92.)

See K. Horn, p. 3.

Herte = *Herten* (hearts).

Ac hy habbeth hire *herten* zuo arered ine God that hi ne prayzeth the wordle.—(*Ayenbite*, pp. 142, 152.)

Tho they were on fote bothe,
They foughte togedre with *heorte* wrothe.

(*K. Alis*, p. 302.)

Gret ioye hi hadde in here *hurte* that hi miȝte this iseo.

(*St Brandan*, p. 7.)

Here = *Heren* (hair shirts).

He werede harde *here*.—(*St Beket*, p. 75.)

The moder werede harde *here*: for oure louerdess loue
Fram the schuldre to the hele.—(*St Edmund*, p. 71.)

þis children . . . werede here *here* þrie a wyke.

(*Ibid.* p. 72.)

And euere as heo hem sende clothes: as heo hem miȝt iwynne
Therwith heo wolde *heren* sende.—(*Ibid.* p. 72.)

Henne = *Hennen* (hens).

The voxe hird amang al menne
And tolde the wolf with the brode crune
That on him send gees and *henne*¹
That other geet and motune.

(*Camden Society's Polit. Songs*, p. 198.)

Honde = *Honden* (hands).

We ne thore noȝt this knyȝtes seide: do bi the as we wolde
For the kyng ous het the bringe him: thyn *honde* faste ybounde.

He makede hem al aȝen hire wille: his *honden* faste bynde
& ladde him forth harde ynouȝ: his *honden* faste bihynde.

(*St Cristopher*, p. 63.)

. . . he het his men anon

Seint Andreu scourgi so: tho that him oke ech bon

And siththe bynde him *honde* & fet.—(*St Andrew*, p. 100.)

¹ *Hennen*, hens, occurs in the *Ayenbite*.

Y-fetered were ys legges under his horse wómbe ;
 Bothe with yrn ant with stele mankled were ys *honde*.

(*Politic. Songs*, p. 218.)

He smot down is heued

. . . is *honden* gon he wrynge.—(*Ibid.* p. 193.)

Mony frenshe wyf wryngeth hire *honde*.—(*Ibid.* p. 188.)

Sone, y se thi bodi byswongen

Fet ant *honden* thourhout stongen.—(*Lyric P.* p. 81.)

. . . . atte last hi founde

The forme of oure louerd in a Rode : ibeten and ibounde

Inailed thurf fet and *honde* : as our louerd with vyf *wounde* (wounds)

That hadde the gywes ido : god 3yve hem harde *stounde* (blows).

(*The Jews and the Cross*, p. 43.)

Lome = *Lomen* (tools).

At eve-song even neh

Ydel men 3et he seh

Lomen habbe an *honde*.

(*Spec. of Lyric Poet.* p. 41.)

This other swore alle ant some

That er wer come with *lome*

That so nes hit nout ryht.—(*Ibid.* p. 42.)

Mede = *Meden* (good deeds).

Middel-erd for men wes made

Un mihti *aren* is meste *mede*.—(*Ibid.* p. 22.)

Schrewe = *Schrewen* (wretches, villains).

Gywes hatieth oure leuedi moche : and hire suete sone also

That is isene in manie dede : that the *schrewen* habbeth ido.

(*The Jews and the Cross*, p. 42.)

The king hadde al to fewe

To-3enes so vele *schrewe*.

(*King Horn*, p. 2, E. E. Text Soc.)

Sterre = *Sterren* (stars).

Ine the Apocalyps Sent Iohan

I-se3 ane wymman wyth sonne by-gon

Thane mowe al onder hyre ton
 I-crouned wyth tuel(f) *sterre*
 Sych a leuedy nas nevere non
 Wyth thane fend to werre.—(*Shoreham's Poems*, p. 133.)

And the cours of the *steorren*
 In heom he juggeth al his *weorren*.—(*K. Alis.* p. 67.)

By the mone and by the *sterren*
 Hy connen ingge alle *werren*.—(*Ibid.* p. 203.)

He loked and kneowe in the *sterre*
 Of alle this kynges theo grete *weorre*.—(*Ibid.* p. 113.)

Him thohte that ther stod a treo : riht tofore his bedde
 That anon to the *sterren* tilde : and wel wide spredde.
 (*St Kenelm*, p. 51.)

Hereof 3e ssolle understonde that in the firmament beth
 Planetes yliche clere *sterren* sevene as 3e seth.
 (*R. of Gl.* fol. 39.)

Hwat canstu wrecche thing of *storre*
 Bute that thu bi-haitest *hi* feorre.
 (*Owl and Night.* p. 45.)

Thah thu iseo the *steorre* al swa
 Nortu the wisure neauer the mo.—(*Ibid.* p. 46.)

The sonne and monne and many *sterren*
 By easte aryseth swythe *ferren*.—(*Shoreham*, p. 137.)

Soule = *Soulen* (souls).

Oure dettes byeth oure zennes that we habbeth ydo wexe ope
 our *zaulen*.—(*Ayenbite*, p. 88.)

And lete us hatie the woh
 And luvie the rihte
 And bringe ure *sawle*
 To heoveriche lizte.—(*Relig. Songs*, p. 80.)

To there blisse us bringe god, the rixlit abuten ende
 Thenne he ure *soule* unbint of licames bende.
 (*Moral Ode*, p. 34.)

Alle halewene *soule* glade beoth : that in heuene beoth ido
 That suyeth oure loverdes way : and for him schadde also
 Here blod for his suete loue. —(*St Dunstan*, p. 39.)

Shuldre = *Schuldren* (shoulders).

A suetly suyre heo hath to holde,
 With armes, *shuldre*, ase mon wolde
 Ant fyngres feyre forte folde.—(*Lyric Poems*, p. 52.)

A strong rop ther was siththe above : fram the *schuldre* ido
 To his buttok of hors her : to holde hit faste to.

(*St Edmund*, p. 75.)

Up here *schuldren* hi nome this holi bodi anon.

(*St Beket*, p. 125.)

Theo delfyns woneth hire byside
 A strong best of gret pryde,
 They haveth *schuldren* on the rygge,
 And eke as scharpe as sweordis egge.

(*K. Alis*. p. 272.)

Sythe = *Sythen* (times).

In a wyndou ther we stod, we custe us fyfty *sythe*.

(*Spec. of Lyric Poet.* p. 91.)

For pl. see Glossary to *Ayenbite*, s.v. *Zyphen*.

Tunge = *Tungen* (tongues).

O tyme a Seint Petres dei, gret feste with here *tunge*
 In the see hi makede of Seint Peter, and here servise sunge.

(*St Brandan*, p. 20.)

Tongen occurs in the *Ayenbite*, pp. 22, 142.

Lunge = *Lungen* (lungs).

Nu schal for-rotien
 thine teoh and thi *tunge*
 Thi mahe and thi milte,
 thi livre and thi *lunge*
 And thi throte-bolle
 That thu mide sunge.—(*Relig. Songs*, p. 76.)

Also in a man hys body

Semeþ . . . aer in þe *longon*.

(*Trevisa*, 1387. *Cott. MS. Tib. D vii.*)

Wede = *Weden* (garments).

I-luved ich habbe gomen and gleo

And prude and feire *wede*.—(*Relig. Songs*, p. 66.)

Nolde ich 3even enne peni for his *weden* alle.—(*Ibid.* p. 71.)

The kyng of Mantona and his knyghtes

Buth y-armed redy to fyghte

In bruny of stel and riche *weden*

They doth go swithe on *steden* (steeds).

(*K. Alis.* p. 57.)

Wounde = *Wunden* (wounds).

Wide were is *wounde*

He tholed harde *stounde*.—(*Lyric Poems*, p. 97.)

Sone y wil with the founden,

Y deye y-wis for thine *wunden*.—(*Ibid.* p. 82.)

His deope *wunden* bledeth fast.—(*Ibid.* p. 112.)

The *wonden* bledde al longe ni3t.

(*St Beket*, p. 113.)

Ac overcome nas he no3t, thei is *wunden* dedliche were.

(*R. of Gl.* fol. 67.)

& he let him lede in to an yle, vor to hele is *wounde*,

& deide as the beste kni3t that me wuste evere *yfoundede*.

(*Ibid.* 67 b.)

See other example under *Honde*, *Honden*, p. xx.

Tonge = *Tongen* (tongs).

He sat longe and bitho3te him : longe hou hit were

He bitho3te him ho hit was : he dro3 forth his *tonge*

And leide in the hote fur : and spac faire longe

Forte the *tonge* was al afure : and siththe stille ynou3

The devel he hente bi the nose.—(*St Dunstan*, p. 36.)

Tho come ther suche schrewen mo wel thicke bi eche side

With *tangen*, and with hameres berninge meni on.

(*St Brandan*, p. 22.)

Sunne = *Sunnen* (sins).

Godemen, for godes lue,

bileveth eoure *sunne*.—(*Relig. Songs*, p. 83.)

Nai ! Nai ! hi shalle wel avinde
 That hi mid longe wope mote
 Of hore *sunnen* bidde bote,
 Ar hi mote euer kume thare.

(*Owl and N.* p. 30.)

Wyke = *woken* (weeks).

Tuelmonth & elleue *wyke* : alle this maidenenes were
 At Rome with this holi pope.—(*The 11,000 Virgins*, p. 68.)
 In thyssere joye we scholde by-louken
 Al hyre joyen of vourti *woken*
 The wyles he zede with chyld.

(*Shoreham*, p. 121.)

The following are additional examples of plurals in *-e* :—

The water was ful of longe *reede* (reeds).

(*K. Alis.* p. 210.)

Ac wat etestu, that thou ne lize,
 Bute *attercoppe* (spiders), and fule *vli3e* (flies)
 An wormes.—(*Owl and N.*, p. 21.)
 Ah thah my lif me bed at-schote,
 The 3et ich mai do gode note,
 Me mai upone smale *sticke*
 Me sette a wude ine the thicke,
 An swa mai mon tolli him to
 Lutle briddes and i-vo,
 An swa me mai mid me bi-3ete
 Wel gode brede to his mete.

(*Owl and N.* p. 56.)

Of drawing of bowes and *stikke* (sticks)
 Theo eyr bycam tho trouble and thikke.

(*K. Alis.* p. 168.)

They haueth no wolle to spynne
 Heore clothis buth of bestis *skynne* (skins).

(*Ibid.* p. 279.)

Ne hy ne han boures ne halles
 Ne casteles with heighe walles

Bot in trowes and in *denne* (dens)
 And in roches holed withinne
 Thereinne is her wonyghing.—(*K. Alis.* p. 244.)
 This venym creopith under my *ribbe* (ribs)
 That y may no longer libbe.—(*Ibid.* p. 324.)

The kynedom of heuene ten maiden es iliche is
 That is ech maner folc that ne wilneth noȝt amis
 No folie of flesches wille ac thurf the ten *heste* (commandments)
 Lede hys lyf in clennisse.—(*Harl.* 2277, fol. 11 a.)

After numerals, in the older stages of the language, the gen. pl. is properly used, but in 14th-century English the pl. is often used.

Of the hul of Olyvet sone hi wende adoun
 To the borȝ of Ierusalem, and bilevede in the toun
 A þousend *stappe* (paces) ther bituene. . . .
 A þousend *stappen* of such pas a myle noȝt hit is.
 (*Harl. MS.* 2277, fol. 24.)

Of plurals in *e* representing older forms in *-an*, *-a*, *-u* (*ru*), numerous examples might be selected from the Southern literature of the earlier part of the 13th century.

II.—GENITIVE SINGULAR OF FEMININE NOUNS IN *-e* (REPRESENTING OLDER FORMS IN *-AN* OR *-e*.)

The Northern dialect during the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries seems to have adopted the termination *-es* as the inflexion of the genitive singular for nouns of all genders. The Southern dialect, following the usage of the older stage of the language, formed the genitive of masculine and neuter nouns in *-es*, but of feminine substantives in *-e*.

Suete Ihesu, king of blysse
 Myn *huerte* loue, min *huerte* lisse
 Thou art suete myd y-wisse
 Wo is him that the shal misse.—(*Lyric Poems*, p. 57.)
 Suete Ihesu min *huerte* lyht
 Thou art day with-oute nyht.—(*Ibid.* p. 57.)
 For loue thou seȝe thin *heorte* blode.—(*Ibid.* p. 69.)

Thin *heorte* loue thou sendest us.—(*Lyric Poems*, p. 73.)

The suert is at myn *herte* grounde.—(*Ibid.* p. 81.)

Suete Ihesu min *huerte* bote
In myn *huerte* thou sete a rote
Of thi loue.—(*Lyric Poems*, p. 57.)

Suete Ihesu min *huerte* gleem
Bryhtore then the sonne beem
Ybore thou were in Bedlehem.—(*Ibid.* p. 57.)

Suete Ihesu my *soule* fode
Thin werkes bueth bo swete ant gode.—(*Ibid.* p. 58.)

Ihesu, do me that for for thi name
Me liketh to dreȝe pyne ant shame,
That is thy *soule* note ant frame
Ant make myn *herte* milde ant tame.—(*Ibid.* p. 71.)

So that Barint the olde man riȝt at his *hurte* grounde
Wel wepinge bigan to telle what he er founde.—(*St Brandan*, p. 2.)

The wonde swelth an aketh
So doth the *naddre* stenge.—(*Shoreham*, p. 104.)

And (the devele) dede hym in an *addre wede*
That best was of mest schreuhede of alle beste.
(*Ibid.* p. 158.)

At the *woke* end spake the ermyte
And askede the munke of the spyryte.
(*Rob. B. Hand. Syn.* p. 61.)

Hit is gode monne i-wone
A was from the *worlde* frome.
(*Or. N.* p. 17, l. 476.)

An nime ȝeme of *chirche* stevene
Hu murie is the blisse of hovene.
(*Owl and N.* p. 25.)

Heo mai hire guld at-wende
A rihte weie thurh *chirche* bende.—(*Ibid.* p. 49.)

But thaȝ the prest hys messe do
 Inne dedleche *senne* corse
 Thet sacrement man be thou syker
 For hym nys naȝt worse ; For loke
 The sacrement nys na[ȝt] the wors
 Thaȝ that Iudas hyt toke.—(*Shoreham*, p. 27.)

Thre maner peyne man fangeth
 For hys *senne* nede.—(*Ibid.* p. 37.)

To wake
 Hy thet slepeth ine *senne* slep
 Amendement to maky.—(*Ibid.* p. 51.)

An hors is strengur than a mon ;

 Hit berth on rugge grete semes,
 An draȝth bivore grete temes
 An tholethe bothe ȝerd and spure
 An stont i-teid at *mulne* dure.

(*Owl and N.* p. 27.)

The justise het his men openy thovene¹ (the oven's) mouth.
 (*Harl. MS.* 2277, fol. 96 a.)

Craddok erl of Cornwaile is avis sede
 That a senatour of rome yhote maximian
 Was of the kunde of this londe, a suite noble man
 Vor he was Leoflines sone that *Eleyne* uncle was
 The gode Constantines sone moder, vor non betere nas.
 (*R. of Gl.* fol. 32.)

Seynt Jame the gode man riȝt is to habbe in mone
 Seint Johnes brother the evangelist Godes *aunte* sone
 His moder was oure *leuedi* soster.
 (*Harl. MS.* 2277, fol. 97 a.)

In godhed toke he then way
 That to *helle* gates lay.
 (*Harrowing of Hell*, p. 15.)

¹ This word is marked *masculine* by Bosworth.

Thou wilt me bringe to *helle* deth.

(*Lyr. Poems*, p. 103.)

Tho the nabbeth god idon & therinne beth ifunde
He scullen falle swithe rathe in to *helle* grunde
Thaer-inne he scullen wunie buten ore and ende
Ne breeth never eft Crist *helle* dure to lese hem of bende.

(*Moral Ode*, p. 27, ll. 90, 91.)

Ac *helle* king is oreles with tha the he mai bride.

(*Ibid.* p. 29, l. 109.)

Sone so the *quene* fader Corineus was ded
He vorsoc is owe wif and astrild made quene.

(*R. of Gl. Cott. MS. Calig. A xi. fol. 11.*)

Conan the *quene* cosyn he clupede tho al stille.

(*Ibid.* fol. 33 b.)

Modred is neveu——

——y crouned him sulve king thoru the *quene* rede

(*R. of Gl. fol. 61 a.*)

This wes on oure *levedy* even.

(*Polit. Songs*, p. 219.)

This *wunne* weole (delight of joy) y wole for gon
Ant wyht in wode be fleme.—(*Lyr. Poems*, p. 44.)

Fram dethe to lyve he aros thurf oure *levedi lore*.¹

(*Saints*, p. 59.)

The gode for-horede the fend

Wyth hys *blaundyng stevene* (with the voice of his flattery).

(*Shoreham*, p. 59.)

Ac Edward the other adde thre children bi is wive
An sone that het Edward & doztren also tueye
Margarete & Cristine that gode wimmen were beye
This gode children aȝte be evermore in munde
Vor Engelond, ȝif hii nere, were ȝut out of kunde,
As ȝe mowe ihure her afterward in king *Henries* lif

¹ Chaucer has “our lady veyl.” See Prologue and Canterbury Tales, l. 695.

How Engelsond com to kunde aȝen thoru the gode quene Mold iwis
That thes *Margarete* doȝter was, Mold the gode quene.

(*R. of Gl.* fol. 91 b.)

He fond Horn in arme

On *Rymenhilde* barme.

(*K. Horn*, l. 706, E. E. T. Soc.)

The word bigan to springe

Of *Rymenhilde* weddinge.—(*Ibid.* l. 1018.)

He dude Horn inn late

Riȝt at *halle* gate.—(*Ibid.* l. 1074.)

A.Sax. *æddre*, a vein.¹

Ich haue the leten *eddre blod*.

(Of the vox and of the wolf a fable. *Relig. Antiq.* p. 272.)

Leove moder, quath Lucie : if thu leovest in holi churchē

And the wordes of the godspel : & wold ther-after wurchē

Thurf tuochingē of Seint *Agace* Tumbe : thu wost hol anon.

(*Lives of Saints*, p. 102, l. 33.)

Seint Lucie com

To Seinte *Agace* holie Tumbe & hire moder with hire nom.

(*Ibid.* p. 102, l. 36.)

To Seinte *Lucie* norici he wende : and eschte hire faste

What Lucie were so onbicomē hire god awei to caste.

(*Ibid.* p. 103, l. 59.)

& Constantin *Eleyne* son ȝe witeth wel Rome nom

& suththe Maximian that of hor beyre blod ich com.

(*R. of Gl.* fol. 60 a.)

Richard duc of Normandie *Emme* brother the quene

Adde an sone that het Roberd.—(*Ibid.* 99 a.)

A (on) Seinte *Marie* dai in the leynte biheveded [were] bothe ifere.

(*Harl. MS.* 2277, fol. 98 b.)

Crist ycleped *heuene* lomb com to saynt Ion.—(*Relig. Antiq.* p. 87.)

¹ Clene orn out the *reyne* blod.—(*Harl. MS.* 2277, fol. 14 a.)

Ihesu Crist *heouene* king
 3ef us alle god endyng
 That bone biddeth the.—(*Lyr. P.*, p. 59.)

Ihesu for thi muchele myht
 Thou graunte us alle *heuene* lyht.—(*Ibid.* p. 60.)

Helpe me *heuene* quene, for thyn ever ycham.—(*Ibid.* p. 93.)

Suete Ihesu of Nazareth

Thou do us *heuene mede*.—(*Ibid.* p. 112.)

See *Lives of Saints*, p. 103, l. 67 ; p. 107, l. 202.

III. GENITIVE PLURALS IN *-ENE*.

No trace of the Genitive plural in *-ene*, *-en* (A.-Sax. *ena*), is to be found in the *Ormulum*, the *Bestiary*, or *Genesis* and *Exodus*, although examples of this inflexion are common enough in *Lazamon*, *Seinte Marherete*, and other Southern writers of the Semi-Saxon period. It is entirely absent from any pure specimen of the Northumbrian dialect of the 14th century, but is frequently employed by Southern writers as late as A.D. 1387.

Apostlene veet = feet of the apostles.

Tho hym with a touwayle-schete Ihesu
 After soper by-gerte
 And water inta bacyn
 Myd a wel mylde herte,
 And wesschte
 Al his *apostlene* veet
 Thos ordre forthe he lesschte.—(*Shoreham*, p. 51.)
 Here god hi solde stille
 And to *thapostlen* fet hit caste.

(*Harl. MS.* 2277, fol. 25 b.)

Dazen ende = end of fourty days.

At fourty *dazen* ende.—(*Shoreham*, p. 126.)

Deovlene fere = the companion of devils.

Ich wisse men mid mine songe,
 That hi ne sunegi nowiht longe ;

I bidde hom that heo i-swike
 That heom-seolve ne bi-swicke :
 For betere is that heo wepen here
 Than elles-hwar to beon *deovlene* fere.

(*Owl & N.* p. 32.)

Develen prynces = princes of devils.

Seue *develen* prynces beth.—(*Shoreham*, p. 109.)

Englene songs = songs of angels.

Go we alle thene wei . for he us wulle bringe
 Mid tho faire fewe men . beforen heuene kinge
 Ther is alre meruthe mest . mid *englene* songe.

(*Moral Ode*, p. 33, l. 177.)

Ezene wepynge = weeping of the eyes.

Therfore thy schrifte man schel be wythoute stoneynge,
 Myd herte loȝ, and, ȝef thou myȝt,
 Myd thyn *ezene* wepynge.—(*Shoreham*, p. 35.)

Feenden mestrye = power of the fiends ; *fenden jewyse* = judgment of fiends (devils).

Schelde ous wanne we deade beth
 Fram alle *feenden* mestrye.—(*Ibid.* p. 84.)

I-schelde ous wanne we dede beth,
 Fram alle *fendene* jewyse.—(*Ibid.* p. 85.)

Fowelen Parays = Parish of Fowls.

Ther is oure gode procuratour that moche god ous haveth ido
 In the *Fowelen* Parays and ine the Lond of Schep also.

(*St. Brandan*, pp. 16, 17, ll. 353, 365, 379.)

Bestyn kyng = king of beasts.¹

That *bestyn* kyng
 Hys kynde may he noght forgo.—(*Octavian*, p. 177.)

Doggen = of dogs.

A dosyn of *doggen*
 Ne myhte hire drawe.—(*Polit. Songs*, p. 239.)

¹ Trevisa (1387) has *bestone* (or *bestoun*) kynde.—(*Cott. MS. Vesp. D vii*, fol. 62 b.)

Gromene = cf grooms (men).

Gobelyn made is gerner

Of *gromene* maw.—(*Polit. Songs*, p. 238.)

Jewene lawe = law of the Jews.

To þe *jewene lawe*.—(*Cott. Vesp.*, D. vii, fol. 148 b.)

Gyvene wille = will of the Jews.

Pilatus thurf the *gyvene wille* : him demde therto.

(*Life of Pilate*, p. 114, l. 103.)

Gyvene falshede = falsehood of the Jews.

Whan thou underȝete, quath themperour : the *gyvene falshede*

Whi naddestou ispeke ther aȝe : and desturbed the lithere dede.

(*Life of Pilate*, p. 116, l. 200.)

Reg regum, that is *kyngene kyng*.—(*Cott. Vesp.*, D. vii, fol. 282 b.)

Prophetene = of the prophets.

The man that healdeth thys two

Of charyte the heastes

Al he folueth the lawe of gode

And *prophetene* gestes.—(*Shoreham*, p. 92.)

Alle soulen day = Day of All Souls or All Souls' Day.

& eke quath thangel that thou telle the pope her-of sone

That me holde alle *soulen day* as riȝt is to done

& as wide as holi churche that he makie his heste

The morwe after alle *halewen day* ¹ that me holde thulke feste

That ech man ententifliche as forth as he may

For alle the soulen in purgatorie bidde thulke day.

(*Harl. MS.* 2277, fol. 145 a.)

Alle *soulen day* an urthe riȝt is to holde heȝe.—(*Ibid.*)

Souenȝt he bilevede ther : for-to alle *Soulen day*.—(*St Beket*, p. 58.)

Soulen = Of Soul.

Ther cometh two maner *soulen*.—(*Harl. MS.* 2277, fol. 131.)

¹ Alle *Halewen day* = All Hallows' Day = All Saints' Day. (See *Life of St Dunstan*, p. 39, l. 181, where phrase *Alle halewene soule* glad beoth = all the souls of the saints are joyful.)

Spousebrechene sawe = words of adulterers.

These *spousebrechen* sawe.—(*Shoreham*, p. 62.)

Tren rynde = The bark of trees.

Schipes they haven y-hote pyrates
In the water is heore gates :
Whan hit is ebbe, up they buth
Whan hit is flod, y-scheot they beoth
Heo buth ymad of oysers y fynde
And y-bounde al with *tren rynde*.

(*King Alis*. p. 255, l. 6187.)

Wermene mete = Meat of worms.

Huet is man bot velthe and a zechvol of donge, *wermene mete*.

(*Ayenbite*, p. 216.)

Thornene crowne = Crown of thorns.

Hy to-steke hys swete hefed

Wyth one *thornene* coroune.—(*Shoreham*, p. 85.)

See also *Harl. MS.* 2277, fol. 13 b.

Occasionally we find *-e* as well as *-ene*, as the sign of the genitive plural, as in the following examples :

Bole huden = Hides of bulls.

Hi leten hem dizte a gret schip, and above it al bi-caste

With *bole huden* stronge ynou ynailed (therto faste).

(*St Brandan*, p. 5.)

Engle & manne blisse = Bliss of angels and men.

He (God) one mai & scal beo *engle & manne blisse*.

(*Moral Ode*, p. 33, l. 189.)

Alle halewe = Of all Saints.

. . . . a church he let rere

Of oure loverd & alle *halewe* : in thulke place there

Six hondred 3er & fyve : oure loverd ther bifore

Of Marie his swete moder : an urthe were ibore

The church that was of oure levedi & of alle *halewen* ifonde

Stont 3ut & is icleped Marie la rounde.

(*Harl. MS.* 2277, fol. 144.)

Alre devele wei = The way of all Devils.

& this tuei enchantours to grounde hem overcome
& dryve hem an *alre devele* wey.

(*Harl. MS.* 2277, fol. 121 a.)

. hi also

Schulle gon an *alre devele* wei bote god nyme 3eme ther to.

(*Ibid.* fol. 145 b.)

Vyf myle wei = The way of five miles.

In pais hi wende forth here wey : & the bodi with hem toke

.

Vyf myle wei hi were awend : er thothere awoke.

(*Lives of Saints*, p. 56.)

Twenty myle weyes = The ways of twenty miles.

Twenty myle weyes and mo

No myght men astryde go

Bote he step ondede men,

In dale, in downe, in wode, in fen.

(*K. Alis.* p. 183, l. 4446.)

Manne lif = life of men.

Alle manne lif = the live of all men

We scullen *alre manne*¹ lif icnawe ther also ure owe.

(*Moral Ode*, p. 27, l. 82.)

Alle childe = of all children.

The eldeste soster of hem þreo oure levedi swete & mylde

Bar oure loverd Ihesu Crist best of alle *childe*.

(*Harl. MS.* 2277, fol. 37 a.)

Alle thinge = of all things.

Fairest of alle *thinge*.—(*Ibid.* fol. 38 a.)

(See *Moral Ode*, p. 33, l. 177.)

Alre berne = of all children.

Marie cleophee

Hadde tuei holie sones bi hire loverd Zebedee

Seint Jame the holi man & seint Johan the wangelist

That was *alre berne* best mid our loverd Ihesu Crist.

(*Harl. MS.* 2277, fol. 35 b.)

¹ *Manne* as the gen. pl. is used by Trevisa (A.D. 1387) in Cott. MS. Vesp. D vii, fol. 286 a.

v. Traces of the genitive singular nouns in *-e* are not very common, and they are remnants either of the *n* declension or of that class of masculines in *-u* or *-o*, which made the genitive singular in *-a*.

EXAMPLES :

“How he lepte with myght and mayne
on the *stede* back.”

(*Rom. of Octavian*, p. 217, l. 1446.)

In is wode rage he wende
Vor to awreke¹ is *uncle* deth.

(*R. of Gl. Cott. MS. Calig. A xi*, fol. 65 a.)

Bidde we seinte Marie
For hire milde mode,
For the teres that heo wep
For hire *sone* blod.—(*Relig. Poems*, p. 84.)

Ich cristni the in the vader name
And *sone*, and Holy Ghostes.

(*Shoreham's Poems*, p. 10.)

Fowel for thi false sawe
For beddi (I forbid) the this *wode* schawe ;
Thou fare into the filde.—(*Relig. Antiq.* p. 245.)

Whil y wes a clerc in scole, wel muchel y couthe of lore,
Ych haue tholed for thy love woundes fele sore ;
Fer from hom ant eke from men, under the *wode* gore.
(*Lyr. Poems*, p. 91.)

He let his schup stonde
And ȝede to londe ;
His folc he dude abide
Under *wude* side.

(*K. Horn*, p. 29, l. 1024, E. E. T. S.)

¹ Marsh treats *uncle* (and *quene*) as following under the same rule as *brother*, *moder*, *doȝter*, which dropped the genitive inflexion in A.-Saxon writers.

Athulf heo sede be blithe
 And to Horn thou go wel swithe
 He is under *wude* boȝe
 And with him kniȝtes inoȝe.—(*Ibid.* p. 35, l. 1227.)

ADJECTIVES.

The adjective in the Southern dialects retains most of the older inflexions. In the Northern dialects the distinction between the definite and indefinite forms of the adjective is not preserved, and the final *-e* in the plural is for the most part disregarded.

I. DECLENSION OF THE ADJECTIVE.

I. DEFINITE FORM.

God (good), the *gode* (the good).

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.	
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		
Nom.	<i>gode</i>	<i>gode</i>	<i>gode</i>	Nom. <i>goden</i> } <i>gode</i> }	
Gen.	<i>goden</i> } <i>gode</i> }	of all genders		Gen. <i>godene</i> } <i>gode</i> }	seldom used
Dat.	<i>goden</i> } <i>gode</i> }	”	”	Dat. <i>goden</i> } <i>gode</i> }	
Acc.	<i>goden</i> } <i>gode</i> }	<i>gode</i>	<i>gode</i>	Acc. <i>goden</i> } <i>gode</i> }	

II. INDEFINITE DECLENSION.

God (good).

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.	
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		
Nom.	<i>god</i>	<i>god</i>	<i>god</i>	Nom. & Acc.	<i>gode</i>
Gen.	<i>godes</i> ¹	<i>godre</i> ²	<i>godes</i>	Gen.	<i>godre</i> ²
Dat.	{ <i>gode</i> <i>goden</i> }	<i>godre</i> ²	<i>gode</i>	Dat.	{ <i>gode</i> <i>goden</i>
Acc.	<i>godne</i>	<i>gode</i>	<i>god</i>		

¹ The genitive form of the indefinite adjective is more often used in indefinite and demonstrative words than in other adjectives.

² Seldom used.

He (God) wythstent the *prouden*.—(*Shoreham*, p. 107.)

And þe children ham lovie togidere and beuly þe uelazrede of þe *greaten*.—(*Ayenbite*, p. 139.)

Vor þerne dyap hi clepieþ lyf and þane dyap þet is to þe *guoden* beginnyng of liue hi hit clepieþ þan ende.—(*Ibid.* p. 72.)

Alsuo tekþ þe writinge þet me ssel zeche red ate *yealden* and nazt mid þe yonge, þe ne byeþ nazt yproued in nyedes ac mid þe yealde þet habbeþ yzoze and yproued þe þinges, þet is þet wyt and þet red. Vor þan þet Roboam, Salomounes zone, vorlet þane red of þe *yealden* guode men, vor þane red of yonge he vorleas þe gratteste del of his kingdome.—(*Ibid.* p. 184.)

For 3yf thy wyl rejoith more
In *eny*es *kunnes* thynges

Bote yn God . . . thou ne anourest God aryzt.

(*Shoreham*, p. 95.)

Vuolf quad the vox him tho
Al that thou havest her bifo*re* ido,
In thouht, in speche, and in dede,
In euche *otheres kunnes* quede
Ich the forþeve at thisse nede.

(*Relig. Antiq.* p. 277.)

Herbi pou miȝte wel understonde,
þat on his areu, þat oþer schonde,
To stele to *oþeres mannes* bedde.—(*Owl & N.* p. 51.)

Bysshopes and barounes to the kynges pes,
Ase men that weren fals, fykel and les,
Othes hue him sworn in stude ther he wes,
To buen him hold ant trewe for *alles cunnes* res.

(*Camden Society's Polit. Songs*, p. 214.)

And what may þe dyches be
But hire þolemode poverté
þat *nones kunnes* assaylyng
Ne may derve þe tour for no þing.

(*Castel of Love*, l. 855.)

Ures formes faderes gult we abigget alle.—(*Moral Ode*, p. 28.)

. þes worlde us wule fordrenche
 Mest alle men he ȝiveð drinke of one deoffles scenche
 He sceal him cunne sculde wel, ȝif he him nele screnche
 Mid *ealmithties* godes luve ute þe us biwerien
 Wid (from) þes *wrecches* worldes luue, þat he ne mawe us derien.
(*Ibid.* p. 32.)

Elche rune he ihurd & he wot alle dede
 He þurð-sihð *elches* mannes þanc þat scal us to rede.
(*Ibid.* p. 25.)

He is *elches* godes ful.—(*Ibid.* p. 33.)

Ther com to ous a ȝung man suythe fair and hende,
 He welcomede ous everechon mildeliche and suete
 And nemnede *evereches* owe name and wel myldeliche ous gan grete.
(*St Brandan*, p. 3.)

The fox so *godne* ne can (knows) nanne
 The (though) he kunne so vele wrenche.
(*Owl & N.* p. 28.)

Ich wot hwo schal beon anhonge,
 Other elles *fulne* deth afonge.—(*Ibid.* p. 41.)

And hit is grat wonder thet hi loketh zuich ane *fielene* castel as
 hare fyeble bodye aye zuych ane *strangne* vend ase is the dyeuel of
 helle.—(*Ayenbite*, p. 227.)

Vor alsuo ase the angles of heuene habbeth grat glednesse of ane
 zenezere huanne he him repenteth and deth penonce vor his zennes,
 alsuo the dyevelen ham gledieth huanne hi moȝe overcome and do
 valle into zenne ane *guodne* man; and the more thet he is of grat
 stat and the parfiter, the more heth he the gratter glednesse huanne
 he him may gyly, ase the vissere heth more blisse vor to nime ane
gratne visse thane ane *littlene*.—(*Ibid.* p. 238.)

Non yziȝ ane *yongne* boryeis and ane *newene* kniȝt. Mochel
 habbeth thos of vele thoȝtes, newe, diverses, and wylvolle.—(*Ibid.*
 p. 161.)

Of alle thise yefthes (of kende, of hap, and of grace) we ssel thonki god and servi vor thet hi cometh alle of him. Thazles the proude hise zelth to the dyevele vor thane *valsne* peny of ydele blisse.

(*Ayenbite*, p. 24.)

——— thaȝ me *godne* skele hem telle,

Nauȝt hyt ne ganth (avails).

(*Shoreham's Poems*, p. 135.)

I wylle me ssrive and ich wille zigge alle mine zennes aye me, naȝt of *othren*, ne ayens *othren* as doth the ypcrites.—(*Ayenbite*, p. 175.)

Afterward the ssrifte ssel by yhol naȝt to-deld ine vele ssriveres. Vor me ssel zigge al to *onen*, naȝt o del to *onen* and thet other del to *anothren*, vor god ne taketh none hede of zuiche tales.—(*Ibid.* p. 175.)

Hit is more zenne in one stede thane ine *anothren*.—(*Ibid.*)

Thanne ssel he verst yzy the zeue dyadliche zennes, of *huychen* we habbeth above yspeke, and yholliche of *echen* him ssrive be than thet he him yvelth gelty, no-thing to hele, nothing wyth-zigge, naȝt him to defendi ne *nenne othrenne* wray.—(*Ibid.* p. 175.)

Hy ne thencheth ne studieth bote ham zelve to avonci and *othren* to harmi. Thet wyt is the develes wyt ase zayth Saint Jacob, thet eche daye him vondeth *othren* to harmy.—(*Ibid.* p. 82.)

For hyre poer nys nouȝt y-lessed

Ac toup alle *othren* hys y-blessed.

(*Shoreham*, p. 127.)

To *nonen*.—(*Ayenbite*, p. 121.) To *echen*.—(*Ibid.* p. 122.)

To *allen*.—(*Ibid.* p. 145.) Be *enne* (by one).—(*Ibid.* p. 129.)

He wile deme *evrinne* be his dedes.—(*Ibid.* p. 134.)

In the herte of *evrichen*.—(*Ibid.* p. 146.)

II. *Inflected Article* (Definite).

In the *Ormulum* the definite article is *uninflected*, the only remnant of the older inflexions being the phrase (still retained at the

present day) 'for *than anes*' = for the nonce. So, too, in the Northern dialect during the E. Eng. period the article remains the same for all genders and cases—but not in the Southern dialect, in which the masculine, feminine, and neuter forms, and some case endings, were preserved as late as the middle of the fourteenth century, if not much later.

In the Northern dialect *that* is the demonstrative adjective; in the Southern it is the neuter of the definite article.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		
Nom. þe,	{ þa, þeo, þo,	{ þat. þet.	Nom. and Acc.	þo, þeo, þa.
Gen. þes, ¹	{ þare, þere, þar, þer,	{ þes. ¹	Gen.	þare.
Dat. þan,	þare, þere.	þan. ¹	Dat.	{ þan. þane.
Acc. { þane, þan, þene, þen,	þo,	þan.		

EXAMPLES :

Zueche tyeares driveþ þane dyevel uram þe herte as þet weter cachcheþ þane hond out of þe kechene.—(*Ayenbite*, p. 171.)

. . . . be þise virtue (pacience) þe guode overcomeþ alle his vyendes, þane dyevel, þe wordle and þet vless.—(*Ibid.* p. 167.)

Vor huanne man him berþ hate to þe torment and þe zaule and þet bodi, zuo þet þe man ne may slepe ne non rest habbe, oþer huyt him benimþ þane mete and þane drinke and makeþ him valle ine ane fevre oþer ine zuiche zorþe þet he nimþ þane dyap.—(*Ibid.* p. 31.)

þos he lyst al his time and þe nizt and þane day.—(*Ibid.* p. 52.)

Loke þet þou halþi þane day of þe Sabat.—(*Ibid.* p. 7.)

¹ These forms are seldom used after 1300.

. serve þine sseppere þet him restedede þane zevende
day of workes þet he hedde ymad ine þe zix dayes bevore.

(*Ibid.* p. 4.)

Go we þene narewe wei & þene wei grene.

(*Moral Ode*, p. 32.)

Riȝt so hit farþ bi þan ungede
þat noȝt ne suþ to none gode,
And is so ful of uvele wrenche,
þat him ne mai no man at-prenche,
And can wel þane þursstere wai
And þane briȝte wei lat awai.—(*Owl & N.* p. 9.)

Tho hit was Eve *thane* Sonedai the deuelen come blaste.

(*St Brandan*, p. 27.)

The thrid dai *than* amorow grisful hit sal be to loke.

(*Early Eng. Poems*, p. 9.)

And so he lay al thulke tyme : and also *thane* friday.
He let clipie the Saterday the freres bifore him alle
And bed alle *godne* day.—(*Lives of Saints*, p. 39, l. 198.)

. Ofte heo gaf hem mede

For to faste *thane* fridai : to watere and to brede.

(*Ibid.* p. 71.)

And God zayþ ine his spelle þet huo þet zenezþ aye þane holy
gost he ne ssel nevre habbe merci ine þise wordle ne ine þe oþre.

(*Ayenbite*, p. 28.)

To quendride his lipere soster anon he gan wende

And tolde here al þe lipere cas : fram bigynninge to þan ende.

(*Lives of Saints*, p. 53, l. 198.)

He com of þan adel eye.—*Owl & N.* p. 5, l. 133.)

Also hit is bi þan ungede

þat is icumen of fule brode.—(*Ibid.* p. 5, l. 129.)

Ine þo manere and ine þo vorbisne heþ þe þri states of Godes
zone ine erþe, huiche þe holy gost let and condeuþ, aze zayþ Sainte
Pauel.—(*Ayenbite*, p. 122.)

* * * * *

Seynt Jame seythe that oreyson
Of *ther* holy byleve
Of hiis siknesse helthe wynthe,

* * * * *

That no fend schal reve the helpe.

(*Shoreham's Poems*, p. 41.)

Ich am that lyzt
Of alle *ther* wordle rounde aboute.

(*Ibid.* p. 49.)

. . . ther mot *atter* spousynge
Be ryzt asent of bothe,
Of man and of *ther* wymman eke.—(*Ibid.* p. 57.)

. . . . byternesse of mode
That hiis *thare* saule galle.—(*Ibid.* p. 92.)

Therthe schok, the sonne dym bycom
In *thare* tyde.—(*Ibid.* p. 86.)

Therefore nas helle nauzt yschet,
Ne develyn therinne nauzt ydut,
Ine *thare* crybbe.—(*Ibid.* p. 157.)

þo stod on old stoc þar beside,
þar þo ule song hire tide,
And was mid ivi al bi growd ;
Hit was *pare* hule earding-stowe.—(*Owl & N.* p. 2.)

þe niztingale hi iseȝ,
And þuȝte wel wl of *pare* hale.—(*Ibid.* p. 231.)

Wostu to þan man was ibore ?
To *pare* blisse of hovenen riche.—(*Ibid.* p. 25.)

þe wranne, for heo cuȝe singe,
War com in *pare* moreȝeing
To helpe *pare* niztegeale.—(*Ibid.* p. 59.)

Of pisse riche (heaven) we þenchet oft
& of *pere* (helle) to selde.—(*Moral Ode*, p. 32.)

To þere blisse us bringe god. þe rixlet abuten ende.

(*Moral Ode*, p. 34.)

In Shoreham's poems we have an example of the pl. dative þane.

For ase wynman com of the ryb
Of the mannes ryȝt syde,
So holyche spouse of God
Sprange of *thane* wonden wyde.

(*Shoreham*, p. 80.)

III. Many of the older forms of *this*, wholly unknown in the Northern dialect, are preserved in the Southern until a very late period. It appears to have been declined as follows.

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.	
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>			
Nom. þes, ¹ þis,	{ þeos, þos, þues, ¹	} þis.		Nom. þeos, þes, þos, þis, þise.	
Gen. þises,	þisse,	þises.		Gen. þise, þisse.	
Dat. þise, } þisen, }	þisse,	þise.		Dat. þise, þisen.	
Acc. þisne, þesne, } þerne, ²	þisse,	þis.		Acc. þes, þise.	

þes boȝ heȝ monie tuygges.—(*Ayenbite*, p. 41.)

& wiȝynne a lytel stounde þes man þat semede so colde & a fyle
mesel werȝ whyt & fayr & styȝ up in to þe aer.

(*Cotton MS. Vesp. D vii*, fol. 145 a.)

þes William regnede prytene ȝer a monȝ lasse.

(*Ibid.* fol. 145 a.)

þes Odo wastede & destruyede þe kyng hys rentes and escheytes.

(*Ibid.*)

þes Edward was veyr of body.—(*Ibid.* fol. 291 b.)

þes (= this man, *i.e.* Lotharius) was a lettrede man.

(*Ibid.* fol. 280 b.)

¹ Retained as late as 1387.

² Retained as late as 1340.

In hys vurde 3er þes (Honorius) changede
þe copes of freres carmes.

(*Cotton MS. Vesp. D vii*, fol. 288 b.)

þes seyde þat he was Ihesus Crist.—(*Ibid.* fol. 283 b.)

þeos Corsa hadde a bole.—(*Ibid.* fol. 28 b.)

þues mayde was ywedded to Robert de Brui3.—(*Ibid.* fol. 284.)

He lay by þues mayde.—(*Ibid.* fol. 272 a.)

þareuore þe kyng caste to wedde þues wynche.—(*Ibid.*)

þeos (these) þre lawes.—(*Ibid.* fol. 45.)

þues (these) uorsede men . . . chese þe uorsede Edward þe
eldere to be here lord.—(*Ibid.* fol. 289 b.)

þues voure breddes (birds) quap þe kyng beþ my voure sonas.
(*Ibid.* 270 b.)

On helle is unger & þerst, vuele tuo ifere

þos pine þoliede þo þe were mete nithinges here.

(*Moral Ode*, p. 29.)

Sculde him elc man þe wile he mai of þos helle pine.—(*Ibid.* p. 31.)

þeos hule abod fort (until) hit was eve.—(*Owl & N.* p. 2.)

Ac lete we awei þos cheste.—(*Ibid.* p. 7.)

Heo bigan to sike sore : and in tho3te stod

Allas heo seide that ich scholde *thisne* day evere abide.

(*Lives of Saints*, p. 51.)

Wend he seide whan thu hom comest to Edward 3oure kyng

And sai him that he for was love he 3af *thisne* ring

Him sende here his ring a3en and thonkede him also.

(*Ibid.* p. 106.)

Mid graate wille Ich habbe þerne paske ywylned, þet is to zigge
þerne dyap, þise¹ ssame, þise wendinge.—(*Ayenbite*, p. 133.)

þerne = þesne, is peculiar to the Kentish dialect, and occurs in the
poems of Shoreham.²

¹ þise shows that *ssame* and *wendinge* are feminine nouns.

² For thou areredst *therne* storm.—(*Shoreham*, p. 161.)

Of *þisen* we habbeþ vayre vorbysne.—(*Ayenbite*, p. 218.)

In *þise* bene (fem.) þet we doþ to gode we bezecheþ ane yefþe of þe holy gost.—(*Ibid.* p. 89.)

Thissere (gen. and dat. sing. fem.), A.S. *þissere*; *Thissere* (gen. and dat. pl.), A.S. *þissera* occur in Shoreham's poems.

To *thyssere* joyen (joys) scholle be y-leyd (placed) alle the joyen that moze (may) be yseyd (named).—(*Shoreham*, p. 126.)

To *thyssere* joye longye (belong) scholle alle the joyen that hyre (to her) folle (may befall) of hyre chylde God.—(*Ibid.* p. 123.¹)

6. The plural of Adjectives (mostly of Romance origin) in *-es*, as *wateres principales*, is unknown to the Northern dialect.

IV. Degrees of Comparison.

Adjectives ending in *-lich* (sing.), *-liche* (pl.), often form the comparative in *-luker* or *-loker* (Kentish *-laker*). This inflexion is unknown in the Northern dialect, in which the affix *-lich* becomes *-lik* (-like) *-ly*, and the distinctions between the singular and plural forms, as well as that between the adjective in *-lich* and the adverbial in *-liche*, are lost sight of.

The affix *-lich* has not given us the more modern *-ly*. It is probable that this latter form has arisen from *-lig* (thus barley, originally *berlic*, is corrupted into *berlig* and *berley*).

Traces of this corruption occur in the Ormulum, in which we meet with the double endings of adjectives and adverbs in *-like* and *-liȝ*.

V. Numerals.

Some Southern numerals (ordinals) end in *-the*, as *seofethe* (sevethe), seventh; *eiztethe*, eighth; *neozethe* (nithe), ninth; *tethe* (tethe), tenth.²

The corresponding Northern numerals end in *-nde*, *-nd*, as *sevend*, *achtande*, *neghend*, *tend*, and are doubtless of Danish origin.

The Kentish dialect, like the old Frisian, prefers *-nde* to *-the*.

¹ See pp. 53, 96, 121, 127 of Shoreham's poems.

² The forms in *-nth* are Midland varieties.

1. *Dropping of the final -n.*

Seoven (seven), *neozen* (nine), in the Southern dialect, frequently drop the final *-n*, as *seove* (sove) ; *neoze*, *neze*.

VI. *Adjectives peculiar to the Southern dialect.*

pilk, *pilke*, *pulk*, *pulke* (older forms, *pellich*, *pelliche*) = this, these, such-like, are not employed by Northern writers. They are still retained in the modern provincial dialect under the form *thick*, *thuck*, *thicky*.

Bather, *bathers* (of both), *same*, *twin* (two), *thrin* (three), *slike*, *silk*, *sic* (such), *p̃ir*, *p̃er*, *p̃ere* (these), are unknown to Southern writers.

PRONOUNS.

Our pronouns are substantially Northern ones. The Southern dialect had many pronominal forms which never occur in any Northern writer.

The following table exhibits most of the Southern forms, in use during the xiiiith and xivth centuries :—

I. The personal pronouns are : *Ich* (I), *p̃u*, *p̃ou* (thou), *he* (he), *heo* (she), *hit* (it).

SINGULAR.			DUAL.		PLURAL.
Nom.	Ich, uch,	p̃u, p̃ou.	Nom.	wit,	we.
Gen.	min, mi,	p̃in, ¹ p̃i.	Gen.	unk̃er,	ure, ur.
Dat.	} me,	p̃e.	Dat.	{ unc,	ous, us.
Acc.			Acc.	{ unk,	
				{ hunke,	
			Nom.	get, git,	3e, ye.
			Gen.	{ gunk̃er,	{ eower,
				{ ink̃er,	{ 3ure, youre.
			Dat.	gunk̃,	{ eow, ow, ou,
			Acc.	ink̃,	{ 3ou, yow.

¹ *min* and *p̃in* are used before words beginning with a vowel ; *mi* and *p̃i* before a consonant. They follow the declension of the adjective, making in the oblique cases *mine*, *p̃ine* ; *minen*, *p̃inen*, &c.

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.	
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		
Nom.	{ a, ha, he,	{ heo, hi, hy, he, hue,	{ hit, it.	Nom.	hi, hii, heo, hue.
Gen.	his,	hire,	his.	Gen.	{ hire, here, heore, huere, hor.
Dat.	him,	hire,	him.	Dat.	heom, huem, hem, hom.
Acc.	{ hine, him,	{ hire, hi, his,	{ hit. it.	Acc.	hi, his, hise.

*Ich*¹ or *Uch* is still retained in the modern Southern dialects under the forms *Uch* and *utchy*, and occasionally contracted into *ch* (as *cham* = I am, *chell*, *chill*, I will). Robert of Gloucester frequently writes *Icholle* = *Ich wolle*, I will; *Ichot* = *Ich wot*, I know. *Ic*,¹ *Ik*, *I*,² are corresponding Northern forms.

I occasionally occurs in the Southern dialect: (1.) before verbs commencing with a *dental* or *nasal*, as *I nam*, I am not; *I not*, I know not; (2.) after verbs, as *mosti*, I must; *wolly*, I will.

Thritti wynter and thridde half yer

Havy woned in londe her.

(*Harrowing of Hell*, p. 15.)

Thou miht wyten in thy lay

That mine *wolly* have away.—(*Ibid.*)

Thah men to me han onde,

To love *nuly* noht wonde

Ne lete for non of tho.—(*Lyric Poems*, p. 29.)

Where thou me nou, hendest in helde

Navy the none harmes to hethe.—(*Ibid.* p. 37.)

¹ In the earlier periods of the language, *Ic* is the ordinary form.

² Many editors have incorrectly printed *ie* instead of *ich* for the contraction *Ic*.

Mosti ryden by Rybbesdale
Wilde wymmen forte wale.

(*Lyric Poems*, p. 33.)

Ne sixtu wel *icham* aliue, *icholle* segge hou it is.

(*R. of Gl.* fol. 51 a.)

Hii verde *ichot* as gydie men mid *wan* no red nas.—(*Ibid.*)

Icholle sulle min (lif) dere ynou.—(*Ibid.* fol. 67 b.)

Thulke Woden adde a wyf that ycluped was Dame Frye
A Latin Dame Venus as *ichabbe* ysed nou tuye.

(*Ibid.* fol. 69 a.)

An hendy hap *ichabbe* y-hent

Ichot from heuene it is me sent.

(*Lyric Poems*, p. 28.)

See *Lyric Poems*, p. 94.

Vor *icham* mid min fon in eche half biset

& 3if *ichom* may ouercome. thoru 3ou the bet

Ich 3ou wolle mid me at-holde and in gret richesse 3ou do.

(*R. of Gl.* fol. 39.)

For *wolny*, *nulni*, hi sul fle and that in-to the pine of helle.

(*Early Eng. Poems*, p. 12.)

II. *A* or *Ha* = *He*.

This form is very common in all the Southern dialects, but never occurs in any Northern writer. It is still preserved in the modern provincial dialects of the South of England.

Moi belovad be loik a raw or a yong hart : Zee ! *a'* stand'th behind our wall *a'* look'th voäth at th' winders, zhowing hiszel droo th' lattice.—(*Song of Solomon*, Somersetshire version.)

Tha voice uv ma beluvid ! behold *ha* com'th laipin apin tha mowntins.—(*Song of Solomon*, Devonshire version.)

Every body kneows owld Barnzo, as wears his yead o' one zide. One night *a* was coming whoame vrom market, and vell off's hos into the road, *a* was zo drunk.—(*Akerman's Wiltshire Tales*.)

Trevisa uses *a* as an indefinite of the 3rd pers. pro. = he, she, it, they.

Hy (they) habbeþ no wodes þefore *a* makeþ ham fuyr of torues.
(*Cott. MS., Vesp. D vii*, fol. 28.)

þar buþ also cicade bryddes þat synggeþ atte beste & habbeþ a pipe opou onder þe þrote & synggeþ betre whane þe heued is offe þan whyle hyt ys on & betre whanne *a* beþ deed þan whyle þay buþ alyve.—(*Ibid.* fol. 29 b.)

He ran home to uore & prayede hys wyf þat *hue* wolde helpe for to saue hym þat as moche as *hue* myzte *hue* scholde make here self uoul, bote *a* dude þe contrary, &c.—(*Ibid.* fol. 222.)

Yn þis ylond groweþ a ston þat hatte gagates ; . . . *a* ys ablak as gemmes buþ. . . . *a* brenneþ yn water, &c.—(*Trevisa, quoted in Morris' Specimens of Early English*, p. 334.)

Also þer ys yn þe cop of an hul a buryel ; everych man þat comeþ & meteþ þat buriel *a* schal fynde hyt evene ryzt of hys onne meete & ȝef a pylgrym oper eny wery man kneoleþ þerto, anon *a* schal be al fersch & of werynes schal he feele non nuy.—(*Ibid.* p. 337.)

This pronoun is used by Robert of Gloucester and Shoreham.

King Arthure aȝen þe brest is felawe verst ahitte,

Aȝen þe brust þat *a* vul & ne miȝte no leng sitte.

(*R. of Gl., Cott. MS., Calig. A xi*, fol. 57 b.)

Ac *a* deythe (dies) and he not (knows not) wanne (when).

(*Shoreham's Poems*, p. 3.)

In the foreheved the crouche *a* set (setteth).—(*Ibid.* p. 15.)

Ha (Crist) grade 'hely' to hys fader.—(*Ibid.* p. 86.)

Dan Michael uses only the older form *Ha*¹ = he.

Ha beat (beats) and smit and (both) wyf and children ase *ha* were out of his wytte.—(*Ayenbite*, p. 30.)

1. *Hine* (acc.), Him.

In the Southern dialect *hine* is found as late as 1340. It still

¹ In the older stage of the language, called Semi-Saxon, *ha* = she and they.

exists in the modern provincial dialects of the South of England under the forms *-en* or *-un*. No trace of this accusative is to be found in any Northern writers ; nor is it used in the *Ormulum*, one of the earliest of Midland productions, where its place is supplied by the dative *him*.

EXAMPLES.

A kniȝt wyth one scharpe spere

Stang *hyne* i the ryȝt syde.—(*Shoreham's Poems*, p. 86.)

Þe dyevel þerto proprelich uondeþ þane man : þet he *hine* myȝte
wyrðdraȝe uram þe loue of God.—(*Ayenbite*, p. 116.)

Þe wrechche ne þengþ of him þet *hine* halt.—(*Ibid.* p. 128.)

Third Personal Pronoun, Feminine.

The Southern personal pronoun of the 3rd person is *Heo*, which occasionally takes other forms, as *Hi* (Kentish), as *hue* (South Western). *Heo*, *He*, *Hue*, is used as late as 1387. See extracts, p. xlix.

The corresponding Northern form is *Sco* or *Sho* (Midland *Sche*), which seems to have arisen out of the older (or A.S.) *Seo* or *Sio*,¹ and gradually to have crept into the Southern dialect towards the end of the xivth century, for we find it once or twice in Trevisa's translation of Higden's *Polychronicon* (1387), where *heo* or *hue* is the ordinary form.²

“Siborea made gret mone to-fore Judas of here wrechehede lyf & sorouful ; how *heo* hadde yput here yonge sone in to þe stremes, how *heo* lost here hosbond sodeynliche & how *shee* was ymaryed aȝenes here wyll.”—(*Cotton MS., Vesp. D vii*, fol. 137 a.)

Hi or *hy*, her, acc., is used as late as 1327-77.

The niȝtingale *hi* iseȝ (the owl)

And *hi* bihold and over-seȝ,

An thuȝte wel wl of thare hule

For me *hi* halt lodlich and fule.—(*Owl & N.* p. 2.)

¹ *Ze* = she, occurs once in the *Ayenbite*, p. 102. In the story of Genesis and Exodus (E. Midland dialect) *sye* (*sge*) occurs several times.

² I do not find an *earlier* instance of the use of *she* in any pure Southern writer. It should be noticed, perhaps, that such a form as *seo* or *sio* would *not* become *she* but *se* (*ze*) or *si* (*zi*) ; but *she* arises out of a form like *sceo* or *scæ*.

And [thu] lerdest *hi* to don shome
 An unriȝt of hire licome.—(*Owl & N.* p. 36.)
Senne (= fem.) hys swete and lyketh,
 Wanne a man *hi* deth
 And also soure *hy* bryketh (= brooketh)
 Wane he venjaunce y-seth.

(*Shoreham's Poems*, p. 102.)

To healde *hy* (erthe) op hyt nys no ned.—(*Ibid.* p. 136.)

Personal Pronoun, 3rd Person Plural.

*Hii, Hi, Heo*¹ = they ; *heore, hure, huere, hor, hare* = their, *heom* (*huem, hem, hom, ham*) = them, are Southern forms (retained as late as 1387), the corresponding Northern ones being *Thai* (tha), *thair* (thar), *thaim* (tham).²

Hi, them, is retained as late as 1327-77 by Shoreham.

EXAMPLES.

Ac he that ine saule is strang,
 That he with-stent *hi* alle,
 And hardeliche hert othre men,
 Adoun that hi ne falle.
 ac stonde.—(*Shoreham's Poems*, p. 14.)

Anon þe foend fondeth *hy* so,
 And he ne spareth nanne.—(*Ibid.* p. 16.)

See also pp. 92, 94, 97, 112.

• The forms *hor* and *hom* are, perhaps, Western and South-western forms. The Kentish dialect employs *hare* (hire) and *ham*.

Hise (*His, is*), (acc.) = *them*.

Until I saw the Midland version of Genesis and Exodus, I was under the impression that *hise* (*is*) = them, was peculiar to the Southern dialect. But though it makes its appearance in some of the Mid-

¹ *He* = they (East Midland) seems to have arisen out of *Hia* or *Hie*.

² *Their, Theim* (them), are Midland varieties. *þe33, þe33r*, occur in the Ormulum. *þei* occurs in an East Midland MS., Trin. Col., Camb. (xiiith cent.), and in the Story of Genesis and Exodus. *þay* is used occasionally by Trevisa.

land dialects, having Southern tendencies, it is never employed by any Northern writer.

Dr Guæst has shown that this pronoun answers to the Gothic *ins*, acc. of *eis*. The oldest form of the pronoun in English appears to have been *hes*.

EXAMPLES.

þou zayst þet þou hest zixti year, þe dyap *hise* heþ and neuremo *his* nele þe yelde.—(*Ayenbite*, p. 71.)

God ne heþ hede of kueade yeffes ac he *his* loueþ trewe and guode.
(*Ibid.* p. 192.)

Alast thanne thet he [God] is vader be kende and be riȝte, he loveth thet he heth ymad, ase zayth the boc of Wysdome, and is zuete and milde and zuo loveth and draȝth vorth his children, and ham deth hare prou, and betere thanne hi conne devisi ; and he *his* byat and *his* chasteth huanne hi misdoth, vor hare prou ase guod vader and bletheliche he *his* ondervangth huanne hi cometh to hym.
(*Ibid.* p. 100.)

Of France & of oþre londes þat we wonne mid ure miȝte.
We mowe segge þat we nabbeth to ansuerye noȝt mid riȝte.
Whan hii vorsoke *is* & vor slewþe & to none defense ne come
þo we þoru chiualerie out of hor poer *is* nome.
(*R. of Gl.* fol. 60 b.)

Tho caste this gode molde hire mantel of anon
& gurde aboute hire middel a vair linne seete
& wess the meseles vet . echone ar heo lete
& wipede *is* nessce afterward . & custe *is* wel suete.
(*Ibid.* fol. 123 b.)

Ȝef he *hys* (Godes hestes) breketh and so byloefth,
Hys saule schal he spylle.
Ȝef thou *hys* halst man, God the seith,
Ha wole be the so kende,
He wole be fo to thyne fon,
And frend to thyne frende.—(*Shoreham's Poems*, p. 90.)

Ten hestes haueth yhote God,

.

He *hys* wrot (and) Moyses by-toke.

In ston ich wot that he *hys* wrot,

In tokne of sykernesse.

(*Shoreham's Poems*, p. 92.)

Hise (*hys*, *is*), (acc.) = her.

The Gothic *Si* = she, makes gen. *izos*, dat. *izai*; a cognate root is probably preserved in the Southern form *his* = her.

þulke soule (*fem.*) nymeþ *his* (= herself) in and bileveþ iwis

In þe childes brayn anhez þat is þe soule þat hext is.

(*Popular Science*, p. 140.)

And 3yf man halt ase hys wyf

After the gelt [as] hys spouse,

Tha3 he by *hyre* ne ligge nou3t,

Other halt *hys* ine hys house,

In tome,

Ne schal *hy* nau3t departed be

Fram hym for hordome.

(*Shoreham's Poems*, p. 77.)

Ho (who) halt *ys* (erthe) op?—(*Ibid.* p. 136.)

Josephes *thevly*, tho *hy* vand alone him, *hi* wold do him zenez i mid hire, ac he him vledde ase wys and *hise* vorlet.

(*Ayenbite*, p. 206.)

The guode man mid the rede of his wyue yeaf his cou to the preste thet wes riche. the prest *hi* nom blethliche and *hise* zente to the othren thet he hedde.—(*Ibid.* p. 191.)

Mochel is defouled, mid the vet of volleres, the robe (*fem.*) of scarlet, er-than thet the kuen *his* do an.—(*Ibid.* p. 167.)

Thervore the dyevel playth ofte mid the zenezere ase deth the cat mid the mouse (*fem.*), thanne he *his* heth ynome, and huanne he heth mid *hire* longe yplayed thanne he *his* eth (eateth).—(*Ibid.* p. 179.)

And of Alisondre me ret thet he yaf ane cite (*fem.*) to onen of his sergons an huanne the ilke *hise* wolde forzake, vor thet grat thing him

thoȝte to nime zuych yefthe; Alisondre answerede and zayde 'Ich ne loky naȝt thet belongeth the to nimene ac me to yeue.'

(*Ayenbite*, p. 195.)

See also p. 203.

He wende him worþ to chirche, & bivore the rod com,
& mid mek herte pitosliche is kinges *croune* (= fem.) nom
& sette *is* vpe þe *rode* (fem.) *heved* (head of the Cross).

(*R. of Gl.* fol. 93 a.)

Possessive Pronouns.

The forms *urs* (ours), *yhures* (yours), *hirs* (hers), *thairs* (theirs), appear frequently in Northern works written during the earlier part of the xivth century; and from the fact that the Ormulum, whose tendencies are Northern, uses *þeȝȝrs* (theirs),¹ we may reasonably suppose that these forms were in use much earlier. The Southern corresponding forms were *ure*, *owere*, *zure*, *hire*, *here*. The Northern dialect has also such forms as *allirs* and *bathers* = Southern *alre* (or *alder*), of all, and *beire*, of both.

In the Lord's Prayer in the Northern version of the Cursor Mundi we have the phrase 'fader *ures*.' In a Southern work of about the same date we have the corresponding phrase 'fader *oure*.'

The following examples will illustrate the use of the possessive pronouns in the two dialects.

On of hem wile fiȝte
Aȝen [other] thre kniȝtes
Ȝef other thre slen *ure*
Al this lond beo *ȝoure*;
Ȝef we *ure* on ouercometh *ȝoure*² three
Al this lond schal *ure* beo.—(*King Horn*, p. 3, E. E. T. S.)
A man of thair gains an of ur
If *urs* mai him win in stur,
That thai be *urs* & thair airs (heirs);
If thai win *urs* that we be *thairs*.
(*Northern version of Cursor Mundi*, *Cott. MS.* fol. 42.)

¹ In some *Midland* writers we find *heres* and *hores* = theirs.

² A Northumbrian could say *yours* three.

Some few Midland dialects employ the forms *ouren*, *youren*, *heren*. This seems to have arisen from the adjectival use of these forms. (In the Ayenbite we find *thinen* and *hiren* in the dative case.)

Demonstrative and Relative Pronouns.

The nominative *þe* is seldom used in the Southern dialect after 1250, *þet* or *þat* being the ordinary relative in all dialects. Shoreham uses *þe* occasionally,¹ and many other *Southern* writers preserve the dative and accusative forms, *thane*, *than* (that), *whan*, *wan* (which, what), never employed by Northern writers.

EXAMPLES.

Therefore thys tale rymeth
 Hou men in senne beth,
 And hou senne ly-lymeth
Than that to senne hym deth.

(*Shoreham's Poems*, p. 104.)

To wyte (know) *thane* wat God haȝt (= hot = bids)
 Is eche man wel y-halde (bound).—(*Ibid.* p. 91.)

And ȝet for al *þan* bi is daie, thoru hor luȝer mode
 Hii broȝte oure louerd Ihesu Crist to deȝe on the rode.

(*R. of Gl.*, Cotton MS. fol. 23 b.)

An hwanne heo habbeth me of-slahe,
 Heo hongeth me on heore hahe
 Thar ich a-schewelee pie an crewe
 From *than*, *the* thar is i-some.—(*Owl & N.* p. 55.)

The thridde condicion thet ssel by in elmesse is, thet me (one)
 ssel yeue largeliche *be than* (according to that) thet me heth huerof

¹ The sixte heste scheweth wel
 The sothe to al mankenne,
 The dede y-do in lechery
 Hys ryȝt a dedleche senne.
 And elles nere hyȝt nauȝt
 Forbode amange the hestes tenne;
The that seggeth hys nys nauȝt,
 So hare wyt is al to thenne.

(*Shoreham's Poems*, p. 99.)

the wyse zayth 'Yef to God be *than* thet he heth the y-yeue.'

(*Ayenbite*, p. 195.)

The ilke thet is zuo heze arise ine prosperite thengh in his herte verst to the dignete, efterward to his prosperité, efter *than* to his richesse efterward to his lostes thet his body heth, efter *than* to the greate vela3rede thet him vol3eth.—(*Ibid.* p. 24.)

The thridde werre thet the wrethvolle heth is to *than* thet byeth onder him, thet is, to his wyve and to his mayné.—(*Ibid.* p. 30.)

Hit is a perilous ziknesse thet ne may na3t tholye thet me him take, and to *than* thet alle medicines went in to venim.—(*Ibid.* p. 22.)

Nou ich the habbe ssortliche yssewed huyche byeth the lyttle guodes and the midel guodes ; nou ich the wylle ssewy huet ys the zothe guod ari3t, thet maketh *than* thet hise heth guod ; and wythoute ham non ne wes nevre ari3t guod.—(*Ibid.* p. 79.)

Saynt Ion ase we habbeth yzed toparteth zeue overcomeingges and zeue crounes, thet is to zigge, zeue maneres of medes thet God behat to *than* thet ouercometh.—(*Ibid.* p. 170.)

Two kuynden he (Crist) haþ, we witen bi þon
þat he is soþ God and soþ mon.—(*Castel of Love*, p. 60.)

Tho hule one wile hi bi-tho3te
And after *than* this word up-bro3te.

(*Owl & N.* p. 8.)

Telstu bi me the wurs for *than*
That ich bute anne craft ne kan.—(*Ibid.* p. 28.)

Ich not hu mai eni freo man
For hire sechen after *than*
3ef he biweneth bi *huan* he lai
Al mai the luve gan awai.—(*Ibid.* p. 52.)

Ac after *than* the he haved idon . he scal ther beon idemed.
Blithe mai he thanne buen . the god haved iquemed.

(*Moral Ode*, p. 27.)

Efterward thench hou vele3ithe thou hest yby onbo3sam to thine

vader and to thine moder and to *than* to huam thou ssoldest bouze and bere honoure.—(*Ayenbite*, p. 21.)

This zenne [of prede] is ybounde ine *than* thet be his ojene mouthe him yelpth other of his wytte, other of his kenne, other of his workes, other of his prouesse, &c.—(*Ibid.* p. 22.)

An sum sot mon hit tithth thar-to

Mid alle *than* that he mai do.—(*Owl & N.* p. 49.)

Wostu to *than* man was ibore

To thare blisse of hovenne-riche.—(*Ibid.* p. 25.)

Evre-ile man mid *than* the he haved mai biggen heuene-riche.

(*Moral Ode*, p. 24.)

. . bi *than* 3e wite than ende.

(*Lives of Saints*, p. 72.)

Anon so hi seze the monekes come, hi gonne to singe ymone,

A3en hem with gret melodie, as hit were for *than* one.

(*St Brandan*, p. 17.)

This holi man makede loudere song as hit for *than* one were.

(*Ibid.* p. 21.)

Thyse byeth the tuelf articles of the Cristene Byleve thet ech man Cristen ssel yleve stedevestliche (vor otherlaker he ne may by ybor3e) huanne he heth wyt and scele ; and ther-of byeth tuelf by the tale of the tuelf Apostles thet hise zette to hyealde and to loky to alle *thon*¹ thet wyleth by ybore.—(*Ayenbite*, p. 11.)

The vifte article zuo is, thet ha wente into helle efter his dyathe vor to draze thannes and to delivri the zaules of the holi vaderes and of alle *thon* thet vram the gininng wordle storve in zoth and guode byleave, and ine hope thet hi ssolden by ybor3e.—(*Ibid.* p. 12.)

And thet he is ase the ymaymed ate porche of the cherche thet ne heth none ssame vor to sseawy alle his maimes to alle *thon* thet ther guoth vor thet me ssolde habbe of him pite.—(*Ibid.* p. 135.)

He naveth bute one woning

That his bischopen muchel schome,

¹ *þon* is plural.

An alle *than* that of his nome
 Habbeth i-hert and of his dede.—(*Owl & N.* p. 61.)

The stone upe *whan* ich sitte that maketh me sitte above
 In a wei ich him fond ligge, ther no neod nas to ston.

(*St Brandan*, p. 27.)

Icholle the make of this lond kyng thou salt yse
 & this lond al be thin : & the othre bruteine be
 Vor honour of bruteyne to *wan* thou addest kunde.

(*R. of Gl.* fol. 34.)

Ac *a3en* somer the emperour tho he adde al an honde
 Wende hom towarde Rome and mid gret love
 Nom with him the erl of Kent thoru *wane* he was above.

(*Ibid.* fol. 23.)

He let at Rome an stronge dich make al aboute
 & deop *a3en* Constantin & *a3en* is route
 Vor to holde hom ther, thoru *wanne* hii come with oute.

(*Ibid.* fol. 31 b.)

Tho adde he al is wille vor *wanne* it was al ido.

(*Ibid.* fol. 38.)

This were lo ure faderes of *wan* we beth *suththe* ycome
 That with such treyson abbeth this lond thus ynome.

(*Ibid.* fol. 42 b.)

Hwat sculle we beren biforen us.
 mid *wan* sculle we him iquemen.

(*Moral Ode*, p. 25, l. 48.)

To *wan* were hi i-borene
 The sculle ben to dethe idemd & evre mo forlorene.

(*Ibid.* p. 25, l. 53.)

Ac heo nas no3t ahwar : to *whan* hire hurte drou3.

(*Seinte Margarete*, p. 25.)

By ry3te toknyngge thou ert the hel
 Of *wan* spellede Danyel.
 Thou ert Emaus, the ryche castel,

Thar resteth alle werye ;
 Ine the restede Emanuel,
 Of *wany*¹ speketh Ysaye.—(*Shoreham*, p. 133.)

Seint Dunstan com hom azen ; & faire was underfonge
 Ladde his abbey al in pees, fram *whan* he was so longe.
 (*Lives of Saints*, p. 37.)

We scolden alle us bi-thenche oft and wel ilome
 hwet we beth and to *than* we sculle & of *wan* we come.
 (*Moral Ode*, p. 32.)

VERBS.

Present Tense, Indicative Mood.

For the various dialectical forms in the present tense of the Indicative Mood, the reader is referred to *Early Eng. Allit. Poems*, Introduction, pp. xx-xxi.; *Genesis and Exodus*, Introduction, pp. xvii., xxvii.

Third Person Singular in -th.

Jennings, in his *Observations on the Dialects of the West of England*, notices the fondness for the inflexion *-th* (not *-eth*), instead of *-es*, in the 3rd per. sing. indic. This may be illustrated in the following passage from the *Song of Solomon* in the *Devonshire* version :

A *com'th* jumpin upon the mountains. He *stan'th* behaine our woll. He *leuk'th* voäth vrem the kezment an' *show'th* his zel ta th' lattice.—(Ch. ii. 8, 9.)

In the Southern dialect of the Early Eng. period we find the same fondness for the inflexion *-th*. In many cases it distinguishes the singular from the plural, as *pinkþ* = appears, *pinkeþ* = appear.

Ac thanne he (the dronke) heth yslepe, and *comth* to him zelue thanne he *yvelth* his kuead and *kenauth* his folye and him playneth² of his harm.

Aten ende the zenezere, ase zayth Salamon is ase the ilke thet *slepth* amide the ze and thet ssip *spilth* and he ne naȝt hit ne *velth* ne none drede ne heth.—(*Ayenbite*, p. 128.)

¹ For *wane* ?² *Playneth* has *playny* for the infinitive, and therefore does not suffer contradiction ; its plural would be *playnieth*.

Preterite Tense, Singular Number, Indicative Mood.

The preterite tense¹ (first and third persons singular) of *regular* verbs terminates in *-de*, as *lovede*, *hopede*, &c. There is no final *-e* in the singular of *irregular* verbs, e. g. *slow* (= slew), *smot* (= smote). In Northern writers we often meet with such forms as *sloghe* (slew), *smate* (smote), which in the Southern dialect would be considered as *plurals*.

Second Person Singular, Preterite Indicative of Irregular Verbs.

In the oldest English or A.S. period the second person of irregular verbs ended in *-e*, as *heólde* = heldest, *dróge* = drewest. Those that change the vowel of the preterite plural, admit of vowel change in the 2nd pers. sing., as *bunde* (boundest), *drife* (drovest), *clúfe* (cleavedst or clovest).

The Southern dialect of the Early English period has numerous examples of this final *-e* in the 2nd pers. sing., but it is exceedingly rare in Northern writers. Dr Guest has already pointed out that the author of the *Ormulum* exhibits a tendency to omit this *-e*, as *badd* = baddest.

Enes thu *sunge*, ic wod wel ware
 Bi one boure, and woldest lere
 The lefti to an uvel lue
 An sunge bothe loze and buve
 An lerdest hi to don shome.—(*Owl & N.* p. 36.)

Thar-to þou *stele* in a day
 And leidest thar-on thy fole ey.—(*Ibid.* p. 104.)

Slowe thu the holi prophete : to wrothere hele dudestu so.
 (*Pilate*, p. 116.)

Ihesu for loue thou *stehe* on rode,
 For loue thou *seze* thin heorte blod.
 (*Lyric Poems*, p. 69.)

Thu *zeue* us weole and wunne
 Thu brohtest dai, and Eve nigt.
 (*Relig. Songs*, p. 65.)

¹ It is thus distinguished from the past participle which ends in *-ed*.

Ich wille speke toward the
 Also thu *speke* toward me.—(*Owl & N.* p. 20.)
 And levedy, the was-wel wors,
 Tho (when) that thou *seze* in dede
 Thy leue childe reulyche y-nome
 And ase a thef forthe lede.

(*Shoreham's Poems*, p. 83.)

Preterite Tense, Plural Number, Indicative Mood of Regular Verbs.

The plural of the preterite in the Southern and Midland dialects terminates in *-en*.¹

The *-n* is, however, frequently dropped, as in the following examples :—

& alle the men that hii *founde* hii *slowe* as hii *come*.

(*R. of Gl.* fol. 34.)

And the peces *flowe* aboute

And *smyte* on this lithere men . wel harde to the grounde.

(*St Katherine*, p. 96.)

Hi *nome* ken hokes of ire : and hire flesche to-gnowe.—(*Ibid.*)

In norþhumberland hi bigonne & ther hi *sloze* to grounde.

(*Ibid.* p. 87.)

& hi *seze* hire (the cou) sitte a dai in the valeye ther-doune.

(*St Kenelm*, p. 54.)

Vowel change in the Plural Preterite of Irregular Verbs.

The Southern dialect, as in the older stages of the language, changes the vowel of the preterite pl. of that class of verbs represented by *binden* (to bind), *driven* (to drive), *cleven* (to cleave), in which the vowel of the pret. pl. is the same as the past participle. The Northern dialect does not furnish us with any examples of this vowel change.

And (hi) yeueth ham to *sterue* vor the loue of him (Crist) thet

¹ The Northern dialect has *no* inflexion in the sing. or pl. pret.

starf vor ham, other ine the londe beyende the ze other ine anothre stede.—(*Ayenbite*, p. 165.)

Ha wente into helle . . . to delivri the zaules of the holi vaders and of alle thon thet vram the giningge of the wordle *storve* in zoth and guode byleaue, &c.—(*Ibid.* p. 12.)

Alle hi *storuen* in zorþe ine the desert.—(*Ibid.* p. 67.)

And hor either aþen other gaderede hor ost vaste

So that hii come and *smite* an bataile atte laste.

(*R. of Gloucester*, *Cott. MS.*, *Calig. A xi*, fol. 29.)

For meni men *þyve* oure louerd god : that were of gode thoþt
To susteynie his apostles.—(*Judas Iscariot*, p. 110.)

Preterite forms of Regular Verbs peculiar to the Southern dialect.

1. Some few verbs in the Southern (and in some of the Midland dialects) ending in *-che* or *-ge* often make their preterites and past participles in *-nte* (*-nde*) and *-nt* (*-nd*).

Inf.	Pret.	Past Part.
clenche (fasten)	{ cleinte clente	icleint iclent
drenche (drown)	dreynte	idreynt
menge (mix)	{ meinde meynde	imeind imeynd
quenche (quench)	queynte	iqueynt
senge (sing, toast)	seinde	iseind
sinke (sink)	seinte	iseint
springe (sprinkle)	{ spreynthe spreynthe	ispreynt ispreynd

2. The preterites of such verbs as *drede*, *lede*, *sprede*, &c., were in the Northern dialect *dredde*, *ledde*, *spredde*, forms which are also found in the Southern idioms, but in the latter dialects we often find a change of vowel, as

Inf.	Pret.	Past Part.
clothe }		
clethe }	cladde	iclad
drede (dread)	dradde	idrad
grede (cry)	gradde	igrad

Inf.	Pret.	Past Part.
lede (lead)	ladde	ilad
leve (leave)	laftte	ilaft
reve (bercave)	rafte	irafte
schede (shed)	schadde	ischad
sprede (spread)	spradde	isprad
swelte (die)	swalte	iswalt
threte (threaten)	thratte	ithrat

Infinitive Mood in -en ; Gerund in -enne or -ene.

The Northern dialect drops the *-en*¹ of the infinitive, which is retained by the Southern and Midland dialects. The *-n* is mostly dropped, and the final *-e* strongly sounded represents the older inflexion *-an*, as *kreope*, to creep, *yeue*, to give.²

The gerundial infinitive in *-enne* or *-ene* (originally in *-anne* or *enne*) survived as late as 1340. It more often takes the inflexion *-e* of the infinitive.³

Ich ne loky nazt þet belongeþ þe to *nimene* ac me to *yeue*.

(*Ayenbite*, p. 195.)

He ous yefþ his blod to drinke and his vless to *etene*.

(*Ibid.* p. 146.)

The inflexion *-enne* of the gerundial infinitive being pronounced very much like the present participle in *-inde* or *-ende*, is very often confounded with it, and before the date at which *Lazamon's Brut* was written we find the participle in *-inde* or *-ende* doing duty as the gerund ; thus, *to helpinde* = *to helpenne*, to help.

When the *-inde* or *-ende* became *-inge* or *-ing* the mistake still held its ground, as we find late in the xivth century such forms as *to keypyng* = *to kepene* = to keep, &c.

¹ In the Northern dialect we meet with many verbs ending in *-en*, but they are not to be regarded as infinitives, but rather the earliest examples of such forms as *lighten*, *darken* (= to make light, to make dark), &c.

² This full form *-en* is frequently used by poetical writers as a convenient rhyming syllable.

³ What some writers have called the long forms of the infinitive used by Chaucer, as *to done*, *to slane*, are in reality gerundial infinitives.

Damascus ys to *menyng* schedyng blod.

(*Trevisa*, 1387 *Cotton MS.*, *Tib. D vii*, fol. 9 a.)

Hy (they) —tauhte ham to *hontyng* and to *schetyng*.

(*Ibid.* fol. 15 a.)

Also he hadde sum tyme yuonge to *kepyng* his douzter of Frauns, vor a scholde marye here to his sone.—(*Ibid.* fol. 272 a.)

Jues men wonede under þe hulles of Jude . . . and wente (turned) to *robbyng* & *reuynge*.—(*Ibid.* fol. 281 b.)

Infinitives in -ie or -y.

Infinitives in *-ie*, *-ye*, or *-y*¹ (from older forms in *i-an*), are exceedingly common in the Southern dialect as late as 1387. No trace whatever of this inflexion is to be found in any Northern work, and though met with in the West Midland are of rare occurrence in the East Midland dialect of the xivth century. They are still retained in some of the modern dialects of the South of England.²

“Chell *whistley* and zing and *capery* vor oll yow cheesen.”

(*Exmoor dialect.*)

Present Participles.

The present participle in the Southern dialect terminates in *-inde*. in the Northern in *-ande* (*-and*): as Southern *lovinde*, Northern *lovande* (*lovand*).

As early as the beginning of the xivth century we find a tendency in some of the Southern and Midland dialects to use the form in *-inge* (*-ing*) instead of *-inde* or *ende*.³

In Trevisa's translation of Higden's Polychronicon, written 1387 (*Cotton MS.*, *Tib. D vii*), there are no examples of participles in *-ende*; all end in *-inge* or *ing*.

In the Northern dialect the *-and* was employed as late as the xviith century.

¹ Many verbs adopted from the Romance dialects took this inflexion, as *chasty* = chastise; *crouny*, to crown; *sovy*, to save, &c.

² Dr Barnes has shown that they still exist in Dorsetshire, as *mowy*, to mow; *zawy*, to sow.

³ *-end* is a Midland form, and is frequently used by Gower; *-ande* (*-and*) was adopted in some of the Midland dialects, and is most frequently employed by East and West Midland writers. The participial form in *-ing* is no doubt a corruption

Past Participles.

1. In the Southern dialect up to a very late period the *i-* or *y-* (A.S. *ge*) was retained as the prefix of the past participle: as *idemd*, judged; *ihote*, called.

No instances of this prefixal element is to be found in any Northern writers. In Midland works with Northern tendencies, like the *Ormulum*, the *i-* is frequently dropped.

The modern Southern dialects have corrupted this prefix into *a*, as *ayete* = eaten; *abroke*, broken.

2. Past Participles of Strong or Irregular Verbs originally ended in *-en*: as *ibroken*, broke; *icorven*, cut; *ifaren*, gone. Southern writers frequently omit the *-n*, as in the following passages.²

þe tyding to þe contasse sone was *ycome*,

þat hire louerd was aslawe & þe castel *ynome*.

(R. of G., Cotton MS., Calig., A xl, fol. 51 a.)

ycome = *ycomen* (comê); *ynome* = *ynomen* (taken).

But when the participle is used adjectivally in the plural, the full form is often retained, as *yboundene* (bound), *ybrokene* (broken).

Northern writers *never* omit the *-n*, and instead of *ycome*, *ynome*, &c., write *comen*, *nomen*, &c.

Negative Verbal Forms.

The Northern dialect makes but little use of negative forms, which are very common in Southern writers.

nam, am not; *nis*, is not.

nes, was not; *nere*, were not.

of *-inde*, and not of *-ende* or *-ande*. As before observed, there is good evidence for supposing that the sounds of *-inde* and *-inge* (and *-en*; see *G. nesis* and *Exodus*, p. xxxviii.) were closely related; in fact, we find *kervynge* (= *kervinde* = cutting) rhyming with *fynde*.

“He hath in his front strong,

An horn foure feet long,

So as Y in bokes *fynde*

No rasour is so *kervynge*.”—(*K. Alys.*, ll. 6551-2.)

¹ This *y* or *i* is frequently found: 1. in other parts of the verb, as *yleve*, to believe; *yknauþ*, knows (*Ayenbite*). 2. In nouns, as *y-flon*, arrows; *yvon*, foes; *ibede* (prayers). 3. In adjectives, as *yredy*, ready; *ywer*, wary (*Ayenbite*). 4. In adverbs, as *ylome*, frequently; *ymene* (in common).

² All Trevisa's past participles of strong verbs end in *-e*.

nabbe, have not ; *neth*, hath not.
nade, had not ; *not*, knows not.
nost, knowest not ; *nuste*, knew not.
nille, *nile*, will not.

Verbal prefixes peculiar to the Southern dialect.

1. *An* (*a*), as *anginne* (*anginne*), to begin. *Angrise* (*agrise*), to terrify. *Anhete*, to inflame, kindle. *Anhitte*, to strike. *Anhonge*, to hang. *Anlikny*, to compare.¹

2. *Of* : (*a*) for (negative), *ofpinche* = for think, repent ; *of-guo* = forgo ; *of-holde*, withhold.² (*b*) for, as in *ofseche*, seek for ; *ofsende*, send for.

3. *At* (A.S. *æt*), as *at-berste*, burst from ; *at-wite*, English *at-wit*, reproach ;³ *at-route*, to advance.

Adverbs.

The Southern dialect retains numerous adverbial forms unknown to the Northern speech.

1. Adverbs in *-e* : as (*a*) *longe* (for a long time) ; *unrizte*, wickedly (*b*) *ene*, *twie*, *thrie*⁴ (Northern *anes*, *twies*, *thries*⁵) = Semi-Saxon *enen*, *tweien*, *thrien*, A.S. *ænð*, *twiwa*, *thrywa*. (*c*) *henne*, hence ; *thenne*, thence ; *whenne*, whence ; = *hennene* (*heonene*, *heonnen*) ; *whanene* (*whannen*, *wannen*) ; *thanene* (*thennen*) = A.S. *heon-an*, *thanon*, *hwanon*.⁶

2. Adverbs in *-es*, as *alles*, altogether ; *willes*, willingly ; *thonkes*, willingly (as his *thonkes* = he being willing) ; *unthonkes*, unwillingly.

3. Adverbs in *-en*, *ferren*, *selden*, *whilen* (= also *ferre*, *selde*, *while*). The Northern forms end in *-um* or *-om*, as *ferrum*, *seldum*, *whilom*.

¹ In the Southern dialect, such verbs as *ago*, *awake*, *arise*, are exceedingly common, but scarcely ever occur in any Northern works.

² *of-serve* occurs in Southern writers for *deserve*.

³ Chaucer uses *at-renne* and *at-rede* (to run from, out-run ; get rid of, out-wit).

⁴ *neode*, *nede*, occurs for *nedes* = *needs*, of necessity.

⁵ These forms are not unknown to the Southern dialect.

⁶ Towards the middle of the 14th century these forms became *hennes*, *thennes*, *whennes* (*whannes*). The corresponding Northern forms are *hethen*, *thethen*, *whethen* (*quethen*).

4. Adverbs in *-wat*, as *alwat*, *alhuet*, until, *neiwat*, nearly.¹
5. *Ac* (but); *ek* (also); *so—so* (as—as); *forte* (*for to*), until.²
6. Dropping of *e*, as *a3e*, *aye*, again; *siththe*, *seththe*, since, afterwards.

Prepositions.

The following forms are peculiar to the Southern dialect.

1. *An*,³ on, in (before a vowel); *a* (before a consonant): *e. g.* *An erpe*, in earth; *an-ende*, lastly; *an-he3*, on high; *a-lyve*, alive; *a-slepe*, asleep.⁴

The Northern dialect prefixes *on*: as *on-live*, alive; *on-loft*, aloft; *on-slepe*, asleep; *on-slante*, aslant, &c.

The preference for *on* explains the curious Northern forms, *obove* (above); *omang* (among); *olike* (alike); *onan* (anon).

2. *Fram*, from (Northern *fra*; Midland *fro*).

3. *Mid*, *mide* (Northern *with*).

4. *Toppe* (Kentish), above.⁵

¹ *-gate*, as in *algate* (algates), *thusgate*, *swagate*, is unknown to the Southern dialect.

² *Sum*, as; *warne*, unless; *utwith*, without; *inwith*, with; *forwith*, before, are not used by Southern writers.

³ *An* is used by Southern writers as a separate word, as well as a prefix. It is still known in Sussex, where the peasants say, "Put your hat *an*."

⁴ The *a* is still preserved in *anon* = in one (minute), *a-hunting*, *a-building*, &c.

⁵ *at* = to; *til*, to, are not found in the Southern dialect.

SUMMARY OF DIFFERENCES
BETWEEN
NORTHERN AND SOUTHERN DIALECTS
A.D. 1250—1340.

I. ORTHOGRAPHICAL DIFFERENCES.

SOUTHERN.	NORTHERN.	PAGE
<i>Hw, Wh</i>	<i>Qw, Qu</i>	Specimens of E. English, p. xvi.
Ch	K	i
V	F	ii
Z	S	iii
O	A	iv
E	A	iv-v
U (or E)	I	vi
Eo (Ie, Ue)	E	viii
Ea (Ya, Ye)	E or A	ix
Uo	O	x

II. GRAMMATICAL DIFFERENCES.

SOUTHERN.	NORTHERN.	PAGE
Large number of plurals in <i>-en</i> (<i>-n</i>)	Very few plurals in <i>-en</i> (<i>-en</i>)	x
Unknown	<i>Brether, childer, ky,</i> <i>hend</i>	xv
Plurals in <i>-ren</i>	Unknown	xv
Plurals in <i>-e</i>	Unknown	xv
Genitive singular of feminine nouns in <i>-e</i>	Unknown	xxv
Genitive plural of nouns in <i>-ene</i> and <i>-e</i>	Unknown	xxx
Adjectives retain many of the older inflexions	Adjectives drop all the older inflexions, ex- cept <i>alder</i> and <i>bather</i>	xxxvi
<i>þa, þo</i> (fem.), the	Unknown	xl
<i>þes</i> (masc.), <i>þeos, þues</i> (fem.), this	Unknown	xlili
<i>Beye</i> , both, gen. pl. <i>beire</i>	Unknown	xl

SOUTHERN.	NORTHERN.	PAGE
<i>þat</i> , <i>þet</i> , neuter of the article	<i>þat</i> , a demonstrative pronoun	xl
<i>Atten</i> , <i>Attan</i> , <i>Atte</i> (masc.)	Unknown	xl
<i>Atter</i> (fem.), at the	Unknown	xl
Unknown	<i>þer</i> , <i>þir</i> , <i>þere</i> , their	xlvi
Unknown	<i>þas</i> (those)	xlvi
Unknown	<i>Stik</i> (<i>sic</i>), such	xlvi
<i>Ich</i> , <i>Uch</i> , I	Unknown. <i>Ik</i> and <i>I</i> used instead	xlvi
<i>A</i> , <i>Ha</i> , he	Unknown	xlviii, xlix
<i>Hi</i> , <i>He</i> , <i>Heo</i> , <i>Hue</i> , she	Unknown. <i>Seo</i> , <i>scho</i> , <i>sho</i> , used instead	li
<i>Hine</i> (acc.), him	Unknown	li
<i>Hi</i> , <i>Hii</i> , <i>Heo</i> , <i>Hue</i> , they	Unknown. <i>þa</i> , <i>þay</i> , used instead	li
<i>Heo</i> , <i>Here</i> , <i>Hire</i> , <i>Hor</i> , <i>Heore</i> , <i>Huere</i> , their	Unknown. <i>þair</i> , <i>þar</i> , used instead	li
<i>Hem</i> , <i>Hom</i> , <i>Ham</i> , <i>Heom</i> , <i>Huem</i>	Unknown. <i>þam</i> , <i>þaim</i> , used instead	li
<i>His</i> , <i>Hise</i> , <i>Is</i> , them	Unknown	liii
<i>His</i> , <i>Is</i> (acc.), her	Unknown	liii
<i>Ure</i> (<i>Oure</i>), <i>cower</i> (<i>yowre</i>), <i>here</i> (<i>hire</i>), ours, yours, theirs	Unknown. <i>Urs</i> , <i>yhoures</i> , <i>þaires</i> (<i>þairs</i>), used instead	liv-v
<i>Wan</i> (which)	Unknown	lviii
- <i>ep</i> in all persons of the pl. pres. indic.	- <i>es</i> in all persons of the pl. pres. indic.	lix
- <i>e</i> , - <i>est</i> , - <i>ep</i> (- <i>þ</i>), the inflexion of the sing. pres. indic.	- <i>es</i> in all persons of the sing. pres. indic.	See Early Eng. Allit. Poems, pp. xx, xxi
- <i>ede</i> , - <i>edest</i> , - <i>ede</i> , the inflexion of the sing. past indic. of regular or weak verbs	No inflexion in the sing. past indic. of strong verbs	See Ibid.
- <i>e</i> , the ending of the 2nd pers. past of irregular or strong verbs	No inflexion in the 2nd sing. past indic. of irregular verbs	lx
Change of vowel in pret. pl. of strong verbs	Unknown	lxi
Infinitives in - <i>en</i> , - <i>e</i>	Infinitive ending dropped	lxiii
Gerundial Infinitives in - <i>ene</i>	" "	lxiv
Gerundial Infinitives in - <i>ing</i>	" "	lxiv

SOUTHERN.	NORTHERN.	PAGE
Infinitives in <i>y</i> or <i>ei</i>	Infinitive ending dropped	lxiv
<i>-inde</i> or <i>(-inge)</i> the ending of the present participle	<i>-ande</i> (<i>-and</i>), the ending of the present participle	lxiv
<i>y-</i> prefix of the past participle	<i>y-</i> omitted as the sign of the past participle	lxv
<i>-n</i> dropped in past participle	<i>-n</i> never dropped in past participles	
<i>Schal</i> (ssel), <i>ssolde</i> , <i>scholde</i>	<i>Sal</i> (shall), <i>suld</i> (should)	See Hampole's P. of Consc. p. xxiv.
<i>þarf</i> (need), <i>þerfte</i> , <i>þerste</i> (needed)	<i>þar</i> , <i>þer</i> , <i>þurt</i>	
<i>þonkes</i> , willing; <i>unþonkes</i> , unwilling	Unknown	lxvi
<i>Henne</i> , <i>þenne</i> , <i>hwanne</i> , hence, thence, whence	<i>Hepen</i> , <i>þepen</i> , <i>wheþen</i> , (<i>queþen</i>), used instead	lxvi
Unknown	<i>Mun</i> , <i>mon</i> (shall)	
Unknown	<i>Ha</i> (have), <i>ma</i> (make), <i>ta</i> (take)	See Hampole's P. of Consc. p. xxiv.
Adverbs in <i>-e</i> , as <i>ene</i> , <i>twie</i> , <i>thrie</i> , <i>neode</i> , <i>nede</i> , once, twice, thrice, needs	Unknown	lxvi
Adverbs with prefix <i>an-</i>	Unknown	lxvii
Unknown	<i>Sum</i> (as), <i>fra</i> (from), <i>tīl</i> (to), <i>at</i> (to, sign of infinitive), <i>at</i> (that), <i>warne</i> (unless)	lxvii
Unknown	Affixes, <i>-gate</i> , <i>-linges</i>	lxvii

III. LEXICOGRAPHICAL DIFFERENCES.

THE differences in the vocabularies of the Northern and Southern dialects may be discussed at a future period under the following heads :

I. Words peculiar to the *Southern* dialect, *e.g.*, *dene*, a dean, valley ; *more*, a root ; *zuol3*, a plough,¹ &c.

II. Words peculiar to the *Northern* dialect, *e.g.*, *brathe*, wrath ; *fel*, a hill ; *wil*, astray, &c.

III. Double forms, one of which is found in the Southern dialect and the other in the Northern, *e.g.*,

SOUTHERN.	NORTHERN.		SOUTHERN.	NORTHERN.
<i>ey</i>	<i>egg</i>		<i>woc, woke</i>	<i>wayke</i> (weake)
<i>snibbe</i>	<i>snaipe</i> ² (snub)		&c.	&c.

¹ *Plough* does not occur in A.S. writers ; and Southern authors of the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries employ it only in compound terms, as *plow-land*, &c.

² *Snaipe* and *wayke* are evidently Norse forms.

OUTLINES OF KENTISH GRAMMAR.

(A.D. 1327—1340.)

NOUNS.

1. *Gender.* The genders of Nouns are the same as in the older stages of the language.

2. *Declension.* Nouns may be divided into four declensions.

DIVISION I.

Nouns of the *n* declension, containing masculine, feminine, and neuter substantives ending in *-en* or *-e* (originally in *-a* or *-e*) and forming the plural in *-en* (originally in *-an*).

DIVISION II.

Class i. Nouns (originally feminine) ending in a consonant and forming the plural in *-en* (originally in *-a*).

Class ii. Nouns (originally feminine) ending in *-e* (originally in *-u*) and forming the plural in *-en* (originally in *-a*).

DIVISION III.

Class i. Nouns (originally neuter) ending in a consonant and having the singular and plural alike.

Class ii. Nouns (originally neuter) ending in a vowel (originally in *-w*, *-e*, or *-u*), together with some few ending in a consonant and forming the plural in *-en* (originally in *-u*).

DIVISION IV.

Class i. Nouns (originally masculine) ending in a consonant and forming the plural in *-es* (originally in *-as*).

Class ii. Nouns (originally masculine) ending in a vowel and forming the plural in *-en* (originally in *-u*).

DIVISION I.

	E.E.		SINGULAR.
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	Sterre (star),	tonge (tongue),	e3e (eye).
Gen.	Sterre,	tonge,	e3e.
Dat.	} Sterre,	tonge,	e3e.
Acc.			

E.E.		PLURAL.
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
		<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	} Sterren,	tongen,
Acc.		
Gen.	Sterrene,	tongene,
Dat.	Sterren,	sterren,
		e3en.
		e3ene.
		e3en.

In like manner are declined :—*bee*, pl. *been*; *chirche*, pl. *chirchen*; *eare*, *ere* (ear), pl. *earen*, *eren*; *flo* (arrow), pl. *flon*; *fo* (enemy), pl. *fon*; *gome*, *gune* (man), pl. *gomen*; *to* (toe), pl. *ton*; *wise* (manner), pl. *wisen*; *woke*, *wuke* (week), pl. *woken*.

DIVISION II.—CLASS I.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
Nom.	Zauel (soul).	Nom. Zaulen.
Gen.	Zaule.	Gen. Zaulene.
Dat.	} Zaule.	Dat. } Zaulen.
Acc.		Acc. }

Thus are declined :—*ben* (prayer), pl. *benen*; *edder* (adder), pl. *eddren*; *zyn* (sin), pl. *zynnen*. *Ni3t* (night), *wi3t* (wight).

CLASS II.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
Nom.	Dore (door).	Nom. Doren.
Gen.	Dore.	Gen. Dorene.
Dat.	} Dore.	Dat. } Doren.
Acc.		Acc. }

To this declension belonged originally *cu*, *cou* (cow); pl. *kun*, *ken* (kine).

DIVISION III.—CLASS I.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom. and Acc.	Hors (horse).	Nom. and Acc.	Hors.
Gen.	Horses.	Gen.	Horse.
Dat.	Horse.	Dat.	Horse.

After the same manner are declined :—*hus* (house) ; *der* (deer) ; *bern* (child) ; *spel* (story) ; *ssep* (sheep) ; *wif* (woman, wife) ; *yer* (year).

CLASS II.

SINGULAR.

Nom. and Acc.	Ssip (ship),	{ traw } (tree).
		{ trow }
Gen.	Ssipes,	{ trowes,
		{ trauwes.
Dat. }	Ssipe,	{ trawe,
Acc. }		{ trowe.

PLURAL.

Nom. and Acc.	Ssipen,	{ trauwen,
		{ trowen,
		{ tren.
Gen.	{ Ssipene, }	{ trauwene,
	{ Ssipe, }	{ trowene,
		{ trene.
Dat. }	Ssipen,	{ trauwen,
Acc. }		{ trouwen,
		{ tren.

In the same way are declined :—*dyevel* (devil) ; *vet* (vat) ; *heved*, *heaved* (head) ; *lim* (limb) ; *riche* (kingdom) ; *token* (sign) ; *sorwe* (sorrow) ; *wonder* (marvel) ; *werre* (war). *Calf*, *child*, *ey* (egg), *lamb*, form their plural in *-ren* (originally *-ru*), as—*Calvren* (A.S. *cealfru*) ; *children*, *childern* (A.S. *cildru*) ; *eyren* (A.S. *ægry*) ; *lambren* (A.S. *lambru*).

DIVISION IV.—CLASS I.

E.E.	SINGULAR.	E.E.	PLURAL.
Nom. and Acc.	Del (part).	Nom.	Deles.
Gen.	Deles.	Gen.	Delene.
Dat. }	Dele.	Dat. }	Deles.
Acc. }		Acc. }	

Thus also are declined:—*day*; *'engel* (angel); *veld* (field); *mouth* (mouth); *king*; *ston* (stone); *wey* (way). *Viend* (enemy), *vriend* (friend), are used as plurals, the older forms being *fynd* or *feónd*, *frynd* or *freónd*. *Winter* has the pl. *winter* and *winters*; *got*, *gayt* (goat), makes the pl. *geet*. *Vader* drops the *-es* in the genitive case.

CLASS II.

E.E.	SINGULAR.	E.E.	PLURAL.
Nom. and Acc.	Sone, Sune (son).	Nom.	Sonen, Sunen (Sune,
Gen.	Sone, Sune.		Sunes).
Dat. }	Sone, Sune.	Gen.	Sonene, Sunene.
Acc. }		Dat.	Sonen, Sunen.
		Acc.	Sone, Sune (Sonen).

In the same manner are declined:—*dozter* (daughter), pl. *doztren*; *moder* (mother), pl. *modren*; *rother* (ox), pl. *rotheren*; *zoster* (sister), pl. *zostren*. *Brother*, *moder*, *dozter*, are indeclinable in the genitive singular. *Brother* makes the plural *brothren*.

Case endings.—*a.* The dative singular of all the declensions is denoted by a final *e*. Words ending in *f* change it into *v* before adding *e*. Nom. *wyf*; Dat. *wyve*. Nouns having a short vowel before *d*, *t*, double these letters, as—Nom. *bed*; Dat. *bedde*.

b. The A.S. dative pl. *-um*, in some few cases, is denoted by *-e*; in the majority of instances it is the same as the nominative.

ADJECTIVES.

For declension of Adjectives see p. xxxvi.

PRONOUNS.

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

The personal pronouns are: *Ich* (I), *pou* (thou), *he* (he), *hi* (she), *hit* (it).

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
Nom.	Ich. ¹	þu, þou.	we.	ye.
Gen.	min, mi.	þin, þi.	oure.	youre.
Dat. }	me.	þe.	ous, us. you.	
Acc. }				

¹ This pronoun is still preserved in the South-Western dialects under the forms *Uch* and *Utchy*.

	E.E.		SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
	<i>Masc.</i>		<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>			
Nom.	{ a, ha, he,		{ hi, hy,	} hit.	Nom.	hi.	
Gen.	his,		hire,	his.	Gen.	{ hire, hare.	
Dat.	him,		{ hire, hare,	} him.	Dat.	ham.	
Acc.	{ hine, him,		{ hire, hi, his,	{ hit. it.	Acc.	hi, his, hise, ham.	

The personal pronouns are frequently used reflectively ; as, *Ich me reste*, I rest myself.

Self is declined like an adjective (in the oblique cases, *selve* sing. and pl.) ; so that we easily understand such forms as *Ich silf* = I myself ; *pu silf* = thou thyself ; (*Ich*) *me sylf* = I myself, where *self* is placed after the *dative* of the personal pronoun. Cp. Fr. *moi-même*, *lui-même*, &c.

II. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

The possessive pronouns are identical in form with the genitive case, e.g. *oure* = our, ours, of us ; *youre* = your, yours, of you ; *hare* = their, theirs, of them.

III. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	hua.	huet.
Gen.	huas.	huas.
Dat.	huam.	huam.
Acc.	huan, wan.	huet.

VERBS.

Moods.—There are four moods : Indicative, Subjunctive, imperative, and Infinitive. Besides the ordinary infinitive there is a gerund (used after *to*) ; infin. *comen*, to come ; ger. *to comene*. This distinction between the two forms is not always preserved.

Tenses.—Only two tenses are formed by inflection—the present and the past.

Participles.—The present participle ends in *-inde*; the past participle has the prefix *i-* or *y-* (unless the verb commences with one of the following prefixes : *a-*, *at-*, *bi-*, *be-*, *for-*, *vor-*, *of-*, *to-*, *un-*, *wip-*).

There are two conjugations of verbs, the Strong (or irregular), and the Weak (or regular).

I. WEAK VERBS.

CLASS I.

INFINITIVE MOOD—*Lovien*, *loven*, to love.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.		PRET.	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Lovie, love	Lovieth, loveth	1. Lovede	Loveden
2. Lovest	Lovieth, loveth	2. Lovedest	Loveden
3. Loveth	Lovieth, loveth	3. Lovede	Loveden

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.		PRET.	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Lovie, love	Lovien, loven	Lovede	Loveden

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. Love. *Plural.* (a.) Lovieþ, loveþ ; (b.) Lovie, love
(followed by the pronoun).

Gerund. To lovienne, lovene.

Pres. Part. Lovinde.

Past Part. I-loved, Y-loved.

Like *lovie*, to love, are conjugated *clepie*, to call ; *herie*, to praise ; *hopie*, to hope ; *makie*, to make ; *schunie*, to shun ; *tholie*, to suffer.

CLASS II.

INFINITIVE MOOD—*Hyere*, to hear.

PRESENT.		PRET.	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Hyere	Hyereþ	1. Hyerde	Hyerden
2. Hyerst	Hyereþ	2. Hyerdest	Hyerden
3. Hyerþ	Hyereþ	3. Hyerde	Hyerden

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.			
PRESENT.		PRET.	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Hyerē	Hyeren	Hyerde	Hyerden

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. Hyer. *Plural.* (a.) Hyereþ ; (b.) Hyere (followed by the pronoun).

Gerund. Hyerene.
 Pres. Part. Hyerinde.
 Past Part. Yhyerd.

1. In the 3rd pers. sing. indic. of verbs having *t* or *d* for the last syllable, *t* is often used for *-teth* or *-deth*, as *gret*, cries ; *let*, hinders ; *let*, leads ; *zent*, sends ; *went*, turns, &c.

2. If the root of the verb ends in *d* or *t* doubled, or preceded by another consonant, the *de* or *te* of the past tense, and *-d* or *-t* of the past participle, are omitted : e. g., *wende*, to turn ; pret. *wende*, pp. *wend* ; *lette*, to hinder ; pret. *lette*, pp. *ylet*.

The following verbs, among many others, belong to this class :—

INF.	PRET.	PAST PART.
Calle, to call	calde	ycald
Deme, to judge	demde	ydemd
Deppen, to dip	depte	ydept
Hede, to hide	hedde	yhed
Keþe, to show	kedde	yked
Lende, to lend	lende	ylend
Ssrede, to clothe	ssredde	yssred

Some verbs of this class have double forms for the preterite and past participle.

INF.	PRET.	PAST PART.
Cleþe, } to clothe	{ cledde	{ yclad
Cloþe, }	{ cladde	{ yceled
Dele, to deal	{ delte	{ ydelt
	{ dalte	{ ydalt
Grede, to cry	{ gredde	{ ygred
	{ gradde	{ ygrad

INF.	PRET.	PAST PART.
Rede, to advise	{ redde radde	yred yrad
Sprede, to spread	{ spreadde spradde	yspred sprad
Sweten, to sweat	{ swelte swalte	yswet yswat

Cacche (catch) and *techen* (teach) make the preterites *cazte* and *tazte*.

Habbe, to have, is thus conjugated :

Indic. Pres. Sing. 1. *habbe* ; 2. *hest* ; 3. *heþ*.

„ „ Pl. 1. *habbeþ* ; 2. *habbeþ* ; 3. *habbeþ*.

Indic. Pret. Sing. 1. *hedde* ; 2. *heddest* ; 3. *hedde*.

„ „ Pl. 1. 2. 3. *hedde* (*hedden*).

CLASS III.

INDICATIVE MOOD—*Tellen* (A.S. *tellan*), to tell.

PRESENT.		PRET.	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. <i>telle</i>	<i>telleþ</i>	1. <i>tealde</i>	<i>tealden</i>
2. <i>telst</i>	<i>telleþ</i>	2. <i>tealdest</i>	<i>tealden</i>
3. <i>telp</i>	<i>telleþ</i>	3. <i>tealde</i>	<i>tealden</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Sing. *telle* Plur. *tellen*

PRET.

Sing. *tealde* Plur. *tealden*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *telle*. Plur. (a.) *telleþ* ; (b.) *telle*.

Gerund. to *tellene*.
Pres. Part. *tellinde*.
Past Part. *y-teald, ytald*.

To this class belong the following verbs :

Begge, buy	bozte	ybozt
Brenge, bring	brozte	ybrozt

Seche, seek	soʒte	ysoʒt
Zelle, sell	{ zealde	yzeald
	{ zalde	yzald
Werchen, work	wroʒte	ywroʒt
þenchen, seem	þoʒte	yþoʒt

Zigge (*zegge*), to say, makes 2nd per. sing. pres. indic., *zayst* (*zeayst*); 3rd, *zayde* (*zeayde*).

Wille, will, makes pres. indic.

1. *wille* 2. *wilt* 3. *wile* (sing.)

1. 2. 3. *willeþ* (plural).

Preterite 1. *wolde* 2. *woldest* 3. *wolde* (sing.)

1. 2. 3. *wolden* or *wolde* (plural).

II. STRONG VERBS.

(No change of vowel in the preterite plural.)

Infinitive, *Healde*¹ (to hold).

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.		PRET.	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Healde	Healdeþ	1. Hield } Hild }	Hielden
2. Healdest (Halst)	Healdeþ	2. Hielde	Hielden
3. Halt	Healdeþ	3. Hield	Hielden

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.		PRET.	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Healde	Healden (Healde)	Hielde	Hielden (Hielde)

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. Heald. Plural. (a.) Healdeþ ; (b.) Healde.

Gerund. Healdene.

Prest Part. Healdinde.

Past Part. } Yhealde.
 } Yhyealde.

Verbs of this division fall under three classes :

¹ Also written *Hyealde*.

CLASS I.

PRESENT.	PRET.	PAST PART.
(a.) Bere, bear	ber	ybore
Bidden, bid, ask	bed	yboden
Bihote, promise	bihet	bihote
Breke, break	brec	ybroken
Ete, eat	et	yyete (= y-yeate)
Fonge, take	veng	yvonge
Voryete, forget	voryet	voryete
Zitte (sit)	{ zet } { zat }	izete
Speke (speak)	spek	yspeke
Wreke (thrust out)	wrek	{ ywreke ywroke }
(b.) Come	com	ycome
Neme, take	nom	ynome

CLASS II.

Bete, beat	byet	ybyeten
Cnowe, know	kneu	yknowe
Valle, fall	vil	yvalle
Lhepe, leap	{ hliep } { hlip }	yhlope ¹

CLASS III.

Dra3e, draw	dro3	idra3e
Vare, go	vor	ivare
Hle3e, laugh	hlo3	ihlo3e
Vorzake, forsake	vorzoc	vorzake
Slea, sle, slay	slo3	isla3e
Ssape, create	ssop	issape
Stonde, stand	stod	ystonde

DIVISION II.

(Change of vowel in pret. plural.)

Infinitive. Binde, to bind ; Drive, to drive.

¹ Does not occur.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.		PRET.	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Binde, Drive	Bindeþ, Driveþ	1. Bond, Drof	Bounden ¹ Driven
2. Binst, Drifst		2. Bounde, ¹ Drive	
3. Bint, Driþþ		3. Bond, Drof	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.		PRET.	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Binde, Drive.	Bounden, Driven	Bounde, Drive.	Bounden, Driven

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. Bind, Drif.	Plural. (a.) Bindeþ, Driveþ ; (b.) Binde, Drive.
Gerund.	Bindene, Drivene.
Present Part.	Bindinde, Drivinde.
Past Part.	Ybounde, Ydrive.

The following verbs belong to this division :

CLASS I.

PRESENT.	PRET.	PAST PART.
(a.) Binde, bind	bond	ybounde
Beginne, begin	bigon	bigonne
Delve, dig	dalf	ydolve
Drinke, drink	dronk	ydronke
Yerne, (= eorne)	{ orn yarn }	y yerne (= iurne)
Vinde, find	{ vond vand }	yvounde
Vizte, fight	vozt	yvozte
Helpe, help	halp	yholpe
Zinge, sing	{ zang zong }	izonge
(b.) Berze, protect	borz	yborze
Kerve, cut	carf	ycorve
Sterve, starve, die	starf	ystorve
Yelpe, boast	yalp	yyolpe

¹ The older forms are: 2nd sing. *bunde* ; 1. 2. 3. pl. *bunden* ; *zinge*, to sing, makes 2nd pers. pret. *zunge* ; 1. 2. 3. pl. *zungen*.

CLASS II.

PRESENT.	PRET.	PAST PART.
Abide	abod	abide
Rise	ros	yrise
Ssrive, shriue	ssrof	yssrive
Smite	smot	ysmite
Strive	strof	ystrive
Write	wrot	ywrite

CLASS III.

Bede, offer	byead (= bead)	ybode
Chyese, choose	cheas	ychose
Cyepe, creep	creap	ycrope
Vly, flee, fly	vlea3	yvlo3e
Lyese, lose	{ lyeas } { leas }	ylore
Schete, shoot	{ ssat } { sseat }	yssote
Lute, } bow	leat	ylote
Lote, }		
Le3en, lie	le3	{ ilo3en ilowen }
Ssete, shut	sset	issete
Zi, see	ze3	{ iso3e ize3e }
Sethen, seethe, boil	seath	isode
Bugen, } bow	bea3	{ ibo3en ibowen }
Buwen, }		
Lute, } bow	leat	ilote
Lote, }		
Loken, lock	leac	iloke
Stigen, } ascend	stea3	istize
Stizen, }		

General Remarks on the Strong (or Irregular) Conjugation.

1. If the base of a verb ends in *-e* or *-ie* the *-e* or *-ie* is the *-e* of the inflexions in the present indicative and imperative, as *vleþ* = flees ; *zeþ* = sees.

2. Verbs having *-d* or *-t* as the final letter of the root-syllable, take *-t* instead of *-deþ* or *-teþ*, as the personal inflexion, as *bint* = bindeth, binds ; *grint* = grindeth, grinds ; *halt* = holdeth, holds ; *rit* = rideth, rides ; *stont*, *stent* = standeth, stands.

3. The 2nd and 3rd pers. are frequently contracted thus : *est* = eatest ; *binst* = bindest ; *drinkþ* = drinks ; *drifþ* = drives.

4. Verbs whose base originally terminated in *g* often retain it under the form *;* in the 2nd and 3rd pers. sing. indic. : as *drazen*, to draw ; *drazst*, drawest ; *drazþ*, draws ; *vli*, to fly ; *vli3st*, fliest ; *vli3þ*, flies ; *wri*, to cover ; *wri3þ*, covers.

5. In some verbs the vowel is changed in the 3rd sing. pres. indic., as *healden*, to hold ; *halt*, holds ; *hoten*, to command ; *hat*, commands ; *stonden*, to stand ; *stant*, stands.

ANOMALOUS VERBS.

1. *O3en*, *owen*, to own ; 1st and 3rd sing. pres. indic. *o3* ; *o3en* ; pret. *o3te*.

2. *Am* is the 1st pers. sing. of the old infinitive *wesan*, to be. The other persons are as follows :—2nd pers. pres. indic. *art* ; 3rd, *is* ; pret. 1st, *wes* ; 2nd, *were* ; pl. *weren*, *were*.

3. *Bi*, to be ; ger. *byenne*. 1st pers. pres. indic. *bi* ; 2nd, *best* ; 3rd, *beth* ; 1st, 2nd, and 3rd pers. pl. *beth* ; imper. pl. *beth*.

4. *Cunne*, to be able, to know ; 1st sing. pres. indic. *con* ; 2nd, *const* ; 3rd, *con* ; pl. *connen* ; pret. *cuthe*, *couth*.

5. *Daren*, to dare. 1st sing. pres. indic. *dar*, *der* ; 2nd, *darst* ; 3rd, *dar* ; pl. *dorren*, *dorre* ; pret. sing. *dorste*.

6. *Do*, to do ; ger. *doenne*. 1st sing. pres. indic. *do* ; 2nd, *dest* ; 3rd, *deth* ; pl. *doth* ; pret. *dede* ; imp. *doth*.

7. *Guo*, to go ; ger. *guonne*. 1st sing. pres. indic. *go* ; 2nd, *gest* ; 3rd, *geth* (pl. *guoth*) ; pret. *yede* ; imp. *guoth* ; pp. *iguo*.

8. *Mowen*, to be able, may ; 1st sing. pres. indic. *may* (*mai*) ; 2nd, *mi3t* ; 3rd, *may* (*mai*) ; pl. *mo3en* ; pret. *mi3te*.

9. 1st sing. pres. indic. *mot*, may, must ; 2nd, *most* ; 3rd, *mot*, *mut* ; pl. *moten* ; pret. *moste*.

10. 1st sing. pres. indic. *ssel*, shall ; 2nd, *sselt* ; 3rd, *ssel* ; pl. *ssollen*, *ssolle* ; pret. *ssolde*.

11. *Witen*, to know. 1st sing. pres. indic. *wot* ; 2nd, *wost* ; 3rd, *wot* ; pl. *witeth* ; pret. *wiste* ; imp. sing. *wite* ; pl. *witeth*.

Negative Forms.—*Am*, *have*, *wille*, *witen* (know), take negative forms, as *nam*, am not ; *nis*, is not ; *nes*, was not ; *nedde*, had not ; *nele*, will not ; *not*, knows not ; *neste*, knew not.

ADVERBS.

Many adverbs with the prefix *y* are preserved, as *yvere*, together ; *ilome*, *iholliche*, entirely ; *ymone*, together ; *ymene*, together.

PREPOSITIONS.

Atte, *Atten* (dat. masc.), at the = *at þan*, *at þene* ; *Atter* (dat. fem.), at the = *at þere* ; *Mytter* (dat. fem.), with the = *myd þere*,—are used by Shoreham (see pp. 34, 57, 64).

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Author's Preface	1
Table of Contents	1
Prologue (Vore-speche)	5

The Ten Commandments.

The first Commandment.	5
„ second „	6
„ third „ (Mosaic 4th).	7
„ fourth „ 5th	8
„ fifth „ 6th	8
„ sixth „ 7th	9
„ seventh „ 8th	9
„ eighth „ 9th	10
„ ninth „ (1st half of 10th)	10
„ tenth „ (2nd half of 10th)	11

The Creed.

The twelve Articles of the Christian belief	11
1st Article : written by St Peter	12
2nd „ „ St John	12
3rd „ „ St Jacob, brother of John	12
4th „ „ St Andrew	12
5th „ „ St Philip	12, 13
6th „ „ St Thomas	13
7th „ „ St Bartholomew	13
8th „ „ St Matthew	13
9th „ „ St Jacob, brother of Simon and Jude	13
10th „ „ St Simon	14
11th „ „ St Jude	14
12th „ „ St Matthias	14

The Seven Deadly Sins.

Of the vision that Saint John the Evangelist saw	14, 15
(Of the beast that came out of the sea with seven heads and ten horns)	14, 15

	PAGE
The tokens of the Heads of the Beast	15
(The seven heads = seven deadly sins, and the ten horns = breaking of the ten behests)	15
<i>The First Head of the Beast—Pride and its Seven Boughs</i> . .	16
The First Head of the Beast is Pride	16
(Pride caused the fall of Lucifer)	16
The Might of Pride	16
(Pride is the devil's own daughter)	17
How one shall classify the seven boughs of Pride	17
The First Bough of Pride—Untruth; its three twigs are Foulness (crime), madness, apostasy	17
Second—Despise (contempt)	19
(Three kinds of Despise: <i>a.</i> Not praising those deserving it; <i>b.</i> Not giving honour to whom it is due; <i>c.</i> Dis- obedience to those to whom obedience should be given)	20
The Third Bough of Pride—Arrogance or Overweening . .	21
This sin shows itself in six ways—in, 1. Singularity; 2. Prodigality (extravagance); 3. False strife; 4. Boast- ing (yelping); 5. Scorn; 6. Opposition	21, 22
The Fourth Bough of Pride—Foul Desire (Ambition) . .	22
Ambition is the devil's frying-pan	23
The Fifth Bough of Pride—Idle Bliss (Vain glory)	23
Idle Bliss is the devil's penny	23
It has three small boughs	23
God's gifts—1. of nature; 2. of fortune; 3. of grace . .	24
The devil tries man in three ways	25
The Sixth Bough of Pride—Hypocrisy	25
Three kinds of Hypocrisy: 1. foul; 2. foolish; 3. subtle	25
The Seventh Bough of Pride—Foul Dread and Shame . .	26
<i>The Second Head of the Beast—Envy</i>	26
Envy is a poisonous adder	26
It poisons heart, mouth, and works of man	27
The envious man sins in a threefold manner	27
Three states of the envious	28
<i>The Sins against the Holy Ghost</i>	29
(Overweening, Despair, Obstinacy, Impenitence, Strife, Opposing truth)	29
<i>The Third Head of the Beast—Hatred</i>	29
The four wars of the Hater	29
The seven twigs of Hate: Chiding, Wrath, Hate, Strife, Vengeance, Murder, Deadly War	30
The horrors of war	30
<i>The Fourth Head of the Beast—Sloth</i>	31
The devil's advice to the slothful	31
The six vices of Sloth prevent good beginning and good amendment	31, 32

	PAGE
Forgetfulness springs from Sloth	32
The peril of Slackness	33
<i>The six points of Sloth that bring a man to his end</i>	33
1. Disobedience; 2. Impatience; 3. Murmuring; 4. Sorrow; 5. Desire of Death; 6. Despair	33, 34
<i>The Fifth Head of the Beast—Avarice</i>	34
Avarice, a great schoolmistress	34
The Roots of Avarice: 1. Usury; 2. Theft; 3. Robbery (with violence); 4. False Claim; 5. Sacrilege; 6. Simony	34
7. Fraud; 8. Chaffer; 9. Wicked Craft; 10. Wicked Games	35
Usury and Usurers (seven kinds of)	35, 36
<i>The Second Bough of Avarice—Theft</i>	37
Four kinds of thieves (1. The open thief; 2. Covert; 3. Privy; 4. Accessory)	37, 38
<i>The Third Bough of Avarice—Robbery</i>	38
The roots of Avarice: 1. Evil executors; 2. Unfaithful guardians	38
3. Harbouring of robbers; 4. Dishonest debtors; 5. Robbery of underlings by prelates; 6. Oppression of the poor by provosts and beadles	39
<i>The Fourth Bough of Avarice—False Claim (or False Accusation)</i>	39
Seven kinds of false challengers	39, 40
<i>The Fifth Bough of Avarice—Sacrilege</i>	40
Seven kinds of sacrilege	41
<i>The Sixth Bough of Avarice—Simony</i>	41
The six twigs of Simony	41, 42
How lewd (lay) men may be guilty of Simony	42
<i>The Seventh Bough of Avarice—Depravity</i>	43
To this sin belong Heresy, Witchcraft, &c.	43
<i>The Eighth Bough of Avarice—Chaffer</i>	44
Seven kinds of Chaffering	44, 45
<i>The Ninth Bough of Avarice—Unlawful Traffic (Wicked Craft)</i>	45
This sin is practised by foolish women, heralds, and soldiers	45
<i>The Tenth Bough of Avarice—Gambling (Wicked Games)</i>	45
A Tale: 1. Of a knight who swore by God's eyes; 2. Of an archer who shot at God	45, 46
<i>The Sixth Head of the Beast—Lechery</i>	46
The devil tempts man to this sin in five modes: 1. Foolish sight; 2. Foolish words; 3. Foolish handling; 4. Foolish kissing; 5. Foolish deed	46
Two kinds of Lechery: <i>a.</i> of heart (its four steps).	46, 47
<i>b.</i> Lechery of body (five sorts)	47
Fourteen kinds of Adultery	48, 49
<i>The Seventh Head of the Beast—Sins of the Mouth and Tongue</i>	50

	PAGE
1. The sin of gluttony	50
The glutton often comes to the gallows	51
Five kinds of gluttony	51, 52
1. Eating before time	51
2. Immoderate eating and drinking	52
Gluttony like the kite	53
Hypocrites are the devil's martyrs	53
Dispute between the belly and purse of the glutton	53
The tricks of the devil	54
3. A hasty running to meat, like the hound after the hare	55
4. Extravagance (three kinds of)	55
5. Undue anxiety about eating (three kinds of)	55
Jests and jokes form the glutton's entrées	56
The tavern is the devil's chapel	56
The devil's miracles	56
The tavern is the devil's castle	57
<i>The Sins of the Tongue</i> (ten kinds of)	57
In idle words man may sin in five ways	58
<i>Of the Sin of Boasting</i>	58
The boaster is God's thief	59
Five kinds of boasting	59
The boaster is like the cuckoo, he can only sing of himself	59
Affected humility—Many folk make themselves devils so that they may be esteemed angels	59
<i>Of Flattery</i>	60
Flatterers the devil's nurses	60
The Five Boughs of Flattery	60
1. Inconsiderate praise ; 2. Exaggeration ; 3. Assumption of virtues ; 4. Singing <i>placebo</i>	60
5. Excusing another's faults	61
Flatterers like, 1. Mermaids ; 2. The adder Serayn ; 3. The hyæna ; 4. The farrowed sow ; 5. Dung beetles	61
Five Boughs of Evil-speaking	61, 62
<i>Leasings</i>	62
The liar is like, 1. Chaff among corn ; 2. The devil ; 3. The chameleon (that hath wind only in his guts)	62
Three small twigs of leasing	62, 63
<i>Of the Sin of Lying</i>	63
Swearing and forswearing (perjury)	63
Seven modes of swearing	63-65
<i>Strife</i>	65
Strife like the devil's works	65
Seven boughs of Strife	65, 66
The chider is like, 1. A hedgehog ; 2. A snarling dog	66
Slandering and slanderers	66
<i>Of Murmuring, that is, of him that dare not be answered</i> (be reprimanded)	67

	PAGE
For this sin the Israelites lost the Land of Promise . . .	67
Two boughs of Murmuring	67
The Songs of Heaven and the Songs of Hell	68
<i>Of Opposition</i> (withstanding)	68
Four boughs of Opposition	68, 69
<i>Of Blasphemy</i>	69, 70
Blasphemers are like mad hounds	70
FOR TO LEARN TO DIE	70
Death is a separation and departure	70
Man's life but a point compared with Eternity	71
The Songs of Hell	71
We have not our years—death has them, and will not give them up	71
Death a separation of soul and body	72
Three kinds of death	72
What is death?	72
Go out of thyself into the other worlds (heaven, hell, and purgatory)	73
The Torments of Hell	73
<i>Of Purgatory</i>	73, 74
The Bliss of Paradise	75
The holy man is like the greyhound	75
HOW ONE SHALL KNOW GOOD AND EVIL	76
The beginning of good life is to seek virtue	76
<i>Of Temporal Goods</i> (gifts)	76
(The small goods, the goods of time, the goods of fortune)	76, 77
<i>Of the Lesser Goods</i>	78
The middle goods are the gifts of nature and of teaching (<i>a.</i> beauty, strength, &c. ; <i>b.</i> learning, good manners)	78, 79
<i>Of the True Goods</i>	79
Grace, virtue, and charity	79
What the old philosophers thought to be the greatest good	79, 80
Dame Charity the queen of virtues	80
<i>Of three kinds of Good</i>	80
(Honourable, desirable, and profitable)	80
True Virtue combines all three	80
<i>Of Virtue</i>	80
Six things are desired because they are honourable	80, 81
The Lynx can see through a wall	81
Beauty soon fades	81
Beauty of the Soul	81
<i>Of Wit (wisdom) and of Clergy (learning)</i>	81
Those who love this world think the moon to be the sun, and mistake a glass for a sapphire ; they are like, 1. children ; 2. like a pregnant woman who prefers a sour apple to a wheaten loaf	82

	PAGE
Their wit is the devil's wit	82
True Virtue and True Prowess	83
Foolish Undertaking	83, 84
He that is without virtue hath no courage ; like a child he prefers a mirror to a kingdom	84
Virtue makes a man as bold as a lion	84
<i>Might</i>	84
Man's lordship	84, 85
Virtue makes a man to be master of himself	85
<i>Freedom</i>	85
Three sorts of freedom (of nature, of grace, and of bliss) . .	85, 86
1. Free will	86
Deadly sin bereaves man of this freedom	86
2. Freedom of grace—Those who possess this care not a button for the world	86
3. Freedom of bliss is possessed by those who have passed from this world	87
<i>Nobility :</i>	
True nobility springs from the gentle heart	87
It does not spring from the body	87
For all are descended from one mother, i. e. earth and mud	87
Our true Father is God	87
True nobility consists in being like God	88
It begins in grace and is completed in bliss	88
None need be proud of earthly nobility, for the earth nourishes hogs as well as kings	89
<i>Gentle Good</i>	89
No good (gifts) truly honourable but virtue and charity, that is, the love of God	89
Charity is good chaffer—never loses but ever wins	90
Charity is God's penny	91
Of two lustful (desirable) goods	91
The five wits (senses)	91, 92
Spiritual gifts the best (peace of heart, mastery of devils, bliss of conscience)	92
The Oil of Bliss	93
<i>Of Virtue more especially</i>	94
The soul of a good man like a fair garden, of which God is the gardener	94
<i>Of three things needful to the Earth</i>	95
1. Good mould ; 2. moisture ; 3. heat	95
The Tree of Life	95
The root—the love of God ; the wood—the flesh of Christ ; the rind—Christ's fair conversation ; the sap—His tears, sweat, and blood ; the leaves—His holy words ; the flowers—His holy thoughts ; the fruit—His twelve apostles ; the boughs—the whole elect	95, 96

	PAGE
The Sermon on the Mount specifies the seven boughs of the Tree of Life	96
In it we find the sum of the New Law	97
The Well of God's grace and its seven streams	97
In the Lord's Prayer we pray for the seven gifts of the Holy Ghost	98
<i>The Prologue of the Holy Pater Noster</i>	98
The Lord's Prayer, the first thing we teach a child	98
It is short in words, and long in meaning	99
God cares not for sleek and smooth words	99
<i>Here beginneth the Pater Noster</i>	99
'Our Father,' &c.	99
Of the sweet name of Father	99-101
Why we say 'Father our,' and not 'Father mine'	101
Of adoption	101-2
Of the word 'our'	102-3
'That art in Heaven'	103
'That art' asserts God's existence	103
God alone is everlasting	104
Of the words <i>Father, our, art, Heaven</i>	104-5
<i>The First Petition of the Holy Pater Noster</i>	105
The preface is as the ingoing (prelude) of the fiddle	105
There are seven notes in this song of the Pater Noster	105
The seven petitions obtain the seven gifts of the Holy Ghost	105
The three first make man holy; the other four make him to abide in righteousness	105
Man's holiness like the Trinity (for there are three things in the soul—thought, understanding, and will)	105
'Hallowed be thy Name'	106
In this petition we ask the gift of wisdom	106-7
<i>The Second Petition of the Holy Pater Noster</i>	107
'Thy kingdom come'	108
In this petition we ask for the gift of understanding, whereby man may see and correct his faults	108-9
<i>The Third Petition of the Holy Pater Noster</i>	109
'Thy will be done,' &c.	109
In this petition we ask for the gift of good counsel	109-10
<i>The Fourth Petition of the Holy Pater Noster</i>	110
'Give us this day,' &c.	110
What may the son ask of father better than bread?	110
In this petition we ask for the everlasting bread—the food of the soul	110
The bread of the altar is to be eaten ravenously, and without chewing, for it is the true body of Christ	111
Christ left us this bread as his last bequest	112

	PAGE
It is more nutritious than all other bread	113
<i>The Fifth Petition of the Holy Pater Noster</i>	113
‘Forgive us our trespasses,’ &c.	113
Our debts are our sins—the interest is Hell-pain	113
The Court of Mercy and the Court of Doom (Justice) . .	113-14
In this petition we ask the gift of knowledge	115
<i>The Sixth Petition of the Holy Pater Noster</i>	116
‘And lead us not into temptation’	116
The devil—the tempter	116
The devil’s temptations are like the blows on the back of a knight, whereby he is ennobled and honoured	116
In this petition we ask for help and pity	116
We do not seek to be delivered from temptation, but only to be aided	116-17
<i>The Seventh Petition of the Holy Pater Noster</i>	117
‘But deliver us from evil,’ i.e. Deliver us from the devil and his sleights	117-18
In this petition we pray for the gift of fear	117-18
<i>The Seven Gifts of the Holy Ghost</i>	118
Seven spirits and seven gifts received in baptism	119
<i>Wherefore they are called Gifts</i>	119
They are called gifts for three reasons : 1. for their dignity and worth	119
2. They remain with us for ever ; 3. They are given through love	120
<i>Wherefore they are called Gifts of the Holy Ghost</i>	120
Works of might are the works of God the Father	120
Works of wisdom belong to the Son	121
Works of goodness belong to the Holy Ghost	121
The Holy Ghost is the well, the gifts are the stream . . .	121
<i>Wherefore Man is Saved</i>	121
1. Man is saved ; 2. by eschewing evil and doing good . .	121
The gift of dread causes us to flee from evil, and the other six gifts enable us to do good	121
Dread is the door-keeper, the watch of the castle or the weed-hook of the gardener	121
Three stages of people in heaven	122
Of the gifts peculiar to these states	122
<i>Of the Three First Virtues</i>	123
Belief, hope, charity are called godly virtues	123
Three things cause a man to love another	123
<i>Of the Four Cardinal Virtues</i>	124
Prudence, Temperance, Strength, Equity	124
These virtues are the four towers in the four corners of the good man’s house	124
<i>Of the Office of the Four Virtues</i>	124
<i>Prudence</i> (three offices of)	124

	PAGE
<i>Temperance</i> (three offices of)	125
<i>Strength</i> (three offices of)	125
<i>Rightfulness</i> (<i>Equity</i>)	125
Philosophy the love of wisdom	126
The old philosophers put false Christians to shame	162
The four cardinal virtues are four kinds of loves	126-7
<i>Of the Gift of Dread</i>	127
Dread rouses the sinner	127-8
The sinner is like, 1. a drunkard ; 2. one bound in irons and fettters, who dreams of feasts and weddings instead of the gibbet	128
The Holy Ghost is the Good Physician	128-9
The three questions the Angel asked Hagar in the wilderness	129
Four questions put to the sinner by the Holy Ghost are like four strokes of thunder	129
<i>How Mildness</i> (<i>Meekness</i>) <i>waxeth in the heart</i>	130
Fear strips the heart of its pride and confidence	130
The tree of meekness is set beside the well of the fear of God	131
<i>Of the Steps of Meekness</i>	132
1. To know one's defects ; 2. to bewail one's sins ; 3. to confess and shrive our sins ; 4. to acknowledge our unworthiness ; 5. to hear willingly of our imperfec- tions ; 6. to endure reproach willingly ; 7. to desire to be accounted vile	133
<i>Of the Seven Boughs of Meekness</i>	134
The First Bough of Meekness is to honour God as a child doth its master	134
<i>The Second Bough of Meekness</i>	
Is to praise others (for three reasons)	135-6
<i>Of Meek Heart</i>	136
The meek keep their virtues behind their back, their defects before their face	136
Of an holy courteousness	137
The meek man blames himself in three ways	137-8
<i>The Fourth Bough of Meekness</i>	
Is to love poverty (for three reasons)	138
This is shown in three ways	139
<i>The Fifth Bough of Meekness</i>	
Is to serve others joyfully	139
Meekness is the mother of obedience	140
<i>Of Obedience</i> (<i>Buxomness</i>)	140
Of the seven ornaments of obedience	140
Holy simplicity is the good daughter of meekness	140
The meek man is like, 1. the star Saturn ; 2. the mill-ass ; 3. the sun	141
<i>The Sixth Bough of Meekness</i>	
Is to avoid praise and flattery	141

	PAGE
The meek man despises the world—but loves solitude.	
He is like a modest virgin	142
<i>The Seventh Bough of Meekness</i>	
Is steadfast belief	143
Belief is like a grain of mustard seed	143
Four kinds of love	144
<i>Of the Virtue of Love</i>	144
Pity is an antidote to envy	144
Why Christians should be united	145-6
<i>The Boughs of Love</i>	146
Love shows itself in seven different ways	146-7
Nature teaches us to seek “the common profit”	147
On the right mode of administering correction	148
The friendship and teaching of Christ	149
<i>The First Step of Equity (Rightfulness)</i>	
Is to know one’s self	150
The gift of wisdom is the Prior in the cloister of the soul	151
The two sides of the heart (1. Understanding and Will ;	
2. Reason and Affection)	151
The four offices of Reason	151-2
The faculties of the Will	153
The union of Reason and Will	153
<i>The Second Step of Equity</i>	
Is to hold the body in subjection	154
The five wits (senses) should be under the authority of the	
Reason	154
<i>The Third Step of Equity</i>	
Is to observe discretion in the use of temporal things	154
<i>The Fourth Step of Equity</i>	
Is to follow the example of good men	155
Novices like young greyhounds	155
Æsop’s fable of the Hound and the Ass	155-6
<i>The Fifth Bough of Meekness</i>	
Is to avoid the follies of the foolish	156
Fools and Sinners are not to be derided, but to be pitied	156
The bad man may be good to-morrow	157
<i>The Sixth Step of Equity</i>	
Is to keep an eye upon the devil’s snares and devices	157
The spirits of men are like a mirror	158
The devil puts thoughts into the heart	158
<i>The Seventh Step of Equity</i>	
Is to keep God always before us	159
<i>Of the Boughs of Equity</i>	159
The Boughs of Equity are seven in number: 1. Obedience ;	
2. Love ; 3. Meekness ; 4. Prowess ; 5. Liberality ;	
6. Chastity ; 7. Sobriety	159-60

	PAGE
This world is called the Vale of Tears	160
Six kinds of tears are shed by good men	161
<i>Of the Gift of Strength</i>	161
Life of man may be compared to knighthood or to citizenship	161-2
The gift of Strength enables a man to endure the hardships of this world	162
Prowess strips man of sloth and idleness	163
<i>The Divisions of Virtue (Prowess)</i>	164
1. Magnanimity ; 2. Affiance ; 3. Security ; 4. Patience ; 5. Steadfastness ; 6. Magnificence ; 7. Hunger and thirst of righteousness	164
<i>The First Step of Prowess</i> To despise the world	164-5
<i>The Second Step of Prowess</i> Is Belief	165
<i>The Third Step of Prowess</i> Is Confidence (or Security)	166-7
<i>The Fourth Step of Prowess</i> Is Patience	167
Patience is acquired by trial, just as the cup of gold has to undergo the strokes of iron ere it is fit to place on the king's table	167
<i>The Fifth Step of Prowess</i> Is Steadfastness or Constancy	167-8
<i>The Sixth Step of Prowess</i> Is Perseverance or Magnificence	168
<i>The Boughs of Prowess</i>	169
Seven Boughs of Prowess ; for in seven battles seven crowns may be obtained	169-70
<i>The First Fight</i>	170
Is against deadly sin	170-1
<i>Of the Repentance of King David</i>	171
David repented in tears and sighs	171
The sinner must so sorrow that his heart shall melt to tears	171
The sinner is the murderer of his own soul	171
The sinner's bed is the soul	171
<i>Of Shrift</i>	172
Of the six conditions of Shrift	172
1. Let the sinner look, <i>a.</i> to the Shriver and seek a good confessor ; <i>b.</i> to his own sins before he comes to shrift	172
2. Shrift must not be delayed	173
3. Let shrift be made openly	174
4. Let shrift be made without reservation	174
Let the sinner tell first the deadly sins he has committed	175
And how often he has fallen into sin, and with what members he has sinned	176

	PAGE
5. Let shrift be made meekly and timidly	177
6. Shrft must be made often, for eight reasons	178
Five things disturb shrift	179-80
<i>Of Penance</i>	180
Penance must be made by fasting, alms, and prayers	180
The sinner's contest with, 1. sin ; 2. with his own heart	180
3. With his flesh ; 4. with the world ; 5. with Dame Fortune	181
6. With the limbs of Antichrist	182-83
<i>Of the Gift of Counsel and of the Virtue of Mercy</i>	183
This gift bestows forethought and foresight	183
Seek good advice	184
Seven steps of the tree of Mercy—that is, the seven things that lead to mercy. 1. Nature	185
2. Grace ; 3. Behests of Holy Scripture	186-7
The devil a "shut-purse"	187
4. The liberality of Christ ; 5. the honour of God (the Story of St Martin) ; 6. Dread of Doom	188-89
7. The Seed of Mercy	189
The Stories of St Germain, John the Almoner, and St Boniface	190-91
The poor man who gave his one cow to the Priest	191
<i>Of the Goodness of Alms</i>	191
Three things to be considered in Almsgiving	192
1. Give not of thy unlawful gains	192
2. Give not to ribalds and minstrels	192
3. Give, <i>a.</i> ungrudgingly	193
<i>b.</i> Without delay	194
<i>c.</i> Liberally ; <i>d.</i> Willingly	195
Despise not the poor	196
Alms alone will not save a man	197
Cursed are the unmerciful	198
<i>The Gift of Understanding and of the Virtue of Chastity</i>	199
1. Life Active, and, 2. Life Contemplative	199
Martha a type of the first	199
The Gift of Understanding is given by the Holy Ghost	200
The Holy Ghost enlightens the soul	201
He purifies the soul from the filth of lechery	201
A lecher is no better than a beast	201
<i>Of the Seven Steps of Chastity</i>	202
I. Have a clear conscience ; <i>a.</i> True Shrft	202
Jordan signifies 'the Stream of Judgment'	202
<i>b.</i> A remembrance of Christ's passion	203
The adder of brass betokens Christ	203
II. Abstain from foul words	203
Foul words denote a filthy heart	203
III. Guard all the wits (senses) of the body	204

	PAGE
The five senses are the five gates of the city of the heart, whereby the devil oft enters	204
IV. Austerity of Life	204
Lusts mar chastity	204
Jeremiah's girdle denotes chastity	205
Great meats nourish lechery	205
V. Avoid the fellowship of the wicked	205
VI. Be occupied with good works	206
Idleness the ruin of Sodom	206
VII. Offer good prayers to God	207
Prayer a shield against lust	207
Prayers are shored up with four posts	207-8
Ask not what is improper for thee to have	208
Let the sinner take heed to the poor beggars that exhibit their infirmities before men in order to obtain alms . .	208
God will not give thee a pear or apple as one doth a child	208
Ask all things in the name of Christ	209
Devotion of heart is necessary to prayer	210
It is no use to move the lips while the heart is dumb . .	210
Prayer without devotion is like a messenger without letters of recommendation	211
Pray especially to God on Sunday	212
The Sunday is more holy than the Saturday	213
Of the great festivals	213
An answer to those who say 'We cannot always be praying'	213
And 'if all days be mass days and holy days, how then should we sow, reap, mow,'? &c.	214
Let great lords and ladies lay aside their dignity when in church	215
Ladies should take pattern of Queen Hester	216
They should not be busy about decking their heads with gold and silver	216-17
The two wings that bear prayer to God are fasting and alms	217
Come not empty-handed before God	218
The parable of the Ten Virgins	218
Moses overcame Amalek by prayer	219
The prayers of many are more effective than those of one man	219
<i>The Seven Boughs of Chastity</i> are according to the states of men in this world	219
1. Chastity of those who have preserved their maidenhood;	
2. Chastity of those who lost their maidenhood before marriage	220
3. Chastity of married folk	221
The three cases in which the deed of spousehood may be sinless	222-23

	PAGE
The proper times for abstaining from the deed of spousehood	224
The elephant will not dwell with his wife while she is with child	224
4. Chastity of widowhood	225
Three things to be observed in this state	226
5. <i>The Fifth Bough of Chastity</i> is unmarried life	227
The devil tries to steal the treasure of maidenhood	227
Why the life of maidens is to be praised	227-28
Maidenhood like a white robe	228
Three spots defile the white robe	228
Rich robes often hide a poor and naked conscience	229
Maidenhood like a lily	230
The flower of maidenhood and its six leaves	230-32
The three grains of the lily	233
Virginity most fruitful in good works	234
6. <i>The Sixth State of Chastity</i> is of Hooded Clerks	235
The girdle of chastity	236
The wickedness of the minister impairs not the efficacy of the sacraments	237
7. <i>The Seventh State of Chastity</i> is the State of Religion, i. e. of those who are dedicated to God	238
The devil is most anxious to cause the 'religious' to fall into sin, just as the fisherman has greater joy in taking a great fish than a little one	238
<i>Here lies a Tale</i> of the devil-princes' reports of their evil deeds to a great devil who sat upon a folding stool; and how one devil had, after forty years' trial, tempted a monk to commit fornication, for which he was hugged, kissed, and crowned by the 'great devil,' his master	238-39
Religion is like a desert	240
True poverty the hoard of the religious man	241
The story of Lot's wife and its lesson	242
'Religious folk' that seek temporal riches put the plough before the oxen	243
The pure of heart shall see God	243-44
<i>Of the Gift of Wisdom. Of the Virtue of Temperance and of Sobriety</i>	245
Wisdom, the last and greatest gift of the Holy Ghost, makes man to know God perfectly	245
The glue of love	246
The spirit drags down the flesh	247
In the great tavern (heaven) one shall drink to the full of God's sweetness	247
Sobriety springs from wisdom	248
Death seizes the glutton suddenly, 'as one taketh a fish by the cheek'	248

	PAGE
Wine drowns the glutton	248
The mouth is the chief gate of the castle of the heart . .	249
All creatures teach man sobriety	249
Sobriety must be exercised in good deeds, as fasting, vigils, &c.	250
Of the high rock (Christ) and the well of love	251
<i>Of the Seven Steps of Sobriety</i>	252
1. Measure (moderation) in the understanding	252
Unbelievers overstep moderation—they seek a natural reason in what transcends the understanding	252
The understanding should be subject to belief	253
2. Moderation in the lusts and desires of the will	253
Control the will with the bridle of sobriety	254
3. Moderation in words	254-55
Weigh thy words in the balance of discretion	255
4. Moderation in hearing	256
Flatterers and liars are plentiful, but there is great dearth of those who adhere to truth	256
‘Of the adder called in Latin <i>Aspis</i> ’	257
5. Moderation in clothing and precious robes	258
Excess is a sin	258
The wearing of clothes comes of the sin of our first parents Nature has given man no clothes of which to be proud, like the tail of the peacock and the comb of the cock	258
6. Moderation in Conduct	259
The child of a hundred years shall be accursed	259
7. Moderation in Meat and Drink	260
The virtue of sobriety is above all other virtues	260
He who hath this virtue is joined to God by charity	260
Of rest in God	260-61
The Ayenbite of Inwyt is written in the English of Kent	262
Date of its completion	262
<i>Pater Noster</i>	262
<i>Ave Maria</i>	262
<i>Creed</i>	262-3
<i>For to shake away heaviness and dread, and turn them into the love of God</i> (Sermon on Matthew xxiv. 43)	263
The Father of the House—the Will of Reason	263
The House—Conscience	263
The Thief—the Devil	263
Door-keeper—Prudence	263
Dread, the messenger of death	264
Dread’s description of hell	264-5
Love of Everlasting Life—a messenger from heaven	266
Description of heaven	266-69
<i>Difference between Men and Beasts</i>	270-71

AYENBITE OF INWYT.

AUTHOR'S PREFACE.

Aye þe uondi[n]gges of þe dyeule : zay þis þet uolþeþ. "Zuete iesu þin holy blod / þet þou sseddest ane þe rod / uor me and uor mankende : Ich bidde þe hit by my sseld / auoreye þe wycked uend : al to mi lyues ende. zuo by hit."

þis boc is dan Michelis of Northgate / y-write an englis of his oþene hand. þet hatte : Ayenbyte of inwyt. And is of þe boc-house of saynt Austines of Canterberi. mid þe lettres : C : C :

: ⁱM : C : C :

Holy archan[g]le Michael.
Saynt gabriel. and Raphael.
Ye brenge me to þo castel.
þer alle zaulen vareþ wel.

Lhord ihesu almiȝti kyng. þet madest / and lokest alle þyng.
Me þet am þi makyng : to þine blisse me þou bryng. Amen.

Blind. and dyaf. and alsuo domb. Of zeuenty yer al uol rond.
Ne ssolle by draȝe to þe grond : Vor peny / uor Mark / ne uor pond.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

þise byep þe capiteles of þe boc uolȝinde / And byep y-wryte to vynde y-redliche / by þe tellynge of algorisme / ine huyche leaue of þe boc þet hy by. And ine huyche half of þe lyeaue be tuaye lettres of þe abece. þet is to wytene .A. and .b. .A. betocneþ þe uerste half of þe leaue .b. þe oþerhalf.

þe uore-speche of þise boc uol- zynde .1. a.	þe þridde bo3 of auarice .10. b.
þe uerste godes heste .1. a.	þe verþe bo3 of auarice .11. a.
þe oþer godes heste .1. a.	þe vyfte bo3 of auarice .11. b.
þe þridde godes heste .1. a.	þe zixte bo3 of auarice .11. b.
þe uerþe godes heste .1. b.	þe zeuende bo3 of auarice .12. a.
þe vifte godes heste .1. b.	þe e3tinde bo3 of auarice .12. b.
þe zyhte godes heste .2. a.	þe ne3ende bo3 of auarice .12. b.
þe zeuende godes heste .2. a.	þe tende bo3 of auarice .12. b.
þe e3tende godes heste .2. a.	þe zyhte heaued of þe beste .13. a.
þe ne3ende godes heste .2. b.	þe zeuende heaued of þe queade beste .14. a.
þe tende godes heste .2. b.	Of þe zenne of yelpinge .17. a.
þe tuelf articles of þe cristene beleauē .2. b.	Leazinges .18. a.
Of þe sseawynge þet sayn Ion þe godspellere y-ze3 .3. b.	Of þe zenne of lye3ynge .18. b.
þe token of þe heaueden of þe beste .3. b.	Cheaste .19. a.
þet uerste heaued of þe beste .4. a.	Of grochinge .19. b.
Hou me ssel to dele / þe zeue bo3es of prede .4. b.	Of wyþstondynge .20. a.
þe oþer bo3 of prede .5. a.	Vor to lyerny sterue .20. b.
þe þridde bo3 of prede .5. b.	Hou me ssel knawe guod and kuead .22. b.
þe verþe bo3 of prede .6. a.	Of tymlyche guodes .22. b.
þe vifte bo3 of prede .6. a.	Of þe lesse guodes .23. a.
þe zixte bo3 of prede .7. a.	Of þe zoþe guodes .23. b.
þe zeuende bo3 of prede .7. a.	Of þri maneres of guode .23. b.
þet oþer heaued of þe beste of helle .7. a.	Of uirtue .23. b.
þet þridde heaued of þe queade beste .8. a.	Of wyt / and of clergye .24. a.
þe uerþe heaued of þe queade beste .8. b.	My3te .25. a.
þe vyfte heaued of þe queade beste .9. b.	Vrydom .25. b.
þe oþer bo3 of couaitise .10. b.	Noblesse .26. a.
	Gentyl guod .26. b.
	Of tuo lostuolle guodes .27. a.
	Of virtue more specialliche .28. a.
	Of þri þinges nyeduolle / to þe erþe .28. b.
	þe uore-speche of þe holy pater noster .29. b.

Hyer begynþ þet holy pater nos- ter ¹ .30. a.	Of þe zeue bozes of Myldenesse .41. a.
þe uerste bene of þe holy pater noster .31. b.	þe oper boz of Mildenesse .41. b. Of Milde herte .41. b.
þe oþre bene of þe holy pater noster .32. b.	þe uerþe boz of Mildenesse .42. b. þe fifte boz of Mildenesse .42. b.
þe þridde bene of þe holy pater noster .33. a.	Of bozsamnesse .43. a. þe zixte boz of Mildenesse .43. b.
þe uerþe bene of þe holy pater noster .33. a.	þe zeuende boz of Mildenesse .44. a.
þe fifte bene of þe holy pater noster .34. a.	Of þe uirtue of loue .44. b. þe bozes of louerede .45. a.
þe zixte bene of þe holy pater noster .35. a.	þe uerste stape of riztuolnesse .46. b.
þe zeuende bene of þe holy pater noster .35. b.	þe oper stape of riztuolnesse .47. b. þe þridde stape of riztuolnesse .48. a.
þe zeue yefþes of þe holy gost .36. a.	þe uerþe stape of riztuolnesse .48. a.
Hueruore hy byeþ y-cleped yefþes .36. b.	þe fifte stape of riztuolnesse .48. b.
Hueruore hy byeþ y-cleped yefþe of þe holy gost .36. b.	þe zixte stape of riztuolnesse .48. b.
Hueruore is man y-borþe .37. a.	þe zeuende stape of riztuolnesse .49. a.
Of þe þri uerste uirtues .37. b.	Of þe bozes of riztuolnesse .49. b.
Of þe uour uirtues cardinales .37. b.	Of þe yefþe of stre[n]gþe .50. a.
Of þe office of þe uour uirtues .38. a.	þe todelinge of uirtues .51. a.
Temperance .38. a.	þe oper stape of prouesse .51. b.
Stre[n]gþe .38. a.	þe þridde stape of prouesse .51. b.
Riz[t]uolnesse .38. a.	þe verþe stape of prouesse .51. b.
Of þe yefþe of drede .38. b.	þe fifte stape of prouesse .52. a.
Hou myldenesse wext ine herte .39. b.	þe zixte stape of prouesse .52. a.
Of þe stapes of Myldenesse .40. a.	þe bozes of prouesse .52. b.

¹ MS. *nosterer*.

þe uerste vizt .53. a.	þe vifte boʒ of chasteté .70. b.
Of þe uorþenchinge of þe king	Hyer lyþ a tale .74. b.
dauip .53. a.	Of þe yefþe of wysdome. Of
Of ssryfte 53. b.	þe uirtue of temperance.
Of ynoʒbote .56. a.	And of sobreté .76. b.
Of þe yefþe of red / and of uirtue	Of þe stapes of sobreté .79. a.
of merci .97. a.	Pater noster. Aue maria. Credo
Of þe guodes of elmesse .60. a.	.82. a.
þe yefþe of onderstondi[n]ge. and	Vor to ssake a-way heuinesse an
of þe uirtue of chasteté .62. a.	drede .82. b.
Of þe zeue stapes of chasteté .63. a.	Huet is betuene man and best
þe zeue boʒes of chasteté .68. b.	.84. b.

ÞE UORE-SPECHE.

Prologue.

Almiȝti god / yaf ten hestes / ine þe laȝe of iewes /
 þet Moyses onderuing / ine þe helle of Synay / ine tuo
 tables of ston / þet were i-write / mid godes vingre. and
 him-zelf / efter his beringe / ine his spelle / het hise
 healde / and loki / to ech man / þet wile by y-borȝe. and
 huo þet agelt / ine enie of þe ilke hestes : him ssel þerof
 uorþenche / and him ssiue / and bidde god merci / yef
 he wyle by yborȝe.

[Fol. 1. a.]
 God gave Moses
 Ten Behests, writ-
 ten upon two ta-
 bles of stone.

Whoso breaketh
 these behests let
 him repent there-
 of.

Þis boc is ywrite /¹
 uor englisse men þet hi wyte /
 hou hi ssolle ham-zelue ssiue /
 and maki ham klene / ine þise liue.
 Þis boc hatte huo þet writ /
 AYENBITE OF INWYT.
 auerst byeþ þe hestes ten /
 þet loki ssolle alle men.

This book is writ-
 ten for English-
 men, that they
 may know how to
 shrive and cleanse
 them in this life.

This book is
 named by its au-
 thor
 Ayen-bite of
 Inwyt (Remorse
 of Conscience).
 First are the Ten
 Behests that all
 men should keep.

ÞE UERSTE GODES HESTE.

Þe uerste heste þet god made / and het : is þis. “þou
 ne sselt habbe / uele godes.” þet is to zigge / “þou ne
 sselt habbe god / bote me. ne worssipie / ne serui. And
 þou ne sselt do þine hope / bote ine me.” Vor þe ilke /
 þet deþ his hope / heȝliche ine sseppe : zenezep dyad-
 liche. and deþ aye þise heste. Zuiche byeþ þe ilke / þet

The First Com-
 mandment,

is to worship one
 God.

¹ The following lines are written continuously as prose in the MS.

worssipeþ þe momenes. and makeþ hire god / of ssepþe /
huich þet hit by.

against which
they sin who too
much love their
goods (wealth).

Aye þise heste / zenezep þo / þet to moche / louieþ
hire guod. gold. oþer zeluer. oþer oþre þinges / erpliche.
Huo þet / ine þise þinges agelteþ : zetteþ zuo moche
hire herte / and hire hope : þet hi uoryeteþ / hire
sseppere. an leteþ him / þet alle þise guodes ham lenþ.
And þeruore / hi ssolden him serui / and þonki / and
toppe alle þinges / louie / and worssipie / alzuo þe tekþ /
pis uerste heste.

ÞE OÞER GODES HESTE.

The Second Com-
mandment.

þe oþer heste / ys þellich. “þou ne sselt nime /
godes name : in ydel.” þet is to zigge : “þou ne sselt
zuerie / uor naȝt / and wyþ-oute guode scele.” þet oure
lhord him-zelf / ous uorbyet / ine his spelle. þet me ne
zuerie / ne by þe heuene / ne by þe erþe / ne by oþre
sseppere. þaȝles ine guode skele / me may zuerie / wyþ-oute
zenne. ase ine dome / huer me okseþ / oþ / of zoþe.
oþer out of dome / in oþre guode skele. and clenliche /
and skeluolliche. Ine non oþre manyere / ne is no riȝt
to zuerie. And þeruore / huo þet zuereþ wiþ-oute skele /
þane name of oure lhorde / and uor naȝt : yef he zuereþ
uals / be his wytinde : he him uorzuerþ. and deþ / to
ayans / þise heste. and zuerþ dyadliche. uor he zuerþ /
ayens inwyt. þet is to onderstonde / huanne he him
uorzuerþ / be þoȝte / and be longe þenchinge. Ac þe
ilke þet zuereþ zoþ / be his wytinde / and alneway uor
naȝt. oþer uor some skele kueade / naȝt kueadliche /
ake liȝtliche / and wyþ-oute sclondre : zuereþ liȝtliche.
þaȝles þe wone / is kueaduol / and may wel wende / to
zenne dyadlich / bote yef him ne loki. Ac þe ilke /
þet zuereþ hidousliche be god / oþer by his halȝen / and
him to-breȝþ / and zayþ him sclondres / þet ne byeþ naȝt
to zigge : þe ilke zenezep dyadliche. Ne he ne may

Swear not except
for judgment, or
other good cause.

Swearing lightly
is evil ;

swearing hideous-
ly is deadly sin.

habbe skele : þet he him moze excusi. And þe ilke / þet mest him woneþ to zuerie : mest zenezep.

þE ÞRIDDE GODES HESTE.

The Third Commandment

þe þridde heste / is þellich. "Loke / þet þou halzi / þane day / of þe sabat [Zeterday]." þet is to zigge. þou ne sselt do / ine þe daye / of þe sabat [Zeterday] / þine nyedes / ne þine workes / þet þou miȝt do / ine oþre dayes. Ac þou sselt þe resti / uor betere / þe yeme to bidde / and to serui þine sseppere / þet him restedē / þane zeuende day / of workes / þet he hedde ymad ine þe zix dayes beuore. ine huichen he made þe wordle / an ordaynede [diȝte.]. þis heste / uoluelp gostliche / him þet lokeþ / be his miȝte : þe pays / of his inwyȝt / god uor to serui / more holylaker. þanne þis word / zeterday / þet þe iurie / clepeþ sabat. is ase moche worþ : ase reste.

[Fol. 1. b.]

Rest the seventh day to pray to and serve God.

Saturday or Sabbath means rest.

þis heste / ne may non loki gostliche : þet by ine inwyȝt / of dyadlich zenne. Vor zuich inwyȝt / ne may by ine reste / þer huyle / þet hi is / ine zuich stat. And ine þe stede / of þe sabat / þet wes straytliche y-loked / ine þe yalde laȝe : zet holi cherche / þane sonday / to loky / ine þe newe laȝe. Vor oure lhord / aros / uram dyape to lyue / þane zonday. An þeruore / me ssel hine loky / and urepie / zo holyliche / and by ine reste / of workes / ope þe woke. and more of workes / of zenne. and yeue him more / to gostliche workes / and to godes seruise / and þenche / ane his sseppere / and him bidde / and þonky / of his guode. And huo / þet brekþ þane zonday / and þe oþre heȝe festes / þet byeþ y-zet to loky / ine holy cherche : zenezep dyadliche / uor he deþ / aye þe heste of god. to-uore yzed. and of holi cherche / bote yef hit by / uor zome nyede / þet holi cherche grantep. Ac more zenezep / þe ilke / þet dispendep þane zonday / and þe festes / ine zenne / and ine hordom / and in oþre zennes / aye god. þise þri hestes / diȝteþ ous / to gode specialliche.

Instead of it, Holy Church sets Sunday in the New Law to be kept holy :

and whoso breaks Sunday and other high feasts, sins deadly,

and worse if he spend them in sin and whoredom.

The Fourth Com-
mandment.

þE UERþE GODES HESTE.

Wrath not thy Fa-
ther or Mother.

We should honour
our ghostly fa-
thers and the over-
lings of Holy
Church,

who have the care
of our souls.

Disobedience to
them is a deadly
sin.

þe uerþe heste / is þellich. "Worþssipe þine uader /
and þine moder. uor þu sselst libbe þe lenger ine yerþe."
þis heste / ous amonestep / þet we ous loky / þet we / ne
wreþþi uader / ne moder / wytindeliche. And huo þet
onworþep / his uader / and his moder / be his wytinde /
oþer ham missayþ / oþer wreþep / mid kueade : zenezep
dyadliche / an brekþ þise heste.

Ine þise ilke heste / is onderstonde / þe worþssipe /
þet we ssolle bere / to oure uaderes / gostliche. þet is to
ham / þet habbeþ / þe lokingge / ous to teche / and ous to
chasti / ase byeþ / þe ouerlinges / of holy cherche. and
þo þet habbeþ / þe lokinge / of oure zaules / and of oure
bodyes. And huo þet nele / bouze to ham / þet habbeþ
þe lokinge of him / huanne hi techep þet guod. þet me
is y-hyalde to done : zenezep kueadliche. and zuyeh
may by / þe onbozsamnesse : þet hit is / dyadlich zenne.

The Fifth Com-
mandment.

Thou shalt slay no
man,

neither for venge-
ance, nor for his
goods, for this is
deadly sin.
It is right to slay
the misdoers.

[Fol. 2. a.]

In this behest is
forbidden the sin
of hate, wrath,
and great ire.
The brother-hater
is a man-slayer.

To bear long
wrath against
others is a deadly
sin.

þE VIFTE GODES HESTE.

þe vifte heste / is þellich / "þou ne sselst / slaze nenne
man." þis heste uorbyet / þet non ne ssel / slaze oþren /
uor a-wrekinge. ne uor his guodes. oþer uor oþre
wyckede skele. uor þet is zenne dyadlich. þazles uor to
slaze þe misdoeres / riȝt uor to done / and loki / and
uor oþre guode skele. hit is guod riȝt / by þe laze / to
him þet ssel hit do / and yhyealde is þerto.

Ine þis heste ys uorbode / zenne of hate / and of
wreþe / and of grat ire. Vor also zayþ / þe writinge. þe
ilke / þet hateþ his broþer : he is / manslazþe / ase to
his wyлле / and zenezep dyadliche. and þe ilke / þet
berþ longe wreþe / ayens oþren. vor zuich wreþe /
longe yhyealde / and byuealde ine herte : is ine wreþe /
and ine hate : þet is dyadlich zenne. and aye þise
heste. And yet zenezep he more / þet deþ / oþer por-
chaceþ / ssame / oþer harm / to oþren : wrongliche. oþer

is ine rede / and ine helpe / uor to do harmi opren / him to awreke. þazles wreþe / oper onworþnesse / þet geþ liztliche / wyþoute greate wille / an willinge / uor to harmi opren: ne is naȝt dyadlich zenne.

Harm done unwillingly to others is not a deadly sin.

þE ZIXTE GODES HESTE.

The Sixth Commandment.

þe zixte heste / is þellich. "þou ne sselt do / non hordom." þet is to zigge / þou ne sselt naȝt wynni uelazrede ulesslich / wyþ opre manne wyf.

Thou shalt do no whoredom, nor desire fleshly fellowship with other men's wives.

Ine þise heste / ous is uor-bode / alle zenne of ulesse / þet me clepeþ generalliche / lecherie. þet is on / of þe zeuen dyadliche zennes. þaz þer by zome bronches / þet ne byeþ naȝt dyadlich zenne. ase byeþ manie arizinges of vlesse / þet me ne may naȝt al[le] bevy. and þo me ssel naȝti / and wyþdraze / ase moche / ase me may. naȝt uor to norici his / ne porchaci / oper be to moche mete / oper drinke / oper be euele þoztes. to longe y-hyealde. oper be kueade takinges. Vor ine zuiche þinges / me may habbe / harm of zaule. Ine þise heste is uorbode / alle zennen a-ye kende / ine huet manere / hy byeþ y-do / oper ine his bodie : oper in opren.

This behest forbiddeth lechery, which is one of the deadly sins,

some branches of which, as arisings of the flesh, are not deadly sins.

In this behest are forbidden all sins against kind (nature).

þE ZEUENDE GODES HESTE.

The Seventh Commandment.

þe zeuende heste / is þellich. "þou ne sselt do / none þiefþe." þis heste ous uorbyet / to nimene / and of-hyealde / opre manne þing / huet þet hit by / be wyckede skele / aye þe wyl of him / þet hit oȝþ.

Thou shalt do no theft.

Ine þise heste is uorbode / roberie / þiefþe / stale / and gauel / and bargayn wyþ opren / uor his oȝen to habbe. And þe ilke / þet deþ / aye þis heste : is yhyalde to yelde. þet he heþ / of opre manne kueadliche / yef he wot to huam. And yef he not : he is yhyalde / to yeue hit uor godes loue. oper / to done by þe rede of holi cherche. Vor he þet wyþhalt / opre manne þiug mid wrong / be kueade skele : zenezep dyadliche : bote

This behest forbiddeth robbery, theft, stealing, usury, bargain.

He that withholdeth other men's things sinneth deadly.

yef he hit yelde / þer ha ssel / yef he hit wot / and moʒe
hit do. oþer yef he ne deþ / by þe rede of holy cherche.

The Eighth Com-
mandment.

Thou shalt bear
no false witness
against thine
even-Christian.
This behest for-
biddeth lying and
forswearing.

Against this be-
hest do those
who are guilty of
the sins of "de-
traction,"

and of flattery and
of treachery.

[Fol. 2. b.]

The Ninth Com-
mandment.

Thou shalt not
covet thy neigh-
bour's wife.

Thou shalt not
consent to do sin
with thy body.

The difference be-
tween the ninth
and sixth Com-
mandments.

The sixth forbids
the outward deed,
the ninth forbids
the inward con-
senting.

ÞE EȜTENDE GODES HESTE.

Þe eȜtende heste / is þellich. "þou ne sselst zigge /
none ualse wytnesse / aye þine emcristen."

Ine þise heste / ous ys uorbode / þet we ne lyeȝe / ne
ous uor-zuerie / ne ine dome / ne wyþ-oute dome / uor to
do harmi þine emcristen. and þet me ne lede nenne
in wytnesse / uor to ampayri his guode los. oþer his
grace / þet he heþ / uor þet is dyadlich zenne. To-ayens
þise heste doþ þo / þet misziggeþ guode men / be-hinde
ham / be hire wytinde. and by kueadnesse. þet me
clepeþ / þe zenne of detraccion. and þo also / þet herieþ
þe kueade / and hire dedes / of hire kueadnesse / and of
hire folies ywyte / oþer yzoȝe / oþer yherd. þet is zenne
of blondi[n]gge / oþer of lozengerie / huanne me hit
zayþ to-uore ham. oþer ualshede / oþer lyesinges /
huanne he þet me speķ of / ne is naȝt present. Vor
alle þos byeþ ualse wytnesses.

ÞE NEȜENDE GODES HESTE.

Þe neȝende heste / is þellich. "þou ne sselst naȝt
wylni / þine neyȝbores¹ wyf. ne his wylni / ine þine
herte." þet is to zigge / þou ne sselst naȝt consenti / to
do zenne / mid þine bodye.

Þis heste uorbyet / to wylni mid wyl of herte / to
habbe uelaȝrede ulesslich / mid alle wyfmen² / out of
spoushod. And þe kueade tocenen wyþ-oute / þet byeþ
ymad / uor to draȝe zenne / ase byeþ / kueade wordes /
of zuyche manere. oþer yeffes / oþer kueade takinges.
And þe difference of þise heste / mid þe zixte / aboue
y-zed: zuo is / þet þe zixte heste uorbyet / þe dede
wyþ-oute. ac þis uorbyet / þe grantinge wyþinne. Vor
þe grantinge / to habbe uelaȝrede ulesslich / mid wyf-
men / þet ne is naȝt his be spouse: ys zenne dyadlich /

¹ MS. *neȝybores*.

² MS. *wyfmen*.

be þe dome / of godes spelle / þet zayþ. "Huo þet zizþ
ane wyfman / and wylneþ his ine herte: he heþ
y-zeneþed / ine hyre: ine his herte." þet is to zigge: wyþ
aperte wylni[n]gge / and mid þohte.

þE TENDE GODES HESTE.

þe tende heste / is þellich. "þou ne sselt naht
wylni þing / þet is þine nixte." þis heste uorbyet /
wyl to habbe oþre manne þing / by wyckede scele.

Ine þis heste / is uorbode enuie / of oþre manne
guode. oþer of oþre manne grace. Vor þe ilke enuie /
comþ of kueade couaytise / uor to habbe þet guod / oþer
þe ilke grace: þet he y-zizþ ine oþren. And þe ilke
couaytise / huanne þe *consentement* / and þe þohtes þer-
to: is dyadlich zenne. and a-ye þise heste. þazles /
lizte couaytise / to habbe oþre manne þing / by¹
guode scele: ne is no zenne. and yef þer is / eni kuead
arizinge / wyþ-oute wylle / and wyþ-oute grantinge / to
harmi oþren: hit ne is no zenne. and yef þer is zenne:
hit is lizt zenne.

þis byeþ þe ten hestes / huer-of þe þri uerste / ous
dizt wel to god. þe oþre zeuen / ous dizt to oure nixte.
þise ten hestes / byeþ to echen / þet heþ scele / and
elde / yhyealde to conne / and to done. Vor huo þet
deþ þerteyens / be his wytinde: zeneþeþ dyadliche.

þE TUELF ARTICLES / OF þE CRISTENE BELEAUE.

þyse byeþ þe tuelf articles / of þe cristene byleue /
þet ech man cristen / ssel yleue stedeuestliche. uor
oþerlaker / he ne may by yborþe / huanne he heþ wyt /
and scele. And þerof byeþ tuelf. by þe tale / of þe
tuelf apostles / þet hise zette to hyealde / and to loky /
to alle þon / þet wyleþ by y-borþe. þanne þe uerste / be-
longeþ to þe uader. þe zeuende: to þe zone. þe uerþe /
to þe holi gost. uor þet is þe byginni[n]ge / of the beleaue:
yleue ine þe holi trinite. þet is ine þe uader / and ine

The Tenth Com-
mandment.

Thou shalt not de-
sire the thing that
is thy neighbour's.

In this behest is
forbidden envy, of
which comes co-
vetousness, a
deadly sin.

Any evil arising
without will is no
sin, but if there be
sin, it is not dead-
ly but light.

These are the Ten
Behests, whereof
the three first di-
recteth us to God,
the other seven to
our neighbour.

The Twelve Arti-
cles of the Chris-
tian Belief.

There are twelve
articles of the
Christian belief,

"by the tale of the
twelve apostles."

The first belongs
to the Father,
the seven follow-
ing to the Son,
and the remaining
four to the Holy
Ghost.

¹ *wy* in MS.

þe zone / and ine þe holy gost. on god / an þri persones.
Alle þise articles / byþ ycontyened ine þe credo. / þet
þe tuelf apostles made. huer-of / ech zette his.

The first article
(of the Father)
was set by St
Peter.

þe uerste article. ys þellich. "Ich beleue ine god /
þe uader almizti / sseppere / of heuene / and of erþe."
þis article zette zaynte peter.

The second article
(of the Son's God-
head) was set by
St John.

þe oþer article / belongeþ to þe zone / aze to his
godhede. þet is to zigge / þet he is god. and is þellich.
"Ich beleue ine yesu crist / oure lhord / godes zone þe
uader / ine alle þinges / þet belongeþ to þe godhede / an
is onlepi þing / mid þe uader : bote of þe persone / þet
is oþer / þanne þe persone / of þe uader. þis article zette /
sayn Ion þe godspellere.

[Fol. 3. a.]

The third article
and the fifth treat
of the Son's man-
hood,

of his conception
and birth.

þe þridde article / and þe vifte / þet uolþeþ efter /
belongeþ to þe zone / ase to þe manhode : þet is to
zigge / ase þet he is man dyadlich. þanne mid þe þridde
article / is ycontened / þet he wes y-kend / of þe holi
gost / and y-bore of þe mayde Marie. þet is to onder-
stonde / þet he wes y-kend / ine þe Mayde Marie / be
þe dede / and by þe uirtu / of þe holi gost / and
noping / of dede / of man. And þe mayde Marie /
blefte eure mayde / an yhol be-uore / and efter. þis
article zette zayn Iacob / sayn Ionnes broþer.

This article was
set by Jacob,
St James' brother.

The fourth article
belongs to his
passion,

þe uerþe article / belongeþ to his passion. þet is to
zigge / þet he þolede dyap onder pouns pilate / þet wes
paen / and demere / ine þo time / ine ierusalem : by þe
romayns. Onder þo demere / wes Iesu crist y-demd /
wyþ wrong / to þe biddinge / of þri kuede ieus / and
y-do a rode / and dyad / and y-do in-to berieles. þis
article zette saynt andreu.

and was set by St
Andrew.

The fifth arti-
cle treats of the
"Harrowing of
Hell."

þe vifte article / zuo is / þet ha wente in-to helle /
efter his dyape / uor to draze þannes / and to deliuri þe
zaules / of þe holi uaderes. and of alle þon / þet uram þe
ginni[n]gge / of þe wordle storue / inzoþ & guode byleau /
and ine hope / þet hi ssolden by y-borþe / be him / uor þe
zenne / of þe uerste manne. hit behouede / þet alle

wenten / into helle and þere abyde þe guode / ine zikere hope. þet iesu crist / godes zone / ssolde come / his to deliuri / be þet he hedde behote / be his prophetis. And uor þo scele / wolde he / efter his dyape / wende in to helle. þet is to onderstonde / ine þo half / þet were þe halzen. Naȝt ine þo half : þet were þe uorlorene. þet weren dyade / ine hire zenne / and in hire misbileue. And þo ne droȝ he naȝt. uor hi byep uorlore / uor euremo. þis article / zette saynt philippe.

In hell abode the good, in sure hope of deliverance.

The wicked were left in hell, there to abide for ever.

This article set St Philip. The sixth is of Christ's resurrection,

þe xixte article / is of his arizinge. þet is to wytene. þet þanne þridde day / efter his dyape. uor to uoluelle þe writinges : [he] aros uram dyape / to liue. and sseawede him / to his deciples. and ham prouede / his arizinge : ine uele maneres / be uourti dazes. þis article / zette saynt¹ thomas.

and was set by St Thomas.

[¹ MS. sanyt)

þe zeuende article is. þet þane uourtazte day / efter his arizinge / huanne he hedde y-yete / mid his deciples to-uore ham / al aperteliche / steaz into heuene / þet is aboue / alle sseppe / þet ys ine heuene / al to godes riȝt half / þe uader / huer he him made. þis article / zette seynt bartholomeu.

The seventh article is, that 40 days after his rising Christ ascended into heaven.

This article set St Bartholomew.

þe eȝtende article is. þet he ssel come / ate daye of dome / to deme þe dyade / and þe libbinde. þe guode / and þe kueade. and yelde to echen / be þet he heȝ of guo / ine þise wordle. þise byep þe artikles / þet belongeþ / to þe zone. þis article zette seynt Matheu þe godsspellere.

The eighth article is, that he shall come at doomsday to judge quick and dead.

St Matthew set this article. The ninth article and the three last belong to the Holy Ghost.

þe nezende article / and þe þri laste : belongeþ / to þe holi gost. and is þellich. "Ich beleue / ine þe holi gost." þis article akseþ / þet me leue / þet þe holi gost / is þe yefpe / and þe loue / of þe uader / and of þe zone / huerof comþ / al þe guod of grace. and þet he is / onlepi god / an onlepi þing / mid þe uader / and þe zone / bote þe persone / þet is oþer / þanne þe persone of þe uader / and / of þe zone. þis article sette / saynt Iacob / zaynte Simones and saynte Iudes broþer.

The Holy Ghost is the gift and love of the Father and Son.

This article set St Jacob.

[Fol. 3. b.]

þe tende article is þellich. "Ich y-leue holy chereh

The tenth article

treats of the fellowship of saints,

In this article are understood the seven sacraments.

This article set St Simon. The eleventh article is the forgiveness of sins. St Jude set this article.

The twelfth article is to believe the general rising of the body, and life without end,

and everlasting punishment prepared for the forlorn.

By it we understand that both good and bad shall receive their reward in the body and soul as they have deserved in this life.

This article was set by St Matthew. Of the vision of St John.

St John saw a beast come out of the sea,

having a leopard's body, a bear's feet, a lion's throat, and it had seven heads and ten

generalliche / and þe mennesse of halzen " / þet is to zigge : þe uelazrede of alle þe halzen / and of alle þe guode men þet byeþ / and ssolle by. al to þe ende of þe wordle / and weren zepþe þe ginni[n]gge to gidere / ine þe byleau of Iesu crist. And ine þise article / byeþ onderstonde / þe zeue sacramens / þet byeþ ine holy cherche. þet is to wytene. cristninge. conferminge. þe sacrament of þe wyefde. ordre. spoushod. þe holy ssrifte. and þe laste : anoylinge. þis article zette sayn simoun.

þe enlefte is. to leue : þe lesnesse of zenne. þet god yefþ be þe uirtue / of his holi sacramens / þet byeþ ine holi cherche. þis article zette sayn Iude.

þe tuelfte article is. to leue / þe general arizinge of bodye. and þet lif / wyþ-oute ende. þet is þe blisse of paradis. þet god ssel yeue to ham / þet hit habbeþ of-guo / be guode beleau : and be guode workes. þis article / yefþ to onderstonde / his con[t]rarie. þet is / þe pine / wyþ-oute ende / þet god heþ agrayped / to þe uorlorene. þis article / ssel by onderstonde / ine zuyche manere : þet ech / by he guod / by he kued / ssel by ate daye of dome / arered uram dyape / to lyue / ine his oþene bodye / huer he ssel habbe an. and onderuonge his mede / ine bodye / and ine zaule / be þet he heþ of-guo / ine þise liue. an þeruore / ssolle þe guode / at þo daye / in bodye / and ine zaule / by ine lif / wyþ-oute ende. and þe kueade : uorlore euremo / ine bodye and ine zaule. þis article zette saynt Mappi.

OF þE SSEAWYNGE þET SEINT ION þE GODSPELLERE YZEȝ.

Mi lhord sanyng Ion / ine þe boc / of his sseawynge. þet is y-cleped / þe apocalipse : zuo zayþ / þet he yzeȝ a best / þet com out of the ze. wonderliche ydiȝt. and to moche dreduol. Vor þet bodi of þe beste : wes ase lipard. þe uet / weren of bere. þe prote / of lioun. and hit hedde / zeue heauedes. and ten hornes. and ope

þe ten hornes: ten corounes. And yze; saint Ion.
 þet þe ilke kuede best / hedde miȝte / of him-zelue /
 to viȝte / wyþ þe halȝen / an his to ouercome / and to
 ouermaistri. þis ilke best / zuo wonderuol / and zuo y-
 countrefeted / and dreduol: betocneþ / þane dyeuel /
 þet com out of þe ze / of helle / þet is uol / of alle
 zorȝe / and of alle biternesse. þet bodi of þe beste / ase
 zayþ saynt Ion. zuo wes ylich / to þe lipard. uor þet
 ase þe lipard / heþ diuers colurs: zuo heþ þe dyeuel /
 diuerse maneres / of waytinges / and of contac / uor to
 gily / an uor to uondi þe uolk. þe uet weren ilich / þe
 uet of bere. Vor else þe bere / þet heþ þe stre[n]gþe ine
 þe uet / and ine þe armes / halt strangliche. and bint /
 þet he heþ / onder his uet / and þet he becleþþ: alsuo
 deþ þe dyeuel ham / þet he heþ becleþt / and ouerþrawe
 be zenne. þe þrote wes of lion. uor his greate crueleþe /
 þet al wyle uorzuelȝe.

horns, surmount-
 ed by ten crowns.
 The wicked beast
 had might of him-
 self to fight with
 and overcome the
 saints.

This beast be-
 tokeneth the devil,
 who cometh out of
 the sea of hell;
 his gilles are de-
 noted by the leop-
 ard's spots, his
 strength by the
 bear's feet,

his cruelty by the
 lion's throat,
 for the devil will
 for-swallow all.

þE TOKNEN OF þE HEAUEDEN OF þE BESTE.

þe zeue heauedes / of þe beste of helle: byþ þe
 zeuen hauedliche zennes. be huichen / þe dyeuel drazþ
 to him / ase al þe wordle. Vor onneape y-uolþ / þet me
 ne uolþ / in-to þe þrote / of zome: of þe zeue heauedes.
 And þeruore / zayþ wel saynt Ion: þet hit hedde miȝte /
 a-ye þe halȝen. Vor in erþe / ne ys zuo holi man: þet
 moȝe / parfitliche be-uly / alle þe maneres of zenne. þet
 of þise zeue heuedes comeþ / wyþ-oute special priuilege
 of grace / else hit wes / ine þe mayde Marie / oþer ine
 zome oþren / be special grace / þet he hedde of god. þe
 ten hornes of þe beste / be-tokneþ / þe geltes of þe ten
 hestes / of oure lhorde / þet þe dieuel purchaseþ / also
 moche ase may / by þe zeuen / beuore yzed zennen. þe
 ten corounes aboue / betokneþ / þe ouercominge / þet
 hit heþ aboue / alle zenuolle / uor þet / he deþ his
 agelte / ine þe ten hestes.

The tokens of the
 heads of the beast.

[Fol. 4. a.]

The seven heads
 are the seven
 deadly sins.
 Every one falls
 into the throat of
 some of the seven
 heads.

None is so holy as
 to avoid all sins.

The 10 horns be-
 token the guilts
 of the 10 beheats.

The 10 crowns are
 the 10 victories he
 hath over sinners.

The first head of
the Beast.

ÞET UERSTE HEAUED OF ÞE BESTE.

The first head is

Pride,
2nd Envy,
3rd Anger,
4th Sloth,
5th Covetousness,
6th Gluttony,
7th Lechery.

These are all head-
sins, and begin-
ning of all wicked-
ness.

And first we will
talk of pride, the
first sin,

which was com-
mitted by Lucifer,

wherefore he and
his angels fell
from heaven.

Like him are all
that exalt
themselves above
others,

þet uerste heaued / of þe beste of helle : ys prede.
þet oþer / is enuie. þe þridde / wreþe. þe uerþe / sleauþe /
þet me clepeþ / ine clergie : accidyde. þe vifte / icinge.
in cle[r]gie / auarice. oþer couaytise. þe zixte / glotounye.
þe zeuende lecherie / oþer luxurie. Of þise zeue heauedes /
comþ ech manere zenne. and þeruore / hi byeþ y-cleped /
haued-zennes. uor þet hi byeþ / heaued / of alle kueade /
and of alle zennes. and ginninge / of alle kueade. be
hy dyadliche / be hy uenial. þanne / ech of þe ilke
zeuen him to-delþ / ine uele halues. And uerst / we
willeþ zigge / of þe zenne of prede / uor þet wes þe
uerste zenne / and þe aginninge / of alle kueade. vor
prede / brek uerst uelazrede / and ordre / huanne
lyztbere þe angel / uor his greate uayrþede / an his
greate wyt : wolde by aboue / þe oþre angeles / and him
wolde emni / to god / þet hine zo uayr / an zuo guod :
hedde y-mad. And þeruore / he vil uram heuene : and
becom dyeuel. and he / and al his uelazrede. Hym
anlikneþ / alle proude / þet uelazrede / and ordre of
men / ondeþ / and brekþ / huazne hi wyllþ / by
aboue oþren. and more by alozed / and y-preyzed /
þanne eni oþer / þet betere byeþ worþ.

The Might of
Pride.

ÞE MYȜTE OF PREDE.

Pride blindeth
men,

so that they are
beguiled by the
devil whether they
be high, fair, rich,
wise, hardy, or
honourable,
but especially
great lords,

[*wytes ?*]

þis zenne of prede / ys to dreduol. uor hi ablent
men. zuo þet hi ham-zelue / ne knaweþ / ne ne zyeþ.
þet is þe wel strang / and þe wel special ald / to þe
dyeule / huer-of he be-gyleþ / þe heze men / and þe
uayre / and þe riche / and þe wyse / and þe hardi / and
þe worþuolle. And generalliche / ech manere of uolk. ac
specialliche / þe greate lhordes / zuo þet hy ham zelue /
ne knawyþ / ne yzeþ / hire misdedes / ne hire folies / ne
hire wyttes.¹ þanne is hit / þe meste periluse ziknesse /
þet is of oþren. Vor-zoþe / he is ine grat peril / to huam /

alle triacle / went in to uenym. Also deþ techinge / and to whom teaching
chastisement / to þe proude. Vor þe more / þet me and chastisement
him wy[p]nimp / and blameþ / and chastep : þe more / profit not.
he him wreþep. and þe more him wereþ.

Prede / is þe dyeules oze doȝter / þet heþ / grat Pride is the devil's
del / ine his kende. Prede / werreþ wyþ god / of his own daughter, and
guode. And god / þraup doun prede / and werreþ wiþ was against God.
him. Prede / is king / of wyckede þeawes. Hy is þe It is king of
lioun / þet al uorzuelþ. Prede astrup / alle þe guodes / wicked practices.
an alle þe graces / and alle þe guode workes / þet byeþ She is the lion that
ine manne. Vor prede / makeþ of elmesse / zenne. and devours all.
of uirtues / vices. and of guode workes / huer-of me
ssolde begge heuene : makeþ wyne helle.

[Fol. 4. b.]

þis zenne / is þe uerste / þet asayleþ / þane kniȝt / This sin is the
oure lhord / and huan¹ last let. Vor huanne he heþ / first that assailed
alle oþre kuedes ouercome : þanne him asayleþ prede / our Lord, and was
þe st[r]anglaker. the last to abandon
him.

HOU ME SSEL TO-DELE ÞE ZEUE BOȝES OF PREDE.

The Seven Boughs
of Pride.

þis zenne him to-delp / and spret / ine zuo uele
deles / þet onneape / me may hise telle. Ac zeuen
principals doles / þer byeþ. þet byeþ / ase zeue boȝes /
þet guoþ out / and byeþ y-bore / of ane wyckede rote.

þanne / þe uerste boȝ of prede : is / ontreuþe. þe oþer :
onworphede. þe þridde : ouerweninge. þet we² clepeþ /
presuncion. þe uerþe folebayrie. þet we² clepieþ /
ambicion. þe vifte : ydele blisse. þe zixte : ypocrisie.
þe zeuende : wyckede drede. To þise zeue diȝtinges /
belongeþ alle þe zennes / þet byþ y-bore of prede. Ac
ech of þise zeue boȝes / heþ uele smale tuyegges.

I. Untruth,
II. Despite,
III. Presumption,
IV. Ambition,
V. Idle-bliss,
VI. Hypocrisy,
VII. Wicked
dread.

þe uerste boȝ of prede / þet is / ontreuþe. he him to-
delp / in þri little boȝes. huer-of þe uerste / is kuead. The three twigs of
þo oþer : worse. þe þridde / alþerworst. þe on is voul- Untruth.
hede. þe oþer : wodhede. þe þridde : renoyrye. I. Foulhood,
hede : generalliche / is ine eche zenne. vor no zenne / II. Foolishness,
ne is / wyþ-oute uoulhede. and zuo beginneþ / alle III. Apostasy.

I. Foulhood

¹ huan?² me?

or Ingratitude is
to forget God and
his gifts.

zennes / be voughede. Ac þe uoughede / þet we spekeþ
of hier specialiche / þet comþ of prede. and is a man-
yere / of ontreuþe : is a vice / þet is y-cleped / ine clergie :
ingratitude / þet is uoryeti[n]ge / of god / and of his guodes.
þet me ne þonkeþ him naȝt / ase me ssolde do. ne him
ne yeldeþ þonkes / of his guodes / þet he ous heþ ydo.

He is a great
villain that never
returns thanks for
kindness received.

Vor-zoþe he is wel vileyn / and ontrewe / auoreye his
lhord / þet alle guod / him heþ y-do. and him ne
þonkeþ / ac uoryet : and yelt him / kuead uor guod.
and vileynye / uor corteysye. þe ilke vileynye / deþ
man to god / huanne he / ne beþengþ him naȝt / of þe
guodes / þet god him heþ y-do / and him deþ alneway.
and naȝt him þonkeþ / ac rapre him / ofte werreþ / ine
þet / þet he useþ kueadliche / and aye godes wil.

Such villany do
those who do not
thank God,

but use his gifts
badly,

þet is wel grat vileynie / ase me þingþ / þet grat guod-
nesse / onderua[n]gþ / and ne dayneþ naȝt / to zigge : grat
þank. And / yet hit is more grat : huanne / me him
uorzaȝþ / oþer huanne / me him uoryet. ac þe ilke / is
to grat : huanne echedaye / onderuangþ þe guodnesses :
and echedaye / yelt kuead / uor guod.

and each day re-
turn evil for good.

We have no gifts
but what God has
given us, be they
of nature, of for-
tune, or of grace.

þe ilke / þet þanne wel þengþ / and ofte lokede / to
þe guodes / þet god him heþ ido / and deþ alneway : and
þet no guod / he ne heþ : þet god ne heþ / hit him
y-yeue. ne guodes of kende : ase uayrhede. and helpe.
an strengþe of bodye. an sleȝþe. and naturel wyt /
auoreye þe zaule. ne guodes of auenture. ase richesses.
worssipe. and heȝnesse. ne guodes of grace. ase byþ
uirtues. and guode workes. wel ssolde he þonki god :
of alle his guode. Vor guodnesse : oþer akseþ.

Let us thank God
for all his gifts to
us.

II. Folly or mad-
ness.
The man is out of
his wits,

þe oþer / ontreuþe. þet comþ of prede : is wodhede.
me halt ane man wod. þet is out of his wytte / ine
huam : skele is miswent. þanne wext ariȝt / þe ilke fol.
and miswent. and wel yzed / wod. þet wytindeliche /
and hardiliche / þe guodes / þet ne byeþ naȝt his. ake
byeþ. his lhordes guodes. huer-of / him behoueþ /
straitliche / yelde rekeninge / and scele. þet is to

who misuses his
lord's goods
whereof behoveth
him yeldaccount,

[Fol. 5. a.]

wytene / þe guodes / of suo grat pris / and þe timliche
 guodes / þet he heþ / ine lokinge. þe uirtues of þe bodie /
 and þe þoztes / and þe consentemens / and þe willes of þe
 zaules / wastep / and despendep / ine folyes / and ine
 outrages / to-uore þe ezen / of his lhorde. an him ne
 poruayþ / of his rekeninge. and wel wot / þet rekeni /
 him behoueþ. an ne wot / huanne. ne þane day. ne þe
 oure. Zuych folie / is wel y-cleped / onwythede. Of
 zuiche vices / byep uolle / þe greate proude men / þet useþ
 kueadliche / þe greate guodes / þet god ham heþ ylend.

and thinketh not
 of the day of
 reckoning.

Of such vices the
 great proud men
 are full.

þe þridde ontreuþe þet comþ of prede: ys renayrie. III. Apostasy.
 He ys wel renay / þet / þet land þet he halt of his lhorde /
 dep in-to þe hond of his uyende. and dep him manhode.
 Zuych zenne makeþ ech þet zenezep dyadliche. uor þanne
 alzo moche ase of him is he dep manhod to þe dyeule /
 and becomþ his þrel. and him yelt al þet he halt of god /
 and bodi / and zaule. and oþre guodes. þet he dep to
 þe seruice of þe dyeule. And alþaȝ he by be his
 zigginge cristen: he renayþ be dede / and sseweþ þet
 he ne is naȝt. Ac specialliche ine þri maneres is man
 ycleped reney. and uals cristen. oþer uor þet he ne
 beleþ / þet he ssolde / ase dep þe bougre: and þe
 heretike / and þe apostate. þet reneyep hire bileaue.
 Oþer uor þet he agelt þe byleaue þet he byleþ. Alsuo
 doþ þe uorzuorene. and þe leȝers of þe byleaue. Oþer
 beleþ more þanne he ssolde. ase doþ þe deuines¹ / and
 þe wichen / and þe charmeresses þet workeþ be þe
 dyeules crefte. and alle þo þet ine zuyche þinges yleueþ
 and doþ hire hope: zenezep dyadliche. Vor alle zuiche
 þinges byep aye þe byleaue. and þeruore his uorbyet
 holy cherche. þise byep þe manieres of on-treuþe / þet
 is þe uerste boȝ of prede.

as doth he who
 pays homage to
 the devil.

Such a one is only
 Christian in name
 and not in deeds.

False Christians
 are those who sin
 against their
 belief, as the for-
 sworn, liars, and
 witches.

[¹ *deuineres* ?]

Such men sin
 deadly,
 for they sin
 against belief.

þe oþer boȝ of prede.

þe oþer boȝ / þet comþ out / of þe stocke / of prede: The Second Bough
 zuo is onworþnesse [despit] / þet is / wel grat zenne. of Pride is Despite
 (Contempt).

There are three
sorts of this sin.
I. Not praising
others as they de-
serve.

II. Not to honour
and reverence
where one should.

III. Not to show
obedience to those
over us.

Think how often
thou hast dis-
praised others,

how thou hast fail-
ed in giving due
honour to God, to
His mother, to
His saints, and
His angels,

[Fol. 5. b.]

and how many
times thou hast
badly served our
Lord Jesus Christ,
in not hearing
sermons,

and in jangling
and jesting at
mass.

Think too how
little honour thou
hast shown to the
body of Christ
when thou sawest
or receivedst it,

not having pre-
pared for it

And þaz hit by zuo / þet no zenne dyadlich / by wiþ-
oute onworþnesse / of god: alneway be þet / þet we spekeþ
of onworþhede / hyer specialliche / ine þri maneris / me
may zenezi / be þise zenne. Oþer uor þet / me ne
prayzeþ / oþren arizt / ine herte / ase me ssolde. Oþer
uor þet / me ne berþ nazt worssipe / and reuerence :
þer þet me ssolde. Oþer uor þet / þet me ne bouzþ nazt
arizt : to ham / þet me ssolde / rihtuolliche bouze.

Nou þench riht wel / ine þine herte / hou ofte / þe
hest y-do / þe ilke zenne / þet þou hest / ine þine herte :
þe ilke / þet more byeþ worþ / þanne þou / onworþest.
uor zome graces wyþoute / þet god / þe heþ y-yeue. oþer
uor noblesse / oþer uor prowesse. oþer uor richesse.
oþer uor wyt. oþer uor uayrhede. oþer uor oþre guodes /
huet þet hi by : hueruore / þou þe prayzest / more þanne
þe ssoldest. and oþren lesse.

Afterward / þench hou ueleziþe þou hest / litel
ybore worþssipe / and reuerence / to ham / þet þou
ssoldest. Auerst / to god. and to his moder. and to his
halzen. and to þe angles of heuene. vor þer ne is non /
to-yans huam / þet þou ne hest agelt / ine onworþnesse
[despit]. oþer be onworþnesse / þet þou hest / oft-
ziþes / euele / and wroþe / y-loked hire festes.

After þan þench / hou ueleziþe / þou hest misserued /
oure lhord Iesu crist. oþer ine þet / þet þou ne hest
nazt bleþeliche / y-hyerd his seruise. ne y-zed his benes.
ne yhyerd sermons. and huanne þe ssoldest. yhere his
messe / oþer his sermon / at cherche : þou iangledest /
and bourdedest / to-uor god. and ine þet / þu bere him /
litel worþssipe.

Afterward / hou þou hest ueleziþe / litel ybore worþ-
ssipe. to þe bodye / of Iesu crist / þanne þou hit yzeze.
oþer þanne / þou hit onderuinge. ine þet / þet þou nere
nazt / digneliche y-dizt / be ssrifþe. and by vorþen-
chinge. Oþer be auenture / þet wors is : þet þou hit

underuinge / ine dyadlich zenne / be þine wytinde / þet beforehand by
is grat onworþnesse. [despit.] shrift and repent-
ance.

Afterward / to þine zucte uelaze / and to þine / guode
lokere / þin angle. þet alneway / þe lokeþ. hou uele
ssames / þou hest him y-do / ine þet / þou dedest / þine
zennes / beuore him.

Afterward þench / hou ueleziþe / þou hest y-by / Think how often
onbozsam to þine uader / and to þine moder. and to thou hast been
þan / to huam þou ssoldest bouze : and bere honour. Yef disobedient to thy
þou wylt / ine þise manere / recordy þi lif : þou ssett father and mother.
ysi / þet þou hest / more ziþe y-zenezd / ine zuyche If thou wilt thus
manere / of prede / þet is ycleped / onworþnesse [despit] : record thy life,
þet þou / ne kanst nazt telle. thou shal : see that
thou hast sinned
more times than
thou canst num-
ber.

þe .iiij. BOȝ OF PREDE.

þe þridde boȝ of prede : is / arrogance. þet me clepeþ / The third Bough
opweninge / oþer opnimminge. þanne þe man / wenþ of Pride is Arro-
more / of him-zelue / þanne he ssolde. þet ys to zigge : gance, or Upween-
þet wenþ by / more worþ : þanne he by. oþer more may : ing.
þanne he moȝe. oþer more conne : þanne he can. oþer A man is guilty of
wenþ by more worþ. oþer more moȝe. oþer more conne : this when he
þanne eny oþer. þis zenne / is þe strengþe / of þe thinketh toomuch
dyeule. vor he lokeþ / and norisseþ / alle þe greate of himself, and
gostliche zennes. þis zenne him sseaweþ / ine uele less of others.
maneres. oþer be dede / oþer be speche. ac nameliche / This sin nourish-
ine zix maneres. þet is to wytene / ine onlepihede. uor eth all the great
þe proude / and þe ouerwenere / wenep more by worþ / spiritual sins.
oþer conne : more þanne enie oþre. and ne daynep nazt This sin showeth
do / ase oþre / þet more byep worþ / þanne he by. ac itself in six ways.
rapre / wile by / onlepi ine his dedes. þet is þe 1. Singularity.
zenne / be huam ouerweninge is ine dede. The proud and the
as others.

þe oþer is / fol niminge / of greate spendinge. þet II. Prodigality.
me clepeþ prodigalité. huanne he deþ / to moche des- This is a foolish
pense. oþer / of his oȝen : oþer / of oþre manne : uor to spending of
by / y-praysed. and þeruore / þet me him hyalde / þe money, in order to
more large / and þe more corteys. be praised and
held the more
liberal and court-
eous.

III. False Strife.
This is to support
a thing we know
to be wrong.

þe þridde kuead / þet comp of ouerweninge : ys fole
opnimminge of uals strif. ase zayþ / salomon. þet is to
zigge. huo þet nimþ / a uals strif anhand / and wot
wel / þet hit is uals. and hit uolþeþ.

IV. Boasting
(Yelping).
The boaster is the
Cuckoo, he can
only sing of him-
self.

[Fol. 6. a.]
This sin is seen in
those who yelp
of their own wit,
descent, works, or
prowess.

He sinneth
doubly who pays
others to extol
him, and to lie
and boast of his
nobleness.

þe uerþe tuyg / of þe ilke boþe / huer-by / þe proude /
sseaweþ prede / of his herte : is yelpingge. þet is / wel
uoul zenne / and to god : an to þe wordle. þe yelpere is
þe cockou. þet ne kan / naȝt zinge / bote of him-zelue :
þis zenne is ybounde ine þan / þet be his oþene mouþe /
him yelþþ. oþer of his wytte. oþer of his kenne. oþer
of his workes. oþer of his prouesse. Ac he him dobleþ
ine ham / þet þe yelpere / and þe lozeniour / zechep /
and redeþ / and yefþ ham of his / uor ham to praysi.
and uor to zigge of ham : þet hi / ne dorre naȝt zigge.
and uor to lyege of ham : and te grede hare noblesse.

V. Scorn. This is
the wont of the
proud, who scorn
good men and
those they see
living aright.

þe vifte out-kestinge / of þe ilke stocke / is scorn.
Vor þet is þe wone / of þe proude : ouer-wen[er]e / þet
him ne is naȝt ynoȝ / to onworþi / ine his herte / þe
opre. þet ne habbeþ naȝt / þe graces / þet he wenþ
habbe. ac makeþ / his bisemers / and his scornes. and
þet wors is : bisemereþ and scorneþ þe guode men. and
of ham / þet he yziþ / wende to guode. þet is wel grat
zenne. and wel dreduol. Ac / uor hire euele tongen :
hi miswendep / moche uolk / to done wel.

By their evil
tongues they pre-
vent much folk
from doing well.

VI. Opposition
(Withstanding).
The proud over-
weener will not
endure opposition,
chastening, or
advice.

þe xizte keſtinge out / of þe ilke boþe : is wyþ-
ſtandinge. þet is / huanne þe man wyþſtant / to alle
ham : þet guod / him wolde. Vor þe proude / ouer-
wenere : yef me him wiþnimþ : he him defendeþ. yef
me him chaſteþ : he is wroþ. yef me him wel ret : he
ne leþþ nenne / bote his oþene wyt. Hit is a perilous
zikneſſe / þet ne may naȝt polye : þet me him take. and
to þan / þet alle medicines : went in to uenim.

This sin is a peril-
ous sickness,
since all medi-
cines turn into
venom.

þe .iiij. BOȝ OF PREDE.

The Fourth Bough
of Pride is Foul
Desire (Ambi-
tion).

þe uerþe boȝ of prede / is fole wylninge. þet me
clepeþ / ine clergie : ambicion. þet is / kuead wilninge

heȝe to cliue. þis zenne / is þe dyeules panne / of helle. This sin is the
 huerinne / he makeþ his friinges. þes boȝ him spret / This bough
 ine uele manyeres / arizthalf / and alefthalf. Vor þe spreadeth right
 ilke / þet wylneþ / heȝe to cliue : to zome / ha wyle and left.
 queme. and þerof wexeþ / uele zennes : ase arizthalf. On the one side it
 þet is to wytene : lozengerie. simulacion. folliche yeue : appears in flattery
 uor þet me ssel him hyealde / corteys / and large. To and simulation,
 opren / ha wyle harmy. and þerof comþ þe zenne / a- on the other in
 lefthalf. ase to miszigge / to ham / þet he wyle harmi : slander
 him uor to anheȝi. and him arereþ blame / and wylneþ / and evil will ;
 þane dyap / of þan / þet halt / þet he wenþ come to /
 and bezuykynges. and euel red : *conspiracions*. strif. in deceit, treach-
 and uele opre zennes / þet wexeþ / of þise queade boȝe. ery, bad advice,
 strife.

þe .v. BOȝ OF PREDE.

þe uifte boȝ of prede / is ydele blisse. þet is / fole / The Fifth Bough
 likinge / of fole herynge. þanne he uelþ / ine his herte of Pride is Vanity
 wytindeliche / of þet he is / oper wenþ by. yhered / of (Idle-bliss).
 zome þinge / þet he heþ ine him / oper wenþ habbe. He that loves to
 and wyle by yhered. þerof / huerof / he ssolde herie be praised,
 god. And þeruore / ydeleblisse / benimþ god / and
 stelþ / þet his is. Vor of alle oure guodes : he ssel
 habbe þe worpssipe / and þe herynge. and we / þe
 wynny[n]gge. robbeth God and
 stealeth that
 which is His ; for
 of all our goods He
 shall have the
 worship and hon-
 our, and we the
 use of them.

Ydeleblisse : is þe grete wynd / þet þraup down / Idle-bliss is a
 þe greate tours / and þe heȝe steples / and þe greate great wind throw-
 beches / ine wodes / þraup to grounde. an þe greate ing down great
 helles / makeþ to resye. þet byeþ / þe heȝe men / and towers, high tem-
 þet byeþ / mest worþ. þet is þe dyeules peni / huer- ples, and great
 mide he bayþ / alle þe uayre pane-worþes / ine þe beeches in woods.
 markatte / of þise wordle / þet byeþ / þe guode workes.
 And uor þet / þer byeþ / þri manere of guodes / þet
 man heþ of god. and þet þe dyeuel / wyle begge / mid
 his pans : þeruore / him to-delp þis boȝ / ine þri manere / It is the devil's
 smale boȝes / huer-of wexeþ / ech manere zenne / þet no penny wherewith
 clerek / ne kan telle. þe ilke þri manere guodes / þet he buyeth good
 works.

[Fol. 6. b.]

It spreadeth into
three small
boughs.

The goods that we have of God are,
1. goods of nature,
2. goods of fortune,
3. goods of grace.

The kindly goods are those pertaining to the body or the soul.

The bodily goods are health, beauty, strength, prowess, nobility, good tongue, and good discourse.

The spiritual goods are clear and subtle wit and a good understanding.

For all these gifts we ought to thank God.

Nevertheless the proud sell them to the devil for the false penny of idle-bliss.

The goods of fortune (hap) are highness, riches, delights, prosperity.

When the lady of fortune turns her wheel to man, then blow to him all the twelve winds of idle-bliss,

and in his prosperity he thinks of his dignity, prosperity, riches, lusts, fellowship, his fair household, his manners, his ridings, and abundance of fair robes;

to the decking of his house, and to his ease;

man heþ of god. byþ / þe guodes of kende. þe guodes of hap. þe guodes of grace. þe kendaleche guodes / byþ þo / þet me clepeþ / by kende. oþer / aye þet body : oþer / aye þe zaule. Auorye þet bodi : ase helpe. uayrhede. strengþe. prouesse. noblesse. guode tonge. guode rearde. Auorye þe zaule : ase elier wyt. wel uor to understonde. and sotil wyt / wel uor to vynde / guode onderstondinge : wel to ofhealde. And þe uirtues of kende / huerby / som ys kendaleche : more þanne oþer. oþer larger / oþer milder / oþer graciouser. oþer atempres. and wel y-ordayned. Of alle þise yeffes : me ssel þonki god / and serui / uor þet hi comeþ alle of him. þazles þe proude / hise zelp to þe dyeule / uor þane ualsne peny / of ydele¹ blisse. and werreþ ofte god / of alle his guodes. huer-of / he ssolde þonki god. And huo þet nimþ wel yeme / ine alle þise guodes of kende / þet ich habbe / ssortliche y-tald : by hit zenne / be ydele blisse / ine to uele maneres / þet / ech may betere y-zy / yne him-zelue / yef he wyle / wel studie : þet oþre ne conne him zigge.

þe guodes of hap : byþ heznesses. riches. delices. and prosperites. huerof me þengþ / ine uele maneres. Vor huanne þe lheuedi of hap / heþ hire huezel y-went. to þe manne / and arered. and yzet to þe hezþe of hare huezel / ase [þe]² melle to þe wynde. and þere heze y-cluie. þere blaweþ / alle þe tuelf wyndes : of ydele blisse. Vor huanne þe ilke / þet is zuo heze arise / ine prosperité / þengþ in his herte / uerst / to þe digneté. efterward / to his prosperité. efterþan / to his riches. efterward / to his lostes / þet his body heþ. efterþan / to þe greate uelazrede / þet him uolzeþ. efterward / to þe uayre mayné / þet him serueþ. efterþan / to his uayre maneres. efterward / to his uaire ridinges. efte[r]ward / to þe plenté / of uayre robes. efterþan / to þe diztinge / of his house / wyþ eyse of loste / and oþre manere har-

¹ MS. *ydele*

² þe is incorrectly erased in MS.

neys / þet zuo moche is uayr / and noble. efterward /
to þe greate presens. and to þe greate festes / þet me
him makeþ oueral. efterþan / to his guode los / and to
his prayzings / þet oueral uleþ. þus him ioisseþ and
him glorifieþ þe wreche / ine his herte. zuo þet he not /
huer he ys. þise byeþ þe yeffes / þet comeþ of ydele
blisse. þet is to wytene xij. maneres of uondinge of ydele
blisse. þet habbeþ þo : ine heȝ stat. oþer ine þe wȝrdle /
oþer ine religion. oþer clerk. oþer lewed.

to great feasts,
and to his good
fame.

Then he so rejoic-
eth and glorifieth
that he knoweth
not where he is.

þe guodes of grace. byeþ uirtues / and guode workes.
And aye þise guodes / ofte blaup þe stranglaker / ydele
blisse. and ofte uelþ / þe greatte traues / and þe heȝeste.
þet byeþ / þe meste guode men. And [þou] sselst y-wyte /
þet yne uirtues / and ine guode workes : uondeþ þe
dyeuel / be ydele blisse / ine þri maneres. þe on / zuo
is / ine herte / wyþinne / huanne me yherþ / of þe
guodes / þet me deþ / priueliche. ase of benes. oþer / of
priué workes. and wenþ þe man / by betere mid god :
þanne he by. þe oþer / zuo ys / huazne he heþ / ane
fole blisse ine him / of þet / he yherþ / oþer y-ziþ / of
his guode namecophede. and þet he is ypraysed. and
y-hyealde uor guod man. þe þridde zuo is / huazne he
wilneþ / and zekþ / and porchaceþ los / and name-
cophede. and in zuiche onderstondinge / deþ his
guodes / naȝt uor god propreliche : ac uor þe wordle.

The goods of grace
are virtues and
good works :

these the devil
trieth in three
ways.

[Fol. 7. a.]

1st. He makes
man think himself
better with God
than he is.

2nd. He causes
him to be pleased
at hearing himself
praised as a good
man.

3rd. He makes
him desire and
seek a good name,
not for God's
sake, but for the
world's.

þE ZIXTE BOȝ OF PREDE.

þe xixte boȝ of prede : is ypocrisye. þet is a zenne /
þet makeþ to ssewy / þe guod wyþ-oute / þet ne is
naȝt / wyþ-inne. þanne byeþ þo / ypocrites / þet makeþ
ham guode men / and ne byeþ naȝt. þet makeþ more
strengþe / to habbe þane name of guod man : þanne þe
zoþnesse : and þe holinesse. And þis hire to-delf / ine
þry. Vor þer is / an ypocrisye / uoul. and anopre /
fole. and þe þridde / sotil. þo byeþ / uoule ypocrites /
þet doþ / hyre uoulhedes / ine halkes : And sseawep

The Sixth Bough
of Pride is Hypo-
crisy.

Those are hypo-
crites who pretend
to be good men but
are not truly so.

There are three
kindsof hypocrisy,
foul, foolish, and
subtle.

Those are foul
hypocrites who do
their foul deeds in
corners ;

and such men our Lord compares to painted and gilded sepulchres.

The foolish hypocrites keep the body chaste, so as to be esteemed of men; thus they make false money out of good metal. The subtle hypocrites aspire to dignities, and hide their evil disposition,

but when they gain their positions they discover themselves in their true colours,

and exhibit their pride, avarice, and malice.

ham guode / to-uore þe uolke. Zuiche clepeþ / oure lhord : berieles ypeynt. and y-gelt. þo byeþ / fole ypocrites / þet ynoȝ ham lokeþ klenliche / to þe bodye / and doþ manie penonces / an guode. principalliche : uor þe los / of þe wordle. uor þet / me halt ham / guode men. þo byeþ wel foles. uor / of guod metal : hy makeþ / ualse moneye. þo byeþ ypocrites / sotyls. þet sotilliche / wylleþ heȝe cliue. and steleþ / þe dingnetes / and þe baylyes. Hy doþ / al þet guod man ssel do : zuo þet no man / ne may his knawe / al-huet þanne / þet hi byþ uol wexe / and heȝe yeliue / ine dyngnetes. And þanne / sseweþ hy þe kueades / þet were / y-hole / and yroted / ine þe herte. þet is to wytene : prede. auarice. malice. and oþre kueade dedes. huer-by me knauþ aperteliche : þet / þet trau / nes neure guod. and þet hit wes / al fayntise / and ypocrisie : al þet he hedde beuore y-ssewed. þeruore / hit is zoþ yzed. “ Ne sselt þou neure y-wyte / huet man ys : alhuet he ys / þer he wyle by.”

ÞE ZEUENDE BOȝ OF PREDE.

The Seventh Bough of Pride is foul dread and shame, i. e. when one drea'teth the world more than God.

This sin is the daughter of pride, and maketh men to forsake God and please the world.

þe zeuende boȝ / of prede / ys / fol drede / and fole ssame / huane me let / wel to done / uor þe wordle / þet me ne by / yhyealde ypocrite / ne papelard / huer me dret more þe wordle : þanne god. þe ilke ssame / comþ of kueade kuemynges / þet me wyle kueme / þe kueade. And þeruore / is hy doȝter of prede. and þe zeuende boȝ / heȝliche. and makeþ ofte / lete þet guod to done : and do þet kuead / uor to kueme kueadliche to þe wordle.

The Second Head of the Beast of Hell.

The second head of the beast is Envy, an adder that poisoneth all. Envy is death's mother, for by the devil's envy death came into the world.

ÞET OÞER HEAUED / OF ÞE BESTE OF HELLE.

þet oþer heaued / of þe kueade beste : is enuie. þet is þe eddre / þet al / enuynemeþ. Enuie / is moder / to þe dyabe. Vor by þe enuie / of þe dyeule : com dyap / to þe wordle / þet is þe zenne / þet mest ariȝt / makeþ man / ilich þe dyeule / his uader. Vor

þe dyeuel / ne hateþ / bote opres guod. and ne loueþ /
 bote opres harm. and zuo deþ / þe enuious. þe en-
 uious / ne may ysy / þet guod of opren / nanmore /
 þanne þe oule / oþer þe calouwe mous / þe briztnesse /
 of þe zonne. þe ilke zenne / him to-delp / ine þri
 bozes / hezliche. Vor þe ilke zenne / anuenameþ /
 alperuerst / þe herte / of þe enuious. and efterward /
 þane mouþ and efterward / þe workes. þe herte of þe
 enuious / ys enuened / and suo miswent. þet he ne
 may / oþre manne guod / yzy / þet hit him ne uorþingþ /
 wyþinne þe herte. and demþ kueadliche. and þet he
 yziþ / oþer þet / he yherþ : nimp hit to kueade wytte /
 and of al / makeþ his harm. zuo moche / þet to þe
 herte / of þe enuious / þoztes uenimouses / of uals
 dom / þet me ne hise may telle. Efterward þanne / þe
 enuious y-herþ / oþer yzyþ / oþremanne kued / huet þet
 hit by / oþer kuead of bodye / ase dyap / oþer ziknesse.
 oþer kuead of auenture [hap]. ase pouerté / oþer ad-
 uersité. oþer kuead gostlich / ase huanne he yherþ / þet
 zome / þet me hyelde guode men : ys y-blamed / of
 zome vice. Of þelliche þinges / him gleden ine his
 herte. Efterward / huanne he yziþ / oþer yherþ / þe
 guod of opren. by hyt / guod of kende / oþer guod of
 hap / oþer guod of grace / huerof we habbeþ / aboue y-
 speke : þanne him comp / a zorze to þe herte / þet he
 ne may by ine reste / ne maky gledenesse / ne uayr
 semblant. Nou þou miht ysy / þet þe venimouse herte /
 of þe enuiose / zenezep generalliche : ine þri maneres.
 ine ualse demynges. ine awarzedede gledenesse. ine worse
 zorzes. alsuo he zenezep by þe mouþe. Vor hit be-
 houep / þet zuich wyn / yerne by þe teppe : ase þer
 is / ine þe tonne. And uor þet / þe herte / wes uol of
 uenym : hit behouep / þet hit lhape / out be þe mouþe.
 þanne of þe mo[u]þe / of þe enuious / comeþ out / þri
 manere wordes uenimouses. huerof spekeþ dauip / ine þe
 sature. þet “ þe mouþ / of þe enuious : is uol of cor-

[Fol. 7. b.]

The envious man
 dislikes to see the
 prosperity of other
 men,
 just as the owl and
 bat dislike the
 brightness of the
 sun.
 This sin is divided
 into three boughs.
 It poisons, 1. the
 heart, 2. the
 mouth, 3. the
 works of man.
 The envious heart
 cannot bear to look
 upon another
 man's happiness.

When the envious
 man heareth of
 another's misfor-
 tune, sickness,
 poverty, &c.,

he rejoiceth in
 his heart.

So men's happi-
 ness or joy cause
 him to be sorrow-
 ful in heart.

Thus the envious
 heart sinneth in a
 threefold manner,

1. in false deem-
 ings.
2. in wicked glad-
 ness.
3. in worse sor-
 row.
 He sinneth also
 by the mouth,
 for his heart be-
 ing full of venom,
 it leapeth out by
 the mouth, in the
 form of cursing,

bitterness, and
treachery.

The envious hath
three manners of
venom in deeds.

The envious man
is like the basi-
lik, no greenness
may last before
him.

Corn has three
stages, it is first as
in the grass,
afterward in ear,
afterward it is full
of fruit.

1. The envious
man tries to
quench the begin-
ning of goodness
that he sees in
others.

2. He tries to
slander and to
destroy those
flourishing in
goodness.

[Fol. 8. a.]

3. He is full of sor-
row and bitterness
towards those who
are established in
goodness.

This sin is very
perilous, and
against the Holy
Ghost.

He who sinneth
against the Holy
Ghost shall nei-
ther have mercy in
this world nor in
the other, because
this sin cannot be
repented of.

singe / and of biterhede / an of bezuykyngē." Of
corsyngē: uor þe guodes of oþren / he missayþ / and
hise lesseþ / alsemoche / ase he may. Of byterhede :
uor þe kueades / of oþren / he hise moreþ / and arereþ /
be his miȝte. Of bezuykyngē. vor al þet he yziȝþ / oþer
yherþ : he went hit to kueade / and hit demþ / ualslyche.
Efterward / þe enuiou / heþ þri maneres / of uenim
ine dede : ase he heþ / ine moupe / and ine herte.
uor kende / of þe enuiou : is to wiþdraȝe / and uor to
destrue / be his miȝte : alle guod / by hit lite / by hit
lesse / by hit uoldo. þanne is he / of þe kende / of þe
baselycoc. uor no grenhede / ne may yleste / beuore
hym. ne in gerse / ne ine busse / ne ine trauwe. þanne
by þe godspelle : þet corn heþ þri stas.¹ uor hit is uerst
ase ine gerse / efterward : ine yere. efterward / is uol
of frut / and al ripe. Alzuo þer byeþ zome / þet habbeþ
guod ginninge / wel uor to libbe / and to profiti / and
byeþ ase ine gerze. þe ilke / him payneþ / þe enuiou /
uor te kuenche / yef he may. þe oþre byeþ / ase ine
yere / þet wel floureþ / ine guode / and profiteþ. by hit
to god : oþer to þe wordle. and þo rebeleþ / þe enuyous /
uor to ssende / and to destrue : be hys miȝte. þe oþre
byeþ uol-mad / and ine grat stat / and doþ moche guod /
to god / and to þe wordle. Vor þet guode los / to
abatye : and hyre guodes to loȝy / þe enuiou agrayþeþ /
alle his gynnes. Vor þe more / þet þe guodes byeþ
greate : þe more zorȝeþ / þe enuiou. þis zenne / is zuo
perilous : þet onneape / me may / come / to riȝte uor-
þenchinge. Vor þet hi ys con[t]rarious / to þe holy goste /
þet is welle / of alle guode. And god zayþ / ine his
spelle / þet huo þet zeneȝeþ / a-ye þane holy gost : he ne
ssel neure / habbe merci / ine þise wordle / ne ine þe
oþre. uor he zeneȝeþ / of his oȝene kueadnesse. and me
ssel ine þet / hollyche onderstonde. Vor þer ne is /
no zenne / zuo grat : þet god ne uoryeþ / ine þise

¹ *stapes* or *states* ?

wordle / yef man him uorþingþ / and byt merci / uor þe zenne. þet werreþ / be his miȝte / þe grace / of þe holy gost. ine þet he werreþ / oþremanne guod gostlich / ase þe yewes / werrede Iesu crist / uor þe guodes / þet he dede.

There is no sin so great that God does not forgive if man will repent and seek for mercy.

þE ZENNEN AYE þE HOLY GOST.

And þou sselst ywyte / þet þer byeþ zix zennes / þet byeþ specialliche / ayens þe holy gost. þet is to wytene / ouerweninge. þet makeþ to moche sprede / þe merci of oure lhorde / and litel prayzeþ / his riȝtuolnesse. and þeruore / zenezep moche uolk / ine hope. þe oþer is / wanhope. þet benimþ god / his merci / ase ouerweninge : his riȝ[t]uolnesse. þe þridde is / wy[þ]stondinge. þet is / hardnesse of herte. huanne man / is y-hert / ine his kueadnesse / þet me ne may / him wende / and naȝt ne wyle / hym amendi. þe uerþe is / onworþhede / of penonce. þet is huanne man / ordayneþ ine his herte / þet he / him ne ssel naȝt uorþenche / his zenne. þe vifte is / to werri þe grace / of þe holy gost : ine oþren. þe zixte is / to werri zoþnesse / be his wytinde / and specialliche / þe zoþnesse / of þe cristine beleaue. Alle þise zennes / byeþ aye þe guodnesse : of þe holy gost. and byeþ / zuo greate / þet onneape / comeþ to riȝte uorþenchinge. and þeruore / byeþ hy / onneape uoryeue.

The six sins against the Holy Ghost.

I. Overweening.

II. Wanhope (despair).

III. Opposition (hardness of heart.)

IV. Despite of penance (impentence).

V. Striving against the Holy Ghost in others.

VI. Warring against truth, and especially against the Christian belief.

All these sins are against the Holy Ghost, and are so great as not to be repented of.

þE ÞRIDDE HEAUED OF þE KUEADE BESTE.

þe þridde heaued / of þe beste / is hate. Ac þou sselst ywyte / þet þer is an hate / þet is uirtue. þet þe guode man heþ / aye þet kuead. An oþre / þet is zenne wel grat. þet is felhede / of herte. huerof comeþ / uele boȝes. and heȝliche : uour. by þe uour werreres / þet þe feloun heþ. þe uerste is / to him-zelue. uor huanne man / him berþ hate / to þe torment / and þe zaule / and þet body / zuo þet man / ne may slepe ne none reste habbe. Oþerhuyl / him be-nimþ þane mete / and þane drinke. and makeþ him ualle / ine ane feure /

The third head of the evil beast is hate.

The hatred of evil is virtuous, but fellness (fierceness) of heart is a very great sin. The Hater has four wars (strifes). The 1st is with himself, as when for fear of torment he kills himself.

The 2nd is with God, because of some sickness or adversity, death of friends, &c.

[1 MS. *wreþuolle*]

The 3rd is with those who are under him,—his wife and his household.

[Fol. 8. b.]

He beateth his wife and children and breaketh pots and cups as if he were out of his wits.

The 4th is war with his neighbours.

[1 MS. *simale*]

Of this bough springeth 7 small twigs :

1. Chiding.
2. Wrath. 3. Hate.
4. Strife. 5. Desire of vengeance.
6. Manslaughter.
7. Deadly war.

War produces many horrors, as the death of many innocent folk, the destruction of churches, the burning of towns, the ruin of barns, the disinheritance and exile of men, women, and children, lands destroyed, &c.

oþer ine zuiche zorþe : þet he nimþ / þane dyap. þet is a ver / þet wastep / alle þe guodes / of þe house. þe oþre werre / þet þe feloun heþ : þet is to gode. Vor wreþe / and felonye / op-bereþ / and nimþ zuo / oþer-huyl / þe herte of þe felle / uor zome aduersité timlich / oþer uor ziknesse / oþer uor dyap / of urendes. oþe[r] uor zome misual / þet his wyl / ne is naȝt y-do : þet ha grocheþ / aye oure lhord. and euele þonkeþ god / and his halȝen / and zuereþ / and blasfemeþ / a-ye god / and his halȝen. þe þridde werre / þet þe wreþuolle¹ heþ. is to þan / þet byeþ onder him. þet is / to his wyue / and to his mayné. Vor þe man / is oþerhuyl zuo out / of his wytte : þet ha beat / and smit / and wyf / and children / and mayné. and brekþ potes / and coppes / ase ha were / out of his wytte. and zuo he is. þe uerþe / is werre / wyþ-oute / to his neȝybores / and to his nixte / þet byeþ alle / aboute him. And of þise boȝe / wexeþ zeue smale¹ boȝes. Vor huanne wreþe arist / be-tuene tuay men : þer is uerst chidinge / and þanne wreþe / þet blefþ ine herte. efferward / wreþe. efterward / comþ ofte strif. efter / wylninge of wreche. efterward / oþerhuil manslaȝte. and efterward / oþerhuil werre dyadlich / be-tuene þe urendes / huerof comþ / ofte / to moche knead / and perils / þet ne moȝe / naȝt by amended. Vor huanne þer is werre / be-tuene tuaye men : hit yualþ ofte / þet þer byeþ moche uolk dyade / þet ne habbeþ neȝne gelt. cherchen tobroke. tounes uorbernd. abbeyes. priories. bernes destrud / and men / and wyfmen / and children deserited / and y-exiled. and londes destrud. and to moche / of oþre harmes / þet byeþ y-do / be þe encheyson / of þan / þet hi byeþ yhealde / uor te amendi / þet / þis purchaseþ. and þe lhord / and alle þo / þet byeþ to ham helpinde. an ine zuyche nyede. and þeruore hy byeþ / ine greate balance / of hyre helpe / of zaule. uor hi ne moȝe

amendi / ne yelde : þe harmes / þet hi habbeþ ydo. and
hit behoueþ yelde: oþer hongy.

þe uerþe heaued / of þe kueade beste of helle.

þet uerþe heaued / of þe wyckede beste / is onlust-
hede. þet is onlosthede / and tyene to do wel. þis zenne /
his a to kuead rote / þet kest / uele kueade bozes. þis
onlosthede / þet is sleuþe / makeþ þet man heþ / kueade
aginnynge / and more kueade / amendinge / and to
wors endinge. Kueade anginnynge / heþ þe sleuuolle :
be zix zennes. þe uerste is : þonneliche. huanne þe man
loueþ lite / and lheucliche oure lhord / þet he ssolde
louye / bernindeliche. and þerof comp / þet he is / fyeble
and lheucl / to alle guodes / to done. þe oþer is
arþnesse / þet is tyene / of herte / þet is þet bed / to þe
dyeule / huerine / he him resteþ / and zayþ to þe manne /
and to þe wyfmanne. ‘ þu hest y-by / to zofte y-draze
uorþ. þou art to fiebble / of compleccioun. þou ne miȝt
naȝt do / þe greate penonces. þou art to tendre. þou
ssoldest by anhaste dyad.’ and þeruore / þe wrechche /
him let ualle to done þe lostes / of his ulesse. þe þridde
is ydelnesse. þet is a zenne / þet deþ moche kuead / ase
zayþ / þe wrytinge. Vor huanne þe dyeuel / uynt þane
man ydel : he hine deþ / to worke. and deþ him uerst /
þenche kuead. and efterward / to wynni uileynies /
ribauidyes / lecheries / and his time lyese / and manye
guodes / þet he miȝte do. huerof / he miȝte wynne
paradis. þe uerþe is / heuinesse. huanne þe man / is
zuo heui / þet ne loueþ / bote to ligge / and resti / and
slepe. oþerhuil hy byeþ / ynoȝ awaked / to nyedes /
þet hi hedden leuere / lyese vour messen : þanne ane
zuot / oþer ane slep. þe vifte is / wyckednesse. þet is /
huanne þe man / liþ ine zenne / and yvelþ þe uondinges /
of þe dyeule / and of his ulesse / þet him asayleþ / and
he riȝte kueadnesse : nele arere þet heued / to gode / be

The fourth head
of the wicked
beast of hell is
disinclination to
do good, and a
proneness to do
evil.

This sin is a
wicked root, that
casteth many evil
boughs.

Sloth makes men
have bad begin-
ning, bad amend-
ing, and worse
ending.

1. The slothful
loveth our Lord
little and luke-
warmly.

2. He is timid in
heart, is loth to
do penance, and
falleth into the
lusts of the flesh.
[þe dyeules red :
to þe onlosti.]

3. The idle man is
tempted by the
devil first to think
evil, and after-
wards to desire
villanies, ribald-
ries, lecheries, and
so to waste his
time.

4. The heavy man
loveth to lie, rest,
and sleep.
He had rather
lose four masses
than a sweat or a
sleep.

5. The wicked
sluggard will not
try to amend his
evil ways.

[Fol. 9. a.]

He is like the shrew, who would rather rot in prison than take the trouble to climb out by steps.

6. The man of little will dreads to begin to do good, for fear that God will fail him.

This is the dread of the dreamers, that are terrified by their dreams. He is like those who are afraid to go out for fear of a snail, or like children afraid of a goose that bloweth.

There are six vices that prevent good beginning and amendment.

Untruth. The sinner believes the devil rather than God.

[þe dyeules red: to þe ontrewel].

Sloth. This is a vice that all are besmutterd with.

Few folk are as diligent as they are holden to be.

Forgetfulness. The slothful is loth to shrive, and soon forgetteth his sins.

True shrift is necessary to forgiveness,

be satisfacioun. [dedbote.] þe ilke anlikneþ / þane ssrewe / þet heþ leuere rotte / in a prison / uoul / and stinkinde: þanne to habbe / þe pyne of stapes / to cliue uor his outguoinge. þe zixte / is litel wyl [arþnesse]. Ine þise zenne / byeþ þo / þet habbeþ drede / of naȝt / þet ne dorre / naȝt aginne / wel to done. uor hi habbeþ drede þet god / ham wyle fayly / þet is þe drede / of þe meteres. þet habbeþ drede / of hare metinges. þo anlikneþ þan / þet ne dar naȝt guo / ine þe peþe uor þane snegge / þet sseaweþ him his hornes. And to þe childe / þet ne dar naȝt guo his way / uor þe guos þet blaup.

þise byeþ þe zix vices / þet benymeth þe manne / guod ginyng. Vor oþre zix vices / ne may þe sleawolle / habbe guod aginnyng / oþer amendement. þet byeþ techches / of kuead seriont / þet makeþ / þet non guod man / ne ssel his onderuonge / in to his seruice / huanne he is ontrewel. sleuol. onssriuel. uoryetinde. slak. and failinde. þe uerste vice is / ontrewel. Vor huanne god / zet ine þe herte of man / guod wyl / wel to done: þanne comþ þe dyeuel / and him zayþ / 'þou hit sselst wel / recouri / þou art yong / and strang / þou sselst libbe longe.' and zuo he him / onwoneþ þe dyeuel / wel uor to done. Efterward / comþ sleuþe. uor he / þet wel deþ / and deþ hit auerst: hit ne is no wonder / þaȝ he hit do / sleuolliche. þet is a uice huerof al þe wordle is besmet. huo þet nimp wel hede. Vor lite uolk þer byeþ / þet by diligent / ine þet hi byeþ / yhyealde to done / auorye god / and hire nixte.

Efter sleuþe / is uoryetinge. Ver huo þet ys sleauol: ofte uoryet. Vor þise tuo zennes / of uoryetinge: hit yualþ ofte / þet he ne can him ssriue. Vor huanne þe man / is sleuol / him to ssriue: he uoryet his lackses / and his zennes / þet is grat peril. Vor non ne may habbe / uoryeuensse: wyþ-out / zoþe ssrifte. þet berþ / uorþenchinge / of herte. beknaulechinge / of zorȝe / ne grede / harou be ssrifte. ne arere þe honden.

mouþe / boꝝsamnesse / ine dede / þet is amendinge : and dedbote. þer ne ys non zuo guod man / þet yef he yzeȝe wel / his oꝝene lacks / þet he ne ssokle uynde / ynoȝ uor to zigge eche daye / ine his ssrifþe. Ac sleuþe. and uoryetinge : blendeþ þe zenezeres. þet hi ne zyeþ naȝt ine þe boc / of hire inwyȝte.

and produces repentance, confession, obedience, amending, and satisfaction.

þE PERIL OF SLACNESSE.

The peril of slackness.

Afterward / comp slacnesse / þet comp / of þe defaute / of herte / and of kueade wone. þet bint zuo þane man / þet onneape / he him yefþ / to done wel. oþerhuil hit comp / of onconnyndehede : and of fole hete. huer-by þe man / op-let zuo his herte / and his body / be uestinges. and be wakinges. and by oþre dedes. zuo þet he ualþ / ine fyeblesse / and ine zuiche ziknesse : þet he ne may naȝt traawayly / ine godes seruiçe. and to-ualþ / ine þa slacnesse / þet he ne heþ smak / ne deuocion / wel to done. Afterward / comp werihede / þet makeþ þane man / weri / and worsi / uram daye / to daye / al-huet he is / al recreyd / and defayled. And þis is / þe zixte vice / of þe kueade sergonte. þet he fayleþ / erþan he come / to þe ende / oþer to his terme. And me kan zigge : huo þet serueþ / and naȝt uolserueþ : his ssepe / he lyst.

Slackness cometh of default of courage and of evil habits.

Sometimes it comes of ignorance and of foolish heat.

Afterwards cometh weariness, that maketh man weary and worse.

þE .6. POYNS OF SLEUþE : þET BRENGEþ MAN TO HIS ENDE.

The six points of sloth that bring a man to death.

And yet eft / þer byeþ / zix poyns / kueade. huer-by sleuþe / bringþ man / to his ende. þe uerste is / onboꝝsamnesse. huanne þe man / nele do / þet me him zayþ / ine penonce. oþer me him hat zomping / þet him þingþ hard. he him excuseþ : þet he hit ne may do. oþer yef he hit onderuangþ : he hit deþ / oþer litel / oþer naȝt. þe oþer poynt / is inpacience. uor ase he ne may / no þing bere / be boꝝsamnesse. he ne may þolye / be paciense. zuo þet non / ne dar to him speke / of his

1. Disobedience, as seen in a reluctance to do penance.

[Fol. 9. b.]

2. Impatience of control and correction.

3. Grudging or murmuring against good advisers ; this causes

4. Sorrow and weariness of life, which leads to the

5. Desire of death.

6. Despair is the devil's deadly stroke ;

it causes a man to commit suicide.

guode. þe þridde / is grochyng. Vor huanne me speķ þ to him / uor his guode : he him wreþeþ / and grocheþ. and him þingþ : þet me him onworþeþ. and þerof he ualþ / in-to zorþe / þet is / þe uerþe vice. An zuo moche / him ouergeþ / þe ilke zorþe / þet al / þet me him zayþ / al þet me him deþ / al þet he yherþ / al þet he zizþ : al hit him tienep. and zuo he ualþ / in-to zorþe / and in-to tyene to libbe / zuo þet him-zelf / him hastedþ / and wynep / his dyap. and þis is þe vifte vice. Efter alle þise zorþuolle poyns of sleupe / him yefþ þe dyeuel / þane strok dyadlych / and deþ him / in-to wan-hope. þeruore he porchaceþ / his dyap / and him-zelue / slaþ. ase despayred. and him yefþ / alle kueadnesses / to done / and him ne dret naȝt / to do zenne / huet þet hit by. To zuich ende / let sleaupe¹ þane man. þise byeþ. xviiij. poyns. þet þe dyeuel / þraup / ope þane sleuuolle. hit ne is no wonder / þaȝ he lyese þet geme.

ÞET VIFTE HEAUED OF ÞE BESTE.

þet vifte heaued / of þe beste / beuore y-zed. is þe zenne / of auarice / and of couaytse / þet is rote / of alle kueade. ase zayþ zaynte paul. þet is þe maystresse / þet heþ / zuo greate scole / þet alle guoþ þrin / uor to lyerni. ase zayþ / þe wrytinge. Vor alle manere of uolk / studieþ ine auarice / and greate / and smale. kinges. prelates. clerkes. an lewede. and religious. Auarice / is disordene loue. zuo disordene / him sseweþ / in þri maneres generalliche. ine wynnyng: boldeliche. ine of-healdinge : streytliche. ine spendinge : scarsliche. þise byeþ þe þri boȝes principales : þet of þise rote wexep.

Ac specialliche / and propreliche / of þe rote of auarice / guoþ out / manye smale roten. þet byeþ / wel greate / dyadliche zennes. þe uerste / is gaelinge. þe oper / þyefþe. þe þridde / robberye. þe uerþe / chalenge. þe vifte / sacrilege. þe zixte / symonye. þe zeuende / kuedhedes. þe eȝtende is / ine chapfare. þe

¹ MS. sseaupe

The fifth head of the beast is the sin of avarice and covetousness, the root of all evil. This is the great schoolmistress and teacher of all, for all study in the school of avarice, great and small, kings, prelates, clerks, lewd and religious.

Avarice is disorderly love, and sheweth itself in three ways :

1. Winning.
2. Withholding.
3. Stinginess.

Of the root of avarice come many small roots that are great deadly sins :

1. Usury. 2. Theft.
3. Robbery.
4. False claim.
5. Sacrilege.
6. Simony.

nezende is / wycked crefft. þe tende is / ine kuade uolke. And ech of þise smale roten / him to-delp / ine uele manyeres.

þanne þe uerste rote / þet is gaelinge. him to-delp / ine zeuen / outkestinges. Vor þer byep / zeue manere gaeleres : lenynde. þet lenep zeluer : uor opren. And aboute þe catel : nimeþ þe hezþes. oper ine pans. oper ine hors. oper ine corn. oper ine wyn. oper ine frut of þe grounde / þet hi nimeþ / ine wedde dyade. wyþ-oute rekenyng / þet frut ine paynge. And þet wors ys : hi wyllep rekeny tuyes. oper þries þet yer. uor to do arise þet gael. and wyllep / yet habbe yefþes aboute / uor eche terme. and makeþ / ofte / of þe gael : pꝛincipale dette. þise byep gaeleres kueade / and uoule. Ac þer is an oper lenere corteys. þet lenep / wyþ-oute chapfare makiinde. alneway in hezinge. oper ine pans. oper ine hors. oper ine coupes of gold. oper of zeluer. oper robes. oper tonnen mid wyn / oper ine uette zuyn. seruices ulessliche. of hors. of carten. oper prouendres to ham / oper to hare children. oper ine opre þinges. and oueral to gael / huanne me hit nimþ / by þe skele / of þe lone. þis is þe uerste manere / of gaelynge / þet is ine leninge kueadliche. þe opre manere / of gaelynge / is ine þan / þet ne lenep naȝt / to hare persone. ac þet hire uaderes / and þe uaderes of hare wyues / oper hare eldringes / habbeþ ypurchaced / be gaelinge. hit of-hyealdeþ and nolleþ / hit naȝt yelde. þe þridde manere of gaelinge / is ine ham / þet habbeþ onworþ to lene / of hire hand : ac hi dop lene / hare sergons. oper opre men / of hire pans. þise byep þe mayster gaeleres. Of þe ilke zenne / ne byep naȝt þe heze men quit / þet hyealdeþ and sosteneþ iewes and þe caorsins. þet lenep / and destruiþ / þe contraye / and hy nymeþ þe medes / and þe greate yefþes / and oper-huil / þe ronsounes / þet byep of þe guodes / of þe poure. þe uerþe manyere / is ine ham / þet lenep / of

7. Wickedness.
8. Chaffer.
9. Wicked craft.
10. Wicked games.

I. Usury has 7 outcastings, for there are 7 kinds of usurers.

Some lenders (mortgagees) lend silver in return for cattle, corn, and fruits of the ground.

They falsely increase the rate of interest.

The courteous lender lendeth without chaffer.

[Fol. 10. a.]

2. The second manner of usury is the withholding of purchase.

3. The third usurers are the master money-lenders. Of this sin the great men are not free who support the Jews.

4. The fourth kind is in those that

lend other men's silver obtained at small cost, so as to get greater interest.

It is the little usurer that teacheth such foul craft.

5. Chaffer is to sell a thing for more than it is worth at the time.

1. The chaffers bring knights and high men to poverty.

2. They lend money on land which they know will not be redeemed.

3. They buy things at half their value and sell them twice or thrice the dearer.

4. They buy corn cheap, and sell it when it is scarce; and they desire the dear time so as to sell the dearer.

5. They buy corn and vines in a flourishing condition.

6. They use fraud in their merchandise.

7. They take advantage of the necessities of their poor neighbours,

opremanne zelure / oper borzeþ / to litel cost: uor to lene / to gratter cost. þise byeþ / litle gauleres / þet lyerneþ / zuych uoul creft. þe vifte manere is / ine cheapfare / huanne me zelp / þet þing / huet þet hit by: more þanne hit by worþ / uor þane time. an þet wors is / þe time-zettere ontrewē. huanne he yziþ þet uolk / mest nyeduol. þanne wyle he zelle / þe derrer tuyes / oper þries zuo moche / þane þet þing / by worþ. Zuych uolk / doþ to moche kuead. Vor hire time-zettinge / hi destrueþ / and makeþ beggeres / þe knyghtes: and þe hezemen / þet uolþeþ þe tornemens. and þet hy betakeþ / hyre londes / and hare eritage / ine wed. and dead wed / þet naȝt him ne aquytteþ. þe opre zenezep / to begge þe þinges / ase corn. oper wyn. oper operþing / lesse be þe haluedele / þanne hit his worþ. uor þe pans / þet he payþ beuore. and þanne / hit zelleþ / ham ayen / tuyes zuo moche / oper þries: þe derrer. þe opre beggeþ þe þinges / huanne hi byeþ lest worþ to greate cheape / ine herueste / þet corn. ine uen-donginge: þet wyn. opre cheapfares / uor to zelle ayen / al-huet hi byeþ / mest diere. and wilneþ / þane dyere time / uor to zelle þe derrer. þe opre / þet corn agerse. þe vines in flouringe / huanne þet hi byeþ / of uaire ssewyngē. be zuiche uorwerde: þet hi habbe / huet cas yualle: hire catel sauf. þe zixte manere / is of þan / þet takeþ hire pans to marchons / be zuo þet hi by uelaze / to þe wynnyngē. and naȝt to þe lere. oper þet hi betakeþ / hire bestes / to þe haluedele / be zuo þet hi by / of fer pris. þet is to zigge / þet yef hi sterueþ / ine mene time: do opre ine hare stede / asemoehe worþ. þe zeuende manere / is ine þan / þet doþ / hare poure nezzeboures / ine hare nyedes. and uor þet hi habbeþ / ham y-lend / a lyte zeluer. oper corn. oper ydo zome cortaysye. And huanne hy hise yzeþ poure / an nyeduol: þanne makeþ hy / mid ham / marcat / to do hire niedes. and þe pans / þet hi token be-uore / to þe

poure manne. oþer him lende / a lite corn. / hi habbeþ / and take three-
þri paneworþes of worke : uor ane peny. penny worth of
work for a penny

þE OþER BOȝ OF COUAYTISE.

[Fol. 10. b.]

þe oþer boȝ of auarice : ys þyefþe. þet is nyme / oþer The second bough
of-healde / oþremanne þinges / wyþ wrong / and onwy- of covetousness is
tinde / and wyþ-oute wylle / of þe lhorde. And þet me theft, that is, to
may do / ine uour maneres be þe manire of þyeues. Vor take and withhold
þer ys : a þyef open. and a þyef ywreȝe. a þief priué. other men's goods
and a þyef uelazȝe. wrongfully.
Four kinds of
thieves :

1. Open. 2. Covert.
3. Privy. 4. Ac-
cessory.

þe þyef commun / and open / byeþ þo / þet be 1. The open thief
zuiche crefte / libbeþ. of huam me deþ dom / huanne takes his doom
me hise nymþ. Of zuichen þer byeþ / uele maneres. when caught.
ine londe / an ine ze. þe þyef y-wreȝe / is þet steleþ 2. The sly thief
ine halkes / and ywryȝeliche greate þinges / oþer stealeth in corners
little / be hire viȝtinge. oþer be traysoun. oþer be great or small
queayntise. things, by strife,
treason, or craft.

þe priué þyeues byeþ þo / þet ne steleþ naȝt / of 3. The privy thief
oncouþe. ac of priúes. And of zuichen : þer byeþ / of is great or small.
greate / and of smale. þe greate / byeþ of þe kueade / and The great ones are
þe ontrewre reuen. prouos. and bedeles. and seruons. the reeves, pro-
þet steleþ / þe amendes. and wyþdraȝeþ þe rentes / of vosts, beadles, and
hire lhordes. and rekeneþ more / ine dedes. and ine servants,
spendinge. an lesse / ine onderuonginge. and ine that steal fines and
rentes. Zuyche byeþ / þe greate officials / þet byeþ / hold back the rents
ine þe house / of riche men. þet makeþ / þe greate spend- of their lords.
inges. and yeueþ largeliche / þe guodes of hare lhordes /
wyþ-oute hare wytende / and wyþ-oute hare wylle.

They make the
expenditure great
and the income
small,
and are liberal
with their mas-
ter's goods.

To piȝe zenne belongeþ / þe zennes of þe wyue. þet To this sin belong
deþ zuo moche / be hare zenne / þet þe children / þet þe the sins of the wife
wot wel / þet hi heþ / be spousbreche : berþ away þe who wrongeth her
kende. Zuych is þe zenne / of þe wyue. þet þe guodes / kind by spouse-
of hire lhorde stelþ. uor to yeue / hare kenne. oþer uor breach,
to done / in-to kuead us. And of ham / of religion / and who stealeth
þet byeþ oȝeneres. uor hi behoteþ to libbe / wyþ-oute her lord's goods to
oȝninge. give to her kin.

The little thieves steal bread, wine, their neighbour's capons, hens, and garden fruit.

Such are those who keep what they find, knowing to whom it belongs.

When we find a thing and know not the owner, we must take the advice of Holy Church.

þe oþre byep / þe little þyeues. þet stelep / ine þe house : bread. wyn. an oþre þinges / huyche þet hi by. oþer of hire nezebores. hire capons. heznen. frut of hire gardins. oþer oþre þinges / huet þet hit by. Zuyche byep þo / þet ofhyealdeþ / þe þinges / þet hi vindeþ. and wyteþ wel / huas þet hi byep. and nolleþ hise nazt yelde. Vor yef þe vinst / and nazt ne yelst : þou hit stelst. And þaz hi ne wyte / huas þet hi byep : hi ne ssolle / nazt þeruore / hit ofhealde. ac hi ssollen do be þe rede / of holy cherche / oþer be hire ssrifteuaderes.

4. The thief accessory partaketh of the theft either by gift or purchase; he consenteth to, adviseth, and defendeth theft.

þe þyeues be uelazrede / byep þo / þet parteþ / of þe þyefþe / oþer uor uelazrede / oþer by yefþe / oþer be begginge. oþer ine oþre manyere. Efterward / þo þet consenteþ / oþer redeþ / oþer hotiþ / hit do. And þo þet defendeþ þe þyeues / oþer sosteneþ his / ine hare queade / oþer his onderuongeþ / in to hare house / oþer in to his londe / mid hare þyefþe. Efterward / þe kueade domesmen / þet hise soffreþ. oþer be yefþes. oþer be biddynge. oþer be oþre kueade skele. and nolleþ. oþer ne dorre / riȝt do.

The corrupt judge is a thief accessory.

þe þRIDDE BOȝ OF AUARICE.

III. The third bough of avarice is robbery, that hath many small roots.

1. Evil executors of bequests.

2. Unfaithful guardianship.

[Fol. 11. a.]

Unlawful possession of other men's castles, lands, and baronies.

þe þridde boȝ of auarice : is robbery. þet heþ uele smale roten. þe uerste is / ine kueade exequitours / of bekuydes. þe oþer is / ine kueade lordes / by he knyȝt / oþer oþer / þet be-ulazeþ / þe poure men : þet hi ssolden loki. be tayles. be cornees. be lones. be kueade wones. be amendes. be þreapnynges. oþer be oþre wones / þet hy zechep. oþer beþencheþ / hou hi moȝe habbe / of hiren. Ine þise zenne byep / þe greate prynces. oþer barouns. þet be hare strengþe / nimeþ þe cites. þe casteles. þe londes. þe baronyes. and þe oþre riche men / þet hare poure nezeboures / benimeþ mid strengþe / londes / vines / oþer oþre þinges. and nimeþ aryȝthalf / and alefthalf / þet no þing / ne may ham

ascapie. þe þridde is / ine robberes / and kueade her-
berzeres / þet berobbep / þe pilgrimes / an þe marchons /
and opre wayuerindemen. þe uerþe / is ine ham / þet
nolleþ paye / þet hi ssolle. and þet hi ofhea[l]deþ / mid
wrong / þe ssepes / of hare sergons. oþer of ham / þet
doþ hare niedes. þe vifte is / ine þise greate prelas / þet
benimeþ / and robbeþ / hire onderlinges / be to moche
procuringe. oþer be zome onrihtuolle niminges þet hi doþ
in to uele maneres. þo byeþ þe wolues : þet ureteþ þe
ssep. þe zixte is / ine zuyche reuen. prouost. bedeles.
opre mesteres men / huiche þet hy byeþ. þet makeþ þe
greate robberynges / and þe wronges / ope þe poure. and
beggeþ / þe greate critages. þer byeþ zuo uele opre
maneres / of roberies : þet long þing / hit were to zigge.
ac zome byeþ y-continde / ope þan / þet byeþ y-zed.

3. Wicked har-
bouring of rob-
bers.

4. Unpaid debts.

5. Robbery of
underlings by
prelates,

who, like wolves,
devour the sheep.
6. Oppression of
the poor by reeves,
provosts, and
beadles.

þe uerþe bo3 of auarice.

þe uerþe bo3 of auarice / is acsynge. þet is to yerne
opo¹ opre / mid wrong. to þise zenne belongeþ / al þet
barat. alle ualshedes. and alle gyles : þet comeþ / ine
plait. Ine þis clergie / heþ dame auarice / uele scolers.
and of clerkes : and of leawede. and specialliche / zeue
manyeres of uolke. þet alle / þus studieþ. þe uerste
byeþ / þe ualse playneres / þet makeþ / þe ualse bezech-
inges. and zechep / þe ualse dæmeres. and lang time. and
þe ualse wytnesses. þe ualse playteres. þe ualse lettres
uor to greui opren. and trauayleþ þet uolk / myd wrong.
oþer be cristene cort. oþer be leawede cort. þe opre
byeþ / þe ualse yulemde / þet vlyeþ. and nazt þet /
þet riht is. and zechep wyþsetti[n]gges and respit. uor
to bynime opren / hare ozen. þe þridde byeþ / þe ualse
wytnesses. þise makeþ / þe ualse mariages. þise
benimeþ / þe heritages. þos doþ / zuo moche kuead /
and harmes / þet non / ne may his amendi. and al þis
hi doþ / be hare greate couaytise. þe uerþe byeþ / þe
ualse plaiteres / þet onderuonget / an sostinet / þe

IV. The fourth
bough of avarice
is false claim.

[1 ope 2]

Dame Avarice
hath many
scholars in this
lore. There are
7 kinds of folk
that thus study.

1. False plaintiffs
that seek corrupt
judges to delay
justice,
and hire false
witnesses.

2. The pretended
exiles.

3. False witnesses.

4. False accusers,
sustainers of false
causes,

ualse causes / be hare wytinde / and hise beclepieþ uor
 ssepe / and uor yeffes. þet hi nymeþ ariȝthalf / and
 alefthalf. and ofte lyese / þe guode playntes / be hare
 kueadnesse / oþer uor onconynghede / oþer be sleawþ /
 miswendep þe riȝtes / and doz¹ alle þe wronges / vor
 hare couaytise / ase þo þet byep maystres of gyle / and
 of contak / and of be-uelynge. þe vifte. byep / þe
 ualse notaryes / þet makeþ þe ualse lettres. and ualseþ
 þe celes. makeþ þe kueade libelles. and to uele oþre /
 ualshedes. þe oþre byep / þe ualse demeres. þet
 ham zelue hongep / more of one half / þanne of anoþre /
 be yeffes / oþer be behotinges / oþer be byddinges /
 oþer uor loue. oþer uor wreþe / oþer uor drede. and
 onbyndep þe playntes / mid wrong. And doþ maki þe
 greate costes / and nimeþ / þe greate yeffes / oþerhuyl /
 of þe on : oþerhuyl / of þe oþren. oþerhuyl / of on /
 and of oþre. and zelleþ / hare domes. oþer ham / leteþ
 yworþe. And doþ / to þe poure men / greate harmes /
 þet hi ne moȝe amendi. þe oþre byep / þe kueade
 bezide-zitteres / þet yeueþ þe kueade redes / to þe de-
 meres / and makeþ lyese þe playntes : uor þe seruices /
 þet hy habbeþ. Alle þe persones / beuore yzed / byep
 y-hyealde to yelde / þet hi habbeþ y-het kueadliche / of
 oþren. and hare harmes / þet þe oþre habbeþ y-het /
 be ham.

ÞE VIFTE BOȝ OF AUARICE.

þe vifte boȝ of auarice / is sacrilege. Sacrilege is :
 huanne me breceþ. oþer blecheþ. oþer draȝþ uoulliche /
 þe holy þinges. oþer þe men / of holy cherche. oþer
 þe y-halȝede stedes / þet byep apropred / to guodes
 seruise. and þet deþ do / ofte / couaytiseine uele maneres.
 Verst / huanne me draȝþ uoulliche / þet bodi of oure
 lhorde / aze doþ þe ereges. and þe wychen. and þe
 kueade prestes / uor to wynne. Alsuo ich zigge / of
 þe oþre sacremens. Efterward / huanne me breceþ /
 oþer stelþ / oþer draȝþ uoulliche / þe halȝede þinges.

[1 doþ ?]

masters of guile,
 dispute, and of
 accusation.

5. False notaries.

6. False judges,
 whoare influenced
 by love or by hate,

[Fol. 11. b.]

who sell their
 dooms (verdicts),
 and wrongfully
 use the poor.

7. False coun-
 sellors.

All the aforesaid
 persons are bound
 to restore what
 they have wrong-
 fully withheld.

V. The fifth bough
 of avarice is sacri-
 lege, that is, to
 break or steal the
 things of Holy
 Church.

1. Abuse of the
 Lord's body.

2. Abuse of the
 other sacraments.
 3. Destruction or
 theft of holy
 things.

þe crouchen. þe calices. þe creyme. þe co[r]poreaus.
 þe yblissede uestemens. and oþre / yblissede þinges.
 Efterward / huanne me bernþ. oþer brekþ cherches.
 oþer holi stedes. cherchtounes. oþer hous of relygioun.
 oþer huanne me draþþ þo / out / þet vleþ to holy
 cherche. oþer in-to cherchtounes. uor to by y-borþe.
 Efterward / huanne me makeþ medles / ine cherche /
 zuo þet þer ys / blod yssed. oþer huanne me deþ /
 zenne of lecherie. Efterward / huanne me layþ hand /
 ine kueade / ine clerk. oþer ine man / oþer ine wyf-
 man / of religion. Efterward huanne me stelþ. oþer
 berþ / be kueade skele / out of holy stede / yblissede
 þinges / oþer on-blissede / huet þet hit by. Of þise
 zennes / ne byeþ naȝt kuytte þo / þet þe guodes of holy
 cherche. þe patremoyne of Iesu crist / despendeþ
 ine kuead us. Ne þo naȝemo / þet benimeþ / oþer
 ofhyaldeþ mid wro[n]g / oþer mid strengþe. oþer
 hedeþ þe þinges / þet byeþ a-propred / to holy cherche.
 oþer hise payeþ kueadliche. ase þe rentes. þo of-
 frendes. þe tendes. and þe oþre riztes / of holy
 cherche. Of þise zelue zenne / ne byeþ naȝt kuytte /
 þo þet brekeþ þe zondayes / and þe festes / þet byeþ to
 loki. Vor þe holy day / heþ his vridom / ase habbeþ
 þe holy stedes. þise byeþ þe smale boȝes þet wexeþ of
 þe boȝe of sacrilege.

4. Burning and breaking of churches, religious houses, and drawing out those who have taken sanctuary therein.

5. Disputes in church, shedding of blood, and sin of lechery.

6. Laying violent hands on clerk or man or woman of religion.

7. Stealing of blessed things from holy places. Those are not quit of this sin who misuse the goods of Holy Church, who hid the property of the Church, or who withhold rents, offerings, and tithes.

They are not quit who break Sundays and festivals

þe .vj. BOȝ OF AVARICE.

þe xixte boȝ of auarice / is symonye. þet is zuo
 ycleped / uor anȝ wychche / þet hette symoun / þet
 wolde begge / of saynte peter þe apostel / þe grace /
 uor to do miracles / and byad grat guod. and þeruore /
 hi byeþ y-cleped / symoniaks : alle þo / þet wylleþ
 zelle / oþer begge / þe gostliche þinges. þet is amang /
 alle þe dyadliche zennes : on of þe grateste. And þes
 boȝ / heþ manie tuygges. þe uerste is in ham / þet
 zelleþ / oþer beggeþ / þe holy ordres / oþer þet body of /

VI. The sixth bough of avarice is simony.

Simoniacs are those who sell or buy spiritual things. Simony hath many twigs :
 1. Selling and buying of holy

orders, or the sacraments.

2. Preaching for pence.

[Fol. 12. a.]

3. Purchasing and obtaining corruptly the dignities of Holy Church.

4. Giving away for gifts, &c., the benefices of Holy Church.

5. Letting and changing of benefices.

6. Causing men to go into religion by market.

Lewd (lay) men should keep them from this sin, which they may commit in 3 ways: 1st, by helping their kin to obtain dignities of the Church.

2nd, by giving away benefices. 3rd, by causing their kin to go into religion.

Three kinds of gifts make simony.

1. Gift of hand.
2. Gift of mouth.
3. Gift of unclean service.

oure lhorde / oþer þe oþre sacramens / of holy cherche. þe oþer is ine ham / þet zelleþ / godes word. and precheþ prīncipalliche / uor pans. þe þridde is ine ham / þet be yefþes / oþer be behotinges / oþer be biddingges dreduolle / oþer ulessliche / makeþ zuo moche / þet hy / oþer oþre : byeþ ichose / to dyngnetes / of holi cherche. ase byeþ bissopriches. abbayes. oþer denyes. oþer oþre dingnetes / þet me makeþ / be chyezinge. þe uerþe is ine ham / þet be yefþes / oþer be behotinges. oþer be biddinges dreduolle / oþer be seruise nazt elene / yeueþ þe prouendres. and þe parosses. oþer oþre benefices of holy cherche. þe vifte is ine ham / þet be markat makeinde : leteþ hare benefices / oþer chongeþ. þe zixte is ine ham / þet be markat makeinde : guoþ in-to religion. and ine ham / þet ine zuiche manere / his onderuongeþ.

Vele þer byeþ oþre zennes / and of diuers cas / ine symonye. Ac hi belongeþ more / to klerekes : þanne to leawede. And þis bok is more ymad / uor þe leawede : þanne uor þe clerkes. þet habbeþ þe bokes. Ac alneway hit is nyed / to leawede men / þet hi ham loki / uram þise zenne : ine þri cas. þe on is / huanne hi wylleþ helpe hare ken / oþer hare uryendes / an-hezy ine dingnetes / of holi cherch. þe oþre huanne hi yeueþ þe prouendres / oþer benefices / þet byeþ of hare yefþe. þe þridde / huanne hi yeldeþ hare children / into relig[i]on. Ine þise þri poyns / yef hi yeueþ / oþer onderuongeþ yefþes / oþer kueade biddingges / oþer kueade seruises : hi miȝten zone ualle in to þise zenne of symonie. Vor ase ziggeþ þe holi writes. þer byeþ þri maneres of yefþes. þet makeþ symonie. yefþe of hand. yefþe of mouþe / ase biddinges. yefþe of seruise nazt clenlich. Ich clepie onclenlich : huanne þe seruises byeþ y-do / uor onclenliche cause. oþer prīncipalliche : uor þing gostlich.

þE ZEUEDE BOȝ OF AUARICE.

þe zeuend boȝ / of auarice : ys wyckedhede. Ich clepie
 wychkedhede : huanne þe man / is zuo wykhed / and
 zuo moche dyeuel : þet him ne dret naȝt / to done / ane
 greate zenne / dyadlich / and orrible. oþer grat harm /
 to oþren / uor a lite wayn / oþer uor ureme / to him.
 þes boȝ / heþ manye tuygges. þe uerste is. huanne /
 eny uor drede / of pouerte. oþer uor couaytise / uor to
 wynne : uor zaȝþ [renayþ] god / and þe cristene bileaue.
 and becomþ bougre. oþer ieu. oþer sarasin. To
 þise zenne / belongeþ / þe zenne : of ham / þet uor
 pans / makeþ to clepie / þane dyeuel. and makeþ þe
 enchauntemens. and makeþ to loky ine þe zuord.
 oþer ine þe nayle / of þe þoume. uor to of-take / þe
 þyeues. oþer uor oþre þinges. And of ham alsuo /
 þet makeþ / oþer porchaceþ / be charmes / oþer be
 wychecreft. oþer be kueadnesse / huet þet hit by. þet
 uolk / þet byeþ ine spoushod / togydere / ham hatieþ.
 oþer ne moȝe habbe uelazrede / þe on wyþ þe oþre / be
 spoushod. Oþer þet uolk / þet ne byeþ naȝt ine spous-
 hod : louieþ ham togidere / folliche : and be zenne. þe
 oþer is / þe zenne / of grochinge / and of traysoun
 [bezuykinge]. huanne þe man / uor wynnynge. oþer
 uor mede / deþ þing / huer by hi draȝeþ oþre / to þe
 dyape. oþer be zuorde. oþer be uenym. oþer ine oþre
 manere / huet þet hit by. þe þridde / is þe zenne of
 ham / þet uor wynnynge / berneþ hous. tounes. casteles.
 cites. oþer cherchen. oþer destrueþ þe vines. oþer cornes.
 oþer doþ oþre harmes uor mede. þe uerþe is þe zenne
 of ham þet zaweþ discord. and purchaceþ þe stryfs /
 and þe werres in cites / oþer ine capiteles / oþer be-tuene
 þe heȝemen / uor þan þet hi wenep þe more to wynne
 mid strif ine þe werre : þanne ine pays. þe vifte is þe
 zenne of reuen. of prouostes. of bedeles. of sergons.
 þet accuseþ / and c[h]alengeþ þet poure uole / and ham

VII. The seventh bough of avarice is wickedness, i.e. when one is so wicked that he fears not to do a great and horrible deadly sin or harm to others for to benefit himself. The twigs are manifold :
 1. Apostasy, as becoming Heretic, Jew, or Saracen.

To this sin belongeth the sin of those who make enchantments, who look in the nail of the thumb for to take thieves, and of them also that by witchcraft cause those in spousehood to hate one another.

2. Grudging and treason, when a man for profit brings others to death by sword or poison.

[Fol. 12. b.]

3. Burning of towns or houses; destruction of vines or corn; harm to others for reward.

4. Sowing discord, strife, and wars in cities in order to be gainers thereby.

5. Accusing poor folk falsely.

[*rayuni* ?]

To this sin belong-
eth the sin of
false juiges,
false plaintiffs,
and false wit-
nesses.

doþ raymi ¹ / and kuedliche lede uor a lite wynnynge
þet hi habbeþ be-zide. to þise zenne belongeþ þe zenne
of ualse domesmen / and of ualse playteres / and of ualse
wytnesses. of huam we habbeþ a-boue y-speke. Ine
manye opre maneres is ydo þe zenne of wyckednesse.
Ac lang þing hit were to zigge. and betere may ech
man rede þe ilke zenne / and þe opre / ine þe boc of
his inwytt: þanne ine ane ssepes scinne.

ÞE EȜTENDE BOȜ OF AUARICE.

VIII. The eighth
bough of pride is
chaffer, i.e. a sin-
ning for speedy
gain.

It is seen in 7
modes :

1. To sell as dear
as possible, but to
buy at the cheap-
est.

2. To lie, swear,
and perjure, in
orderto sell goods.

3. To defraud in
weights and mea-
sures,

a. buying by the
greatest weight
and selling by the
least;

b. selling by short
weight, as the
taverners do who
fill the measure
with scum;

c. increasing
fraudulently the
weight of goods.

4. To sell to time.

5. To sell a differ-
ent article than
was at first bar-
gained for.

6. To hide the
faults of a thing,
as horse-dealers
do.

7. To make a thing
look better than it

þe eȝtende boȜ of auarice / is chapfare / huerinne
me zeneȝeþ / ine uele maneres / uor timlich wynnynge.
and nameliche / ine zeue maneres. þe uerste is / to
zelle þe þinges / ase dyere / ase me may. And to begge /
ase guodcheap / ase me may. þe oþer is : lyeȝe. zuerie.
and uorzuerie / þe heȝere to zelle / hare chapuare. þe
þridde manere is / þet me deþ ine wyȝtes. and ine
mesures. and þet may by / ine þri maneres. þe uerste :
huanne me heþ / diuerse wyȝtes / oþer diuerse mesures.
and beggeþ / be þe gratteste wyȝtes / oþer be þe
gratteste mesures : and zelleþ by þe leste. þe oþre
manere is / huanne me heþ / riȝtuolle wyȝtes / and riȝt-
uolle mesures / and zelleþ ontreweliche / ase doþ þise
tauernyers / þet uelleþ þe mesure / myd scome. þe þridde
manere zuo is huanne þo / þet zelleþ be wyȝte / purcha-
ceþ / and makeþ zuo moche þet / þet þing / þet me ssel
weȝe / sseweþ more heuy. þe uerþe manere / to zeneȝi
in chapfare : is to zelle / to tyme. of þisen / we habbeþ
yspeke aboue. þe vifte manere is : oþer þing zelle :
þanne me heþ / y-sseawed beuore. Ase doþ þise
scriueyns / þet sseweþ guode lettre / ate ginnynge. and
afterward / makeþ wycked. þe zixte is : hede / þe
zopnesse / of þe þinge / þet me wyle zelle / ase doþ /
þe romongours of hors. þe zeuende is / maki / por-
chaci / þet / þet þing / þet me zelþ / makeþ uor to ssewy

betere / þanne hit by. ase doþ / þise zelleres of cloþ. þet chieseþ / þe þyestre stedes / huer hi zelleþ / hare cloþ. Ine uele oþre maneres / me may zenezi / ine chapfares. Ac long þing / hit were to zigge.

is, as do cloth sellers, who choose dim places to sell their cloth in.

ÞE NEZENDE BOȝ OF AVARICE.

Þe nezende boȝ of auarice : is ine kueade creftes. Ine þise / zenezeþ moche uolk : ine uele maneres. ase þise fole wyfmen. þet uor a lite wynnynge : hy yueþ ham to zenne. Alzuo þise hysians / and þise kempen / and vele oþre / þat uor pans / oþer uor timlich profit / yueþ ham / to crefte / naȝt oneste. þet ne may naȝ[t] / by do : wyþoute zenne. an of þan þet hit doþ : and of ham / þet hise sostyeneþ.

IX. The ninth bough of pride is in wicked crafts.

Thus sin foul women, and champions that for pence give them to dishonest craft.

ÞE TENDE BOȝ OF AVARICE.

Þe tende boȝ / of auarice : byeþ kueade gemenes. ase byeþ þe gemenes / of des. and of tables. and of oþre huyche huet þet hy by / huer me playþ uor pans. oþer uor oþer / timelich wynnynge. Zuyche kuade gemenes / specialliche of des / and of tables : byeþ uorbode / be riȝte / uor manye zennes / þet uolȝeþ zuyche gemenes. þe uerste is / couaytise uor to wyne / and uor to dispoyly / his uelazȝe. þe oþer is / gauelynge to grat. ase neȝen / uor tuelf. naȝt uor ane monþe. ne to eȝte dazes : ac ine one zelue day. þe þridde is / to mori lyeasynges / and ydele wordes. and þet wors is : greate blasfemies of god / and of his halȝen. hueruore / god him wreþeþ. ase ofteȝipes / he heþ ynome / to lite wreche. Vor oþerhuy / ham miswent þe uisage / þet beuore : behinde.

X. The tenth bough of avarice is wicked games, as games of dice and of tables, as when one playeth for pence.

[Fol. 13. a.]

It causeth many sins :

1. Covetousness to win and despoil one's fellow.

2. Great usury, as nine for twelve, for a single day.

3. Lies, idle words, and great blasphemies of God and of His saints.

.A TALE.

A knyȝt wes / þet zuor / be godes eȝen. an haste / his on eȝe / lhip ope þet cheker. An archer / uor þet he hedde y-lore ate geme : nom his boȝe / and ssat an

A tale of a knight who swore by God's eyes. His eye leapt upon the checker. An archer who shot at God

found his arrow
on the checker
'all bloody.'

hez / a-ye god. þane morȝen / huanne he zet / ate
gemene : his arowe / vil ope þet cheker / al blodly.

4. Bad example.

þe verþe is / þe kueade uorþysne. þet he þet playþ :

5. Loss of time.

yefþ to oþren : þet y-zyeþ þet geme. þe vifte / in lere
of time / þet me ssolde be-zette / ine guode workes.
And manye oþre zennes : þet long þing / hit were to
zigge. O þing / ich ne ssel naȝt uor-yete. þet / þe ilke /
þet wynþ : he ne may naȝt / ine guode manere of
healde / þet he wynþ / ac ssel hit y[e]ue / uor godes
loue. bote yef þet hit by / ine zuyche manere : þet he
hit hedde / mid barat / oþer be strengþe. ase þe ilke /
þet deþ þe oþren playe / he stre[n]gþe. Ine þet cas /
he ssolde hit yelde to him / þet hit heþ ylore. Alsuo
ich zigge : of þet me wynþ / ine tornement.

He that winneth
should give liber-
ally for God's
love.

If it be got by
strife or strength
it should be re-
stored to the loser.

These other
boughs of avarice
belong more to
clerks than lewd
men.

þise byeþ þe boȝes / of auarice / ynoȝ þer byeþ oþre.
Ac hy byeþ / more to clerekes : þanne to þe leawede.
And þis boc / is more ymad / uor þe leawede : þanne
uor þe clerkes / þet conneþ þe writings.

þE ZIXTE HEAUED OF þE BESTE.

The sixth head of
the beast is
lechery, i.e. too
much unlawful
love and lust.
The devil inciteth
to this sin in 5
modes, in—

1. Foul sight.
2. Foul words.
3. Foul handling.
4. Foul kissing.
5. Foul deed.

þe zixte heaued / of þe kueade beste : is lecherie /
þet is to moche loue / and desordene / ine lost of lenden :
oþer / ine ulesslich lost. Of þise zenne uondeþ þe
dyeuel / in vif maneres. Ase zayþ saynt gregorie.
Auerst / in fole zizþe. efterward / ine fole wordes.
afterward / in fole takinges. efterward in fole kess-
inges. efterward / me comþ to þe dede. Vor of fole
zizþe : me comþ to þe speche. and uram þe speche / to
þe handlinge. uram þe han[d]linge : to þe kesinge. uram þe
kessinge : to þe dede. And þous sotilliche / makeþ þe
dyeuel / guo uram on to oþer. þis zenne / him to-
delf / uerst ine tuo maneres. uor þer is lecherie / of
herte : and lecherie of bodie. þe lecherie / of herte :
zuo heþ / vour stapes. Vor þe gost / of fornicacion /
þet serueþ / of þe uere / of lecherie / becleppe¹ þe herten :
makeþ uerst / come þe þoȝtes. and þe likinges. and þe

This sin is divided
into two parts :

1. Lechery of
heart.
 2. Lechery of
body.
- The lechery of
heart hath four
steps ;
1. Foul thoughts.

¹ to has been erased in the MS. before *becleppe*.

ymaginacions / of zenne / to herte : and makeþ þenche.

Afterward / þe herte blefþ / ine þe þoʒtes. an suo deliteþ. yet ne deþ he naʒt / þe dede uor no þing. And ine þise bleuinge / and ine þe ilke lost : is þo oþer stape / þet may by / dyadlich zenne. þe greate zenne may by / þe lost. þe þridde / stape / is þe graunti[n]gge of herte / and of þe scele / and of þe wyll. And zuyche grantinges : byeþ alneway / deadlich zenne. Efter þe grantinge : comþ þe wylnyng. and þe greate hete þet hy habbeþ uor to zenezý. and doþ more þanne tuenti zennes / yne þe daye / ine zizþe of leuedys / and of maydynes / þet sseweþ ham / uayre ydiʒt. þet ofte hy sseaweþ / and diʒteþ ham / þe more *quaynteliche* / and þe more honesteliche / uor to maki musi / þe foles to ham. and ne weneþ naʒt / *gratliche* zenezý : uor þet hi ne habbeþ no wyl / to do þe dede. Ac uor-zoþe : hy zenezep / wel *greuousliche*. Vor be þe ancheysoun / of ham : byeþ uorlore / manye zaules. And þer byeþ / moche uolk / y-do to dyaþe / and to zenne. Vor ase zayþ / þe uorbisne. ‘leuedi / of uaire diʒtinge : is arblast / to þe tour.’ Vor hi ne heþ leme / ine hire bodye : þet ne is / a gryn / of þe dyeule. ase zayþ salomon. þanne behoneþ hit / yelde scele / ate daye of dome / of þe zaules / þet be þe ancheaysoun / of ham / byeþ uorlore. þet is / to onderstonde : huanne hi yeueþ encheysoun / uor to zenezý / be hare wytinde.

Lecherie of bodie. him to-lelþ : ine lecherie of eʒen. of yearen. of mouþe. of honden. an of alle þe wyttes / of þe bodye. And specialliche : of þe uoule dede. And hue¹ is hit uoul dede zeþþe hit is kendelich ? uor þet god / hit uorbyet / ine his spelle. and his apostel pael : þet þus zayþ. ‘ech man habbe his oʒene : uor fornicacion.’ þet ys to zigge : his oʒene wyf. To þo zenne / belongeþ / alle þe þinges / huer-by / þet uless him arist / and wylneþ / zuiche dede. ase byeþ þe mochele drinkeres. and eteres. þe zofte bed. cloþes likerouses. and alle

2. Delight in foul thoughts without actual commission.

3. Consenting of the heart, reason, and will.

4. Desire and great heat to sin
[Fol. 13. b.]

caused by the sight of fair ladies quaintly adorned,

who thus bring many folk to sin.

Lady of fairadorn-
ing is ‘arbalest’ to the tower.

Ladies, who wittingly cause folk to sin, shall be called to account at doomsday.

Lechery of body is divided into lechery of eyes, ears, mouths, hands, and wits (senses).
¹ [*huo* ? = how.]

To this sin belongeth drunkenness and gluttony, the love of soft bed-clothes, and ease of body.

maneyere eyse / of bodye / out of nyede. and specialliche : ydelnesse.

The sin of the deed of lechery is divided into many boughs.

1. The 1st is of those who live together out of the bonds of wedlock.

2. Adultery with common women.

3. Single men living with widows or the contrary.

4. Adultery with single women.

5. Adultery with married women (or spouse-breach).

This sin is doubled when both parties are married.

6. Unnatural sin,

for which God smote to death Onan, Jacob's nephew.

[Fol. 14. a.]

7. Adultery of a man with his god-mother or his goddaughter.

þe zenne of dede / of lecherie : him to-delp / ine uele bozes / be þe stat of þe persones / þet hit doþ. and geþ an he3 / uran kuede / to worse. þe uerste is of man / oþer of wyfman / þet ne habbeþ / nenne bend. ne of wodewehod. ne of spoushod. ne of ordre. ne of religioun. ne of oþre manere. þet is þe uerste zenne dyadlich : in dede / of lecherie. þe oþer is / to wyfmanne *commune*. þis zenne / is more hard : uor hi is / more ald. and uor þet / zuyche wyfmen / byeþ oþerhuyl wyues. oþer of relig[i]on. and ne uorzakeþ nenne. ne uader. ne broþer. ne zone / ne ken. þe þridde is / of man sengle / mid wodewe. oþer ayeward. þe uerþe is / wiþ sengle wifman. þe vifte is / mid wyfman ymarissed. þet is þe zenne / of spousbreche. þet is wel kucad. uor þer is / brekinge of treuþe / þet þe on ssel bere / to þe oþre. efterward þer is / a sacrilege / huanne me brecþ / þe sacrement / of spoushod. hit yualþ oþerhuyl / desertesoun / of eyr / and ualse mariages. þis zenne / him dobbelþ oþerhuyl / huanne hi is / of man y-spoused : wyþ wymman þet heþ housebounde. þe zixte is / huanne þe man / heþ his o3e wyf / deþ þing / þet is uorbode / and disordene / aye kende of man. and ordre. and of spoushod. And mid o3ene zuorde : man may / him-zelue sle. Alsuo may he / mid his o3ene wyue / zene3i dyadliche. þeruore smot god / to euele dyape onam / iacobis neuu. And þe dyeuel / þet hette asmodeus / astranglede / þe zeue houseboundes / of þe holy mayde / sare. þet zepþe wes / yonge thobyys wyf. Vor alle þe sacremens / of holi cherche / me ssel vsi / clenliche / and mid / greate worþssipe. þe zeuende is of man / to his godmoder / oþer to his goddo3ter. oþer of godsone / to þe children of his godzyb / oþer of his godzybbe / uor þo children / ne mo3e na3t come / to-gydere : wyþ-oute dyadlich zenne / ne be spoushod.

þe ȝtende is of man / to his kenne. and þe ilke zenne /
 arist : and loȝeþ. be þet þe keurede / is nyeȝ / oþer uer.
 þe neȝende is / of þe manne / mid þe kenne / of his
 wyue. oþer ayeward / of þe wyue / mid þe kenne / of
 hare housebunde. þe ilke zenne / is wel dreduol.
 Vor huanne þe man / heþ uelaȝrede / myd enye wyf-
 mane : he ne may nanmore / be spoushod ¹ / habbe
 none / of hire kenne. and yef he / enye nimþ : þe
 spoushod / ne is naȝt. And yef he / nimþ wyf : and
 efterward / of þe half / of hire kenne : ha lyeȝ / þe riȝt /
 þet he hedde / to his wyue / ine zuo moche / þet he ne
 may / efterward / wonye mid him / bote hy / hit ne
 bidde beuore. þe tende is of wyfmen to clerkes y-
 hoded. þis zenne / anheȝeþ : and loȝeþ. by þe hodes.
 and þe worþssiphede. þe enleste is / of man / of þe
 wordle / to wyfman / of religioun. oþer ayeaward / of
 wyfman of þe wordle / to man / of religioun. þe .xij. is
 of man / of religioun. and of wyfman / of religion. and
 þis zenne : an-heȝeþ / and loȝeþ. be þe stat / of þe per-
 sonen / þet hit dop. þe .xiiij. is of prelas / þet ssolden
 bi licnesse / and uorbysne / of holynesse / and of
 kleynesse / to al þe wordle. þe laste / is mest uoul /
 an lodlakeȝt / þet ne is naȝt / to nemny. þe ilke
 zenne / is aye kende / þet þe dyeuel tekþ to man. oþer
 to wyfman / ine uele maneres / þet ne byeþ naȝt / to
 nemni / uor þe materie / þet is to moche / abomynable.
 Ac ine ssrifþe / hit ssel nemni / þe ilke / to huam / hit
 is be-ualle. Vor asemoche / ase þe zenne / is more
 uoul / and more grȝslich : þe more is worþ / þe ssrifte.
 Vor þe ssame / þet me heþ / of þe zigginge : is grat del /
 of þe penonce. þis zenne / is zuo onworþ to gode : þet
 he dede rine / uer berninde / and bernston stinkinde /
 ope þe cité of sodome / and of gomorre. and azenkte / viȝ
 cites / in-to helle. þe dyuel him-zelf / þet hit por-

8. Adultery of a man with his own kin.

9. Adultery of a man with the kin of his wife, or the wife with her husband's kin.

10. Adultery of women with hooded clerks.

11. Adultery of a man of the world with a woman of religion, or the contrary.

12. Adultery of a man of religion with a woman of religion.

13. Adultery of prelates.

14. The last sin is too foul to be mentioned.

Those guilty of this sin stand in need of shrift.

This sin is so hateful to God, that he did rain burning fire and stinking brimstone upon Sodom and Gomorrah.

¹ MS. *spuoshod*

chaceþ : heþ ssame / þuanne man hit deþ. and þe eyr /
is anuenymed / of þe dede.

þE ZEUEDE HEAUED OF þE BESTE.

The seventh head
of the beast is the
sin of the mouth.
The mouth has
two offices, one to
swallow, the other
to talk;

þe zeuende heaued / of þe kueade beste : zuo is /
þe zenne of þe mouþe. and þeruore / þet þe mouþ / heþ
two offices. huerof / þe on belongeþ / to þe zuelz / ase
to þe mete / an to þe drinke. þe oþer / zuo is in
speche. þeruore / him to-delp / þe ilke zenne : in tuo
deles / principalliche. þet is to wytene : in zenne of

hence we have sin
of gluttony and
sin of evil spech.

I. Sin of gluttony.
The devil has
great power by
this sin.

glotounye / þet is ine mete / and in drinke. and ine
zenne / of kueade tonge. þet is / ine fole spekinge.
And uerst / zigge we / of þe zenne / of glotounye. þet is
a vice / þet þe dyeuel / is moche myde ypayd. and
mochē / onpayþ god. Be zuych zenne / heþ þe dyeuel /
wel grat mizte / in manne. Huer-of / we redeþ ine þe
godspelle / þet god / yaf yleauē þe dyeulen / to guo in
to þe zuyn. and þo hi weren / ine ham : hise adreynten /
ine þe ze. ine tokninge : þet þe glotouns / ledeþ lif / of
zuyn. and þe dyeuel heþ yleauē / to guo in ham : and
hise adrenchē / ine þe ze / of helle. and ham / to do ete
zuo moche : þet hi to-cleue. an zuo moche drinke : þet
hy ham adrenchēþ.

[Fol. 14. b.]

Gluttons lead the
life of swine, and
the devil hath
leave to go into
them,
so that they eat
till they burst, and
drink till they are
drowned.

Huanne þe kempe / heþ his uelaze / yueld / and
him halt / be þe þrote / wel onneape / he arist. Alsuo
hit is of þan / þet þe dyeuel halt / be þa zenne. and
þeruore bleþeliche / he yernþ / to þe þrote : ase þe wolf /
to þe ssepe / him uor to astrangli / ase he dede to euen /
and to Adam / in paradys terestre. þet is þe vissere /
of helle / þet nymþ þane viss / bi þe þrote / and by þe
chinne. þis zenne / moche mis-payþ god. Vor þe
glotoun / makeþ to grat ssame / huanne he makeþ /
his god : of ane zeche / uol of dong / þet is of his
wombe / þet he loueþ more / þanne god. and ine him
ylefth / and him serueþ. God him hat ueste : þe
wombe zayþ / ' þou ne sselt / ac et longe / and a-trayt.'

The devil by this
sin holdeth a man
by the throat and
strangleth him.

The glutton
maketh his god of
a sackful of dung,
i.e. his belly.

God bids him fast,
his belly bids him
eat long and late.

God him hat be þe morȝen arise : þe wombe zayþ / 'þo
ne sselt / ich am to uol / me behoueþ to slepe / þe
cherche nys non hare / hy abytt me wel.' And huanne
he arist : he begynþ his matyns / and his benes / and his
oreysones. and zayþ. 'a / god / huet ssolle we / ete to day.
huader me ssolle / eny þing uynde / þet by worþ?'
Efter þise matynes : comeþ þe laudes. and [he] zayþ. 'A.
god / huet we hedde / guod wyn yesteneuen / and
guode metes.' And efterþan / he bewepþ his zennes :
and zayþ. 'Allas he zayþ / ich habbe y-by nyeȝ dyad to
niȝt. to strang / wes þet wyn / teue. þet heaued / me
akþ. ich ne ssel by an eyse : al-huet ich habbe /
ydronke.' þous to þe kueade zayþ. þis zenne / let man
to ssame. Vor alperuerst / he becomþ tauernyer.
þanne he playþ ate des. þanne he zelyþ his oȝen. þanne
he becomþ ribaud. holyer. and þyef. and þanne me
hine anhongeþ. þis is þet scot : þet me ofte payþ.

After rising he
thinks of what he
shall eat.

Then he thinks
of yesterday's
good wine, but
bemoans his
aching head.

The glutton often
comes to the gal-
lows.

This is the shot
he often pays.
This sin spreadeth
out into 5 boughs.

þis zenne him to-delf / ase be saynt gregorye. ine
vif boȝes. Vor ine vif maneres / me zenezep / be mete /
and be drinke. Oper uor þet / þet me eth / and dryngþ :
to-uore time. oper / to lostuolliche. oper / out of
mesure. oper / to ardontliche. Oper / to plentiuuous-
liche. þe uerste boȝ þanne / of þise zenne : is to ete /
beuore time. and to uoul þing hit is / of man / þet heþ
age : huanne he / ne may abyde / time / to etene. and
of grat lecherie / of þrote / hit comþ. þet man / þet is
strang / and hol of bodye. wyþ-oute ancheysoun
sceluol. to-uore riȝte houre / yernþ to þe mete / ase
deþ a best dounb. And uele zennes comeþ / of þo
ilke wone. þanne hit comþ / þet zuych a man zayþ.
þet he ne may ueste. ne do penonce. Vor he heþ þet
yzed. 'ich habbe / a to kuead heaued.' And he zayþ
zop. uor he heþ hit zuych ymad. and kuead herte
alzuu / þet heþ ymad þet kuead. and him heþ y-do
breke ¹ / þe uestinges / þet is grat zenne. and yef he
him dammede / be him zelue : þer-of no strengþe. Ac

1. Eating before
time, and yielding
to lechery of
throat,

as doth a dumb
beast.

A man guilty of
this sin cannot
fast, because his
head is bad, but
what is worse, his
heart becomes
evil.

¹ [MS. broke.]

He will have fellows like himself,	he wyle habbe uelazes / þet doþ ase he deþ. huiche he dra3þ / uram wel to done and let his mid him / in-to helle. Vor he deþ ham / breke hare uestinges. and do
[Fol. 15. a.]	hare glotounyes. huer-of hi ham / wolden loki : yef þer nere / kueade uelazes. Vor þe drinkere / and þe hor-
whom he causes to sin.	ling / amang þe oþre kueades / þet hi doþ : propreliche one zenne / þet is þe dyeules / huanne hi wyþ-dra3þ to do wel. Hy ziggeþ / þet hi ne mo3e na3t ueste. ac hy lye3þ. Vor litel loue of god : ham heþ þet / y do
He loves the idle bliss of the world more than the true joy of heaven.	zigge. Vor yef hi loueden zuo moche / þe zoþe ioie of heuene. ase hy doþ / þe ydele blisse / of þis wordle : ase hy uesteþ / uor þe timliche nyedes / al-huet ni3t : ase wel / hi mi3ten ueste / huet non / uor god : yef hi him / zuo moche louede. Ac hy byeþ / ase is þet child. þet
He is as the child who will always have bread in his hand.	wyle alneway / habbe þet bread / ine his hand. And þe sselt conne / þet ase me zene3þ / ine to raþe arizinge / uor to ethene : and alsuo me zene3þ : late to soupi.
Some sin by supping late, and rising late.	þanne þet uolk / þet late louieþ to soupi / and to waki be ni3te. and wastep þane time / ine ydelnesse. and late guoþ to bedde / and ariseþ late : zene3þ / ine
They waste their time, and turn night into day.	uele maneres. Verst : ine þet hi wastep / þane time. and hine miswendep / huanne hi makeþ / of þe ny[3]t :
Such folk are accursed of God.	day. and of þe daye / ni3t. Zuych uolk / god acorseþ / be þe prophete. Vor me ssel be daye : wel / do. and be ni3te / herie god / and bidde. ac huo þet lyþ a bedde / huanne he ssolde arise. slepe he mot : huanne he ssolde bidde. and his seruise yhere / and god herie. and þos he / lyst al his time / and þe ni3t : and þane day.
They play at evil games, as dice :	Afterward / ine zuyche wakinges : me deþ manye kueades. ase playe ate ches. oþer ate tables. and me zayþ / manye bisemers. and folyes. and þus wastep /
So they wrath God, and harm their bodies and souls.	þe wreche his time / and his wyttes / and his guodes. and wreþep god. and harmep his bodi / and more þe zaule.
2. Immoderate eating and drinking.	þe oþer bo3 : is of mete / and of drinke / be to moche / and wiþ-oute mesure. þe ilke byeþ / propreliche glotounes / þet al uorzuel3þ / ase deþ þe kete of

his sperringe. Hit is grat wyt / to loki mesure / ine mete / and ine drinke / and grat helpe. uor moche uolk sterueþ. and ofte þer comeþ / greate ziknesses. Ac huo

Gluttons are like the kite that swallows the sparrow.

þet wyle þise mesure lyerny : he ssel ywyte / and onderstonde / þet þer byeþ / uele maneres to libbe / ine þe wordle. þe uerste libbeþ / be þe ulesse. þe oper be / his ioliueté. þe þridde / be his fisike. þe uerþe / be his onesteté. þe vifte / be þan þet hare zennes acseþ. þe zixte be þe goste / and be þe loue of god.

One man lives by the flesh, another by his jollity, a third by his physic, a fourth by his honesty, a fifth by his sins, and a sixth by the spirit and love of God.

þo þet libbeþ be þe ulesse / ase zayþ zaynte paul / hi slazeþ hire zaulen. uor hi makeþ / of hare wombe : hare god. þe ilke / ne hyealdeþ scele / ne mesure. and þeruore / hi ssolle habbe / ine þe opre wordle / pine wyþ-oute mesure.

Those that live by the flesh slay their souls and make their belly their god.

þe ilke þet libbeþ be hare iolyueté : wylleþ hyealde / hire fole uelazredes : zuo þet hi ne conne / ne hi ne moze / healde mesure.

Those who live by their jollity know no moderation.

þo þet libbeþ be ypocrisye / þet byeþ / þe dyeules martires. hi habbeþ / tuo mesures. uor þe tuaye dyeulen / þet tormenteþ þane ypocrite : byeþ moche ayder / ayens opren. þe on him zayþ. 'eth yno3 / al-huet / þou art uayr / and uet.' þe oper him zayþ : 'þou ne sselst. ac þou sselst ueste / al huet þou art / bleche and lhene.'

Those that live by hypocrisy are the devil's martyrs.

Nou behoueþ / to habbe / tuo mesures / ane little / and ane scarce. þet he useþ / touore þe uolke. And anopre guode and large. þet he useþ / þet non ne y-zy3þ. þes ne halt na3t / þe ri3te mesure. þe ilke / þet couaytse ledeþ / habbeþ zuyche mesure : ase þe pors wyle. þet is lheuedi /

They live temperately before the world, but immoderately when none sees them.

[Fol. 15. b.]

and hotestre / of þe house. þanne ssolle we betuene þe porse / and þe wombe / of þe gloutoun : habbe a uayr strif. þe wombe zayþ. 'ich wylle by uol.' þe purs zayþ / 'ich wylle by uol.' þe wombe zayþ / 'ich wylle þet þou ete. and drinke / and þet þou despendi.' And þe purs zayþ : 'þou ne sselst na3t. ich wille þet þou loki / and wyþdraze.' Allas / huet ssel he do / þes wreche / þet is þrel / to zuyche tuaye kueade lhordes. Tuo mesures /

Often times there is a strife between the purse and womb of the glutton.

The belly says I will be full ; so says the purse. The one says I will eat and spend, the other says thou shalt not, I will that thou save and retrench.

makeþ be wyzte ymad. þe mesure of wombe / in oþre-
manne house guode / and large. And þe mesure of the
purse / of his. þet is zorzuol and scarce.

Those that live by
physic often die
by physic.

þo þet libbeþ be fisike : hy healdeþ þe mesure / of
ypocras / þet is lite / an strait. and hit iualþ ofte. þet þe
ilke / þet be fisike leueþ : be fizike sterfþ.

Those living by
their honesty eat
at proper times.

þo þet libbeþ be hyre onestete : þe ilke hyealdeþ /
þe mesure of scele. and libbeþ worssipliche / to þe wordle /
þet eteþ ine time / and ine oure. and nimeþ mid guode
wylle : þet hi habbeþ / and cortaysliche / an gledliche.

Those living by
their sins are
dieted by penance.

þo þet libbeþ be þan / þet hare zennes okseþ.
hyealdeþ zuiche manere / and mesure / ase nie ham
chargeþ / ine penonce.

Those living by
the spirit are
those that use all
things aright, in
reason and moder-
ation.

þo þet libbeþ / be þe goste. byeþ þo / þet ine þe
loue of god wonyeþ. to huam þe holy gost tekþ / to
hyealde ordre / an scele / and mesure. þo þet habbeþ
þe lholdssip / ope þe bodyes / þet is zuo y-taht / þet he
ne aceþ / none outrage. and deþ / þet þe gost hat /
wy[þ]-oute grochinge / and wiþ-oute wiþzigginge.

Thus we see that
the devil hath
many tricks by
which to take man
by the throat.

Nou miht þou ysi / uor þet we habbeþ hyer yzed /
þet uele ginnes / heþ þe dyeuel / uor to nime þet uolk /
be þe þrote. uor uest / he sseaweþ ham / þe wynes /
and þe metes / þet byeþ uayre / and likerouses / ase he
dede / to euen þane eppel. And þet / yef hit him ne is
naht worþ : he him zayþ. ‘eth / an drink ase þe ilke /

First, he sheweth
him wine and
meats,

tells him to do as
others do,

and þe ilke. uelazrede þe behoueþ hyea[l]de. yef þe
wylt / þet me ne storue þe naht. and þet nie þe / ne
hyalde uor papelard.’ oþer he him zayþ. ‘þe helpe of þine
bodye / þou sselst loki. uor huo þet ne heþ helpe : he
ne heþ naht. Ne by naht manslahtfe / of þe selue. þou
sselst to þine bodye : þe sostinonce.’ Oþer he him zayþ.
‘Nim yeme / of þe guodes / þet þou dest / oþer miht do.
þou ne est / naht uor þe lost / of þyne bodye : ac to
serui god. þou sselst / þine strengþe loki to god. ase
zayþ dauip.’ þise sceles / byeþ zuo cleuiinde / þet þe
wyseste / and þe holyist[e] man : byeþ oþerhuyl / becaht.

and to keep his
body in health
and strength by
proper susten-
ance.

The devil says,
take of thy goods
and so serve God.

þe þridde boȝ of þise zenne is / to uerliche yerne /
 to þe mete / ase deþ þe hond : to þe hes. and þe more /
 þet is / þe ilke uerlichhede : þe more / is þe zenne. Vor
 ase hit ne is / no zenne / uor to habbe riches. Ac
 his / to moche louye. Alsuo / hit ne is no zenne / uor
 to ethe / þe guode metes : ak ethe his / to uerliche /
 oþer disordeneliche. Etthe metes / byeþ guode / to
 guode. and to ham : þet be scele / and be mesure / his
 vseþ. and hise nimeþ / mid þe sause / of þe drede / of
 oure lhorde. Vor me ssel / euremo habbe drede : þet
 me / ne mys-nyme / be ouerdede. and me ssel herye
 god. and yelde hym þonkes / of his yefþes. And be
 þe zuetnesse / of þe mete / þet wyþ-oute / ne may by : me
 ssel þenche / godes zuetnesse. and to þe ilke mete : þet
 uelþ þe herte. Þeruore me ret / ine hous of religion /
 ate mete : uor þet / huanne þet bodi / nymþ his mete /
 of one half : þet þe herte / nyme his of oþer half.

þe uerþe boȝ / of þise zenne / of þan þet / to noble-
 liche wylleþ libbe. þet despendeþ / and wastep / uor to
 uelle hare glotonye / hwere of an hondred poure / miȝten
 libbe / and ynoȝliche by ueld. Zuich uolk zeneȝeþ ine
 uele maneres. Verst : in greate despenses / þet hi
 makeþ. efterward / ine þan / þet hi / hit vseþ / ine to
 grat hete / and ine to grat lost. And efterward / ine
 þe ydele blisse / þet hi habbeþ. Vor hit ne is naȝt /
 onlepiliche lecherie / of zuelȝ : ac hit is / wel ofte uor
 bost / þet hi zechep / zuo riche metes / and makeþ / zuo
 uele mes. huer-of / ofte / comeþ / uele kueades.

þe fifte boȝ is / þe bysihede / of glotuns / þet ne
 zechep / bote to þe delit / of hare zuelȝ. þise byeþ pro-
 preliche / lechurs / þet ne zechep / bote þet lost / of
 hare zuelȝ. Ine þri þinges / nameliche / liþ þe zenne /
 of zuyche uolke. Verst / ine þe greate bysihede / þet hy
 habbeþ / to porchaci / and to agraipi. Efterward / mid
 grat lost / þet hy habbeþ / ine þe us. Efterward / ine
 þe blisse / þet hi habbeþ / ine þe recordinge. And huo

3. The third
bough is a strong
yearning for meat.

To eat meats is
good, provided
they are eaten
with the sauce of
the dread of our
Lord.

[Fol. 18. a.]

By the sweetness
of the meat we
should think on
God's sweetness.

4. The fourth
bough is the
spending and
wasting of goods
in order to live
nobly.

Such folk sin in
many ways :

1. In great ex-
pense.

2. In intemper-
ance.

3. In vanity ; they
like to boast of
their rich meats.

5. The fifth bough
is the anxiety of
gluttons, who seek
only the delight of
the swallow.

In three ways
these folk sin :

1. In buying and
preparation.

2. Great lust in
the use of their
property.

3. Bliss in the
recording and en-

deavours to make
of one meat many
disguised messes.

And when the
mess comes on,
one after the
other,

jests and jokes
form the entrées.

[a playnte]
The glutton says,
"though my belly
burst, I will not
let this dish
escape."

4. After the
lechery and bliss
of eating comes
the wish of the
gluttons, that they
had the neck of a
crane and the
belly of a cow.

The sins of glut-
tony and lechery
arise commonly
in the tavern, that
well of sin,

that school and
very chapel of the
devil.

When the glutton
goeth into the

[Fol. 16. b.]
tavern he entereth
upright; when he
cometh out he
cannot support
himself.

When he enters
he can see, hear,
and speak well;
when he departs
he has lost all
these, and has no
reason or under-
standing.

These are the
devil's miracles.

þet miȝte telle / huyche bysinesse hi doþ / to þan / þet
hare metes / by wel agrayþed. and ech to his oȝene
smac. and hou hy moȝe maki / of one mete / uele mes
desgysed / uor hare uoule lost. And huanne þe mes /
byeþ y-come / on / efter þe oþer: þanne byeþ þe burdes /
and þe trufles / uor entremes. and ine þise manere / geþ
þe tyme. þe wreche him uoryet. þe scele slepp. þe maze
gret / and zayþ. 'Dame Zuelȝ / þo me ssast. ich am
zuo uol: þet ich to-cleue.' Ac þe tonge þe lyckestre /
him ansuereþ: and zayþ. 'þaȝ þou ssoldest to-cleue: ich
nelle naȝt lete askapie / þis mes.' Efter þe lecherie / þet
is ine etinge: comþ þe blisse / þet is ine þe recorder.
Efterward / hi wessep þet hi hedden / nykken of crane.
and wombe of cou. uor þet þe mosseles / blefte lenger /
ine þe prote. and more miȝten uorzuelȝe.

Nou þou hest y-hyerd / þe zennes / þet comeþ of
glotounye / and ¹ of lecherie. and þeruore / þet zuyche
zennes / arizeþ communliche / ine tauerne: þet is welle
of zenne. þeruore / ich wyll a lite take / of þe zennes /
þet byeþ y-do / ine þe tauerne. þe tauerne / ys þe
scole of þe dyeule / huere / his deciples studieþ. and
his oȝene chapele / þer / huer me deþ / his seruese. and
þer huer he makeþ / his miracles / zuiche ase behoueþ ²
to þe dyeule. At cherche / kan god / his uirtues sseawy.
and do his miracles. þe blynde: to lizte. þe crokede: to
rizte. yelde þe wyttes of þe wode. þe speche: to þe
dombe. þe hierþe: to þe dyaue. Ac þe dyeuel deþ al
ayenward / ine þe tauerne. Vor huanne þe glotoun geþ
in to þe tauerne / ha geþ opriȝt. huanne he comþ a-yen:
he ne heþ uot þet him moȝe sostyeni ne bere. Huanne
he þerin geþ: he y-zycþ / and y-herþ / and specþ wel /
and onderstant. huan he comþ ayen: he heþ al þis
uorlore / ase þe ilke þet ne heþ wyt / ne scele / ne onder-
standinge. Zuyche byeþ þe miracles þet þe dyeuel
makeþ. And huet lessouns þer he ret. alle uelþe he
tekþ þer. glotounye. lecherie. zuerie. uorzuerie. lyeȝe.

¹ MS. *adn*

² MS. *bohoub*

miszigge. reneye god. euele telle. contacky. and to uele
 oþre manyeres of zennes. þer ariseþ þe cheastes. þe
 strifs. þe manslaȝþes. þer me tekþ to stele: and to
 hongī. þe tauerne is a dich to pieues. and þe dyeules
 castel uor to werri god / an his halȝen. and þo þet þe
 tauernes sustyeneþ: byeþ uelazes of alle þe zennen þet
 byeþ y-do ine hare tauernes. and uor zoþe yef me ham
 zede / oþer dede / asemochē ssame to hire uader / oþer to
 hare moder. oþer to hare gromes. as me deþ to hire
 uader of heuene. and to oure lheuedy. and to þe halȝen
 of paradis. mochel hi wolden ham wrepi. and oþer red
 hi wolden do þer to þanne hi doþ.

The tavern is a
 ditch to thieves,
 and the devil's
 castle for to war
 against God and
 His saints.

Sustainers of
 taverns are acces-
 sories to all the
 sins done in their
 taverns.

ÞE ZENNES OF ÞE TONGE.

Huo þet wyle conne and weȝe þe zennes of þe tonge:
 hit behoueþ¹ þet he conne weȝe / and ayenweȝe / þet
 word huych þet hit by. and huer-of hit comþ: and huet
 kuead hit deþ. Vor hit y-ualþ þet / þet word is zenne
 ine hym. uor þet hit is kuead. And yef hit by-ualþ þet
 hit by zenne uor þet hyt geþ out of kueade herte. And
 of heauede hit biualþ / þet þe speche is grat zenne / uor
 þet hi deþ grat kuead / þaz hy by uayre and ysmoþed.
 Nou ssett þou ywyte / þet þe kueade tonge / is þet trau
 þet god acorsede in his spelle / uor þet he ne uand naȝt
 bote leaues. þet ine holy writ byeþ onde[r]stonde
 wordes. And alsuo ase hit is strang þing to telle / alle
 þe lyeaues of þe trauwe: alsuo hit is strang þing uor to
 telle þe zennes þet of þe tonge comeþ. An piȝe ten boȝes
 we moȝe alsuo nemni: ydelnesse. yelpinge. blonðinge.
 todraȝinge. lyesynges. vorzueringes. stryfyngē. gro-
 chinge. wyþstondinge. blasfemye.

The sins of the
 tongue.

It behoveth each
 man to weigh and
 re-weigh each
 word, whereof it
 cometh and what
 evil it doeth.

The evil tongue is
 the tree cursed by
 God, because he
 found on it nought
 but leaves, that is
 to say, words.

þe ilke þat ham yeueþ / to moche to ydele worddes.
 hi zecheþ grat harm / þet hi ne aparceyueþ naȝt. Vor
 hy lyeseþ þane time precious. huer-of hi ssolden habbe
 eftsone disete. and uorlyeseþ þe guodes þet hi þencheþ
 to done / and ssolden do. and nimeþ þe tresor of þe herte.

We may, amongst
 many others,
 name ten boughs:
 Idleness, boasting,
 flattery, seduc-
 tion, lying, per-
 jury, strife,
 grudging, oppo-
 sition, blasphemy.

¹ MS. *bohoueþ*

Those who give themselves up to idle words uncover the pot so that the flies go therein. One calls them idle words, but they are not so, but dear and harmful.

And in the high court of God must an account be given of them. In idle words one sinneth in five ways:
1. The tongue is sometimes full,
[Fol. 17. a.]
and goes like the clapper of a mill.

The after-tellers are often held fools and liars.

2. Idle tales and fair sayings.

3. Jests and jokes full of filth and of lies,

stinking and foul words.

4. Mocking and scorn of good men.

Thou art as a manslaughter, if thou causest any one to do wrong, by thy tongue.

and hise uelþ a-yen mid ydelenesse. hi onwriþ þane pot. and þe ulezen vlyeþ þerin. hi hise clepieþ / ydele wordes / ac hi ne byeþ. ac hi byeþ of grat cost / and harmuolle / and perilous. ase þo þet emteþ þe herte of hire guode. and uelþ his ayen / mid ydelnesse / as þo / huer-of behoueþ yelde rekeninge of echen beuor god / ate daye of dome. ase god zayþ ine his spelle. Hit ne is naȝt lite þing / ne ydelenesse / huer-of hit behoueþ rekeni. and yelde scele ine þe heȝe cort / ase beuore god / and al þe baronage of heuene.

Ine þo ydele wordes me zeneȝeþ ine vif maneres. Vor þer byeþ zome wordes ydele / huer of þe tonges byeþ zuo uolle / þet spekeþ beuore / and behynde. þet byeþ ase þe cleper of þe melle / þet ne may him naȝt hyealde stille. And yef hi spekeþ bisye wordes of ham þet zuo bleþeliche telleþ tidyinges. þet zetteþ ofte hare herte to mesayse of ham þet his yhereþ. and makeþ þe efter telleres ofte by yhyea[l]de foles and uor lyeȝeres. Efterward byeþ þe tales / and þe uayre zigginges. huer-of hi habbeþ moche of ydele blisse / þo þet hise conne sotilliche zigge / uor þe herkneres do wel lhezze. Efterward byeþ þe bourdes / and þe trufles uol of uelþe / and of leazinges. þet me clepeþ ydele wordes. Ac uorzoþe hit ne byeþ. ac hy byeþ wel stinkinde / and wel uoule. Efterward byeþ þe bisemeres and þe scornes / þet hi ziggeþ ope þe guode men. and ope alle ham þet wylleþ do wel / þeruore : þet hi myȝten his draȝe to hare corde. and uram þe guode þet hi habeþ y-conceyued wyþdraȝe. þet ne byeþ naȝt ydele wordes. Vor þou art ase man-slaȝe / yef þou be þine tonge / wyþdraȝst ane man / oþer a child wel to done. and god þe can asemoeche þank : ase wolde þe kyng / yef þe heddest yslaȝe his zone / oþer his tresor ystole.

Of the sin of boasting.

OF ÞE ZENNE OF YELPINGE.

Efterward comþ þe zenne of yelpyng / þet is wel

grat / and wel uoul / wel uals / and wel vileyn. Hi is wel
 grat: Vor huo þet yelpþ: he is aperteliche godes þyef.
 and him wyle benyme his blisse / ase we zede hyer-
 beuore. þet is a wel uals zenne. Vor þe guodes huerof
 he miȝte wynne þe heuene: hi yeueþ uor a litel wynd.
 And zuo hit is a wel uoul zenne. Vor þe wordle zelf /
 ham halt uor fol. and uor vilayn and uor nice.

He that boasteth
 is God's thief.

For a little wind
 he loseth heaven.

The world itself
 holdeth him to be
 a fool.

Ine þise boȝe byeþ vif leaues. þet byeþ vif manere
 of yelpinges. On is preterit. þe[t] is to zigge: of þinge
 ypassed. þet is þe zenne of þan / þet zuo bleþeliche
 recorderþ hare dedes / and hare prowesses. and þet hi
 wenepþ habbe / oþer wel ydo: oþer wel yzed. þe oþer
 is of present þet is to zigge: of nou. þet is þe zenne of
 þo: þet naȝt ne doþ gledliche. ne ham ne payeþ wel to
 done / ne wel zigge. bote ase me his yzyȝþ / oþer yherþ.
 þise / ine dede / oþer ine speche / and ine zinginge: hi
 yelpeþ / and zelleþ uor naȝt: al þet hi doþ. To þan
 belongeþ þe zenne of zuichen þet yelpeþ of þe guodes
 þet hi habbeþ / oþer þet hi wenepþ habbe / of hare
 noblesse. of hare richesse / of hare prouesse. Hy byeþ
 ase þe coccou / þet ne can zinge / bote of him zelue. þe
 þridde is þe zenne of þise ouerweneres þet ziggeþ. ich
 wille do þet / and þet. ich wylle awreke forre. ich wille
 maki þe helles and þe danes. þe uerþe is more sotil
 þet is of þan þet ne moȝe uor ssame ham-zelue praysi.
 ac al þet oþre doþ / and ziggeþ: altogidere uayrliche
 blamyep ase riȝt naȝt ne him prayseþ. to þet hi conne
 do and zigge. þe vifte is yet more sotil / of ham þet
 huanne hi willeþ þet me hise praysi / and hi nolleþ
 zigge aperteliche: hi hit makeþ a naȝt / and makeþ zuo
 moche ham milde / and ziggeþ / þet hi byeþ zuo kueade /
 and zuo zenuol / and zuo onconnynde: þrisiþe more /
 þanne hi by. vor þet me ham hereþ / and hyealde: uor
 wel boȝsam. 'Allas' zayþ saynt bernard 'huet þer is hier
 zorȝuolle yelpinge.' Hy makeþ ham dyeulen: uor þet
 me halt ham uor angles. Hy makeþ ham kueade: uor

In this bough are
 five leaves:

1. Past—boasting
 of past deeds,
 prowess, &c.

2. Present—boast-
 ing of present
 riches, nobleness,
 or prowess.

These boasters are
 like the cuckoo.

3. Overweening—
 boasting of what
 one will do.

4. Blaming what
 is right in others.

5. Affected
 humility.
 Many folk say
 that they are
 wicked and sinful,

[Fol. 17. b.]

so that one may
 hold them in
 esteem.

They make them-
 selves devils, so
 that they may be
 accounted angels.

Others seek
spokesmen to
praise and extol
their virtues.

þet me ssolde his hyealde uor good. ne more me ne
may ham wrepi: þanne uor to zigge / uor zoþe þou
zayst zoþ. To þan belongeþ þe zenne of ham þet zechiþ
spekemen ham uor to praysi. and uor to grede hare
noblesse / be huas mouþe hi spekeþ / and þe more
hardyliche.

Of flattery.

OF BLONDINGE.

Flatterers are the
devil's nurses, who
give suck to his
children and sing
them to sleep.
They smear the
way of hell with
honey.

There are five
boughs of this sin
1. Praising hastily
what is well said
or done.

2. Exaggeration
of trifles,

where there is
more of lies than
truth.

3. Assumption of
goods and graces.
The folk who as-
sume so much
and so deceive
many are called
charmners.

4. Singing *placebo*
to every word or
deed, be it good or
bad; or echoing
all that is said by
others, be it good
or bad.

þe blonderes / byeþ þe dyeules noriches. þet his
children yeueþ zouke / and doþ ham slepe ine hare
zenne be hare uayre zang. Hy smerieþ þane way of
helle mid hony / ase me deþ to þe bere / uor þet þe
zenezere hine ssolde guo þe hardylaker. þis zenne him
to-delf: ine vif deles. þet byeþ ase vif leaues: ine þise
boze. þe uerste zenne is of þyse blonderes. þet huanne
hi yzeþ þet he / oþer hy / þet hi wylleþ beuly / habbeþ
wel yzed. oþer þet he heþ wel ydo: an-haste him ziggeþ
to him-zelue / uor þet ha heþ ydele blisse. Ac his kuead
nolleþ hi him naȝt telle. þe oþer zenne is / huanne þe
litle guodes þet hire children þet hi doþ zouke / ydo /
oþer yzed: hy leueþ / and dobbbleþ / and moreþ hit of
hiren / al-huet þer is more of lyeasinge / þanne of zoþ.
And þeruore hi byeþ ycleped ualse wytnesses ine holy
writ. þe þridde zenne is / huanne hi doþ onderstonde
þe manne / oþer þe wyfmanne / þet he heþ ine him
manie guodes / and graces / huer-of he ne heþ none
and þeruore his clepeþ holy writ: charmeres. uor hy
becharmeþ zuo moche þane man: þet he ylef[þ] ham more /
þanne him zelue. þet he yleþ bet þet he yherþ: þanne
þet he yziȝt. and þet hy ziggeþ of him: þanne þet hi useþ.
þe uerþe zenne is. þet huanne hi alle zingeþ / 'Placebo.' þet
is to zigge: 'mi lhord zayþ zoþ. mi lhord deþ wel.' and
wendeþ to guode / al þet þe guodeman deþ / oþer zayþ.
by hit guod by hit kuead. And þeruore hy byeþ ycleped
ine þe writinge: ecko. þet is þe rearde þet ine þe heze
helles comp ayen / and acordeþ to al þet me him zayþ.
by hit guod / by hit kuead. by hit zoþ / by hi uals.

þe vifte zenne is / huanne þe blondere defendeþ / and
excuseþ / and wryeþ þe kueades / and þe zennes / of ham
þet he wyle ulateri. and þeruore zuyche byeþ ycleped ine
wringe : tayles. Vor hi wreþ þe uelþes of zenne of
riche men / uor zom timlich guod. hueruore hi byeþ
anlicned to þe tayle of þe uoxe / be hare barat / and
uor hare bezuykinge of tedrazynge.

5. Defending,
excusing, and
hiding faults of
others.
Those guilty of
this sin are called
"tails."

Blondere / and misziggere : byeþ of one scole. þise
byeþ þe tuo nykeren þet we uyndeþ ine bokes of kende
of bestes. Vor hy byeþ a ssewyng of þe ze / þet me
klepeþ nykeren. þet habbeþ bodyes of wyfman / and
tayl of uissse. and clauen of arn. and zuo zuetelich
zingeþ / þet hi makeþ slepe þe ssipmen / and efterward
his uorzuelþ. þet byeþ þe blonderes. þet be hare uayre
zang / makeþ slepe þet uolk. and ine hare zenne. hi
resembleþ an eddre / þet hatte serayn. þet yernþ more
zuyþere / þanne hors. and oþerhuyl vleþ. and habbeþ
þet uenym zuo strang : þet no triacle ne is þer to nazt
worþ. Vor rapre comþ þe dyap : þanne me uelþ þane
byte. þet byeþ þe missiggeres. of huam salomon zayþ /
þet hi byteþ / ase eddren ine bezuykinge. an þet uenim
slaþþ þri / in one stroke. þane þet zayþ. þane þet lhest.
and þane / of huam he missayþ. þet is þe felliste best
þet me clepeþ hyane. þet ondelfþ þe bodies of dyade
men / and hise eteþ. þet byeþ þo / þet byteþ and eteþ
þe guode men of religion / þet byeþ dyade to þe wordle.
Hi byeþ more feller / þanne helle. þet ne uorzuyþ /
bote kueade. Ac hi yerneþ op to þe guode. hueruore hy
byeþ anlicned to þe zoze. huanne hi heþ yuarzed / wel
bleþeliche byt men : ycloped mid huyt. Hy byeþ ase
þe lhapwynche / þet ine uelþe of man / makeþ his nest /
and zuo restep. þet byeþ þe ssarnboddess þet beuleþ þe
floures. and louieþ þet dong. And þes boz heþ vif
leaues. þe uerste is / huanne me vint leazinges.¹ and þe
kueades uor oþren to arere blame. þe oþer is / huanne

Flatterers and
mis-sayers are
like Nykers or
Mermaids,

who sing sailors
to sleep, and then
swallow them.

They are like the
adder Serayn,

[Fol. 18. a.]

that runneth
swifter than a
horse,

or the beast
Hyane, who un-
graves dead
men's bodies and
eats them.

They are like the
farrowed sow,
who bites men in
white;
or like the beetles
that love dung.
There are five
boughs of evil
speaking :

1. Finding of lies
in order to blame
others.

2. Telling and

¹ leazinges ?

increasing the
report of another's
wrong-doing.
3. Turning good
into evil.

4. Speaking evil
of others,

for when one
speaketh good of
another, some one
will find some-
thing amiss.

They are like the
scorpion, fair as
to its head, but
whose tail is
poisonous.

5. False and un-
true grudging of
others' deeds.

þet kuead þet he yherþ of oþren / he hit telþ uorþ / and
hit moreþ of his oʒen. þe þridde is huaʒne he kuencþ /
and deþ to naʒte / alle þe guodes þet þe man deþ / and
hise deþ hyea[l]de to ane kueade. þes eth þane man al
yhol. þe oþre ne eteþ hine naʒt al / ac byt / and nimþ
a stech. and þis is þet uerþe lyeaf of þise boʒe / þet is
proprelliche ycleped todraʒynge. Vor he to-draʒþ / and
toheaup eche daye zom stech of guode / þet he yhyerþ
of oþren. Vor huanne me zayþ guod of oþren touore
him : alneway he vint / and zet ames. Vor zoþe he
zayþ : þet is zoþ. he is wel guod man / and ich hine
louie moche / ak he heþ zuich a lac ine him / and þet
me uorþingþ. þes is þe scorpioun þet makeþ uayr mid
þe heauede. and enueymeþ mid þe tayle. þe vifte is
huaʒne he miswent / and went to þe worse half. al þet
he yherþ / oþer yziʒþ / þat me may wende to guode /
and to kueade. and þeruore is he uals demere / and
ontrewe.

Lying.

LEAZYNGES.

Lying makes a
man false.

The liar is among
men as chaff
among corn.

The liar is like
the devil.

The liar, like the
devil, changeth in
many ways the
folk to beguile.

He is like the
chameleon, that
liveth by air, who
with all sorts of
colours has none
of his own.

[Fol. 18. b.]

In this bough are
three small twigs.

Leazinge ualseþ þane man / alse me ualseþ þe kinges
sel / oþer þe popes bulle. and þeruore þet me makeþ
ualse monaye and berþ ualse lettres : ha ssel by demd
ase ualsere / ate daye of dome. þe lyeʒere is among þe
men : ase þe ualse peny among þe guode. ase þet chef :
among þe corn. þe lyeʒere is ylich þe dyeule. þet is
his uader. ase god zayþ ine his spelle. Vor he is
lyeʒere / and uader of leazinges / ase he þet made þe
uerste leazinge. and yet he hise makeþ / and tekþ eche-
daye. þe dyeuel him sseweþ ine uele ssefþes. and him
chongeþ in uele wysen / þet uolk uor to gyly. Alsuo
deþ þe lyeʒere. hueruore he is ase þe gamelos þet leueþ
by þe eyr and naʒt ne heþ ine his roppes bote wynd.
and heþ ech manere colour / þet ne heþ non his oʒen.

Ine þise boʒe byeþ þri smale tuygges : Vor þer byeþ
leazinges helpinde and leazinges likynde. and leazinges

deriynde. and in echen is zenne. Vor ase zayþ saynt
austin. asemoche ase he þet lyeþ / be his leazinge / deþ
guod to oþren : alneway he deþ his oþene harm / þanne
þe leazinges helpinde byeþ zenne. Ac þe leazinges
likinde. byeþ more grat zenne / ase byeþ þe hyezinges
of þe lozeniour. and of þe gememen / and of þe scorneres,
þet ziggeþ þe bysemeres. and þe lezinges. and þe lhez-
inges uor to solaci þet uolk / ine ziggyng / and ham to
harkin : is zenne. hit ne is non drede. Ac þe lyazinges
deriynde : byeþ dyadlich zenne. huanne me his zayþ
wyndeliche / and be þoþte¹ / uor to do harm to oþren.

1. Lies helping.
2. Lies pleasing,
3. Lies hurtful.

1. The first sin does harm to the man who is guilty of it.
2. The second sin is seen in flatterers and scorners who lie to please folk.

3. The third sin is deadly, whether it be in thought or deed.

[1 MS. þoþte]

To þise boþe belongeþ alle ualshedes / and þe gyles /
and þe contactes. þet me deþ in al þe wordle uor oþren
to gyly and harmy. oþer ine zaule / oþer in bodye. oþer
ine guodes. oþer ine los / huych þet hit by.

To this bough be-
long falsehoods,
guiles, and con-
tests, made to
harm others.

OF ÞE ZENNE OF LYE3INGE.

Kread þing hit is to lyeþe / ac more zenne hit is him
zelue uorzuerie. and þeruore oure lhord hit zuo moche
uorbyet. Perilous þing hit is to zuerie. ac naȝt uor
þan / þet ine no poynt me ne may zuerie : wyþ-oute
zenne. ase zayþ þe bougre. Ac uor þan þet ofte zuerie :
makeþ ofte uorzuerie / and ofte zeneȝi. Vor ine zeue
maneres me zuereþ. Verst huanne me zuereþ boldliche /
þet is [in] onworþnesse / and bleþeliche. þet hit þingþ / þet
him hit likeþ to zuerie. þeruore hit uorbyet saint Iacob.
'ne zuerieþ naȝt : bote huanne hit is nyed.' ac þet wyl :
is þe lecherie² uor to zuerie. Efterward huan me zuereþ
liȝtliche / þet is uor naȝt / and wyþ-oute scele. þet is
uorbode ine þe oþre heste of þe laȝe / þet god wrot ine
þe tables of ston / mid his vingre. Efterward huanne
me zuereþ be wone : ase at eche worde. Vor þer byeþ
zome zuo euele ytȝt : þet hi ne conne noþing / zyȝge
wyþ-oute zueriynge. þise habbeþ god in to grat on-
worþhede. huanne al day / and uor naȝt / him clepieþ to
wytnesse / of al þet hi ziggeþ. Vor zueriinge ne is non

Of the sin of
lying.
Perjury is worse
than lying.

Swearing leads to
forswearing.
There are seven
modes of swear-
ing :

1. Bold swearing.

2. Needful swear-
ing.

3. Light swear-
ing.

[2 MS. lecherie]

4. Habitual swear-
ing.

Habitual swearers
hold God in con-
tempt.

5. Foolish swearing,
as in sudden
pain,

in rash promises,

in bold assertions
without being
certain of the
truth,

in promising what
one cannot fulfil;
and swearing by
the sun, moon,
one's head, &c.

[Fol. 19. a.]

This is worship-
ping the creature
instead of the
Creator.

6. Swearing by
God and his
saints.

Those guilty of
this sin are worse
than the Jews who
crucified Christ.

It is a wonder
how Christendom
beareth them.

oper þing: þanne to clepie god to wytnesse. and his
moder / and his halzen. Efterward huanne me zuereþ
folliche. and þet yualþ ine uele maneres. Oper huanne
me zuereþ be tyene / and sodaynlyche / huer-of him
uorþingþ efterward. Oper huanne me zuereþ uor þing
þet me ne may nazt healde wyþ-oute zenne: zuich op
me ssel breke: and do penonce uor þane fole op. Oper
huanne me zuereþ zikerliche / of þinge þet me nis nazt
ziker / yet þaz hit by zoþ. Oper huanne me behat
zikerliche þet me nazt not / yef me hit may uoluelle.
Oper huanne me zuereþ be þe sseppinges / ase me zayþ.
be þe zonne þet ssinþ. by þet uer þet bernþ. oper by
myn heued. oper by myne uader zaule. oper opre þane
ylych. Zuyche opes god uorbyet in his spelle. Vor
þet ich ssel maky ziker: ich ne ssel nazt draze to
wytnesse / bote þane heze zoþ. þet is god þet al wot.
nazt þe clene sseppes / þet ne byeþ bote ydelnesse. And
huanne ich his zuerye be þozte: ich bere ham ane
worþssippe / þet ich ssolde bere to god onlepi. Ac
huanne me zuereþ be þe ¹ godspelle: me zuereþ be him /
þet þe wordes byeþ / and byeþ ywryte. And huanne me
zuereþ be þe holy reliques / and be þe halzen of paradis:
me zuereþ be ham / and be god þet ine ham woneþ.
Efterward huanne me zuereþ vileynliche by god / and
by his halzen. ine þise zenne / byeþ þe cristene worse /
þanne þe sarasyn. þet nolden zuerie ine none manere /
ne nolden þolye / þet me zuore beuore ham / zuo vileyn-
lyche / be Iesu crist: ase doþ þe cristene. Hi byeþ
more worse þanne þe gywes: þet hine dede a-rode. Hy
ne breken non of his buones. Ac þise him tobrekeþ
smaller: þanne me deþ þet zuyn ine bocherie. þise ne
uorbereþ nazt oure lheuedi. and þise his tobrekeþ more
vileynlaker: and hire / and þe opre halzen / þet hit is
wonder: hou þe cristendom hit þoleþ. Efterward
huanne me zuereþ ualsliche. oper huanne me berþ ualse

¹ It may be read þo

wytnesse. oþer me zuereþ uals / wytindelyche. ine huyche manyere / þet me zuereþ oþer openliche / oþer stilleliche be art / oþer be sophistrie. Vor ase þe riȝte wrytes ziggeþ / god þet loueþ Mueknesse / and zoþnesse / yne zuȝche wytte onderuangþ þane oþ / and onderstant þet word : ase he hit onderstant / þet ne þengþ naȝt bote guod. and þet muekliche / and wyþ-oute stryf hit onderstant.

7. False swearing and false witnessing.

God loves meekness and truth.

Mochel is grat godes myldenesse. huanne zuȝche men þet zuerieþ of þinge þet hi wyteþ wel : þet ne is naȝt zoþ. oþer behoteþ þing : þet hi nele¹ naȝt healde. þet þe dyeuel him ne astrangleþ hastelyche. Vor huanne he zayþ : zuo god me helpe. oþer zuo god me loky. and he lyeȝe : he deþ him out of þe helpe / and of lokyng of god. nou ssolde he be riȝte / lyese wyt / and onderstondinge / and body. and guodes. and zaule / and al þet he halt of gode.

Great is God's mildness, when men swear falsely.

[1 *notheþ*]

For when one says, "So God me help," and if he lie he puts himself out of the pale of God's mercy.

þe laste boȝ of þise zenne is : huanne man agelt his treuþe / and þet he heþ behote² / and y-granted. oþer be his treuþe. oþer be his oþe. Vor treuþe yloȝe / and oþ ybroke : is ase hit were al on.

The last bough of this sin is when a man sinneth against his truth and against his oath.

[2 MS. *bohote*]

CHEASTE.

Strife.

Saynt augustin zayþ. þet noþing zuo moche ne ys ylych to þe dyeules dedes : ase cheaste. þes³ meyster huer-of ne is non drede : payþ moche þe dyeule / and naȝt ne payþ god. þet ne loueþ bote pays / and onyng.

Strife is like the devil's deeds, saith Augustine.

þes boȝ him to-delf ine .vij. oþre boȝes. Huer-of þe uerste is : strif. þe oþer / chidinge. þe þridde / missigginge. þe uerþe / godelinge. þe uifte / atwytinge. þe zixte / þreapninge. þe zeuende / vnonyngearere. Huanne þe dyeuel yziþ loue / and onyng amang uolke : moche hit him uorþingþ. and uor ham maki vnonyng : he makeþ bleþeliche his miȝte ham uor to do striui. And þe dyeuel beginþ þet uer of

There are seven boughs of contest :

1. Strife.
2. Chiding.
3. Evil speaking.
4. Slandering.
5. Reproaching.
6. Threatening.
7. Discord.

The devil does not like to see love and concord among men, he tries to raise strife,

³ It is not clear whether *þes* or *þis* is the MS. reading.

which is followed
by noise, as when
one says to the
other, "So it is,"
"It is not so,"
"So it was,"
"It was not so."

tyene / and euel wyl uor to becleppe. þanne efter þet
strif / and þe cheaste : comþ þe noyse / and þe cheaste.
Al / alsuo huanne me alyzt þet uer : lhapp þet smech
efter þe layt. Stryf / and cheaste / and huanne þe
on zayþ to þe opren : 'zuo hit is.' 'zuo hit ne is.' 'zuo
hit wes' / 'zuo hit nes.'

2. Chiding is
lying one against
another.

[Fol. 19. b.]

3. An evil speaker
has a tongue
sharper than a
razor.

He is like the
thorn-hog (hedge-
hog), with its
pricking awls cast
out right and left.

He is like a fierce
dog that barks
and bites at every
body.

4. Slandering.

Slanderers are
accursed.

Their mouth is as
the weight that
falleth into hot
water, scalding all
around.

5. Reproaching a
man for his sins,
folies, poverty,
poor kin, &c.

6. Threatening is
the beginning of
wars.

Above all the sins
already named, is
the sin of those
who by their evil

Chidinge is : huanne eyder lyexneþ opren / opren
greate wordes. Efter þan comeþ þe myssigginges. þet
is huanne þe on peyneþ þannopren / and ziggeþ þe
greate felonies. Vor þer is a feloun þet heþ þe tonge
more keruinde : þanne rasour. 'more zuyfter / þanne
arwe ulyinde. and more boryinde : þanne zouteres eles.
zuche men byeþ anlykned to þe þorn-hog. þet ys al
ywryze myd prikyinde eles. and hit is to moche fel /
and zone hit is wroþ. And þanne hit is of-tyened : he
kest out his eles of his bodye : ariȝthalf / and a lefthalf.
Alsuo he is anlikned to þe felle dogge. þet byt / and
beberkþ alle þo þet he may.

Efterward comeþ þe godelinges. þet is huanne þe
on godeleþ þanne oprene. And þet is zuo grat zenne / þet
þe wrytynge zayþ : þet huo þet godeleþ his emcristen :
he ys acorsed of god. And saynte paul zayþ. þet zuch
uolk ne moze habbe godes ryche. And salomon zayþ.
þet hare mouþ is : ase þe wyzte þet ualþ ine hot weter.
þet kest hyer / and þer : and scoldeþ alle þo þet byeþ
þer aboute.

Efterþan comeþ þe wyþnymynges / þet byet yet
more gratter zenne. huanne me atwyt ane man / opren
his zennes / opren his folies / opren his pouerté / opren his
poure ken / opren opre lac¹ þet is ine him.

Efterward zuo comeþ þe þreapnynges / and beginneþ
þe medles / and þe werres. Ac aboue alle þise zennes
þet we habbeþ hyer ynemned : paseþ þe zenne [of]
ham / þet be hare kueade tonge / sostyeneþ / and
arereþ þe strifs / and þe euele wylls / betuene ham

¹ *defaute* has been erased in the MS.

þet byeþ uryendes togidere. and þo þet miswendep þet
pays. and þe onynges. God hateþ moche zuych uolk
and zuo zayþ þe writinge.

tongue arear and
sustain strife and
evil will.

OF GROCHINGE. þET IS OF HIM þET NE DAR NAȝT

Of grudging or
murmuring.

ANSUERIE.

Ofte we hit yzeþ come / þet þe ilke þet ne dar an-
suerye / ne chide. þet he beginþ to grochi betuene his
teþ. and grunny. Vor efter þe chyaste : we zetteþ þe
zenne of grochinge. Hou grat is þe zenne : ous sseweþ
wel þe wreche þet god kan nyme. ase recorderþ holi
wryt. Vor þise zenne / onleak þe erþe / and uorzualȝ
datan and abyron. and villen doun al kuic in-to helle.
An uor þo zenne / zente god a uer / þet uorbernde kore :
and alle his uelazes. CC.L. of þe gretteste of godes ost
ine desert. Vor þe ilke zenne uorlore þe yewes þet land
of beheste / þet god ham hedde behote. zuo þet of zix
.C. þousond / þet god hedde ykest / out of þe þreldome
of þe kinges of egipte. and þet he hedde yloked : uourti
year ine desert / myd þe manné of heuene. ne yede in-
to þe holy londe / þote tuo / wypoute mo. þet hetten
calef : and Iosue. ac allé hi storuen in zorȝe : ine þe
desert.

Some men will
not be reminded
of their faults
without grudging
and grunting.

For this sin un-
locked the earth
and swallowed
Dathan and
Abiram.

For this sin the
Jews lost the land
of Promise,
so that out of
the six hundred
thousand who
came out of
Egypt,

only two (Caleb
and Joshua) lived
to enter Canaan.

þis zenne heþ tuaye boȝes. Vor þe on : is grouch-
inge aye god. and þe oþre aye man regneþ. þis zenne
is ine uele maneres / ase ine sergons aye hire lhordinges.
ine wyfmen : aye hare leuedis. and ine children / aye
hare uaderes / and hare modren. Ine poure : aye þe
riche. and þe þrelles : aye þe knyȝtes. Ine leawede :
aye þe clerkes / and aye þe prelas. and þe cloysters :
aye þe abbottes. and þe priours : and hire officials / ase
subprior. and þe oþre. And wext þe grochinges ine alle
zuyche persones : oþer of onboȝsamnesse uor þan þet me
is to hard ine hestes. oþer ine sleauþe / uor þet me is to
sleuuol. oþer of inpacience / uor þet me ne dep naȝt
alle þe wylles. oþer of enuie. oþer of felonie. uor þet

This sin hath two
boughs : 1. Mur-
muring against
God. 2. Murmur-
ing against man.
This sin is seen
in many ways,
in servants
against their
masters, women
against their
lords, children
against their
parents, &c.

[Fol. 20. a.]

This is the result
of disobedience,
sloth, or impa-
tience.

me auonceþ more þe on : þanne þe oþre. and manye
oþre kueade roten.

Man desires to be
God's master, and
if he has not his
will, he murmurs
against Him,
and singeth the
devil's song. .

The Holy Ghost
maketh hischosen
sing of the sweet
songs of heaven.

The devil maketh
his disciples sing
the song of hell,
i.e., grudging.

They murmur
against God for
every adversity
that befalls them.

What wonder is
it, if God take
vengeance upon
such folk !

Of opposition
(rebellious con-
duct).
Withstanding is
worse than grudg-
ing.

This sin is seen in
those who will
bow to none,

whose hearts are
rebellious to God
and man.

This sin hath
four boughs,
that appear in the
rebellious.

Grochinge aye god heþ yet nou ynoȝ mo enchey-
souns. Vor man þet heþ uorlore *grace* / and þolemod-
nesse : he wyle by mayster ope god. zuo / þet / al god
deþ ine erþe : bote yef he hit ne do al to his wylle : an
haste he grocheþ aye god. and z yngþ þet pater noster.
to tokne. Vorzoþe ac þe dyeules zang. Vor ase þe holi
gost tekþ. and makeþ his ychosene zinge ine hare herten
þe zuete zonges of heuene. þet is of þe *graces* of al þet
he deþ. and of al þet he us zent. Alsuo þe kueade gost
makeþ his deciples zinge þanne zang of helle. þet is
grochinge. þet eure ssel yleste ine helle. in al þet god
deþ / bote hit by al to hire wylle. Vorzoþe mochel is
zuych a man fol / ant out of his wyte / þet wyle þet me
him yelde scele / of al þet he heþ ydo / yef me him zent /
aduerseté. pouerté. ziknesse. dyere time. rayn. druzþe.
yef me yefþ him / and benymþ hit oþren. bote yef hit
ne by do al to his wylle : he him niymþ anhaste to
grochi aye god / and him euele þonkeþ. huet wonder is
hit / þaz god him awrekeþ of zuyche 'uolke / þet wylleþ
him benyme his lthordssip / and his wysshede.

OF WYÞSTONDYNGE.

Kvead þing is grochinge : ac more is wors / wyþ-
stondinge. wyþstondyng is a zenne / þet comþ of þe
herte þet is rebel / and hard / and rebours / and dyuers.
þet alneway wyle þet his wyl by do / and his zygginge
by yhyalde. þet wyle / þet alle þe oþre / bouze to him.
and he ne bouze to nonen. þis is þe harde herte :
huer-of salomon zayþ. þet he ne may nazt fayly : of
kued ende. And ase þer is grochinge aye god. and aye
man : alsuo is zuych herte rebel to god / and to man.

þis zenne heþ vour bozes. Vor zuyche herten byeþ
rebours / and rebels / red / to leue. to done godes heste.
chastinge þolye. and techinge onderuonge. Yef enye

of hare uryendes ham wylleþ rede. and hare ureme ssewy. nazt ham nolleþ yhere. rapre uor þet hi habbeþ yspeke. hi doþ þe more bleþelaker þe contrarye. To þe rede of oure lhorde: ofte hi byeþ rebel / yef me ham ret þing: þet by to helpe to hire zaules. ne nobyng nolleþ do / erþan me gabbeþ of ham. And þos hy byeþ rebels / to þe heste of oure lhorde / to huam hi byeþ yhyealde. and zuo moche ham zet beuore þe dyeuel of toknen. oþer of fyeblesse. oþer of elde. oþer of yezeþe. oþer of oþre kueade sceles. þet alast: hi ne doþ nazt. Efterward huanne me his chastep / and wyþnymþ. hi ham defendeþ ase þe bor / zuo þet hare folyes ne beknaweþ. and þe more þet hi ham excuseþ: þe more wext þe zenne. And zuo hit is huanne god his beat / and chastep. and maugre hy wyteþ. and zyggeþ ofte. onþank þan: and þe oþren / 'huet wyle god me do. huete habe ich him misdo?' þos deþ þe fol. and þet him ssolde by triacle: to him went in to uenym. and þe medecine: him yefþ þane dyap. Efterward þer byeþ zome of zuo diuers wyt / þet none guode techinge ne onderuongeþ. ak alneway weryeþ hare sentence huete þet hit by. zuo þet ofte hi ualleþ ine erroür. and ine ualse opinions. and ine eresye. and ine euele byleaue.

1. They rebel against the advice of friends.

2. They are rebellious against Christ.

3. They are rebels against the behests of our Lord.

They excuse themselves when ever corrected.

When God chasteneth and beateth them, they speak evil against Him.

[Fol. 20. b.]

4. They listen to no good teaching, but follow their own plans, and so fall into error.

OF BLASFEMYES.

Of blasphemy.

Blasfemyes is ase zayþ saynt austin. oþer huanne me yleþþ and zayþ of god þing: þet me ne ssel yleue / ne healde. oþer me ne leþþ nazt þet me ssolde yleue. Ac speciallyche we clepieþ hyer blasfemye: huanne me missayþ of god / and of his halzen. oþer of the sacramens of holy cherche. þis zenne ys ydo ine uele maneres. Oþer huanne me hit zayþ be þozte. ase doþ þe bougres / and þe mysbyleuinde. Oþer me hit zayþ uor couaytise to wynne. ase doþ þise charmeres / and þise wychen. Oþer huanne me hit zayþ be tyene / and be despit ase doþ þise playeres / þet zuo uyleynliche

Blasphemy is to believe or say of God what one does not or should not believe.

Specially is this sin in those who speak evil of God, His saints, or His sacraments, as in heretics and unbelievers,

and in those who wickedly

break Christ's
body.

These folk are like
mad hounds, that
bite and know not
their lord.

This sin God has
declared shall not
be forgiven.

Of the 10 sins of
the tongue,
the 1st is idleness
and the last blas-
phemy;
the beginning is
folly, the end
error.

Here end the
seven deadly sins.

No man can keep
himself quit of
them unless he
know them.

Of those sins that
he hath not com-
mitted, let him
thank God for pre-
serving him from
them.

For to learn to
die.

Learn to die, so as
to be able to live.
[*Note wel þerne
capitele.*]
He is a wretch
who cannot live
nor dare die.

This life is but
death, for death is
a separation.

tobrekeþ Iesu cristes body. and zuo uileyliche mis-
siggeþ of god an of his blissede moder / þet hit is
dreduol and zorþe to hyere / and lhestē. þise byeþ ase
wode houndes / þet biteþ and ne knaweþ naȝt hare
lhord. þis zenne is zuo grat : þet god his awrekeþ oþer-
huyt aperteliche ase we habbeþ yzed beuore / þo we
speke of wyckede uolke. Of þise zenne zayþ god ine
his spelle / þet hit ne ssel by uoryeue : ne ine þise
wordle ne ine þe oþre.

Nou we habbeþ ytald ten manere zennes of þe tonge.
þanne is þe uerste : ydelnesse. and þe laste : blasfemie
and be cas hit is þet Salomon zayþ. þet þe beginnyng
of þe kueade tonge : is folie. and þe ende : to kuead
error.

Hyer endeþ þe zeue dyadliche zennes / and alle hire
boȝes. and huo þet wel him studé deþ¹ ine þise boc : he
myȝte moche profiti / and lyerny / and knawe eche
manere of zenne / and him-zelue wel ssryue. Vor non
ne may him wel ssriue / ne him loki uram zenne : bote
he his ne knawe. Nou ssel þanne þe ilke / þet ine þise
boc ret. zzy diligentliche to by yssriue. and him loki
be his myȝte. Of oþre zennes þet he ne is naȝt gelti :
he ssel herye god and him boȝsamliche þonky. þet him
heþ yloked.

VOR TO LYERNY STERUE.

Onneape sterf / þet ylyerned ne heþ. Lyerne to
sterue : þanne ssel þou conne libbe. Vor non wel
libbe ne ssel conne : þet to sterue ylyerned ne heþ.
And þe ilke aryȝt is yelepēd wrechche : þet ne can
lybbe / ne ne dar sterue.

Yef þou wylt libbe vrliche. lyerne to sterue gled-
liche. Yef þou me zayst / hou me hit ssel lyerny : ich
hit wyle þe zigge an haste. þou ssel ywyte þet þis
lyf : ne is bote dyap. Vor dyap is a wendinge. and þet

¹ MS. studedeþ

ech wot. and þeruore me zayþ of ane manne huanne he sterfþ : he went. And huanne he is dyad : he is ywent. þis lyf alsuo ne is bote a wendynge. uor zoþe / uor zoþe : a wendinge wel sort. Vor al þet lyf of ane manne / þaz he leuede a þousond year : þet ne ssolde by / bote onlepy prikke : to þe zyþe / of þe oþre lyue / þet eure wyþoute ende ssel yleste. oþer ine zorþe : oþer ine blisse / wyþoute endynge.

All the life of a man, although he lived a thousand years, were but a point compared to the life without end.

[Fol. 21. a.]

þis ous wytnesset wel þe kyng. þe erl. þe prince. þe emperour. þet þe blysse of þe wordle : hedden zomtyme. nou ine helle : wepeþ / and gredeþ. yelleþ / and zorþeþ. 'A. allas : huet is ous worþ oure pouer. worþssippe. noblesse. richesse. blisse. and bost. al hit ys ywent / wel rapre þanne ssed : oþer uozel ulyinde. oþer quarel of arblaste. And þous geþ al oure lyf. Nou we were ybore : and an haste dyad. ne al oure lyf : nes nazt bote a lyte prikke. nou we byeþ ine zorþe wyþoute ende. Oure blisse / is ywent in-to wop. oure karoles : into zorþe. gerlondes. robes. playinges. messinges. and alle guodes byeþ ous yfayled.' Zuyche byeþ þo zonges of helle. ase þe writinge ous telþ. ous uor to ssewy : þet þis lyf / ne is bote a wendynge : wel sort. and þis wordle : ne is bote wendynge. and libbe ne is bote¹ a wendynge. þanne ne is libbe : bote sterue. and þet is zoþ / ase pater noster. Vor huanne þou begonne libbe : anhaste þou begonne to sterue. And al þin elde. and al þine time / þet ys yguo : þe dyap þe heþ ywonne : and halt. þou zayst þet þou hest zixti year. þe dyap hise heþ. and neuremo his nele þe yelde. þeruore is þet wyt of þe wordle folye. And þe clerk zynde : ne zzyþ nazt. Day and nizt / makeþ o þing. and þe more þet hit makeþ : þe lesse zuo knaweþ. alneway sterueþ : and hi ne conne sterue. Vor day / and nyzt : þou sterfst / as ich þe habbe yzed.

This bear us witness kings, earls, princes, &c., who formerly had bliss in the world, but now weep, cry, and yell in hell. [þe zang of helle.] "Alas!" they say, "our bliss is all gone like a shadow, we were born, and died in haste ;

our bliss is turned into weeping, and our carols into sorrow." Such are the songs of hell.

[1 MS. bote]

To live is but to die. When we begin to live, we begin to die.

We say we have sixty years, but death has and will never yield them.

Yet eft ine oþre manere / ich þe teche þise clergie.

Death is a separation of the soul and body.

Caton the Wise tells us to separate the ghost from the body; often so did the old philosophers, who had no grace nor belief of Christ.

Holy men have escaped two deaths.

[*Note wel þri dyaþes.*]

There is a death to sin and a death to the world.

The third death is the separation of the soul from the body.

A little wall separates them from Paradise.

Their thoughts are in heaven, and they hate this life and desire death.

[*Huet is dyaþ.*]

Death to good men is end of all evils and commencement of every blessing.

The wise of this world are fools and blind,

for they call death life, and death they call the end.

[Fol. 21. b.]

If thou wilt know

þet þou conne wel libbe : and wel sterue. Nou yhyer : and onderstand. þe dyaþ ne is bot a todelinge of þe zaule : and of þe bodye. and þet ech wel wot. Nou ous tekþ þe wyse catoun. ‘Lyerne we’ zayþ he ‘to sterue. todele we þane gost of þe bodie ofte.’ þet deden þe meste wyse of þise philosophes þet þis lif zuo moche hateden / and þe wordle : zuo moche onworþede. and zuo moche wylnede lyf nazt dyeadlich. þet hi westen be hare wylle. ac hit nes ham nazt worþ. Vor hi ne hedden non grace / ne þe beleaue of iesu crist. Ac þe holy men þet louieþ god / and yleueþ / þet of þri dyaþes / habbeþ þe tuay ypased. Vor þer is dyaþ to zenne : and dyad to þe wordle. Nou abydeþ þane þridde dyaþ. þet is þe todiztinge of þe zaule : and of þe bodie. Betuene ham and paradys ne is bote a lyte woꝝ / þet hy agelteþ be þenchinge / and be wylnyng. and yef þet bodi is of þis half : þe herte / and þe gost : is of operhalf. þer hy habbeþ hyre bleuinge / as zayþ saynte paul. hire solas. hire blisse. and hire confort. and alle hire lostes. and þeruore : hy hatyeþ þis lyf : þet ne is bote dyaþ. and wylneþ þane dyaþ bodylich. Vor þet is damezele bereblisse / þet þe dyaþ / þet alle þe halzen corouneþ / and doþ [zetteþ] in to blisse.

Dyaþ is to guodemen : ende of alle kueade. and gate / and inguoyng : of alle guode. Dyaþ is þe stream : þet todeleþ / dyaþ / and lyf. Dyaþ / is of þis half. lif / of opre half. Ac þe wyse of þise wordle þet of þis half þe streme zyzeþ zuo briȝte : of operhalf hi nazt ne yzeþ. an þeruore his clepeþ þe writinge : foles / and yblent. Vor þerne dyaþ : hi clepieþ lyf. And þane dyaþ / þet is to þe guoden / beginnyng of liue : hi hit clepieþ / þan ende. And þeruore hy hatyeþ zuo moche þane dyaþ. Vor hi nyteþ huete hit is. ne of operhalf þe streame ne habbeþ nazt ybleued. and nazt ne wot : þet out ne geþ.

þanne yef þou wylt ywyte huete is guod / and huete is

kuead : guo out of pi zelue. guo out of þe wordle. lierne
to sterue. todel þine zaule uram þe bodye be þoʒte. zend
þine herte in-to þe opre wordle : þet is to heuene. into
helle / in-to purgatorie. þer þou ssel¹ yzy : huet is guod
and huet is kuead. Ine helle þou ssel[t] yzi mo zorʒes :
þanne me moʒe deuisy. Ine purgatorie / mo tormens
þanne me moʒe þolye. Ine paradys / more blisse þanne
me moʒe wynly. Helle þe ssel teche / hou god awrekþ
dyadlych zenne. Purgatorie : þe ssel seawy / hou
god clenzeþ veniel zenne. Ine heuene þou ssel yzy
openliche / hou uirtues / and guode dedes : byeþ
hezliche yolde. Ine þis þri þinges : is al þet is nyed
wel to wytene hou me ssel conne libbe / and wel
sterue.

what is good and
what is evil, go
out of thyself,
divide thy soul
from the body, and
send thy thoughts
into the other
world, into hea-
ven, hell, and pur-
gatory.

Hell shall teach
thee how God
avenges deadly
sin.
Purgatory shall
show thee how
venial sin is
cleansed.
In heaven thou
shalt see how good
deeds are re-
warded.

Nou loke eftzone a lyte / and ne tyene þe naʒt / to
þise þri þinges. uorþet þou lyernest to hatye zenne.
Voryet þi body / ones a day. guo in-to helle ine þine
libbinde : þet þou ne guo / ine þine steruinge. þis dep
ofte þe holi man / and þe wyse. þer þou ssel yzy : al
þet herte hateþ. and bevyʒþ. and defaute of alle guode.
ynoʒ of alle kueade. ver bernynde. brenston stinkinde.
tempeste brayinde. voule dyeulen. hunger. and þorst :
þet me ne may naʒt stonchi. dyuerse pines / and
wepinges. and zorʒes : mo þanne herte moʒe þenche /
ne tonge telle. and eure ssel yleste wyþ-oute ende. And
þeruore is þe ilke zorʒe wel ycleped : dyap wyþ-oute
ende. And huanne þou yzixt þet hit behoueþ zuo dyere
abegge onlepy dyadlich zenne : þe woldest þe rapre lete
be vlaʒe quik. þanne þou dorstest / to onelepi dyadliche
zenne consenti.

Forget thy body
once a day ; go in-
to hell in thy life-
time, that thou go
not into it at thy
death.
[þe pines of helle.]
There shalt thou
see the absence of
all that is good,
but enough of all
evil : burning fire,
stinking brim-
stone, foul devils,
hunger, thirst,
pains, weeping,
and sorrow.

Wherefore this
sorrow is called
death withoutend.

Afterward guo in-to purgatorie. þer þou ssel yzi þe
pines of þe zaules / þet hyer hedden uorþenchinge / ak
nere naʒt uolliche yclenzed. nou hi doþ þer / þe leuinge
of hare penonce / al-huet þet hi byeþ / briʒte / and
clene. ase hi weren ate poynt / and ate time / huanne hi

[Of Purgatorie.]
Afterwards go in-
to purgatory,
and see the pains
of those who were
not here fully
cleansed of their
sins.

¹ MS. sselelt

Their penance is
grisly and hard.

All that martyrs
ever suffered or
women with child,
is only a bath of
cold water in com-
parison with the
furnace wherein
they burn.

Venial sins are
little sins that we
do oft.

The fire of purga-
tory is dreaded by
those who keep
holy their souls
and bodies.

[Fol. 22. a.]

None may live
without sin,
for good men
sin seven times
a day,
but by shrift,
tears, and prayers
they amend their
lives, and are not
lost at the day of
doom.

Holy dread of God
is the beginning
of good life.

We must learn
not only to eschew
evil, but learn to
do good.

Divide thy soul
from thy body by
thought.

yeden out¹ of þe welle of cristninge. Ac þe ilke penonce
ys wel grislich and hard. Vor al þet eure þoleden þe
holy martires. oþer wyfinen þet trauayleþ of childe / of
zorþe : ne ys bote a beþ ine chald weter : to þe reward
of þe fornayse : huerinne berneþ þe zaules. al-huet hi
byeþ yclenzed. ase gold al yclienzed² ine þe vere / me
ne vint lesse þanne yclenzed. Vor þet uer is of zuyche
kende / al þet hit vint ine þe zaule of gelte of dede. of
speche. of þoþte / þet yerneþ to zenne : oþer lite / oþer
moche : al uorbernþ / and clenzeþ. and þer byeþ ypunyssed,
and awreke : alle uenyal zennes. þet we clepieþ : litle
zennes. þet we doþ ofte / and smale fole þoþtes. wordes
ydele. truffes. scornes. and alle oþre ydelnesses. al-huet
hi by worþe : to guo in-to heuene. huer ne geþ in naȝt /
bote hit by riȝt briȝt. þet ilke uer dredeþ þo. þet by
hare myȝte ham lokeþ uram dyadlich zenne. and lokeþ
holyliche hare herten. and hare bodyes. and hare mouþes.
and þe vif wyttes uram alle zenne. and zuo libbeþ / ase hi
ssolden echedaye to dome come to-uore god. And þeruore
þet non ne may libbe wyþ-oute zenne. Vor ase zayþ Salo-
mon : zeueziþe a day / ualþ þe guode man. and þeruore
be holy ssrifte / and be tyeares / and be benes : hi doþ
hare miȝte ham zelue to arere / and to amendi. and ham
zelue zuo deme : þet hi onderstonde to uolȝi þane laste
dom. Vor huo hier him demþ zopliche : him ne worþ non
hede to by uorlore : ate daye of dome. And þus me lyerneþ
kuead to knawe / an to beuly / and alle zennes to hatye /
and grat and smal. and onderstonde þe holy drede of
god / þet is beginnyng of guod lif : and of alle guode.
Ac hit ne is naȝt ynoȝ to lete þe kueades : bote me
lyerny þet guod to done. and bote yef me zeche þe uir-
tues / uor wyþ-oute ham : non ariȝt wel ne leueþ. þanne
yef þou wylt lyerny wel to libbe be uirtue : lyerne zuo
ase ich þe habbe yzed / to sterue. Todel þine gost uram
þine bodye / be þoþte / and be wylninge. guo out of

¹ MS. *ouot*

² MS. *ychenzed*

þise wordle steruinde. guo in-to þe londe of þe libbynde /
 þer non ne sterf[þ] / ne yealdeþ. þet is ine paradys. þer
 me lyerneþ wel to libbe / and wyt / an corteysye. uor
 þer ne may guo in : no uyleynye. þer is blisfolle
 uelazrede of god. and of angles. and of halzen. þer
 opwexeþ alle guodes. uayrhede. richesse. worþssipe.
 blisse. uirtue. loue. wyt. ioie wyþoute ende. þer ne is
 non ypocrisy. ne barat. ne blondinge. ne discord. ne
 enuye. ne hunger. ne þorst. ne hete. ne chele. ne kuead.
 ne zorþe. ne drede of vyendes. ac alneway festes and
 kinges bredales. zonges. and blisse wyþoute ende. þe
 ilke blisse is zuo grat : þet huo þet hedde ytake þer of
 ennelepi drope / of þe leste þinge þet þer ys : he ssolde
 by of þe loue of god zuo dronke : þet al þe blisse of þise
 wordle / him ssolde by / drede : and wo. Rychesses :
 dong. worþssipes : uoulhede. and þe ilke to greate loue
 þet he ssolde hadde to come þer : him ssolde by an
 hondred þouzen zipe þe more hardiliche hatye zenne.
 and louie uirtues. þet is al þe drede of helle. huer-of
 ich hadde beuore ispeke. Vor loue is more stranger :
 þanne drede. And þanne is þet lyf uayr / and oneste :
 þanne me beulyzt / þet kuead / and me deþ þet guod.
 nazt uor drede / uor to by yspild : ac uor þe wynlynge
 of heuene. and uor þe loue of god. and uor þe greate
 clenness : þet uirtue heþ. and guod lyf. And þe ilke
 þet loue ledeþ : he zekþ rapre / and lesse him costneþ /
 þanne him þet serueþ god : be drede. þe hare yernþ.
 þe gryhond hym uolzeþ. þe on be drede : þe oþer be
 wynlynge. þe on vlyzþ : þe oþer hyne dryfþ. þe holy
 man yernþ ase grihond. þet habbeþ alday hare eze / to
 heuene : huer hi zyzeþ þe praye : þet hi driueþ. And
 þeruore hy uoryeteþ alle oþre guodes. ase deþ þe gentyl
 hond : huamne ha zyþ his praye / touore his egen.

þis is þet lyf / of þe wel louiynde. of gentil herte /
 and affayted. þet zuo moche louyeþ uirtue : and hatyeþ
 zenne. þet yef hi weren zykere / þet me ne ssolde his

Go out of this
world dying, and
go into the land of
the living,

[Of þe blisses of
paradis.]

where is the bliss-
full communion of
God, of angels,
and of saints,
where is neither
hypocrisy,
strife, flattery,
discord, nor
hunger, &c.

The bliss is so
great that one
drop would in-
toxicate,

so that riches and
honour would be
accounted woe and
dung.

Love is stronger
than fear,

and the love of
God will keep us
from sin.

The hare run-
neth, the grey-
hound followeth.
The holy man
runneth as the
greyhound.
All day his eye is
to heaven, and he
forgetteth all else,
as doth the hound
with his prey be-
fore his eyes.

This is the life of
the loving and the
gentle heart,

[Fol. 22. b.]

who shall have
the bliss of Para-
dise,
where no churl
nor thief shall
enter.

conne / ne god ne ssolde his awreke : ham ne daynede
nazt / to do zenne. Ac al hare þenchinges / and al hare
wyllis : hire herten clenliche loki / and agraypi / þet hi
by worpi : to habbe þe blisse of paradys. huer no cherl
ne ssel come in / ne uals. ne þyef. ne proud. uor þe
worse ssolde by þe uelazrede.

How to know good
and evil.

HOU ME SSEL KNAWE GUOD AND KUEAD.

To live aright one
must seek virtue,

and know what is
right as well as
what is wrong.

A thing that one
knoweth not of is
not hated or de-
sired.

This world is as a
fair, where are
many foul chap-
men, who know
the value of all
things.

The Holy Ghost
teacheth us to
know the precious
things from the
vile, the sweet
from the sour.

Nou ich þe habbe ysseawed / hou me tekþ wel to
sterue / and lede guod lyf. Ac þou sselst ywyte / þet þe
begynnynge uor to come to guode lyue : is to zeche
uirtue. þet is þet me knawe / nazt onlepilyche huet is
zenne / and huet is elmesse : ac þet me conne riȝt wel
knaue / and deme : huet is kuead / and huet is guod. and
uor to dele þet zoþe guod : uram þe oþren. and þet greate
guod / uram þe little. Vor þing þet me ne knauþ nazt
ne is yhated / ne ywylned. And þeruore sselst þou
ywyte þe þan þet þe wrytinges zyggeþ : þet þer byeþ
zeue smale yeffes of god / þet me clepeþ þe smale
guodes. on lite / an oþer grat / and zoþe. An onlepi-
liche byeþ guodes ariȝt. huerof al þe wordle ys nyeȝ
begyled [bezuyke]. Vor hi yeueþ þe greate guodes : uor
þe little. oþer þe lesse / uor þe little. oþer þe greate / uor
þe lesse. Vor þis wordle is. ase a fayre / huer byeþ
manye fole chapmen. þet of alle þinges / hi knaweþ þe
propre uirtue and þet worþ. þet ous tekþ þe holy gost /
and non oþer maister. He ous tekþ to knawe þe greate
þinges uram þe little. þe preciouises / uram þe viles. þe
zuete / uram þe zoure.

Timely (temporal)
goods.

OF TIMLICHE GUODES.

The small goods
are those of for-
tune.
Lady Fortune
(Chance) turneth
her wheel each
day, giving to
some and taking
away from others.

Hy clepieþ þe smale guodes : þe guodes of time / þe
guodes of fortune [hap]. and þe leuedy fortune : went
hare hueȝel eche daye / and benymþ / and yefþ. and
went þet is aboue : beneþe. þet byeþ þe smale stones of
gles ssynnynde. and þe coniuon his bayþ uor rubys. uor

safyrs. oþer uor emeroydes. þet byeþ as iueles to chil-
 deren. þet god ous yefþ / ous to solas. and uor oure
 loue: to draze to him. uor þet he wot þet we byeþ
 fyeble / and tendre. and hyealde we ne moze his.
 efterward / wayes of pouerté / of zorze / and of martire-
 ment / ase deþ þe guode godes knyzt. þet þane kyngdom
 of heuene payneþ be strengþe to wynne be his prouesse.
 þanne þise ne byeþ: ne grete guodes / ne smale aryzt.
 þanne wes a fol Iesu crist goddes zone. þet cheas pouerte.
 and ssame. an efterward: he uorzok / blisses. worþssipes.
 and riches: yef þet byeþ þe zoþe guodes. þanne ne
 byeþ nazt / alle zoþe guodes ine heuene. þanne ne is
 nazt god parfitliche yblyssed: þet ne vzeþ nazt zuyche
 guodes. þanne is god ontrewé / and onkende / þet þise
 guodes benymþ his urendes. and hise yefþ more large-
 liche: to his yuo. yef þet byeþ zoþe guodes: þanne
 weren foles alle þe halzen. and alle þe wyse clerkes.
 and þe greate filosofes. þet þise guodes beuloze / and
 onworþede / ase dong. Yef þet byeþ zoþe guodes:
 þanne lyeþ god / þet lyeze ne may: and holy wryt.
 þet hise clepeþ / leazinges. and ssed. and metinges. and
 uanites. nettes. and bendes. and þe dyeules grines. and
 þet is zoþ / aze pater noster. Vor þet byeþ þe dyeules
 ginnes. huer-by þe zaules ine a þousond maneres he
 gyleþ / and nymþ / and bynt / and halt.

God gives us time-
 ly goods to com-
 fort us.

Riches are not the
 true happiness.
 For were it so,
 Christ would then
 be a fool, that
 chose poverty
 and shame, and
 forsook bliss, hon-
 our, and riches.

God would be un-
 true and unkind,

the saints and
 wise clerks were
 all fools,

and God would be
 a liar.

The gifts of for-
 tune are the
 devil's snare
 whereby he be-
 guileth souls.

[Fol. 23. a.]

The wise chap-
 men know the
 worth of each
 thing.

They see that
 there is little good
 in the world.

They give up the
 world for God,

Ac þe wyse chapman / þet is þe guode man / þet þe
 holy gost alyzt. be zoþe beknaulechinge / þet ouer al
 him knauþ / huet ech þing is worþ / and zyzþ hit rizt
 wel. Hi onderstondeþ / þet al þe wordle ne is nazt a
 guod snode: uor mannes herte to uelle. and þet þer is
 moche kuead: and litel of guod. And þeruore huo þet
 lokeþ þe perils / and þe kueades þet þer byeþ / and
 wyteþ þet hit is zoþ: þet hi conne zigge. he þet ne
 yefþ / þet he loueþ: he ne nymþ / þet he wylneþ. Hy
 makeþ to god ane handuol. uor hi yeueþ þe wordle: uor
 heuene. nazt / uor al. hor: uor gold. and leteþ al uor

and become
poor.

god. riches. lostes. worþssipes. and becomeþ poure.
þet is þe uayriste lyf / an þe zykeriste : þet is ine þise
wordle.

There are others
who make good
use of riches,

þe oþre byeþ / þet yzeþ / þet ine uele maneres hi
moze do hare prou / of guodes of time. þet me may hise
habbe : ak naȝt to moche louye. Vor god ne hat naȝt /
al to lete. hy hise ofhyealdeþ : ac litel hise prayzeþ. hi
hise uzeþ : ac litel his louyeþ. ase dede saynt Abraham.
Iob. and dauīþ. and uele oþre. þet þe perils beuloze : and
deden hire þrofit / of þe guodes þet god ham lende : hi

They serve God
with their wealth.

couþen begge heuene. hi couþen hire zennen uorbegge.
and helpe hare nyxte. Hi coþen more louye god / and
herye / and þonki. worþssipie. drede. and yleue. uor

They see their
own feebleness
and their defects.

þe greate perils huer hi byeþ / and hām zelue þe more
bouze / huanne hi yzeþ hare fieblesse / and hire poure
loue / and hare defautes. huanne þane strayte way ne
dorren guo. huanne zuo lyte wylleþ uor god þolye / and

They would rather
forsake all the
world's goods
than retain them
without the love
of God.

yeue / þet zuo moche þolede / and let uor ham / yef hi
wel ham wytyeþ / ak st[r]ang hit is. Vor hit is wel lizter
þing : alle þe guodes of þe wordle lete / at on tyme uor
god : þanne his ofhyealde / and naȝt louye. .

Of the less goods.

OF ÞE LESSE GUODES.

The middle goods
are of kind and of
teaching.
Ofkindare beauty,
strength, &c. ;
of teaching are
learning, good
manners, &c.

þe midel guodes / byeþ of kende : and of techinge.
Of kende : ase uayrhede of bodye. prouesse. strengþe.
zuyfthede. myldenesse. clyer wyt. sleȝþe. onderstond-
ynge. and alle zuyche guodes þet kende berþ. Be tech-
inge : ase grat clergie. ine alle oþre guodes : þet me
wynþ be studye / oþer be guode wone / ase byeþ guode
þeawes / and zome uirtues. Ac þise ne byeþ naȝt yet
ariȝt þe zoþe guodes : uor hi ne makeþ naȝt þane / þet
hise heþ uolliche guod. Vor manye filozofes / oþer of
greate clirkes¹ / and of kynges / and of emperours /
þet hedden moche of zuyche guodes : byeþ ydampned
ine helle. Efterward / zuyche guodes yefþ oure lhord

These do not
make men fully
good,
for many philoso-
phers, clerks,
kings, &c., that
had much of such
goods, are now
damned in hell.

¹ MS. *cherkes*

alsuo to his uyendes : ase he deþ to his uryendes. to sarazyns / and to ualse cristene : ase to þe guode. Efterward / hit ne is nazt zoþ guod / þet fayleþ / and þet me may lyese wyll he nolle he. and þet þieues ne moze stele. ne robbere benime. alneway ate ende : dyeaþ his benymþ. Efterward / zoþe guodes helpeþ eche daye / and ne harmeþ neure. Ac uorzoþe zuyche guodes / and zuiche graces wyþoute : doþ ofte kuead / and harmeþ ham / þet hise habbeþ / bote hi hise ne wel usy. And huanne hi ham yelpeþ / oþer hi ham prodeþ / and opren hy onworþeþ. Vor þe ilke to huam god heþ yyeue þe ilke graces / and þe ilke guodes / þet ich habbe beuore ynemned god uor to serui. and helpe his nixte. bote yef he hit ne vsy treueliche : he ssel by ine þe more gratter torment. and straytlyche him behoueþ rekeni. and yelde scele to god / ate daye of dome.¹ of þet he heþ ydo. and of þet he heþ ywonne / of þe guodes þet god him heþ ylend : uor to mory.

Our Lord giveth such goods to His enemies.

True goods never fail, nor harm. Mere outward graces may do us harm if they cause us to become proud and boastful.

[Fol. 23. b.] If we do not use aright God's gifts

we shall receive the greater torment.

OF ÞE ZOÞE GUODES.

Of the true goods.

Nou ich þe habbe ssortliche yssewed / huyche byeþ þe lyttle² guodes / and þe midel guodes : nou ich þe wyll ssewy huet ys þe zoþe guod arizt : þet makeþ þan þet hise heþ : guod. and wyþoute ham : non ne wes neure arizt guod. þet guod me clepeþ : godes grace. and uirtue. and charité. Grace : uor þet he yaf / helpe. and lyf. and zaule. uor wyþoute þise guodes : þe zaule is dyead. Vor ase þet body is dyead wyþoute zaule : alzuu is þe zaule : wyþoute godes grace. Hy is ycleped uirtue : uor þet hy worþssipeþ þe zaule myd guode workes / and mid guode þewes. Hy is ycleped charité : uor þet hy ioyneth þe zaule to god. uor charité ne is non oþer þing : þanne dyere onhede. þet is þe ende / þet is þe perfeccion / and þe guodhedde / huer-to we ssolle ous draze. Moche weren þe egyptiens deceyued. þet is to zigge / þe yealde filozofes þet zuo byzylyche desputede /

The true goods make him good that hath them.

They are grace, virtue, and charity.

The soul is dead without the grace of God.

She is called virtue, for she honours the soul with good works. She is called charity, for she joineth the soul to God.

The old philosophers set the

¹ MS. *domo*

² MS. *lyttle*

greatest good in
lust of flesh,
or in riches, or in
honest life.
But St Paul says
that dame
Charity, the queen
of virtues, is the
greatest good.

When all other
goods fail this
faileth not.

Of three manners
of good.

There are three
sorts of goods.
1. Honourable.
2. Pleasant.
3. Profitable.
Of the goods of
the world.
None desire them
unless they be
either honourable,
pleasant, or pro-
fitable.
The proud seek-
eth the first, the
covetous the
third, and the
lustful the second.
Virtue combines
the honourable,
the pleasant, and
the profitable.

and zoʒten huet wes þe heʒeste guod ine þise lyue. ne
neure ne myʒten hit vynde. Vor zome hit zette ine loste
of ulesse. þe oþre : ine riches. and oþre / ine oneste
lyf. Ac þe greate filozofe saynte pawel. þet wes ynome
in to þe þridde heuene / and pasede alle þe oþre filo-
zofes / ous proueþ be uele skeles. þet þe heʒeste guod
ine þise lyue : ys þe kuen of uirtues dame charité. Vor
he zayþ wyþ-oute hire : non oþer guod / ne is worþ.
and huo þet þis heþ : he heþ alle þe oþre. and huanne
alle þe oþre guodes fayleþ : þis ne faleþ nazt. and
aboue alle þe oþre greate guodes þet byeþ : þys is þe
lheuedy. þanne is þis þet gratteste guod : þet is onder
heuene.

OF þRI MANERES OF GUODE.

And hueruore wylt þou þet guod / þet is ycleped
riȝt uirtue more louie / and zeche aboue alle oþren :
þis ich wylle yet eft / his worþ ssewy. Me can todele
þri manere guodes. guod / worþssiplich. guod / lostuol
and guod : uremuol. nanmore ne is of guodes. ne zoþe.
ne ydele. bote þise þri maneres. and þet þou yzist open-
liche. Of þe guodes of þe wordle / þet non ne wylneþ /
ne loueþ noþing / bote yef he wene : þet hit by him
worþssipuol / oþer lostuol. oþer uremuol. þe proude :
zekþ þing worþssipuol. þe couaytous : þing uremuol.
þe lostuol : þing lykynde. And alle þet þise zechep
ydelliche : is ine uirtue / zopliche. Vor uirtue is þing
wel worþssipuol. lostuol. and uremuol.

Of virtue.

4

OF VIRTUE.

Virtue is honour-
able :
Six things are
desired because
[Fol. 24. a.]
they are honour-
able :
1. Beauty, 2. wit,
3. prowess,
4. might, 5. free-
dom, 6. nobleness.

þet uirtue is worþssipuol : þet myȝt þou ysy ine
þise manere. Zyȝ þinges byeþ ine þise wordle moche
ywylned / uor þet hit þingþ þet hy byeþ moche worþ-
ssipuol. uayrhede. wyt. prouesse. myȝte. vridom. and
noblesse. þise byeþ zix wellen of ydelnesse. þanne
ydele blisse is to moche. Vayrhede / is þing mochel

yloued. uor þet is þing moche yworþssiped. And naȝt
 uorþan uayrhede þet þe eȝe of þe bodye yzyȝþ / and
 loueþ. is þing uals / ssort. and ydel. Vals : yef he ne is
 uayr. ne þe ilke uayr. ac oure eȝen byeþ fyebble / þet ne
 zyeþ bote þet skin wyþoute. þanne huo þet hedde þe
 zyȝþe ase heþ þe lynx / þet me clepeþ oþerlaker :
 leucernere. þet yzyȝþ þorȝ þane wal alouer. ha ssolde yzy
 openliche / þet non uayr body / ne is : bote a huyt
 zech uol of donge stynkinde. and ase a donghel be-
 snewed. Efterward þis uayrhede is ssort. uor zone hit
 fayleþ and ualouweþ ase þet flour of þe uelde / anon ase
 þe zaule him todeþ. al þe uayrhede þet / þet body heþ :
 þe zaule hit yeaþ. and uor þe zaule he hit heþ. þeruore
 he is fol / þet of uayrhede of bodie him gledeþ. Ac þe
 uayrhede of þe zaule : is uayrhede ariȝt / þet alneway
 wext and neure ne ssel fayly. þet is þe zoþe uayrhede /
 hueroore þe zaule to god likeþ / and to þe angles þet
 yzeþ þe herte. þis uayrhede yelt / and yefþ / to þe
 zaule : grace. and uirtue. and loue of god. uor hy re-
 formeþ / and agraypeþ / and him yelt his ryȝte pryente.
 þet is þe ymage of his sseppere / þet is uayr wyþoute
 comparysoun. and þet best him anlykneþ : mest is uayr.
 þanne þet uayreste þing þet ys onder god : is þe zaule /
 þet heþ parfitliche his riȝte sseppe / and his riȝte briȝt-
 nesse / colour of flour. briȝtnesse of zonne. sseppe of
 man. lykyng of preciouſe stones. And al þet þe eȝe of
 herte yzyþ of uayr : is uoulhede and uelpe / to þe zyȝþe
 of him. and al þet me may onder gode þenche of uayr :
 hit ne may naȝt by ycompariſoned to him.

Beauty appeals to
the eye.

Had we the eye of
the Lynx, we
should see each
fair body as a sack
full of dung.

Beauty soon fails
and withers.

He is a fool that
rejoiceth on ac-
count of his fair-
ness.
Beauty of the soul
never fades, for it
is like to God and
the angels.

It giveth grace to
the soul.

The faireſt thing
under God is the
soul that hath per-
fectly its right
shape.

Nothing in the
world may be
compared to it.

OF WYT / AND OF CLEREGYE.

Cleregye and wyt / byeþ þinges moche yworþssiped.
 Ac yef þou wylt by wys ariȝt. and heȝe cleregye lyerny :
 make þet þou habbe þet zoþe godes guod. þet is / grace /
 and uirtue. uor þet is þe zoþe wysdom. þet alyȝt þe herte
 of man. ase deþ þe zonne : þe wordle. þis wyt paseþ þe

Of wit and of
learning.

Clergy and wit
are things much
honoured.

God's grace is the
true wisdom that
enlighteneth the
heart of man.

This wit passeth
the wit of the
world, which is
but folly.

Those who love
the world
think the moon to
be the sun.

They mistake a
glass for a sap-
hire.

They live like
children that seek
only their own
will.

In such folk is
reason dead,

[Fol. 24. b.]

they are like a
woman with child,
who prefers a
sour apple to a
wheaten loaf.

They cannot be-
lieve that there is
more bliss in serv-
ing God than in
serving their own
lusts.

Their wit is the
devil's wit,
that each day
tempteth others
to do wrong.

The bliss of the
world is idle,

wyttes of þe wordle / ase deþ þe zonne : þe brytnesse of
þe mone. Vor yef wyt of þe wordle ne is bote folye
ase zayþ þe wrytinge / and childhede / and onwyt. folye
ine ham : þet þe wordle louyeþ / and hire uayrhede /
þet hi ne conne yknaue / þane day : uram þe nyzt. ne
deme betuene grat / and smal. betuene precious / an
vil. Hy wenep of þe mone : þet hit by þe zonne. uor
hi wenep of þe worþssipe of þe wordle : þet hyt by þe
zoþe blisse. of ane epple : an hel. uor hi wenep by þe
wordle : þet hit by wel grat þing. þet to þe ziþe of þe
heuene ne is bote an eppel. hy wenep of a gles : þet
hit by a safir. uor hi wenep þet hare myzte / and hare
strengþe : by wel grat. þet more is brekynde / and
fyble : þanne gles. Efter þe chi[l]dhede / þet þe wyt of
þe wordle / and þo þet byeþ zuo wyse to loky þet body /
and to eysy / and to delyty / þet libbeþ ase children.
þet ne zechep bote hare wyl to done. In zuych uolk is
skele dyad. and þeruore / hi libbeþ ase bestes. uor hare
wyt is al myswent / and corrupt. ase þe zuelz of þe zyke /
oper of þe wyfman grat myd childe. þet more hi uynt
smak in ane zoure epple : þanne in ane huetene lhoue.
and þet child in ane cole : þanne in ane guode mete.
Alsuo zuych uolk ne moze yleue / þet þer by more
blisse / and lost / ine god to serui / and to louie : þanne
to done þe wyl of hare loste. uor hi ne conne deme /
betuene zuete / and byter. Efterward / þis wyt / is
onwyt. ine þan þet byeþ zuo moche sotyl ine kuednesse
to uynde / ine opren to gyly / and deceyui oper be playt /
oper be strengþe / oper be barat. þet hy ne þencheþ / ne
studieþ / bote ham zelue to auonci : and opren to harmy.
þet wyt is þe dyeules wyt / ase zayþ saint iacob / þet eche
daye him uondeþ / opren to harmy. Ac þe zoþe wyt /
þet þe holy gost tekþ to godes uryendes / is ine knauynge
wyþ-oute wyþnimynge / þet ech þing is worþ. hit sseweþ
þet þe wordle is ydel : ine byinge. vyl : ine worþ. biter :

ine smac. þet þe blisse of þe wordle : is ydel. þe riches : vil. þe lostes : bitere.

Afterward he yefþ to y-uele / þet þe loue of god / and uirtue / is zoþ þing / and of pris. Zoþ : uor hi uoluelp þe herte / and norisset / and sostyeneþ. of pris : uor me may god / an al þet he heþ : begge. Zuete : uor þet is þe manne / þet alle þise þinges makeþ zuete. zuynch. zorþes. tyeares / and weþinges. ssames. martires. and alle pinen. and al þet me may þenche. þet is þe zuete sucre / and of guod ssmak. and þet is þe wyt / and þe wysdom / þet þe writinge clepeþ / worþssipuol wysdom / huerof wext zoþe blisse ine inwyt.

After uirtues / an charites : he yefþ zoþe prouesse. þanne þer nys prowesse ariȝt : bote ine godes knyȝtes / þet þe holy gost heþ y-dobbed / and y-armed / mid uirtu / and mid charité. Ine prouesse byeþ þri þinges todeld. hardyesse. strengþe. an stedeuestnesse. Non ne is aryȝt preus : þet þise þri þinges ne heþ. þet ne ys hardy / and zyker / to greate þinge ondernime. strang / and myȝtuol / uor to uolȝy. zed / and stable : uor to uolȝy. Ac wyþ-oute wyt / and wyþ-oute porueyonce : ne byeþ naȝt worþ non of þise þry þinges. Vor ase zayþ þe boc of þe art of knyȝthod / ine opre quereles huame me mysnymþ hou þet hit by uounde myd amendement. Ac errour in batayle / ne may naȝt by amended. uor hi is anon awreke.

Fole op-nymynge is huer lite profit lip. and moche cost. and of peril. and of payne. Zueche byeþ þe opnymynges / þet me clepeþ prous. and hardi / ine þise wordle / þet body / and zaule brengeþ into zenne / and þe guodes also / and ine peril / and ine payne / uor a lyte lost to habbe : þet mochel is ydel / and litel ylest. Ac uirtue makeþ man of greate herte / and of wyse opnymynge þanne hi makeþ man þet ne is bote erþe / zuo hardi / þet he dar opnyme : þe regne of heuene to wyne. and alle þe dyeulen / þet byeþ zuo stronge / to

its riches are vile,
and its lusts are
bitter.

Virtue is a true
thing, and of
worth,

it rendereth sweet
labour, sorrow,
tears, and weep-
ings.

It is the wit and
wisdom called
honourable.

[Zoþe prouesse.]

True prowess
exists only in God's
knights.

In this prowess
are boldness,
strength, and
steadfastness.

In quarrels an
error may be
rectified,
but in battle a
mistake may not
be amended.

[Fole opnymynge.]

The world's
prowess is peril-
ous.

Virtue makes a
man bold in heart,
so that he aspire
to the reign of

[Fol. 25. a.]

heaven.

He who is without
virtue hath no
great courage,
for he dreads the
adversities of the
world.

He is as a child
who likes a mirror
better than a king-
dom.
Virtue maketh a
man to win heaven
and to despise the
world,

so that he is no
more troubled by
adversity than
the sea is by drops
of rain.

Virtue makes a
man as hardy as
a lion, strong as
an elephant, and
steadfast as the
sun.

ouercome. þis opnimynge : is guod / and wys. huer
þer is lytel peril / and litel of pyne. and blisse. and
worþssipe wyþ-oute mesure. Huo þet ne heþ uirtue :
he ne heþ grat herte / ase heþ þe ilke þet heþ drede of
najt. Zuyche byeþ þo þet zuo moche dredeþ þe kueades
and þe aduersetes of þe wordle. and þet habbeþ drede
uor to lyese : þet hi ne moze najt longe hyealde. ha neþ
najt grat herte þet hit yefþ uor najt. ase doþ þo þet
yeueþ hare herten to louie þe guodes of fortune / þet
ine zoþe : ne byeþ najt / to þe zizþe of þe zoþe guodes of
blisse. þanne zuych uolc byeþ ase is þet child / þet
loueþ more ane sseawere : þanne ane kingdom. an eppel :
þanne al his kende. Ac uirtue yefþ grat herte arizt.
uor uirtue makeþ wynne heuene : and onworþi þe
wordle. grat berdone of penonce to bere. and alle þe
kueades of þe wordle onderbere. and gledliche polye.
and uor god to leste / to alle þe asaylinges of þe dyeule
wydstonde. And ase zayþ þe wyse seneke. Najt ne
habbeþ more of myzte aye uirtues / kueade mysfalles /
and zorþes / ne al þet fortune may þreapny / an do :
more þanne þer byeþ dropen of rayn ine þe ze. Virtue
makeþ man hardi / ase lyoun. strang / ase olyfont.
stedeuest and lestinde / ase þe zonne / þet alneway
yernþ / and ne is neure wery. þanne þer ne is prowesse :
bote uirtue.

Might.

MYZTE.

No true lordship
but in virtue.

[*Mannes lhord-
ssip.*]

Man was made to
rule over all crea-
tures,

Also þer ne is non zoþe lhordssip : bote ine uirtue.
A grat lhord he is : þet to huam al þe wordle serueþ.
Zuych lhordssip / yefþ man grace and uirtue. Vor hi
zet man spirituellyche ine his rizte stat / huerinne
he wes uerst ymad. þe man wes ymad ine zuyche
worþssipe / and ine zuyche lhordssipe : þet he wes
lhord of alle ssepþes / þet were onder heuene. and to
huam : alle þinges bozen / and to huam noþing ne
myzte derye. and þet is þe rizte stat to man and to his

lhordssip. Ac þis lhordssip he leas be zenne. ne he hit
 nazt ayen ne miȝte awynne : bote be uirtue. Ac uirtue
 arereþ þane man an heȝ : and him deþ þe wordle onder-
 uot / and him deþ wende to heuene.

but he lost this
 lordship by sin.
 Virtue puts all
 things again under
 his foot.

Virtue makeþ þane man / more ariȝt lhord of the
 wordle : þanne by þe kyng / of his regne. Vor of þe
 guodes of þe wordle / he heþ ase moche ase his herte
 wylneþ. þer is his wone / and his sustinonce / and al
 þet he wyle habbe / more ynoȝ / þanne habbe þe kyng.
 uor al þet habbeþ þe guode / and þe kuede : al hit is
 his. Vor of zuo mōche makeþ his prou / and of al hire
 god / and þonkeþ. and more loueþ / and dredeþ / and
 serueþ. ine þet he yȝiȝþ / and knauþ / þet alle sseþþes
 byeþ ymad him uor to serui. Efterward / he heþ
 anopre empire / uayr / an grat / wyþoute þet non ne ys
 aryȝt lhord. uor he is emperour of him-zelue. þet is of
 his bodye : and of his herte. huiche he demþ / and halt
 ine guode payse / huerof he deþ his wyl. Vor his
 herte is zuo bliþe to þe wyll of gode : þet al þet god
 deþ : al hit is him uayr. and þerby heþ he alneway : þe
 herte ine peyse. and þet body gouerneþ be þe wyll of
 god / and al þet god deþ to his bodye : he yelt þonkes /
 and hym payþ. and þet is þe lhordssip / þet uirtue yefþ
 to þan þet hit heþ. Huerof specþ senekes þet zayþ.
 Ase moche worþssipe / and grat empireté¹ of the kynge /
 by emperour of þy-zelue. A god uele byeþ þer kynges /
 and of barouns ine þe wordle / þet habbeþ casteles /
 cites / and regnes / þet ne habbeþ nazt þis lhordssip.
 þet of hare herten : ne byeþ nazt lhordes. þet hyse
 tormenteþ ofte. oþer be yre / oþer be enel wil. oþer be
 couaytyse / oþer be wylny[n]gges. þet hy ne moȝe nazt
 uoluelle.

Virtue makes a
 man more a lord
 than is the king by
 his reign.

It causes him to
 enjoy all things.

He is emperor of
 himself, i. e., of
 his body and
 his heart.

His heart is al-
 ways in peace, and
 his body is govern-
 ed by the will of
 God.

[Fol. 25. b.]

He gives thanks
 to God for all his
 gifts.

There are many
 kings and empe-
 rors that have
 castles and cities,
 who have not this
 lordship.

VRIDOM.

Freedom.

Efterward / non ne heþ uridom : bote he habbe
 grace / and uirtue. þanne yef þou wilt conne huet is

There are three
 sorts of freedom,

¹ So in MS.

1. of kind(nature),
2. of grace, 3. of
bliss.

1. Free-will to do
good or evil.

This freedom
comes from God,
and the devil can-
not influence man
against his will.

Man loses his free-
dom when he sin-
neth deadly,

and becometh the
devil's thrall.

2. Freedom of
grace.
Those have this
freedom who by
grace and virtue
are no longer
slaves of sin.

They care not a
button for the
world, and dread
neither king nor
earl, nor life nor
death,

but desire death
as the reaper longs
for harvest.

They dread no-
thing but God.

uridom arizt. þa/ne sselt þou onderstonde þet þe man
heþ þri maneres of uridom. þe one of kende. þe opre of
grace þe þridde of blisse.

þe uerste is uri-wyl / huer-by he may chyese / and
do / uryliche oper þet guod oper þet kuead. þerne
uridom he halt of god zuo uriliche þet non ne may him
do wrang. ne alle þe dyeulen of helle ne mozen mannes
wyl strengþi to do one zenne wyþ-oute his wyлле. Vor
yef man. dede þet kuead toyeans wyлле : hit nere non
zenne. Vor non ne zenezep ine þet he ne may nazt
bevely. ase zayþ saynt austyn. uridom habbeþ alle men.
ac hit is ybounde ine children / and ine foles / and yne
wytlease / þet ne habbeþ nenne skele / huer-by hi
conne chyese : þet guode uram þe kueade. þerne
uridom þe man benymþ him-zelue ine grat del. huanne
he zenezep dyadliche. uor him-zelue zelþ : uor þane lost
of þe zenne. and him-zelue yelt to þe dyeule / and
becomþ his þrel to þe zenne. zuo þet he ne may hit
uorprawe to his wyлле / þet he heþ ymad zyker : bote þe
grace of god him helpe.

þe oper uridom is þe ilke / þet habbeþ þe guodemen
in þise wor[d]le / þet god heþ yvryd be grace / and be
uirtue / uram þe þreldome of þe dyeule and of zenne :
þet hi ne byep þrelles. ne to gold / ne to zeluer / ne to
hare caroyne. ne to þe guodes of fortune / þet þe dyap :
ne may benime. Ac hy habbeþ hire herten zuo arered
ine god : þet hi ne prayseþ þe wordle : bote ane botoun.
and hi ne dredeþ kyng. ne erl. ne non misual. ne
pouerte. ne ssame. ne dyap. uor hi byep half deade. and
habbeþ þe herten zuo todeld uram þe loue of þe wordle :
þet hi abideþ and wylneþ þane dyap / ase deþ þe guode
workman his ssepe. and þe lezere his heruest. and þo
þet byep ine wo of ze : guod port. and þe prisons : hare
deliureonse. and þe pylgrym : his contraye. and þise
byep stedeuestliche uri / ase me may by inc þise wordle.
Vor hi ne leueþ / ne dredeþ noþing bote god and byep

ine greate pays of herte. uor hy hys habbeþ yzet ine god and byeþ nyeȝ ine paradys be wylnyngē. And þe ilke vrydom : comþ of grace : and of uirtue.

Ac yet eft þis vrydom : ne is bote þreldom / to þe zyȝþe / of þe þridde uridome. þet habbeþ þo þet byeþ nyeȝ deliured / of bodye / and of al. and myd gode byeþ / nou ine his glorie. þise byeþ zoþliche vry. uor hy byeþ delyured of alle wo / of drede / of deaþe / and of zenne. of wanhope. of gyle. and of þe wordle. of zorȝe. and of alle pyne of herte / and of bodye : wyþoute comynge ayen. of huyche þinges / non ne is ury ine þise wordle : huet hi is y-do.

3. The third freedom is far greater than the other two.

[Fol. 26. a.]

Those who have this freedom are delivered from all woe, from dread of death, from sin and sorrow, for they are now in glory.

NOBLESSE.

Nobility.

Hvo þet þanoprene urydom huer-of ich habbe yspeke myȝte habbe : to greate noblesse hit ssolde come. þe zoþe noblesse / comþ of þe gentyle herte. Vorzoþe non herte ne is gentyl : bote he louie god. þanne þer ne is non noblesse : bote to serui god an louye. ne vyleynye. bote ine þe contrarie þet is god to wreþi / and to do zenne. Non ne ys ariȝt gentyl / ne noble / of þe gentillesse of þe bodye. Vor ase to þe bodye : alle we byeþ children of one moder. þet is of erþe : and of wose. huer-of we nome alle : uless and blod. of þo zide : non ne is ariȝt gentil / ne vri. Ac oure riȝte uader / is kyng of heuene / þet made þet body of þe erþe. and ssop þe zaule to his anlycnisse an to his fourme. An al ase hit is of þe uader ulesslich þet mochel is bliþe / huanne his children him byeþ ylych. al-zuo hit is of oure uader gostlich / þet be wrytinges / an be his zondes / ne let naȝt ous to somony / and bidde / þet we zette payne : to by him ilich. and þeruore he ous zente his blissede zone Ihesu crist in-to erþe / uor to brenge ous þe zoþe uorbisne / huer-by we byeþ yssape to his ymage / and to his uayrthede / ase byeþ þo þet wonyeþ ine his

True nobility cometh of the gentle heart.

The gentle heart loves God and hates sin.

No one holdeth right nobility from the body ; for we are all children of one mother, i. e., of earth and mud. Our right father is King of heaven,

and He sent His son Jesus Christ to bring us the true pattern, whereby we are formed to His image and fairness.

The holy man in
this world endea-
vours to know and
love God.

The more the
heart is clean,
the more openly
he seeth the face of
Jesus.

In paradise we
shall see God
openly as He is.
We here see Him
as in a glass
dimly.

True nobility be-
gins in grace and
is completed in
bliss.

This nobility the
Holy Ghost work-
eth in the heart,

He raiseth men up
to God,

[Fol. 25. b.]

so that their will
is one with God's
will.

heȝe cité of heuene. þet byeþ þe angles / and þe
halȝen of paradis / huer ech is þe more heȝ / and þe
more noble / þe more propreliche þet he berþ þe ilke
uayre ymage. And þeruore þe holy man ine þise
wordle deþ al his herte / and al his payne to knawe
god and louye. And of hire herte : alle zenne to
waynye. Vor þe more þet þe herte is clene / and þe
uayrer : zuo moche he yzyȝþ þe face of Iesu crist þe
more openliche. and þe more þet he his yzyȝþ openliche :
þe more he him loueþ þe stranglaker. þe more he him
likneþ propreliche. And þet is þe zoþe noblesse / þet
makeþ ous godes zones. And þeruore zayþ riȝt wel
saynd ion þe apostel. uor þanne we ssolle by godes
children. and we ssolle by him ylich propreliche huanne
we him ssolle yzy / ase he ys openliche. þet ssel by ine
his blysse : huanne we ssolle by ine paradys. uor hyer
ne zyþ non onwryȝe þe uayrhede of god / bote ase hit
by ine ane ssewere. ase zayþ sainte pael. Vor þanne
we him ssolle yzy face to face clyerlyche.

þe zoþe noblesse þanne of man begynþ hyer be
grace / and be uirtue. and is uolued ine blysse. þise
noblesse makeþ þe holy gost ine herte þet he clenzeþ
ine clenness / and alyȝt ine zoþnesse. and uoluelp ine
charité. þise byeþ þe þri greteste guodes : þet god yeff
þe angles. ase zayþ saint denys. huer-by hy byeþ yliche
to hare sseppere. And þus workeþ þe holy gost ine þe
herten of guode men be grace / and be uirtue / huer-
by hy byeþ ymad to þe ymage / and to þe anlycnesse of
god / ase hit may by ine þise lyue. uor he his arereþ zuo
ine god / and his becleþþ zuo ine his loue / þet al hare
wyl / and al hare onderstondinge is / þet is þet
is hare beþenchinge þet is ywent ine god. þis loue and
þis wylnyng / þet ioynep / and oneþ zuo þe herte to
god : þet he ne may oþer þing wylny : oþer þanne god
wyle. uor hi ne habbeþ betuene god and ham : bote on-
lepi wyl. and þanne to þe ymage / and to þe anliknesse

of god. ase me may habbe in erþe. and þet is þe grateste noblesse / and þe heȝeste gentilesse / þet me may to hoppe : and cliue. A. god / hou hy byþ uer uram þise heȝnesse / þo þet makeþ ham zuo quaynte of þe ilke poure noblesse þet hi habbeþ of hare moder þe erþe / þet berþ and norysseþ azewel þe hogges : ase hy deþ þe kinges. and hy ham yelpeþ of hare gentyleté / uor þet hy weneþ by of gentile woze. and þe ilke kenrede : hy conne riȝt wel telle. And þe oþre zyde hy ne lokeþ naȝt / huer-of ham comþ þe zoþe noblesse / and þe gentyl kenrede. Hy ssolden loki to hare zoþe uorbysne Ihesu crist / þet mest louede / and worssipede his moder : þanne eure dede eny oþer man. and alneway huanne me him zede. ‘sire : þi moder / and þi cosyn / þe akseþ.’ He ansuerede. ‘huo ys my moder / and huo byþ myne cosynes ? huo þet deþ þe wyl of myne uader of heuene : he is my broþer / and my zoster / and my moder.’ Vor þis is þe noble zyde / and þe gentyl kende / þer-of comþ / and wext ine herte : zoþe blisse / ase of þe oþren ydele noblesse : wext prede / and ydele blisse.

Far from God are those who are so proud of their nobility taken from the earth, which nourisheth hogs as well as kings.

We should look to our true exemplar Jesus Christ, who has said that His mother and His cousins are those who do the will of God.

GENTYL GUOD.

Gentle blood.

Nou ich þe habbe al uolliche ysseawed þet ich leue. þet þer ne is non guod aryȝt worþssipuol : bote uirtue / and charyté. þet is uayr loue of god. þet þer ne is non oþer guod profitable. þis ous wytnesseþ saynte paul þet zayþ alsuo. ‘Yef ich hedde zuo moche wyt ine me / þet ich couþe alle clergyes. alle speches. and speke also wel ase myȝte man / oþer angel. and ich couþe godes priuities / and his redes. and yef ich betoke my body to slaze. and yeue al þet ich habbe to þe poure. and dede by miracle þe helles lcheape uram one stede / to anopre. bote-yef ich ne hedde þe uirtue of charité : al hit nere me naȝt worþ.’ Nou nim hede þet zaynte paul þet me ssel wel yleue. ous heþ hyer ynemned / þe meste gentile

There is nothing worthy of honour except virtue and charity.

Learning, speech, liberality, &c., are worthless without charity.

If, as St Paul says, these great possessions profit-

eth nothing with-
out charity,

how shall less
goods avail?

Who that most
hath, is worth
most.

[Fol. 27. a.]

How shall we say
that those do good
who shall hereafter
be damned in hell,
because they have
abused the gifts of
God?

Bodily works and
spiritual deeds
are nothing with-
out charity.

Charity is good
chaffer, that every-
where wins and
never loses.

guodes / þet man may do / and þet mest were ywoned :
to by worþ. and profiti. þet byeþ [þe] porueyonces of
bodye. and slaþe to þolye. helpe poure. to wende þane
zenuolle. and connynge. an speches. and [he] zayþ þet alle
þise guodes wyþ-oute charité : ne byeþ naȝt worþ. and
yef þise guodes ne byeþ naȝt worþ : hou ssolde lesse
guodes by worþ? þis þi-zelf þe myȝt zzy be skele þet
hyer beuore me heþ yzed. zuo moche is worþ þe man :
ase is worþ his land. þet is ase zoþ / ase pater noster.
Huo þet wel onderstant. hou / and huer-by / þe man is
worþ / oþer naȝt / oþer zomdel / oþer more oþer lesse /
and þet ne is non drede / þet / þet ne by charite / and
þe loue of god. Vor huo þet mest heþ : mest is worþ.
and huo þet lest heþ : lest is worþ. huo þet naȝ[t] ¹ ne
heþ : naȝt ne is worþ. Vor huo moche þe man het of
timliche guodes / ase byeþ / gold / an zeluer. an richesses.
oþer guodes gostliche. oþer kendeliche / ase byeþ / creft /
and queyntyse. wyt / and clergie. strengþe / and prou-
esse. and oþre guodes. Hou ssel ich zygge þet hi doþ
guod / þazne he ssel by þe more zoruollaker ydamned /
uor þet he his benoteþ naȝt ariȝt. of þe guodes þet god
him hedde ylend uor to winne. Efterward yef he deþ
workes bodylyche / as doþ þise zuynkeres / and þise
gememen. Oþer yef he deþ workes gostliche. ase byeþ
uestinges. benes. ssrede þe poure. bere þe here. yef he is
wyþ-oute charite : zoþ uor to zigge : hit ne is him naȝt
worþ. Vor þeruore / þe more mede to-uore god him ne
worþ þe rapre / yef he sterfþ wyþ-oute charite : y-damned
ha worþ. Ac þe ilke þet heþ uirtue and charité guode /
of al þet god him zent ine þise wordle / of al he deþ his
nyede. and of al he wynþ : grace of blysee.

Charité is a guod chapfare / þet oueral wynþ / and
none time ne lyst. alle þe guode paneworþes hy bayþ.
and deþ alneway his nyede. and naȝt uorþan : hy heþ
alneway hire peny ayen / þet is þe loue of herte / þet is þe

¹ MS. naȝ

godes peny / huer-mide me bayþ / alle þe guodes of þe wordle / and alneway ha blefþ uor euremo / ine þe purse. Loue heþ ine eche stede his zales. Charité wynþ ine eche þinge. and playntes. and hy heþ þe maystrie : ine alle batayles. Hi deþ¹ / þet asemoche is worþ to onenen ueste enne day : ase to anopren : al ane lanten. Hi deþ¹ / þet ase moche is worþ o peny to onen þet ha yefþ : ase to anopren : an hondred pond. Zygge a pater noster : ase to anopren a sautyer. and þet ne is uor non opre skele : bote uor þet / þet zuo moche is worþ þe man / zuo moche byeþ worþ his workes. Vor þe more þet he heþ zoþe loue : þe more he wynþ eche daye. Loue is þe wyzte ine þe balance [zayþ] saynt Michel. uor non oper þing ne may weþe : huanne me comþ to nime ech his ssepe : bote loue and charité. and þeruore ich zigge / þet þer ne is non guod profitable aperteliche / and a riht speke : bote uayr loue / and charité.

The love of the heart is God's penny, wherewith one may buy all the goods of the world.

Charity is ever uniform in her conduct.

Love is the weight to the balance.

There is no profitable good but love and charity.

OF TWO LOSTUOLLE GUODES.

Of two lustful (pleasing) goods.

Ase god made man of body an of zaule : alzuo he him heþ y-yeue tuo manere guodes lostuolle / uor his herte to him draþe. ine huychen byeþ alle þe zoþe lostes. þe uerste guod wyþ-oute : byeþ þe vif wyttes of þe bodye. be zyþþe be hyerþe. / be smellinge. be zuelzyng. and be takynge. þise uif wytes / byeþ ase uif condwys / huerby þe lostuolle guodes of þe wordle guoþ in-to þe herte uor to deliti / and uor ham zouke to þe zoþe lostes / þet byeþ ine god to louie. Vor al þe lost of þise wordle / þet habbeþ þe vif wyttes / ne byeþ bote a drope of deau / to þe zizþe of þe welle. ac of þe greate ze / huer-of alle þise guodes comeþ. þe drope of þe deawe huanne me his zyþþe auer : anlykneþ to ane stone. of pris. ac huanne me wenþ hine nime : he ualþ agrund / and to nazte becomþ. Alsuo þe playinges of þe wordle / and þe

1. The five wits (senses) of the body

are as five channels whereby the lustful goods enter the heart and delight it.

The lusts (pleasures) of this world are only a drop of dew, compared with the well and the great sea of God's blessings.

[Fol. 27. b.]

¹ MS. de3

The lusts of the
flesh are but as
dreams that come
and go.

The wise men
long for the love
of God,

the more they
see the sweet
drops, the more
they desire to
come to the well.

The more one loves
the sweetness of
the world, the less
one desires the
sweetness of God.

They are fools
and worse than
beasts who think
the body to be
greater than the
soul.

Spiritual gifts
are the best, as
peace of heart,
victory over devils
and joy of the
soul.

Such bliss is not
to be compared
with the lusts of
the world.

lostes of þe vif wyttēs huanne me hise þengþ / and
sseppeþ / and sseaweþ moche of pris : ac huanne me hise
halt : alle hi byeþ uorlore / and becomeþ nazt / and
metinges. þench of þe lost of uernyere / and of metinge
of nyzt / þou sselt ysy þet hit is al on. an haste guoþ :
and zone comeþ. ine none manere uelle ne may. and þet
ine one drope is zuo moche zuetnesse / þet hy ssel by þe
zuetness of al þe welle. And þeruore þe wyse and þe
holy man ¹ ine þise wordle / ine al þet hi zyeþ and
smackeþ of þe guodes lostfolle of þise wordle : heryeþ
god. and þe more wylneþ þe loue of him. and þe more
þet hy zyeþ þe zuete drops : þe more hy wylneþ to
come to þe welle. And þeruore þet hi wyteþ wel / þet
þe more me loueþ þane drope : þe more me uor-yet þe
welle. and þe more þet lykeþ þe zuetnesse of þe wordle :
þe lesse me wylneþ / þe zuetnesse of god. þeruore myd
alle þe honden þet hy moze / hi nemeþ and useþ. þe
lostes ulessliche / and þe plezes. þet be þe vif wyttēs
comeþ.

A. god hou hi byeþ foles / and more þanne a best.
þet wyteþ þet / þet body of man : is þe meste poure
makyngē. and þe vileste þet is. and þe spirit of man : is
þe zaule. and ys þe nobleste þing / an þe hezeste sseppe
þet may by. and nazt uorþan / hy moze wene / þet more
byeþ zuete / and lostuoller / þe guodes þet comeþ by þe
bodye : þanne þo þet comeþ be þe goste. þet byeþ zoþe
guodes / and clene / and lestynde / and moze þe herte
velle and uoluelle. Zueche guodes yefþ god to man
ine þise wordle. huanne he yefþ pays of herte. and þe
maystrie of his vyendes. and blisse of inwytt huanne he
uoluelp þe herte of loue. and of blisse gostlych / and
him adrengþ of ane zuetnesse wonderuol. zuo þet he ne
may him hycalde / ne him-zelue yuele. Of zuyche
blisse / and of zuyche loste / no liknesse / ne non com-
parisoun ne may by yuounde ine yoyes / and ine lostes
of þe wordle / þet ne byeþ bote dropen to þe zizþe of þe

¹ men ?

welle of zuetnesse. þet is þe welle huer-of oure lhord
 spekp̃ ine his spelle. 'Huo þet ssel drinke' he zayþ / 'of
 þe wetere þet ich wylye y[e]ue him: hi¹ ssel become a welle /
 þet him ssel do lheaþe / in-to þe lyue eurelestynde.' þet
 is þe welle of blisse / and of zuetnesse. of loue / a[n]d
 of charité. þet may uoluelle þe herte / and non oþer
 þing þet is. Of þise welle hedde dauip̃ y-nome / þet
 zede ine his sautere. 'O. god / hou is nou grat / þe
 mochelhede / of þine zyuetnesse³ þet þou lokest to þine
 seruinde / and yetst to þine uryendes.' And uorzoþe hu
 þet hedde wel ytasted and ysmacked þe ilke zuetnesse
 þet god yefþ to his urendes : he ssolde onworpi alle þe
 lostes / and alle þe blissen of þise wordle. and wolde
 chise / and ofhealde þe gostliche blisse / and ssolde by
 ase þe ilke / þet bontep̃ þet mele / þet to-delp̃ þet flour
 uram þe bren. and ase þe ilke þet makeþ þe oyle / þet
 nimþ þe pure grece : and let þet greate draf. Vor blisse
 of herte þet comp̃ of god to louie þet is zoþe blisse and
 ziker / ase zayþ þe uorbisne. þet non ne heþ zikere
 blisse / bote yef hi come of loue. And in þe writyngge
 ha clep̃ uile² / oure lhord by be³ þe profete / þet zayþ.
 'Ich wylye' zayþ he 'vile² of blisse uorwepinge. alle blisse /
 clene / and zoþe of herte / uor wop of penonce.' Of þise
 oyle byep̃ y-smered / þo þet god heþ ymad kinges / and
 lhordes of þe wordle / and god zelf. and þanne is þe man
 ziker cristen / huanne he is ysmered myd þise holy crayme.
 Vor of crayme : is yzed crist : and of crist : cristendom.
 And hu þet is ysmered mid þise oynement : þet is þe
 blisse / and þe loue of god. he leueþ ine god : and god
 ine him. ase zayþ saint Ion þe apostel. and þet lif is of
 cristene þet is ariȝt to speke / lif of man. þet is guod
 lyf and yblyssed þet cristene ssolle yleue / and wylny to
 zeche : to habbe þet lyf eurelestinde. uor he ne is naȝt
 alyue : ac ine langour / þet eche daye leueþ ine bysyhede /
 ine þoȝtes / ine zoȝes. ne þet ne is naȝt lyf of man : ac
 of child / þet nou wepþ / nou lhezþ / and nou is wel an

The true bliss is
 the well whereof
 our Lord speaks in
 the gospel.

Of this well David
 speaks in the
 Psalter.

Whoso should
 taste the sweet-
 ness that God
 giveth to His
 friends,

would despise all
 the lusts and
 blisses of the
 world.

[Fol. 28. a.]

Joy of heart is
 the true bliss,
 which comes of
 love to God.

With the oil of
 bliss (or the oil of
 cream) all true
 Christians are be-
 smeared.

The ointment is
 the bliss and love
 of God.

The Christian
 life is the good
 life,
 for he is not alive
 who each day
 liveth in cares,
 anxieties, and sor-
 rows.

¹ he ?

² Written for *oyle*

³ So in MS.

Neither is it the life of man, but of a child, who alternately laughs and weeps.

eyse : and nou is euele aneyse. nou is wroþ / nou is ine payse. nou ine blisse. nou ine zorþe.

Whoso seeks true happiness shall have honourable life, life pleasant and profitable.

þanne huo þet wyle lede guod lif : zeche þet he habbe / þet zoþe guod. and þanne ssel he habbe lyf worþssipuol lyf. lostuol. and profitable. and þanne he ssel libbe ase a man. þet is to zigge : zikerlyche. hollyche. wysliche. and blisuolliche wyþ-oute zorþe. and to zuiche lyue me comp : oþer be grace / oþer be uirtue. and naȝt oþerlaker.

OF VIRTUE MORE SPECIALliche.

We have now considered generally the dignity, worth, and goodness of virtue,

which leads to joy, honour, and life everlasting.

Nou ich þe habbe aboue yssewed generalliche þe dingneté / and þe worþ / and þe guodnesse : of uirtu / and of charité : and hueruore me ssel hise zeche. Vor grat ureme þer comp his uor to habbe. blisse. worþssipe / and lyf euelestinde. Ac uor þan / þet me ne knauþ naȝt zuo wel þet þing ine general / ase me deþ in special : þeruore hyer ys myn ywyl to spekene of uirtue more openliche. zuo þet ech þet wyll ine þise boc studye : moȝe his lyf ordeyni be uirtue / and be guode dedes. Vor oþerlaker litel hit him ssolde by worþ to conne þet guod : bote me hit dede. Vor ase zayþ saynt iacob. He þet can guod / and ne deþ hit naȝt : þer is zenne / yef he misdeþ. Fol he is þet can þane riȝte way / and be his wytinde mysgeþ.

It is not enough to know what is good, unless we perform it. He sinneth who acts contrary to his belief.

The Holy Writ compares the soul of the good man or woman to a fair garden, full of greenness, fair trees, and of good fruit.

This garden setteth the great gardener, God the Father,

þe holy writ *comparison*eþ þe zaule and of þe guode manne / an of þe guode wyfmanne : to ane uayre gardyne uol of grenhede / and of uayre trawes / and of guod frut. Huerof god zayþ ine þe boc of loue. ‘My zoster / my lemman þou art a gardin bessel / myd tuo ssetteles.’ þet is þe grace of god / and of angles. þerne gardyn zette þe greate gardyner / þet is god þe uader / huanne he nhesseþ þe herte / and makeþ zuete / and tretteþ / ase wex ymered. and ase land guod¹ and agrayped / and worþi þet hy by yzet mid guode ympen. þe ilke ympen byeþ þe uirtues / þet þe holy gost

[Fol. 23. b.]
when He softeneth the heart.

¹ *ydegud* (digged) has been erased.

be-deawep myd his grace. Godes zone þet is þe zoþe
zonne be þe uirtue of his clernesse : deþ ham wexe an
hez / and profite.

The branches are
the virtues bedew-
ed by the grace of
the Holy Ghost.

OF þRI ÞINGES NYEDUOLLE TO þE ERÞE.

þyse þri þinges byep nyeduolle to alle þe þinges þet
in þe erþe wexeþ. Guod molde. wocnesse norissynde.
and renable hete. wydoute¹ þise þri þinges gostliche / ne
moze þe ympen of uirtue / ne wexe / ne bere frut. þise
þinges / makeþ þe grace of þe holy gost mid herte. and
hi deþ al greny / and flouri. and bere frut. and hi
makeþ also / also a paradis erþlich to lykerous. uol of
guode trawes / and of frut / and precious. Ac ase god
zette paradys erþlich uol of guode trawes / and of frut.
and amydde zette a trau / þet me clepeþ : þet trau of
lyue. hueruore þet his frut hedde nyede to loky þet lyf /
to þan þet hit ssolde ete / wyþoute steruinge / and
wyþoute zyknese. and wyþoute ealdinge. and wyþoute
fyeblesse. Also deþ gostliche to þe herte þe greate
gardyner. þet is god þe uader. Vor he heþ y-zet þe
trawes of uirtue / and amydde þet trau of lyue. þet
is Iesu crist / þet zayþ ine his spelle. 'He þet eth my
uless / and dringþ my blod : he heþ lyf eurelestinde.'
þis trau greneþ and uayreþ be his uirtue : alle þo ine
paradis. Be þe uirtue of þise trawe wexeþ / floriseseþ /
and makeþ frut : alle þe oþre trawes. Ine þise trawe al
hit ys guod al þet þer is. þis trau is to alowe / and to
louie / uor manye þinges. Vor þe rote. Vor þane
wode. Vor þet flour. Vor þane smel. Vor þe leaues.
Vor þet frut. And uor his uayre ssed. þe rote of þise
trawe / þet is the wel greate loue / and to moche charité
of god þe uader / hueruore he ous louede zuo moche /
þet uor his kueade þrel to begge : he yaf his wel guode
zone. and him deliurede to þe dyape / and to torment.
Of þise rote spekeþ þe profete / and zayþ. þet 'a yerd ssel
guo out of þe rote of yesse.' þet word is worþ ase moche /

Of three things
needful to the
earth.

1. Good mould.
 2. Nourishing
moisture.
 3. Reasonable
heat.
- Without these
things the boughs
of virtue will not
bear fruit.

As God set in
Paradise the tree
of life amidst
other good trees,

so God hath set
the tree of life
amidst the tree of
virtues,

that is Jesus
Christ.

This tree causes
others to flourish.

The tree is to be
praised for its
root, its wood, the
flower, the smell,
the leaves, the
fruit, and its fair
seed.

The root of the
tree is the love of
God, which
redeemed his
wicked thralls by
the blood of his
good Son.
Of this root speaks
the Prophet, when
he says, "a rod
shall go out of the
root of Jesse," &c.

¹ So in MS.

The wood is the
flesh of Christ.
The pith was His
holy soul.

The rind was His
fair conversation.
The sap was His
tears, sweat, water
and blood.

The leaves were
His holy words,
the flowers His
holy thoughts,
the fruit His
twelve apostles.

The boughs in one
sense, are all the
elect.

In another sense
they are His vir-
tues and examples,
which he showed
to His private
friends,

[Fol. 29. a.

when on the
mount He opened
His mouth and
said :—
“ Blessed be the
poor of spirit,
for the kingdom
of heaven is
theirs,” &c., &c.,
&c.

These are the
seven boughs of
the tree of life.

ase a becleppinge of loue. þet wode / þet is his pre-
ciousse uless. þe herte of þo traue : wes þe holy zaule /
ine huam wes / þe preciousse yolk of þe wysdome of
god. þe rinde / wes þe uayre *conuersacioun* / wyþoute.
þet zep : of þo traue / and þe tyeres / weren uour wel
preciousses þinges / and of riȝt greate uirtue / þet of his
preciousse lemes yourne. þet weren tyeares. zuot. weter.
and blod. þe lyeaues : weren þe holi wordes / þet
helden of alle zynnesses. þe floures : weren þe holy
þoztes / þet alle weren uayre and oneste / and berinde
frut. þet frut / weren þe tuelf apostles / þet al þe wordle
uedde an norissede be hare techinge / and by hare
uorbisne / mid hare guode dedes / and þe benefices.
þe bozes / of þo traue / ine one wytte / byeþ alle þe
ychosene þet euere¹ were. and þet byeþ. and þet ssolle
by. uor ase he zede to his apostles. ‘Ich am’ he zede ‘þe
vyne / and ye byeþ þe bozes.’ Ine anopre wyt : þe bozes
weren þe uayre uirtues / and þe gloriousse uorbysnes /
þet he ssewede be dede / and toȝte be mouþe þet weren
þe uirtues uol-do and uolle of þe zoþe guodnesse / þet he
ssewede to his priuē urindes / þet weren þe tuelf
apostles / þet he ledde in-to ane heȝe helle. priuelyliche.
þer he zet ase zayþ þet godspel / and his deciples aboute
him. þanne he openede his mouþ / and his trezor þet he
hedde ywreȝe ine his herte. and ham þus zeayde.
Yblessed byeþ þe poure of goste / uor þe kyngdom of
heuene is hyre. Yblessed byeþ þe mylde : uor hi ssolle
by lhordes of þe erþe. Yblessed byeþ þo þet hyer
wepeþ / uor hi ssolle habbe þet confort of god.
Yblessed þo þet habbeþ hunger and þorst of riȝt. uor hi
ssol by uolued. Yblessed byeþ þe merciuolle / uor hi
ssolle uynde merci. Yblessed byeþ þe clene of herte /
uor hi ssole yzi god aperteliche. Yblessed byeþ þe
paysyble / uor hi ssolle by ycleped godes zones. þise
byeþ þe zeue bozes of þe trawe of liue / of godes zone
Iesu crist.

¹ MS. *euerte*

Ine þe ssede of þise trawe / him ssel guod herte
 sseduy / and yzy þe ilke uayre bozes þet bereþ þet frut
 of liue eurelestinde. Ine þise zeue wordes is beloke alle
 heznesse / and alle perfeccion of grace and of uirtue of
 zoþe blyssedhede. asemoche ase me may habbe in þise
 wordle. and habbe and onderstonde : ine þe oþre. þise
 byeþ þe zeue ruieles of holy lyf / þet þe zoþe salomon
 tekþ to his children. þis is þe zoþe filozofie / þet þe
 mayster of angles tekþ to his deciples. Ine þise zeue
 wordes byeþ besset ase ziggeþ þe halzen / al þe summe
 of þe newe laze / þet is þe laze of loue / and of zuet-
 nesse. Hy is wel yzed newe : uor hi ne may nazt
 yealdy / ase dede þe yealde laze to þe yewes. hi is
 zopliche newe / and desgised uram oþre lazes. Laze is
 yzed þeruore þet hy hare-zelue ne bynt. ake þe oþre
 byndeþ / and þis onbynt. þe oþere chargeþ : and þis
 onchargeþ. þe oþre þreapneþ : and þis behot. Ine þe
 oþre to strif : ine þise to pays. Ine þe oþre to uor-
 zuerie : ine þise to loue. Ine oþre corsynge : ine þise
 blissinge. þanne is þys / al uol of blissinge. and þeruore
 hi byeþ yblyssed þo þet hyse healdeþ zayþ salomon.
 Vor þe ilke þet his heþ : he heþ ywonne þet trau of
 liue. Hueruore þise zeue þinges touore yzed byeþ
 ycleped blyssinges. uor hy makeþ man yblyssed ine
 þise wordle ase man may by ine þise lyue : and more
 yblyssed ine þe oþre.

Nou hest þou yherd huo is þet trau of lyue / þet is
 amydde paradis / þet god zet ine þe holy zaule. Ine þe
 ssede of þise trawe / wexeþ / and profiteþ / and bereþ
 frut. þe traw of uirtue þet god þe uader / þet is þe
 greate gardyner / zet ine þe gardyne / and his wetereþ
 of þe welle of his grace / þet his deþ greny / and wexe /
 and profiti. An hise halt ine grenehede / and ine lyue.
 þe ilke welle hym todeþ ine zeue streames. þet byeþ þe
 zeue yefþes of þe holy gost / þet wetereþ al þane gardin.
 Nou loke þe greate cortaysie of oure zute maystre Iesu

In these seven
 words are included
 all highness, all
 perfection of grace
 and virtue of true
 blissfulness.

These are the
 seven rules of holy
 life.

In these seven
 words are set all
 the sum of the
 new law, the law
 of love and sweet-
 ness.
 It is called new
 because it never
 shall become old.

In the old law we
 find threatening,
 strife, and cursing;
 in the new law,
 promises, peace,
 and blessings.

These seven
 things make a
 man blessed in
 this life, and more
 blessed in the
 other.

God watereth the
 tree of virtue from
 the well of His
 grace.

This well is
 divided into seven
 streams,
 which are the
 seven gifts of the
 Holy Ghost.
 Behold the great

courtesy of God
in sending His
Son!

He saw our weak-
ness and inability
to forsake sin and
to come to grace.

[Fol. 29. b.]

Therefore He prom-
ised us His gifts,
if we would but
ask for them.

Christ is our
pleader, and
makes interces-
sion for us.

He gave us the
Pater Noster,
wherein are seven
petitions,
for the seven gifts
of the Holy
Ghost.

We shall now
first speak of these
seven petitions,
afterwards of the
seven virtues that
are against the
seven deadly sins.
The seven peti-
tions are as seven
maidens who are
ever lading water
to water the seven
trees that bear the
fruit of life ever-
lasting.

The preface of the
Pater Noster.

The Pater Noster
is the first thing
we teach a child.
We must know
it if we would be
mild as children.

crist godes zone / þet com to þe wordle to zechē / an to
souy / þet / þet wes uorlore. Vor þet he wyste wel
oure pouerté / and oure fyeblesse. and uor oure zennes /
we ville. Ac be ous we ne moʒe naʒt arise / ne come
ayen. ne out of zenne guo. ne uirtue to zechē / ne come
to þe blissede lyue / þet is of his grace and of his yefþe
ne comþ. þeruore he naʒt ne let ous uor to somoni /
þet we hym bydde and bezechē his yefþes. And moche
ous behat : þet yef we hym bezechīþ þing þet ous is
guod : þet we hit ssolle habbe. And more he ous deþ
of cortaysye. Vor he is oure playtere / þet ous makeþ
oure bezechinge : þet we ne couþe naʒt maky / yef he
nere. þe bezechinge þet he ous made of his uayre
yblessede mouþe : uayre. guode. ssorte. an cleuiynde :
þet wes þet pater noster. huerinne byeþ zeue bezech-
inges / be huichen we bezechē oure guode uader of
heuene / þet he ous yeue þe zeue yefþes of þe holi gost /
þet hi ous delyuri of þe zeue dyadliche zennes / and
hise screpe of al of oure herten. and ine hare stede :
zette and uorþdraʒe / þe zeue uirtues / þet ous lede to
þe zeue blissinges of perfeccion / and of holy lyf. huerby
we moʒe habbe þe zeuen behestes þet he makeþ to
his ychosene. Huerof oure onderstondinge is myd þe
holy gostes helpe. Verst speke of þe zeue benes of þe
pater noster. Efterward : of þe zeue uirtues þet byeþ
ayens þe zeue dyadliche zennes / huer-of we habbeþ
aboue yspeke. þe zeue benes byeþ / ase zeue uayre
maydenes / þet ne leteþ naʒt uor to lhade of þe zeue
streames þe quikke weteres uor to wetery þe zeue trawes
þet bereþ þet fruyt of liue eurelestinde.

þe UORE-SPECHE OF þe HOLY PATER NOSTER.

Huanne me zet a child to lettre. ate begynnynge
me him tekþ his pater noster. Huo þet of pise clergye
wyle conne : become milde ase a child. uor to zuyche
scolers tekþ oure guode mayster Iesu crist / pise

clergie / þet is þe uayreste / and mest behofsam þet
 is. huo þet wel hit onderstant and of-halt. Vor zuyche
 wenep hit wel conne and onderstonde : þet neuerte ne
 coupe bote þe rynde wypoute / þet is þe lettre / þet is
 guod. Ac litel is worþ to þe zyþe of þe newen þet is
 wyþinne zuo zuete. Hit ys wel ssort ine wordes : and
 wel lang ine wytte. Liȝt to zigge / an sotil to onder-
 stonde. þis bene / paseþ alle opre / ine þri þinges. ine
 digneté / in ssorthede. an ine guodnesse. þe digneté
 is / ine þan þet godes sone hit made. To god þe uader
 ine worde. God þe holy gost / þet is þet me acseþ.
 He wolde þet hit were ssort / uor þet non ne ssolde
 him werye : hit uor to lyerny. An uor þan þet non ne
 ssolde him tyeny hit uor to zigge gledliche / an ofte.
 And uor to ssewy / þet god þe uader ous yhyerþ wel
 zone : huanne we him biddeþ mid guode herte. uor he
 ne heþ none hede of longe ryote of tales y-slyked / ne
 y-rymed. Vor ase zayþ sant gregorye. Zopliche bidde /
 ne is naȝt to zygge uayre wordes / and y-slyked myd
 mouþe : ake keste playntes and dyepe zykynges of
 herte. þe worþ / and þe profit of þise bene : is zuo
 grat / þet he beloukþ ine ssorte wordes / al þet me may
 wylny of herte. An to bydde wel to done. þet is þet
 me by delyured of alle kueade : and uolueld of alle
 guode.

The mere letter of
 the prayer is the
 rind.

This prayer is
 short in words
 and long in wit,
 easy to repeat,
 but hard to under-
 stand.

God willed it be
 short, that none
 should be wearied
 in learning it.

God does not care
 for smooth and
 rhymed words.

Prayer does not
 consist of fair
 words, but of
 petitions and
 deep sighings of
 the heart.

[Fol. 39. a.]

HYER BEGINÞ ÞET PATER NOSTER.

þus beginþ þet pater noster. ‘Vader oure / þet art
 ine heuene.’ Loke hou oure guode spekeman / and oure
 zuete mayster Iesu crist / þet is þe wysdom of god þe
 uader / and kan alle laȝes / and þe wones of his cort þe
 tekþ wel to playty / and wyslyche / and sotilliche / an
 ssortliche to speke. Vorzoþe þis uerste word þet þou
 zayst / yef hit is wel onderstonde / and yuolȝed / hit
 þe ssel yeue al þine playnte. Vor saynt bernard þus
 zayþ. þet þe bene þet begynþ be þe zuete name of þe

Here begins the
 Pater Noster.

Our Father that
 art in heaven.
 Behold how our
 good spokesman,
 Jesus Christ,
 teacheth us to
 plead, wisely,
 subtly, and
 briefly !

The sweet name
 of Father giveth
 us hope to re-
 ceive all our pe-
 titions.

uader. yeff þous hope to onderuonge alle oure byddynges.
 þis zuete word / uader / þet al þe remenont makeþ
 zuete / þe sseawep þet þou sselst yleue. and þe somoneþ
 to þan þet þou sselst do. and þise tuo þinges soueþ man :
 huanne he yleff wel / and a-riht. an he deþ efterward /
 þet he ssel. Huanne þou him clepest uader / þou
 beknaust þet he is lhord of house. þet is of heuene /
 and of erþe. and heaued / and ginnyng / and welle /
 huerof alle ssepþes / and alle guod comeþ. and þus þe
 beknaust his mihte. Efterward / zepþe þet he ys uader /
 he is dihtere / and gouernour / and porueyour / to his
 mayné. an nameliche of his children / þet is of man /
 þet him-zelf heþ y-mad and yssape / to his anlik-
 nesse. and þus þou beknaust his wysdom. Alast þanne
 þet he is uader be kende / and be rihte / he loueþ þet he
 heþ ymad / ase zayþ þe boc of wysdome. and is zuete
 and milde. and zuo loueþ / and draþþ uorþ his children.
 and ham deþ hare prou. and betere þanne hi conne
 deuisi. and he his byat / and his chasteþ huanne hi
 misdoþ uor hare prou ase guod uader / and bleþeliche
 he his onderua[n]gþ / huanne hi comeþ to hym.

When thou callest
 God the Father,
 thou acknowledg-
 est that He is
 Lord of the
 house.

And since He is
 Father, He is also
 the provider for
 and governor of
 His children, i. e.
 of man,

and loves those
 whom He hath
 made.

He rewards them
 well,
 and chasteneth
 them when they
 misdo.

The word Father
 not only reminds
 thee of God's
 might, wisdom,
 and goodness,
 but of thy noble-
 ness, fairness, and
 riches.
 Greater nobility
 could none have
 than be son to
 so great an em-
 peror, that is, God.

Let the word
 Father remind
 thee of thy duty
 as a good son to-
 wards a good
 father.

Nou ich þe sseawy þanne þis word þet þou zayst :
 uader. his mihte. his wysdom. his guodnesse. He þe
 bepengþ of oþer half þe zelue. þine noblesse. þine
 uayrhede. þine richesse. More gratter noblesse ne may
 ich habbe : þanne to by zone to ane zuo greate emperur
 þet is god. More gratter richesse ne may by : þanne to
 by kyng of alle þing. More gratter uayrhede ne may
 by : þanne to by him ariht ylich. Huych uayrhede is
 zuo grat : þet hit paseþ þoht of man / and of angle.
 þanne þis word / uader / þe bepengþ þet þou art zone.
 uor þet þou þe paynest him uor to by ylych. ase guod
 zone ssel by ylich his guode uader. þet is to zigge : þet
 þou by bold / and of grat wyl / and strang / and mihtuol
 wel to done. and þet þou by wys / and y-wer / large /
 and cortois / zuete / and milde clene and wypoute

uileynye / ase he is. and þet þou hatye zenne / and
uoulhedes / and kueadhedes ase he deþ. zuo þet þou
naȝt ne do aye kende. þis vord þanne þe deþ beþenche /
at alle þe times þet þou zayst þet pater noster : þet yef
þou art ariȝt zone : þou sselt him anlykny be kende. be
heste. and be riȝte. and þou him sselt loue. worþssipe.
and reuerence. drede. seruice. and boȝsamnesse. Nou
þenche þanne huanne þou zayst þi pater noster / þet þou
by him a guod zone and trewe / yef þou wylt þet he þe
by guod uader. an milde. 'þenche huas zone þou art' : me
zayþ to þe newe knyȝte huanne he geþ into þe torne-
ment. Nou þou yzyxt wel hou þis uerste word is zuete.
and hou hit þe amonesteth þet þou by bold and of
guode wylle. and hit þe tekþ huyeh þou sselt by.

See that thou
hate sin as God
does,

[Fol. 30. b.]

and so act as a
good son and
true,
ever thinking
whose son thou
art.
Now thou seest
how sweet is this
first word, and
how it admonishes
thee to be bold
and of a good
will.

Nou ich þe acxy hueruore þou zayst 'uader oure.'
and naȝt 'uader myn'? and þet þou him uelazest mid þe /
huanne þou zayst : 'yef ous' / and ne zayst naȝt 'yef me.'

Why we say
"Father our,"
and not "Father
mine," &c.

Ich wile þe zigge yef þou wylt. Non ne ssel zigge /
uader min. bote þe ilke þet ys his zone be kende wyþ-
oute gynnyge / wyþoute ende / þe zoþe godes zone.
Ac we ne byeth naȝt his zones be kende / bote ase-
moche þet we byeth ymad to his anliknesse. ac alsuo
byeth þe sarasyns. ac we byeth his zones be grace and by
adopeion. Adopeioun zuo is a word of laȝe. uor by þe
laȝes of þe emperurs / huanne an heȝ man ne heþ no
child : ha may chiese þet child of a guod man yef he
wyle and maki him his zone be adopeioun. þet is be
auoerie. zuo þet he ssel bi yhealde uor his zone auoud /
and ssel bere his eritage. þise grace god ous made þe
uader wyþoute oure ofseruinge. ase zayþ saynt pael.
Huanne he ous dede come to þe cristenedome we were
poure and naked / and child of yre / and of helle.
þanne huanne we ziggeþ 'vader oure.' and we ziggeþ /
'yef ous.' we gadereþ alle oure broþren mid ous of adop-
cion / þet byeth children of holy chereche. be þe byleau
þet hi onderuinge ine cristnyng.

We are not God's
sons by nature,
but by adoption.

Adoption is a term
of law.

God adopted us
without any de-
serving on our
part.
Before we were
baptized we were
poor, naked, and
children of hell.

God giveth not
only to one, but to
many.

The candle that is
set in the hall full
of people,
is better than one
set apart for the
use of one man
only.

This word Father
teaches us that
this adoption is a
pledge

that we shall be
sure of our heri-
tage.

It teacheth also
that we are all
brethren, great
and small, rich
and poor, high
and low,

and that we
should help and
pray for one an-
other, as do the
limbs of the same
body.

It teaches us to
hate three things,
pride, wrath, and
avarice,

which bring men
out of fellowship.

The word "our"
shows that God is
ours

Nou ous sseweþ / huer-of þis word / oure. [of] þe lar-
gesse / and þe cortaysye / god oure uader. þet ous yefþ
more bleþeliche / ynoȝ / þanne lyte and to uelen :
þanne to onen allone. Huer-of saynt gregorie zayþ.
'þe bene / þe more þet hi is commun : þe more hy is
worþ. ase þe candele is betere bezet þet serueþ to ane
halle and uol of uolk : þanne zy þet ne serueþ / bote to
onlepy manne.' þis word hat ous to yelde þonkes myd
al oure herten. of pise grace þet he ous heþ ydo / huer-
by we byeþ his children / and his eyrs. and þet moche
ardontliche louye oure ealde broþer Iesu crist / þet ous
uelazeþ wyþ him ine his grace.

þis word ous amonesteþ þet we loki ine oure herte
holylche þane holy gost þet is oure wytnesse. þis
adopcion is ase weddes / ase zayþ saynte paul / huer-
by we byþ zikere / þet we ssolle habbe þe eritage of oure
uader. þet is þe blysse of paradys. þis word ous tekþ
and zayþ þet we byeþ alle broþren / grat / and smal /
poure and riche. heȝ / and loȝ / of one uader / and of
one moder. þet is of god / and of holy cherche. and
non ne ssel oþren onworþi : ac louie ase broþer. and þe
on ssel helpe þanne oþre : ase doþ þe lemes of þe zelue
bodye. and ech bidde uor oþren ase zayþ saint Iocob.
And zuo hit is oure ureme wel grat. Vor huanne þou
zest þine bene ine þe uelazrede of al holy cherche : uor
on paternoster þet þou zayst / þo wynst mo þanne an
hondred þousond.

þis word / oure. ous tekþ to hatye þri þing name-
liche. Prede. wreþe. and auarice. Prede : deþ man out
of uelazrede. uor he wyle by aboue alle oþren. Wreþe :
deþ man out of uelazrede. uor huanne he werreþ wyþ
enne : he werreþ wyþ alle þe oþre. Auarice : deþ man
out of uelazrede. vor hi nele ne him / ne his þinges /
communy mid oþren. And þeruore zuych uolk ne hab-
beþ part / ine þe holy pater noster. þis word / 'oure' :
ous sseweþ þet god is oure : yef we wylleþ. and þe

uader. and þe zone. and þe holy gost. þet is yef we
lokeþ his hestes. and zuo zayþ ine þe godsspelle saint
Ion.

if we keep His
commandments.

‘Vader oure / þet art ine heuene.’ Huanne ich zigge /
‘þet þou art ine heuene’: ich zigge tuo ping. þet he is
kyng / and þet he is at paradis. Alsuo huanne ich
zigge / ‘þet art / ine heuene’: ich zigge þet he is / and
þet he is ine heuene. Me vint ywryte ine þe opre boc
of þe laze. þet god him ssewede to Moyse in ane
helle / and him zede. guo in-to egipte / and zay to þe
kyng faraon of mine half / þet he þe delyuri mi uolk
þe children of y[s]rael / of þe þreldome / huerine he hise
halt. ‘lhord’ / zayde moyses. ‘yef me akseþ huet is þi
name. huet ssel ich zigge?’ ‘Ich am / þet am.’ zayde
god. Nou ziggeþ þe halzen / and þe guode clerkes.
þet amang alle þe heze names of oure lhorde: þis is þe
uerste / and þe mest propre. and þet mest arizt ous
tekþ uor to knawe / þet / þet god is. Vor alle þe opre
names huer hi spekeþ of his guodnesse. and of his
wysdome. oper of his mihte. oper he is zuich / and
zuich. he is þe riht guod. þe riht trewe. þe riht wys. þe
riht mihti. and uele opre maneres of speches þet me
zayþ of him. þet ne ziggeþ propreliche þe zoþe of þe
byinge of god. Ac we þet byeþ greate / an boystoyse
to spekene of zuo heze ping / speke we of god / zuo /
ase we conne deuise ane man / of huam me ne kan nazt
his name / ase me zayþ. he is kyng. he is erl. he is zuo
grat. zuo uayr. zuo large. and uele of zuyche pinges /
huer-by me may ywryte hou þet hit by þe man knawe.
Ac ne ziggeþ nazt arizt his name / ase we spekeþ of
god: uele we uindeþ of wordes / þet ous sseweþ huet
þet hit bi of him. Ac þer ne is non zuo propre ase þis
word / ‘þet art.’ þet zuo propreliche. zuo ssortliche. zuo
cleuiyndelyche. zuo sotilliche / þe names nemneþ / ine
zu moche / ase onderstondinge him may strecheche.
Vor god is ase þe ilke / þet one is / ase zayþ saint Iob.

“That art in hea-
ven.”
Here we assert
that God is a king,
and that He is in
Paradise.

When God ap-
peared to Moses
He made known
to him His name,
“I AM.”

This is the first
and the most
proper name of
our Lord.

Other names speak
of His goodness,
wisdom, &c.,

but these terms
do not assert the
existence of God.

We speak of God
after the manner
of men,

but there is no
word so proper
as these words,
“þet art.”

God alone is, for
He is everlasting,
without begin-
ning and without
end.

He is true and
truth above all
things.

[Fol. 31. b.]

He alone is firm,
and fast, and un-
changing,

without end, with-
out beginning,
"without was,
without shall be."

There is nothing
that one may bet-
ter believe than
that God is.
Note his wel
We cannot know
what God is,

and it is enough
for us to say
"Dear Father,
that art in hea-
ven."

He is the oldest,
the most known,
the most beloved,
and the most hon-
oured.

The word
"Father" bids us
worship God; the
"our," to love
God; "is," to
dread God;

He one is / ariȝt to spekene. uor he one is / euresle-
tinde / wyȝoute beginnyng. and wyȝoute ende. ȝet me
ne may zigge : of non oȝre ȝing. Efterward he one is
zopliche. uor he is zoȝ / and zoȝnesse aboue alle ȝinges
yssape. and zuo byȝ alle sseȝpes ydele and ydelenesse.
And ase zayȝ Salomo[n] and naȝt to ȝe zyȝe of him. and
to naȝte ssolden come : bote-yef he his ne sostyenede
be his uirtue. Ate laste he one is zetnesse an uestnesse
ine onelepi poynte wyȝoute him to trobli / wyȝoute
him to chongi / wyȝoute him remue ine none manere.
ase zayȝ saynt Iacob. Alle oȝre ȝinges byȝ chonginde /
ine eche manere of hare kende. ȝanne is he propre-
liche yclieped¹ : ȝet art. Vor he is zopliche wyȝoute
ydelnesse / zetnesse / wiȝoute enye chonge eure to
yleste : wyȝoute ende. wyȝout heaued. wyȝoute wes.
wyȝoute / ssel by. uor ȝer ne is no gelt.

Nou ȝou ssel onderstonde zuo ȝet ȝer ne is naȝt
ȝet me moȝe betere ywyte / ȝanne ȝet : ȝet god is. Ac
ȝer ne is no-ȝing zuo strang to conne / ase huet / and
huet ȝing is god. ȝer-uore ich ȝe rede wel / ȝet ȝou
ne musy naȝt to moche / hit uor to zeche. uor ȝou
myȝtest lyȝtliche guo out of ȝe riȝte waye. Hit is ynoȝ
uor ȝe / ȝet ȝou zigge : 'lyeue uader ȝet art ine heuene.'
Zop hit is ȝet he is oueral yhered. ine erȝe. ine ze. ine
helle. ase he is ine heuene. Ac me zayȝ he is ine
heuene / uor ȝet he is ȝe eldeste / and ȝe meste yknaue /
and ȝe meste beloued / and ȝe meste yworȝsiped.
Efterward he is ine heuene gostliche / ȝet is ine holy
bodyes ȝet byȝ heȝe. clyre. and clene. ase is ȝe
heuene. uor ine zuyche herten : he ys ald. and yknaue.
and ydred. and yworȝsiped and yloued.

Nou hest ȝou yherd ȝise uour wordes. *Pater noster*
qui es in celis. ȝet uerste ȝe somoneȝ / to worȝsipie
god. ȝet oȝer : to louie god. ȝe ȝridde : to drede god.
Vor ȝaȝ he by uader oure : alnaway he ys bezide / and

¹ MS. has ychepeð

naȝt chonginde. þe uerþe þe to strengþi. uor asemoche
 ase he is zuo heȝ / and þou zuo loȝ. yef þou ne art bald /
 and of guode wyll: þou ne sselt naȝt come / huer he
 woneþ. þet uerste word ous sseweþ þe langnesse of his
 eurebleuinge. þet oper: þe brede of his charité. þe
 þridde: þe dyepnesse of his zophede. þe uerþe: þe
 heȝnesse of his magesté. Huo þet heþ wel þise uour
 þinges zopliche wyþoute drede he ssel by yblyssed.

"*heaven*," to em-
 bolden and en-
 courage us.

The 1st sheweth
 us God; the 2nd,
 the breadth of His
 charity; the 3rd,
 the deepness of
 His faithfulness;
 4th, the highness
 of His majesty.

þe UERSTE BENE OF þe HOLY PATER NOSTER.

The 1st petition
 of the Holy Pater
 Noster.

Nou hest þou yherd þe uorespeche of þe holy pater
 noster. þet is ase ane inguoinge of þe viþele. ey god /
 huo þet couþe wel al þane zang: hou he ssolde vinde
 uayre notes. Vor hit ne is no drede þet ine þe zonge /
 þet þe wysdom of god made / þe ilke þet tekþ þe uoȝeles
 zynge: ne heþ uele notes sotiles / and zuete / þaȝ þer
 bý lyte lettre. Ine þise zonge byþ zeue notes. þet
 byþ þe zeue benes. þet porchaceþ þe zeue yeffes of
 þe holy gost. þet strepeþ þe zeuen haved zennes of þe
 herte. and hi zetteþ / and norisseþ þe zeuen uirtues. be
 huychin me comp to þe zeue blissinges. Of þise zeue
 benes / þe þri uerste: makeþ man holy / aze moche ase
 man may by ine þise wordle. þe uour efterward him
 makeþ stedeuestlyche: riȝtuol. Al þe holynesse of man /
 þet is ymad to þe ymage of þe trinité / þet is be þri
 þinges þet byþ ine þe zaule. beþenchinge. onderstond-
 ynge. and wyl. ine þet þet þe zaule bi stedeuestliche
 yclenzed ine þe wyll. stedeuestliche alizt ine þe onder-
 stondinge. stedeuestliche yuestned in god. mid god ine
 þe beþenchinge. and þe more þe zaule onderuangþ
 plenteliche þise þri zeffes of god: and hy more propre-
 liche neȝle[c]þ / to his riȝte uayrhede of his kende. þet is
 to þe anlicnesse of þe uader / and of þe zone / and of þe
 holy gost. þet is huanne god þe uader him confermeþ
 his beþenchinge. god þe zone him alyȝt his onde[r]-

The preface of the
 Lord's prayer is
 as the beginning
 of the fiddle.

In this song are
 seven notes, that
 are the seven pe-
 titions that buy
 the seven gifts of
 the Holy Ghost.

The three first
 make men holy,
 the other four
 make him sted-
 fastly righteous.

[Fol. 32. a.]

The three things
 that are in the
 soul are thought,
 understanding,
 and will,

and the more the
 soul receiveth
 plentifully these
 three gifts,

the more is man
in the likeness of
the Trinity.

stondinge. god þe holy gost heþ ycleused his wyl. þise
þri þinges we bezechē in þe þri uerste benes of þe
pater noster.

“Hallowed be thy
name.”

By these words
we show that our
principal desire is
to have God's
name hallowed
and confirmed in
us.

Huanne we ziggeþ / *sanctificetur nomen tuum*. we
sseweþ to oure guode uader corteyssliche oure principal
desyr þet we ssolle eure habbe. þet is þet his name by
yhalzed and yconfermed ine ous. þanne huanne we
ziggeþ / *sanctificetur nomen tuum* : þet is to zigge. ‘sire /
þis is oure heze wyl / þis we bezechē toppe alle þing /
þet þin holy name / þet is þi guode los þi knaulechinge /
þi beleaue by y-confermed ine ous.’

In this 1st peti-
tion we ask for
the gift of wis-
dom,

Ine þise uerste bene : we bezechē þe uerste and
þe principal yefþe of þe holy gost / þet is þe yefþe of
wysdom / þet uestneþ / and confermeþ þe herte in god.
and his ioynēþ zuo to him : þet / hi ne may by ondo /
ne to-deld. Wysdom is yzed of smac / and of smacky.

which enables us
to taste the sweet-
ness of God.

Vor huanne þe man onderuangþ þise yefþe : he zuelz [þ] /
and smackeþ / and uelþ þe zuetnesse of god. Ase me
uelþ þe zuetnesse of þe guode wyne ate zuelz / betere
þanne to þe zizþe. Ac to þan þet þou onderstanst betere
huet is to zigge / ‘þi name by yhalzed ine ous.’ þou
sselt ywyte þet þis word / holy / is ase moche worþ :
ase / klene. ase wypoute erþe. ase yhalzed to godes
seruice / ase y-dept ine blod / ase yconfermed. Ine þise

The word “holy”
signifies clean ; it
is as much as to
say that we are
dipt in blood and
confirmed.

uyf maneres halzēþ þe gost of wysdom / þe herte of
man. Verst he his wypeþ / and clenseþ / ase deþ þet uer
[þet] clenzeþ and fineþ þet gold. Efterward he deþ away
al þe ilke uelþe / of alle erþliche loue. and of alle wyll
of ulesse. and makeþ to comene al out of smak. al þet
me wes ywoned hyuore to louie. ase þet weter is out of
smak to þan þet is ywoned to þe guode wyne. Efter-
ward he him halzēþ of al to godes seruice. uor he deþ
him al away of alle wreþe. and deþ him al þenche of
god. and to louie / and serui. Ase þe cherche is yhalzed
to godes seruice. zuo þet me ne ssel oper þing do
þerinne : þanne þe seruice of god. Efterward he deþþ

Wisdom hallow-
eth the heart of
man in five ways :
By 1. purification.
2. Cleansing.
3. Hallowing.

4. Dipping in
blood.

ine blod. Vor he hise zet in ane zuo berni[n]de loue /
and one zuo zuete deuocion of Iesu crist. þet huanne
he þengþ ine him / and his passion : he ys alsuo ydept /
and al-suo dronke of þe preciouise blode / þet Iesu crist
ssedde uor him : ase is a zop of hot bryead huanne me
hit poteþ in-to wyn. þet is a newe cristninge. Vor
depe and cristni : is al on. Efterward he him uestneþ
zuo ine god / þet no þing ne may him to parti ne
oniowni. þanne [he] wyle þis word nou zigge : 'þin name
by yhalzed ine ous.' þet is to zigge : 'yef ous þane gost of
wysdom / be huam bi we zuo yclensed ase gold. and
yuayred of alle uelþe / huer-by we ssolle by zuo uol
dronke of þine loue : þet alle oþre zuetnesses / ssolle by
ous bytere : be huam we ssolle by zuo yyeue to þe / an
to þine seruise : þet neure mo of oþren we ne maky
strengþe. be huam by we nazt wyþoute more ywesse :
ac zuo moche ydept yne grayne / and ynewed and eft
yristned ine þe bloode of Iesu crist be deuocioun of
ueste loue / huer-by þe name of oure uader by zuo
yuestned ine ous : þet he by oure uader and we his
zones / and his eyrs. zuo yuestned þet no þing þet moze
beualle ne moze ous ondo of þe ilke uestnesse / ne of
þise grace.' Wel is hit *grat grace* of god h[u]anne þe wyl
is zuo yroted ine god huich / ne may to cryepe uor none
uondinge. Wel gratter þing his huanne me is zuo
yuestned ine þe loue and adrayngt in þe zuetnesse of
god. þet no solas ne no confort me ne onderuangþ : bote
of him. Ac y-yeue is þe herte parfitliche and ycon-
fermed. uor þe memorie is zuo cleuiynde ine him : þet
ne of no þing þenche / bote ine him. And þet we
byddeþ him huanne we ziggeþ : *sanctificetur nomen
tuum*. 'lhord þi name by y-halzed ine ous.'

5. Confirming in
God.

[Fol. 32. b.]

"Thy word be
hallowed in us,"
means,
give us the spirit
of wisdom,
whereby we may
be renewed and
fastened in God,

so that nothing
may separate us
from God,

and nothing com-
fort us but the
grace of God.

þe oþre BENE OF þe HOLY PATER NOSTER.

Adueniad regnum tuum. þet is þe oþre bene of þe
pater noster. huer we byddeþ / þet godes regne come

The second peti-
tion of the Pater
Noster, "Thy
kingdom come."
Here we pray for

God's reign to
come within us,
which is brought
about by the spirit
of understanding,
that enlighteneth
the heart,

and showeth man
his many faults.

He seeth that he
is not clean nor
worthy of seeing
God,

so he begins to
cast out the in-
ward filth which
deprives him of
the sight of God.

[Fol. 33. a.]

Then he finds
peace, rest, solace,
and bliss.

to ous / and by wyþ-inne ous. Oure lhord zayþ ine his
spelle to his deciples. 'þe regne of god : is nou wyþ-inne
you.' Nou onderstand wel hou þet may by. Huanne
god yeff ane *grace* þet me clepeþ / þe gost of onder-
standinge to þe herte. ase deþ the zonne þet deþ away
þe þyesternesse of þe nyzt / and wasteþ þe cloudes / and
þe hore uroste bi þe morzen. Alsuo wasteþ þe holy gost
alle þe þyesternesses of þe herte. and him sseweþ his
zennes / and his defautes / zuo þet þe ilke wende by al
klene. þanne wyndeþ hi zuo uele defautes. and of
motes. and of doust wyþ-oute tale. Ase þe zonne byam
sseweþ his motes / and þet doust þet byeþ beneþe ine
þe house. Efterward he him eft sseweþ of opre half nazt
wyþ-oute more þet / þet is wyþ-inne him / ac þet / þet
is beneþe þe helle. and þet / þet is aboue him ine
heuene. þet / þet is aboute him / alle uayre sseppes :
þet alle heryeþ god / and him wytnesseþ hou god is
guod and almiȝti. wys. and uayr. *grat* and milde.
zuete. and þe more me zyzt þe sseppinges briȝte : þe
more hit is wynynde him-zelue to zyenne. Ac he
yzyzt / þet he ne is clene / ne worþi him to zyenne :
þanne anhet þe guode herte and trewe / and him wreþeþ
to him-zelue. þanne nymþ he his pic / and his spade /
and beginþ to delue / and to myny. and geþ in-to his
herte. þerinne he vint zuo uele zennes / and vices /
and zuo uele defautes / and zuo moche doust / and
tribulaciouns of herte / and of þoztes / and of wyckede
wylles / þet he him wreþeþ / and zorþeþ. and nimþ a
wycked wyl to him-zelue. zuo þet he beginþ þe herte
to clensi to þe zoþe ¹ / and to keste out alle þe uelþes
þet him benimþ þe zizþe of god ine him and þet he deþ
mid þe spade of zoþe ssrifþe. Ac huanne he heþ longe
ymyned / and he heþ / alle his uelþes ykest out : þanne
uint he pays / and reste / and solas / and blisse / zuo
þet him pingþ þet al the wordle by an helle to þe lok-

¹ MS. *zoþo*

inge of þe ilke clyernesse / and of þe ilke pays : þet he
uint ine his herte. and þet we oxeþ : huanne we ziggeþ
Adueniad regnum tuum. þet is to zigge : ‘ Leue uader /
ylyky þe / þet þe holy gost ous wille alyzte þe herte /
and clensi and zuope / al-huet hi by worþi god uor to
y-zy. and þet he will come and wonie ase kyng / and
ase lhord. and gouernour / and hotere. zuo þet al þe
herte by his / and he by kyng. and euremo we him moze
yzy. uor þet is lyf wyþ oute ende. and godes riche habbe
wyþ-inne ous.’ þeruore zayþ oure lhord in his spelle :
þet godes riche is ase on tresor in þe uelde yhed. þet is
ine herte þet is gratter þanne al þe wordle.

“Thy kingdom
come” is as much
as to say, “Dear
Father, let the
Holy Ghost
cleanse and sweep
our hearts,
so that God will
come and dwell
with us as King
and Lord.”
God’s kingdom is
as a treasure hid
in a field, that is
greater than all
the world.

þe þRIDDE BENE OF þe HOLY PATER NOSTER.

Fiat uoluntas tua / sicut in celo & in terra. þis
is þe þridde bene huerinne we byddeþ oure uader of
heuene / þet his wyl by ydo ine ous : ase hit is ydo ine
heuene. þet is ase þe holy angles of heuene / þet byeþ
zuo alizt / and yuestned ine god : þet hi ne moze oþer
þing wylny / bote þet god wille. þis bene we ne moze
habbe : boteyef we ne habbe / þe yefþe of red. þet is
þe þridde yefþe of þe holy gost / þet ous tekþ his ozene
guod wyl. and þet he ous wende. oure wrechide wil /
and hise *confermy* / al to þe heze guode. zuo þet he ne
heþ ne ozene wyt / ne ozene wyl. ak his ozene onlepi-
liche / þet hi by lheuedy of al þe herte yhollyche. and
maki ine ous al þet hi wyle ase hi makeþ ine angles of
heuene / þet makeþ echedaye his wil wyþ-oute misnim-
ynge / and wyþoute wyþzigginge.

The third petition
of the Pater
Noster.
“Thy will be
done,” &c.
We here pray that
we may obey God
as do the holy
angels in heaven,

but this we cannot
do without the gift
of counsel,

given us by the
Holy Ghost to
conform our will
to God’s.

Nou hest þou yherd þe þri uerste benes¹ of þe pater
noster. þet byeþ þe hezeste / and þe dingneste. Ine þe
uerste / we akseþ þe yefþe of wysdom. Ine þe² oþre :
þe yefþe of onderstondinge. Ine þe þridde / þet guode
red. ase ich þe habbe aboue yssewed. þise þri þinges
we ne byddeþ / nazt uor þet we hise habbeþ ine þyse

In these three
petitions of the
Lord’s prayer,
we ask for, 1. the
gift of wisdom,
2. understanding,
3. good counsel.

¹ MS. benenes

² MS. oþe

We cannot have
the full measure
of these in this
life.

The remaining
four petitions are
necessary to us in
this mortal life.

The fourth peti-
tion of the Pater
Noster.
"Give us this day
our daily bread."

What may the
son ask of his
father better than
bread?

[Fol. 33. b.]
He does not ask
for wine, flesh, nor
fish.
It is a great thing
we ask, although
it may appear a
light request,

for we ask for the
everlasting bread
that preserves the
soul.

This is true meat,
for it stancheth
all the hunger of
the world.

It is the bread and

lyue dyadlich parfitlyche. ak we sseaweþ to o[u]re uader
oure wylles / þet byeþ / oper ssolle by / to þan þet þise
þri benes by ine ous ymad / and uolueld ine þe lyue eure-
lestinde. þe opre vour þet comeþ eft[e]ward we willeþ
speke ane opre speche. Vor we ziggeþ aperteliche to
oure uader 'yef ous. uoryef ous. wyte ous. delyure ous.'
bote þise vour benes of him we ne habbe: we byeþ
dyade / an euele betake ine þise wordle. Vor hi byeþ
ous nyeduolle ine þise lyue dyadlich.

þE UERþE BENE OF þE HOLY PATER NOSTER.

Panem nostrum cotidianum da nobis hodie. Mochel
ous tekþ oure guode mayster / to spekene myldelyche /
and wysliche. huanne he ous tekþ to zigge. Vayre
uader / oure bryad of eche daye / yef ous to day. Huet
may þe zone betere acsy to his uader: þanne bread wyþ-
oute more / uor þane day to endy? He ne acseþ none
outrage / ne wyn. ne uless. ne uiss. [ac] bread wyþoute
more [he] byt. naȝt uor a-yer / ne naȝt uor al þe woke. ac
wyþoute more: þane day to endy. Nou hit þingþ þet
hit by wel lite þing þet we acseþ: ac uor zoþe hit is wel
grat þing. Huanne me bit þe broþerhede / and þe
uelazrede / and part / and riȝt / ine alle þe guodes of þe
house. Also hit is huose þet smackeþ of þise breade.
He heþ þe broþerrede. and part / and uelazrede. and riȝt.
and ine alle þe guode dedes þet byeþ ine heuene. þet
is þet bread of þe ilke holy couent. þet bread of heuene.
þet bread of angles. þet bread lostuol. þet bread of lyue
eurelestinde. Vor hit yefþ guod lyf / and lokeþ þe
zaule wyþoute steruinge. Huer-of zoþ zayþ ine þe
godspelle. 'Ich am þet bread of lyue / þet com doun
uram heuene. hou þet ssel ete of þo breade: he ssel
eure lybbe wyþoute steruinge.' þet bryad is mete ariȝt.
uor hit stoncheþ al þane hunger of þe wordle / and uelþ
man þet he heþ ynoȝ / zuo ne deþ non oper mete. þet
is þet bread and þe mete / þet þou nymst / of þe sacre-

ment of þe wyeuede / þet þou sselte ete zuypþe / and
 glotounliche / ase tekþ þe writinge / ase deþ þe lecher-
 ous þane guode mete : þet oþerhuil uorzuelþþ þane guode
 snode / wyþ-oute chewynge. þet is to zigge / þet þou
 sselte nyme þerne mete mid greate wyll of herte / and
 mid grat lost. And þou hit sselte ase hit by uorzuelþe /
 wyþ-oute chewynge. and þet is to zigge. yleue ine grat /
 þet / þet hit is þe zoþe bodi of Iesu crist. and þe zaule.
 and þe godhede / al to-gydere / wyþ-oute to zeche : hou
 hit may by. Vor god may more do : þanne man moze
 onderstonde. Efterward me ssel þerne mete eft chywe /
 ase þe ox þet gers þet he heþ uorzuelþe. þet is to
 zigge þet me ssel recordi zueteliche and smalliche be
 little stechches / alle þe guodnesses of oure lhorde and
 al þet Iesu crist þolede ine erþe uor ous. And þanne
 vint þe herte þane rihte smac of þe ilke mete. and onder-
 ua[n]gþ ane wel greate hete of þe loue of god. and ane wel
 greate wylnynge to do yno3 an to þolye uor him al þet he
 mihte. and al þis deþ þe uirtue of þo breade. Vor þet is þet
 bread þet confortþ and strengþþ þe herte / to þet hy by
 wel strang uor to þolye / and do grat þing uor Godes
 loue. Ac þet ne may naht by wyþ-oute þe uerþe yefþe
 of þe holy gost / þet is y-cleped þe yefþ of strengþe / þet
 armeþ godes knyht / and him deþ yerne to by martired.
 and makeþ ham lezþe betuene þe tormens. Nou miht
 þou wel yzy hou corteysliche / huanne we acseþ þet ilke
 bread : we acseþ þane yefþe of stre[n]gþe. Vor ase þet
 bread bodylich / sosteneþ and strengþþ þet bodi : alsuo
 þe yefþe of stre[n]gþe / makeþ þe herte strang to þolye /
 and to done grat þing uor god. þet ilke bread we hit
 clepiþ oure / uor hit wes ymad of oure doze. yblissed
 by þe guode wyfman : þet of hiren þet flour þer to dede.
 þet wes þe mayde Marie. and yfryd ine þe þanne of þe
 crouche / ase he zayþ ine þe sautere. uorzope uorzope
 yfryd ine his o3ene blode. uor þet dede he / ine þe greate
 wyll of his loue / þet he hedde to ous. And þet is þet

meat taken of the
 sacrament of the
 altar.

and the true body
 of Jesus Christ.

One should chew
 this meat again as
 the ox the grass
 that he has swal-
 lowed.

This bread com-
 forts and
 strengthens the
 heart to do great
 things for the love
 of God.

Thus when we
 ask bread we ask
 for strength.

This bread we call
 ours, for it is
 made of our
 dough.

[Fol. 34. a.]
 blessed by the
 good maiden
 Mary,
 and fried in the
 pan of the cross.

- It is bread twice baked. bread tuies y-bake / huermide he astoreþ his ssip. þet is holy cherche / uor to pasy þe greate ze / of þise perilouse wordle. Hit is oure. uor he hit ous let : at his yleauē nymynge / and at his laste bequide / Iesu crist þe wel large / ase meste greate tresor : þet he ous miȝte lete. and hit ous yaf ase þet uayreste iowel / þet he ous miȝte yeue. and þet we hit ssolde loky : uor his loue. Hit is uorzoþe oure / uor noþing ne may / hit ous benime toyens oure wyllē. We hit clepieþ oure bread of echedaye. þet is to zigge / of eche daye. uor þet is þe eche dayes dol / þet god yefþ to his wel wilynde : þet eche daye doþ his seruice / and ziggeþ his oures. þet is to alle guode herten / þet eche daye zueteliche be zoþe loue makeþ memorie / and beþenchingē of his passion.
- It is our daily bread, because each day's dole is given us by God. þet greate of þe prouendre / wē nimeþ ine oure heruest ine heuene / huanne we him ssolle ysy onwryze / ine his uayrhede / ase he is. Hit is ysed þeruore echedayes : þet eche daye / hit is ous nyeduol and echedaye me ssel hit nyme / oþer ate sacrament of þe wefde / ase doþ þe prestes : oþer gostliche be riȝte byleauē. þet bread is wel precious / an wel noble / and wel ydiȝt. þet is kynges mete / huerinne byeþ ech manyere lyk-inges / and alle guode smackes / ase zayþ þe boc of wysdome. þet ne is naȝt mete to gromes / ne to yeue. ne to piecaille. ne to cheuaille. ne to cherles. ac to noble herten and gentil. an cortays. and clene. þet is to þe herte þet is gentil be grace. noble / be guod lyf. yclensed / and ywesse be zoþe ssrifte. Of þise uirtue spekeþ saynt matheu þe wangeliste / and hit clepeþ ziker bread substanciēl. þet is to zigge : þet paseþ / and ouergeþ alle substances / and alle sseppes be ver. ine uirtue / and ine dingneté / and in alle oþre maneres of worþ. ne me ne may betere write / ne more ynoȝ : þanne wit substances. Me zayþ þet mete is þe miȝ[t]-uoller / þanne he heþ ynoȝ of myȝte. and of noriss-inge. and þe mōre þet he is norissinde : me zayþ þet he
- Each day it is necessary to us,
- and each day one shall take it either at the sacrament of the altar, or by right belief.
- It is bread, not for churls, but for noble hearts, cleansed and washed by shrift.
- It is sure substantial bread,
- surpassing all other substances in virtue and dignity,

is þe substancieler. and þere-uore þet ine þise breade is more uirtue / and of guod / and of norture / þanne me moȝe þenche / oþer zigge. ne zayþ me naȝt þet hit is substancieler. alsuo me zayþ þet hit is ope substance / þet is / uirtuous / and substancieler aboue onderston-digge / and wenyng. þet bread we byddeþ to oure uader. and him we biddeþ / þet he hit ous yeue to-day. ine þise daye / þet is ine þise dyadliche liue. zuo þet we moȝe maky ane guode iornee / and to abyde þe gledlaker oure ssepe. þet is þe peny þet he yefþ to his workmen / h[u]anne euen comþ. þet is þe ende of þe liue.

and contains more nutriment than anything else.

We pray for this bread to-day, that is, in this mortal life.

This is the penny God gives to His workmen when evening cometh.

þE VIFTE BENE OF þE HOLY PATER NOSTER.

Dimitte nobis debita nostra sicut et nos dimittimus debitoribus nostris. Ine þise bene we biddeþ oure uader of heuene / þet he ous wylle uoryeue / oure misdedes / ase we uoryeueþ to ham : þet ous mis-dop. oþer habbeþ mis-do. þanne zigge we þus. 'Leue uader / uoryef ous oure dettes : ase we uoryeueþ oure dettours.' Oure dettes : byþ oure zennes / þet we habbeþ ydo wexe ope oure zaulen. þet is þet beste wed of þe house. þe zenuolle be one zenne dyadlich / þet zuo zone is y-pased / ase to þe loste / oþer ase to þe dede / is y-obliged to zuo ane greate gaueling : þet he ne heþ mizte to hit endi. þet is to þe pine of helle / þet is wyþ-oute ende. Efterward / he ssel to gode / þet he heþ ywreped / zuo grat amendes : þet he ne heþ mizte uor to yelde. Vor ine al his lyue þaȝ ha leuede an hondred year oþer more : he ne mizte naȝt do uoluel-linde penonce of one dyadliche zenne / yef god wolde usy to yelde dom. And þeruore hit behoueþ to yerne to þe cort of merci and bidde merci / and aksy uorye-uenesse. Vor be þe riȝte of þe cort of dom / þe zenezere ssolde by demd / and ycondemned to dyape eure-lestinde. þeruore oure guode mayster Iesu crist ous

The 5th petition of the Pater Noster.

"Forgive us our trespasses," &c. Here we say, Forgive us our debts,

[Fol. 34. b.]

as we forgive our debtors. Our debts are our sins,

the interest of which is hell pain.

No man could make sufficient amends for one deadly sin,

therefore it be-hoveth him to run to the court of mercy,

for by the court

of justice we
should be doomed
to death everlasting.

tekþ zuo to oxi uoryeuenesse and quittinge huanne we
biddeþ oure guode uader þet is zuete and milde / uor to
y[e]uene : large and corteys / þet he ous uory[e]ue oure
misededes.

If we do not for-
give others, God
will not forgive
us.

Ac nim wel hede hou þou bidde. ‘Voryef ous oure
misededis / ase we uoryeueþ to ham : þet ous habbeþ
miso.’ Vor yef we ne uoryeueþ to ham þet ous habbeþ
mi[s]do : god ne uoryefþ naȝt ous oure misededes. ase
he himself zayþ ous / ine þe godspelle. þanne he þet
zayþ his pater noster / and heþ ine his herte hate /
wreþe / oþer wyckedhede : he bit more aye him-zelue :
þanne uor him-zelue. Vor he bit god / þet he ne

Wherefore in thy
prayer, see thou
hast no wicked
will, cast out all
wrath, evil, and
hate.

uoryeue him naȝt / huanne he zayþ. ‘uoryef me: ase ich
uoryeue.’ and uor þet at alle þe times þet þou zayst þi
pater noster beuore god þet yziþ þine herte : þou sselt
uoryeue þine wyckede wil / and keste out of þine herte :
alle wreþe / and alle hate. and euelwyl. oþerlaker þi
bene is more aye þe : þanne uor þe. Yef hit þe þingþ
strang þing and kuead uor to uoryeue / þin euel wyl
to ham þet þe hatieþ / oþer þet þe kuead willeþ / huer

Think how Christ
forgave his ene-
mies who crucified
him.

he al misdeþ : þench þet god uoryaf his dyap to ham
þet him dede a þe rode / þe uor to yeue uorbisne / uor
to uoryeue to ham / þet þe habbeþ misdo / and more
yet eft : ham guod do : yef hi habbeþ nye[de] to þe. Vor

It is no great
thing to return
good for good,

ase he zayþ ine his spelle. Ne is hit naȝt *grat* þing ne
grat ofseruinge aye god to do guod to ham þet ous dop
guod. ne to louie þo þet ous louyep? Vor þet deþ þe

but since we are
God's children,

paen / and þe sarasyn / and oþre zenezeres. Ac we þet
byeþ godes children be byleau and be *grace* / and we
byeþ cristene ynemned of Iesu *crist* / and we byeþ eyrs
mid him of þe heritage of paradys / of ous to uoryeue
þe on to þe oþre / and louye oure uyendes. þet is to
zigge hare *persones*. an bidde uor ham / and do ham
guod yef hy habbeþ nyede and þou hit miȝ[t] do. Vor þus
he hit hat ine his spelle. þanne ssolle we onlepiliche
hatye þe zennes / and louie þe zaules. þet byeþ ymad

we ought to for-
give one another,
and love our ene-
mies, and pray for
them.

to þe anliknesse of oure lorde. Alsuo ase a leme of þe bodye / loueþ and uorberþ an oþer. yef o leme blecheþ anoþer be cas. þe oþer naȝt him awrecþ þeruore. We byeþ al o body ine Iesu crist / ase zayþ þe apostel. and þeruore we ssolle ech louye oþer / and naȝt hatie / ne harmi mid wrong / on / þe oþer. Huo þet oþerlaker deþ : he is manslaȝte / and him-zelue damneþ ase zayþ þe wrytinge. Zuych can zigge his pater noster : him were betere þet he were stille. uor he let his domesman : ayen him.

We are all one body in Christ Jesus.

[Fol. 35. a.]

Whoso hateth another is a murderer.

In þise bene þet we doþ to gode. we him bezechep one yefþe of þe holy gost / þet is y-cleped / þe yefþe / of connyng. þet makeþ þane man ine þoȝte and uol of wytte. þes gost him sseweþ huet he is. and ine huet peril he is. and huaznes he comþ. and huyder he geþ. and þet he deþ. and þe misdede þet he heþ ydo. and hou moche / he heþ hyer ywonne. and hou moche he ssel. And huazne he yziȝt þet he ne heþ huermidendy : þanne him deþ þes gost wepe / and grede merci to god / and zigge. ‘Lhord / uoryef me mine dettes. þet byeþ myne zemnen. Vor ich am mochel ine dette ayen þe / and uor þe queades þet ich habbe ydo. and uor þe guodes þet ich habbe uoryete / and ylete to done. þet ich myȝte / and ssolde habbe ydo. And uor þo guodes þet þou me hest ydo. and þine greate guodnesses þet ich habbe eche daye onderuonge / huyche ich habbe kueadliche yvzed / and þe kueadliche yserued. And þeruore Lhord ich ne habbe huer-of maki þe yeldinge : uoryef me þet ich þe ssel.’ Huazne þes gost him heþ zuo alyȝt / þet he knauþ his defautes : and þanne him deþ keste out of þe herte alle wreþe / and alle hate / and al to uoryeue his euele ywyl / yef þer is eni. and yef þer ne is : he is ine wyll and ine porpos uor to uoryeue mid herte / yef me him misdeþ. And þanne may he zigge wel. ‘Vayre uader uoryef ous oure misdeds / ase we doþ to ham : þet ous habbeþ misdo.’

In this petition we ask God for the gift of knowledge,

whereby man sees what he is, and in what peril he is,

and seeing his own imperfections, he asks mercy of God,

and forgiveness for his great sins.

When he knows his faults,

he casts out ill-will from his heart,

and then is he able to say, “Father, forgive us our misdeeds as we do to them that have wronged us.”

The 6th petition
of the Pater
Noster.

"And lead us not
into temptation."
The burnt one
dreads the fire,

so the sinner who
is forgiven is
afraid of falling
into sin.

The devil is the
tempter,

but when he beat-
eth our backs,
he is making our
crowns of bliss,
as when one dubs
a knight, by
smiting and beat-
ing upon the back.
The devil tries to
draw man from
God.

[Fol. 35. b.]

In this petition
we ask help of
God in our battle,
as well as the gift
of pity.

We say, "Sweet
Father, make our
hearts fast, so
that no tempt-
ation may shake
them."
We do not pray
not to be tempted,

þE ZIXTE BENE OF þE HOLY PATER NOSTER.

Et ne nos inducas in temptationem. þe ybernde :
uer dret. and þe ilke þet oþerhuyl yualle is into zenne.
huanne þe zenne him is uory[e]ue : he is þe more milde :
and þe more dreduol / and þe more he heþ gruter drede
of uondinge. þeruore bit he hier to huam god his mis-
dedes uoryeþ / þet he hine loky uram ayen-uallinge.
Et ne nos inducas in temptationem. þet is to zigge.
'Vayre zuete uader / ne led ous nazt in-to uondinge.' þe
dyeuel is þe uondere. vor hit is his creft / huer-of he
serueþ ine godes house / uor to proui þe newe knyžtes.
and yef þe uondinge nere guod and uremuol to guode /
god þet al makeþ uor oure guode / nolde nazt þolye þet
hi come. [Ac ase zayþ sant bernard. huanne þe uondere
ous knoekþ ope þane reg : he ous sseþþ oure corounes
of blisse. Ase þe ilke þet ope þe regge of þe guode
knyžte / smit and beat / him ssept his los : and his
blisse. þe dyeuel þerto propreliche uondeþ þane man :
þet he hine myžte wypdraze uram þe loue of god.
þeruore bit sainte pawel his deciples / þet hi by yzet
ase tours. yroted ase trawes : ine loue. zuo þet non
uondinge him ne moze refye / ne rocky. þeruore ine
pise bezechinge we acseþ help of gode ine oure batayle /
and þe yefþe of pité. þet is a grace þet bedeaweþ þe
herte and makeþ his zuete and reuþeuol. and makeþ
his al become grene / and berþ ynož frut of guode
workes wyp-oute and wyp-inne erþe / strengþi his roten
ine þe erþe of libbende. þet is ase þet guode mortyer /
huer-of me makeþ þe guode walles sarzineys þet me ne
may nazt breke / ne mid pic / ne mid mongenel
þanne huanne we ziggeþ. *et ne nos inducas in tempt-
acionem.* þet is to zigge. 'Vayre zuete uader / make oure
herten ueste / an stedeuest / þet hi ne ssake uor none
uondynge þet to hare comp.' We ne byddeþ nazt / þet
we ne ssolle by uonded : Vor þet were a fole bezech-

inge / and ssamuol. Ase þe zone of a guod man þet
 ssel by a newe knyzt him bezekþ. 'Leue uader ich þe
 bidde þet þou me loki þet ich ne guo neuremo : ne to
 ioustes / ne to tornemens.' We wyllep wel þet we by
 yuonded. vor hit is oure ureme ine uele maneres. uor
 we byep þe more ymylded / and þe dreduoller / and þe
 more wys ine alle þinges. and þe more worþ / an þe
 more asayd. Vor ase zayþ salomon. Ze þet ne heþ þise
 uondinges : he ne may noþing wel conne. bote ase me
 kan þe batayle of troye / be hyere-zigginge. Vor he ne
 may him-zelue yknaue / ne him uestni ine þe strengþe
 of his uyendes / ne hare sotylhede. and hou god is
 trewe to þe nyede / his uryend uor to helpe. ne of hou
 uele zennes / ne of hou uele perils / he heþ þe ofte
 yloked. and uor alle þise skeles / he ne ssel nazt arizt
 conne god louie / ne him þonki of his guode. Ac we
 him biddeþ þet he loky oure herten / þet hi ne guo in-
 to uondynge / þet is þet hi ne *consenti*. Vor al þet is
 of ous : we byep zuo poure / and zuo fyeble / þet we
 ne moze nazt ane time of the daye þolye þe asaylinges
 of þe dyeule : wyþ-oute þe help of oure lhorde. And
 huanne he ous fayleþ : we guoþ þer-in. Huanne he
 ous helpp : we wyþstondeþ. and we uyzteþ / and we
 ouercomeþ. And þeruore we ziggeþ. 'Lyeue uader ne
 led ous nazt into uondinge. þet is ne þole nazt / þet we
 go in-to *consenting*.'

but we desire to
 be tempted, for
 that is our profit,

for otherwise we
 can know nothing
 of these trials,

nor learn how to
 fortify ourselves
 against the fiend.

We entreat God
 that our hearts
 may not consent
 to sin.

When He helpeth
 us then we fight
 and overcome.

þe ZEUEUDE BENE OF þe HOLY PATER NOSTER.

Sed libera nos a malo amen. Saynt austin zayþ.
 þet þe opre vices ous makeþ oþer þe kueade to done :
 oþer þe guodes lete to done. Ac al þet me heþ ydo.
 and alle þe yefþes þet he heþ yporchaced : prede is ine
 wille to destrue / and to benime. An þeruore h[u]anne
 god heþ y-yeue to man þet he him heþ ybede ine þise
 zeue benes beuore yzed. þane uerst hit is nyed uor zoþe :
 þet he him delyuri of þe kueade / and of his aspiinges.

The 7th petition
 of the Pater
 Noster.
 "But deliver us
 from evil."

All the gifts we
 haue of God,
 pride seeks to de-
 stroy,

wherefore we ask

God to deliver us
from evil.

We entreat to be
delivered from
the devil and his
sleights.

We pray for the
gift of fear, so
that we may be
delivered from all
sins.

[Fol. 36. a.]

And þeruore comþ alast þis bene / ase þe efter-warde /
þet zayþ þous. *Sed libera nos a malo. amen.* þet is
to zigge: 'Lyeue uader deliure o[u]s of þe kueade. þet is to
zigge: of the dy[e]uele. and of his slezþes. þet we ne lyese
be prede / þe guodes: þet þou ous hest y-yeue.' Inne
þise bene we him biddeþ / þet he ous yeue þe yefþe / of
drede. huer-by we ssolle by delyured of þe kueade / and
of alle oþer kuead. þet is of alle zene / and of alle
perils ine þise wordle: and ine þe oþre. Amen.

Nou hest þou y-herd þe notes / þet me kan noty ope
þise zonge þet god made. þet is þet pater noster. Nou
loke þet þou hit conne wel zinge ine þine herte. Vor
grat guod þe ssel beualle: yef þou zuo dest.

ÞE ZEUE YEFÞES OF ÞE HOLY GOST.

The seven gifts
of the Holy
Ghost.
It behoveth us to
speak with rever-
ence of these
gifts.

1. We shall say
what are the gifts,
2. why they are
so called,
3. why gifts of the
Holy Ghost,
4. why seven, and
neither more nor
less,
5. what good they
do us.

A blissful bridal
was made in the
womb of Mary
when God's Son
espoused our flesh
and nature.

Many fair gifts
He brought to his
spouse.

Christ was the
flower of Naza-
reth.

Efter þe zeue benes þet byeþ y-contyened ine holi
pater noster: ous behoueþ to spekene mid greate reuer-
ence / of zuo heze matiere / ase of þe zeuen holy yefþes
of þe holy gost / ase he himzelf ous ssel teche. And
uerst we wylleþ zigge: huyche byeþ þe yefþes. Efter-
ward huereuore hi byeþ y-cleped / yefþe. and huereuore
yefþe of þe holi gost. Efterward huereuore þer byeþ
zeuen / ne mo / ne les. and efterward of þe guodes þet hi
ous dop. Wone is and cortayzie / þet h[u]anne man is
riche / and worþi / and noble / and comþ to his spouse /
and he hise loueþ mid al his herte and hire brengþ of
his ioiax. Ysaie þe profete yzeþ ine goste þe ilke blis-
uolle bredale / þet wes ymad ine þe wombe of þe blisfolle
mayde marie / huanne godes zone nom / and spousede
oure zoster and oure uless. oure manhode / and oure
kende. Yef we telleþ þe ioiax and þe uayre yefþes þet
he brozte mid him uor to yeue to his spouse / and to
his eldringes / and zayde þous þe zuete profete wel
corteisliche. 'Of þe rote of iesse ssel guo out a yerd /
þet ssel bere þet flour of nazareþ.' þet is to zigge: þet
flour / of flours. Vor nazareþ: is ase moche worþ / ase

flour / and grace. ase moche ase cos. and ope þet flour :
 him ssel resti þe holi gost. þe gost of wysdome : and of
 onderstondinge. þe gost of strengþe : and of uirtue. þe
 gost of wytte : and of pité. þe gost of godes drede. þise
 byeþ þe graces huer-of he wes al uol / uram þe time þet
 he wes onderuonge in-to þe wombe of his moder. ase þe
 greate ze is uol of wetere / and welle of alle weteres /
 zuete / an zalte. huer-of hi wetereþ al þe wordle. Alsuo
 wes he ase zayþ sayn Ion / zuo uol of grace and of
 zoþe / þet of his uolhede : we nimeþ al. þise zeue
 gostes / and þise zeue yefþes we onderuongeþ al / mid
 þe holy cristninge. Ac ase þe graces bodiliche þet god
 yefþ to þe childe / ine wytte / ine guodnesse / and ine
 strengþe / and ine oþre graces þet he yefþ to his wylle.
 to echin he him sseweþ litel / and litel. ase þet child
 wext / and comp uorþ. Alsuo is he in his graces gost-
 liche be þan þet ech profiteþ ine guode / and agrayþþ
 his herte / and him yefþ to gode : be þan þet god him
 yefþ more / and more of grace. And þet sseweþ þis
 yefþe be worke / þe on : ine þe on. and þe oþer / ine þe
 oþer. ase hit lykeþ þe holy gost / þet his todelp to his
 wille. ase zaynte paul zayþ. þanne ine ous beginneþ
 þise graces ase þe uirtues ine loz. and sseweþ an hez.
 And þet is of drede. þanne ine wysdome. Vor drede
 is beginninge of wysdom. ase zayþ dauid. Ac ine him
 weren echedaye alle þe graces / and alle þe uirtues wel
 uolliche wyþ-oute enie mesure. and þeruore his zet þe
 profete dounward / ech yefþe be þe ordre of hare ding-
 neté. Alsuo ase zeue benes byeþ yzet beuore be þe
 ordre of hare dingnetes. þe hezeste beuore. and þe lozeste
 efterward.

From His birth
 He was full of all
 graces,
 as the sea is full
 of water.

And we partake of
 His fulness.
 We receive these
 holy gifts with
 holy christening.

At first in a lesse
 degree,

but increasing
 more and more in
 those who use
 them aright.

These graces be-
 gin low and rise
 high.

Fear is the begin-
 ning of wisdom.

[Fol. 36. b.]

HUERUORE HI BYEþ Y-CLEPED YEFþES.

þise graces byeþ yhote yefþes uor þri skeles. Verst
 uor hare dingneté and hare worþ. yef me yefþ ine þe
 kinges cort ane robe to ane childe / oþer ane poure

Why they are
 called gifts.

1. These graces
 are called gifts
 for their dignity
 and worth.

All other gifts are changing and going. These graces are given to us by God Himself.

2. Other graces are lent us to use in this life, but these shall ever remain with us.

3. They are given by love.

A gift becomes chaffer when the giver has an eye to his own profit.

A gift comes from the well of love, without reward, fear, or debt.

God gives us His gifts for the love He hath to us.

Why they are called gifts of the Holy Ghost.

1. Works of might belong to the Father; works of wisdom to the Son; works of goodness to the Holy Ghost.

manne : ane dissuol of pesen / þet ne is no þing þet by worþi to by ycleped yefþe of kyng. þeruore saynt iacob clepeþ alle þe oþre guodes þet god yefþ / and timliche / and gostliche. nauzt yefþes : ac y-yeue. þet by chonginde / and guoinde. Ac þise graces he clepeþ yefþes uolueld. Vor he his ne yefþ to nonen : þet he ne yefþ him-zelue. þe oþer scele is / uor þet þe oþre graces / and þe oþre guodes he ous lenþ uor to usy ine þise liue. Ac þise byeþ yefþes arizt wyþ-oute wyþnymynge / and wyþ-oute lere. Vor huanne þe oþre ssolle fayli / þise ssolle ous bleue. þanne byeþ hi zuo propreliche oure : þet we his ne moze nazt lyese wyll we nolle we. ase we moze þe oþre. þe þridde scele and þe hezeste is. uor þer byeþ yefþes clenliche be loue and þou wost wel þet yefþe lyst þane name of yefþe : huanne hit ne is nazt y-yeue clenliche be loue. Vor huanne þe yeuere heþ zizþe to his ozene prou : þet ne is no yefþe : ac rapre is chapuare. Huanne he yzyþþ guodnesse onderuonge / oþer seruice / þet ne is no yefþe / ac hit is rapre dette y-yolde. Ac huanne þe yefþe comþ propreliche and clenliche of þe welle of loue wiþ-oute prou. wyþ-oute yefþe. wyþoute drede. wyþ-oute enie dette : þanne is hit arizt ycleped / yefþe. Huerof þe filosofe zayþ. þet yefþe / is yeuynge : wyþoute ayen-yefþe. þet is wyþ-oute onderstondinge of ayenyefþe. ac wyþoute more : uor to zeche loue. Ine zuyche manere god yefþ ous his yefþes clenliche / uor þe loue þet he heþ to ous / and uor to gaderi oure herten. and oure loue. and uor þise scele : propreliche hi byeþ y-cleped / yefþes.

HUERUORE HI BYEþ Y-CLEPED YEFþE OF þE HOLY GOST.

Ac hueruore hi byeþ y-cleped / yefþe of þe holy gost : þanne¹ yefþe of þe uader / and of þe zone. uor alle hire dedes / and hire yefþes byeþ commun. (?) þer-to byeþ tuaye sceles. þe one. uor þan þet ase workes of myzte / byeþ appropred to þe uader. and þe workes of

¹ more þanne !

wysdom / to þe zone : alsuo þe workes of guodnesse : to
 þe holy gost. vor¹ guodnesse is / ase zayþ sanyt denys /
 to lere him-zelue. Vor yef a man yefþ þet him naȝt ne
 costneþ : þet ne is naȝt *grat* guodnesse. Ac uor þe
 holy gost. be þyse zeue yefþes / spret him zelue ine oure
 herten / ase zayþ zainte paul / ase be zeue streames.
 þeruore hi byeþ *propreliche* y-cleped yefþes of þe holy
 gost. Vor he is þe welle. hy byeþ þe streames. And
 þe oþer scele is / uor þet þe holy gost is *propreliche* þe
 loue / þet is betuene þe uader / and þe zone. and þeruore
 þet loue is þe *propre* / and þe uerste / and þe heȝeste
 yefþe : þet man may yeue / þet ariȝt yefþ. and ine þise
 yefþe : me yefþ / alle þe oþre. and wyþoute þisen : non
 oþer yefþe ne is naȝt ariȝt y-nemned yefþe. þeruore is
 ariȝt þe holy gost *propreliche* / yefþe / and yeuere. Vor
 he him yefþ : and is y-yeue. Ine echen of þise zeuen
 þet he yefþ uor to *confermi* oure loue to his / þet hi
 by feruent / and guod / and zoþe / and clene.

¹ [MS. *wor*]

These gifts spread
 in our hearts as
 by seven streams.

The Holy Ghost is
 the well, the gifts
 are the streams.
 2. The Holy Ghost
 is the love between
 the Father and
 Son.
 Love is the high-
 est of all gifts.

The Holy Ghost
 is gift and giver,
 for he giveth and
 is given.

[Fol. 37. a.]

HUERUORE IS MAN Y-BORȜE.

Vor tuo þinges is þe man yborȜe. be þe be-ulynge
 of kueade : and do þet guode. þet kueade beuly / and
 hatie : ous deþ þe yefþe of drede. þe oþre zix doþ ous
 þe guodes to done. þe yefþe of drede is þe doreward
 to þe greate þreste. þet is to zigge : to þe greate þreap-
 ninge of godes dom / and of þe pine of helle. þet is
 echedaye / aredy and arise. þet is þe wayte of þe
 castele / þet neure ne sleþþ. þet is þe wyed hoc of þe
 gardine þet uordeþ al þet kueade gers. þet is þe hor-
 dyer þet lokeþ þe herte / and alle þe guodes þet hyeþ
 þerinne. þe oþre six yefþes / ous makeþ þe guodes to
 done.

Why man is
 saved.

1. By eschewing
 evil.
 2. By doing good.
 The gift of dread
 causes us to flee
 from evil.
 The other six gifts
 enable us to do
 good.

The gift of dread
 is the door-
 keeper,
 the watch of the
 castle,
 the weed-hook of
 the garden.

Nou sselt þou ywyte / þet ase þe briȝ[t]nesse of þe
 zonne þet þou izixt yefþ liȝt to þe wordle and uirtue /
 and strengþe to alle þe þinges þet wexeþ and comeþ to
 þe wordle. alsuo deþ þe holy gost þet alizt in heuene

The sun gives
 light to the world,
 and virtue and
 strength to all
 things in it ;
 So the Holy
 Ghost gives light

to those who are in grace. There are three stages of folk in heaven.

1. The nearest to God see and hear Him.

2. The middle ones are like barons and bailiffs.

3. The lowest are as serjeants (servants).

So are there three states of God's sons on earth.

1. Those who live liveth by God's behests.

2. Those who have their hearts in heaven and their bodies on earth.

3. The third govern themselves and others by God's behests.

The two first of these six gifts (knowledge and pity) belong to those of the first state. The two middle ones (counsel and strength) belong to those of the second stage. The two last (understanding and wisdom) belong to those of the highest state.

and ine erþe alle þo þet byeþ in *grace* / and men / and angles. And al alsuo ase ine heuene / heþ þri stages of uolke / ase zayt saynt denys. huer-of þe on is hezere. þe oþer men. þe þridde lozest. þe hezeste / byeþ ase þo / þet byeþ of þe kinges consayle. þise byeþ alneway mid god þe nixte þanne þe oþre / and zyeþ and yhereþ / and him : and his priuites. þe men [midliste] / byeþ ase þe barouns / and þe baylifs þet gouerneþ and wytyeþ þe kingriche / and guoþ / an comeþ. and lyernieþ of þan of þe consayle. an þet hi hoteþ and makeþ hit do oþren. þe lozeste / byeþ ase sergons and þo þet byeþ ine office / and habbeþ þe mestyeres / and doþ þe offices / and þe messages ase me ham zayþ. In þo manere / and in þo uorbysne heþ þe þri states of godes zone ine erþe. Huiche þe holy gost / let / and condueþ / ase zayþ sainte pael. þe on stat is of þan / þet byeþ ine þe wordle and libbeþ be godes hestes. and be þet hi leueþ / and yhyereþ of hyre ouerlynges. þe oþer stat is of þe stedeueste / þet of al habbeþ þe herten out of þe wordle / þet ysyeþ god ase moche ase me may ine þise lyue. and habbeþ hire *conuersacioun* ine heuene / and þe bodyes ine erþe. and þe herten mid god. þe þridde byeþ ine þe middel stat / þet gouerneþ. wel / oþer ham / oþer oþre. and libbeþ be þe hestes of god. þise þri maneres tekþ þe holy gost / and let / and gouernèþ / be þise zix yefþes. and ham to-delp þise *graces* to echen to his wyлле ase zayþ þe apostel. þe tuo uerste of þise six yefþes / belongeþ to þan / þet byeþ of þe uerste stat. þe yefþe of *conynge* : ham tekþ. And þe yefþe of *pité* : makeþ ham to bidde. þe tuo midleste / belongeþ to ham of þe middel stat. þe yefþe of *red* : ham gouerneþ. And þe yefþe of *strengþe* : uoluelp þe nyedes. þe tuo laste / belongeþ to ham of þe hezeste stat. þe yefþe of *onderstandinge* : his alyzt. þe yefþe of *wysdom* / hise makeþ stedeuest / and his *confermeþ* / and ioyneþ to god. An-

oþer skele þer is / hueruore þer byeþ zeuen. Vor þe
 holy gost be þise zeue yefþes : bestreþþ þe zeue zennes
 uram þe herte. and plontep / and norisseþ zeue uirtues
 con[t]raries / þet makeþ man stedeuestliche yblyssed.
 þise byeþ þe guodes / þet þe holy gost makeþ ine herte
 huer he descendep be þise zeue yefþes. Ac er þan ich
 decendi to þe uirtues þet byeþ *contraries* to þe zeue
 zennes : ich þe wylle speke ssortliche / of zeue oþre
 uirtues. huer-of þe þri byeþ ycleped¹ : godliche. and
 þe uour byeþ y-cleped cardinals.

The seven gifts
 strip away the
 seven sins from
 the heart.

[Fol. 37. b.]

I will now speak
 of seven other
 virtues, whereof
 three are godly
 and four cardinal.

OF ÞE ÞRI UERSTE UIRTUES.

þe þri uerste clepeþ saynte paul : beleaue. hope.
 and charité. and byeþ y-cleped / godliche. Vor þet hi
 ordaynep hare herten to god. Beleaue / ase zayþ saynt
 austin : ous zet onder god. and hi ous deþ beknawe /
 and to byknawe. to þe lhorde / of huam we healdeþ al
 þet we habbeþ. of guode. Hope : zayþ. hi ous arereþ
 to god / and ous makeþ strang / and hardi / uor to on-
 dernime uor him þet hi þet paceþ uirtue of man.
 Charité. þis zayþ. hi ous ioynep to god. Vor charité ne
 is oþer þing bote dyere oninge. uor hi deþ of þe herte
 and of god : al on. ase zayþ saynyte Pol. Beleaue /
 y-zigt ine gode þe hezeste zoþnesse. Hope. ouerlyche
 heznesse. and ouerliche magesté. Charité. ouerliche
 guodnesse. þise þri uirtues byeþ to-deld be þri degrees
 of loue. Vor þri þinges me loueþ ane man. Oþer uor
 þet me heþ y-herd grat guod of him. Oþer uor þet me
 onderstant grat guod of him. Oþer uor þet me heþ on-
 deruonge grat guod of him. þise þri maneres of loue :
 byeþ ine þise þri uirtues. Loue of beleaue : hyerþ ine
 dede. Loue of hope : uelþ þane smel / and zekþ. Loue
 of charité : nimþ. and zikþ. and zuelzþ / and halt.

Of the three first
 virtues.
 Belief, hope, and
 charity, are called
 godly, they direct
 the heart to God.
 By belief we ac-
 knowledge God.

Hope raises us to
 God.

Charity joineth us
 to God.

For three things
 one loveth a man.
 1. Having heard
 some great good
 of him.
 2. Having learnt
 great good of him.
 3. Having re-
 ceived great good
 of him.

These three kinds
 of love are in
 these three vir-
 tues.

¹ MS. *ychepeð*

Of the four cardinal virtues.

God giveth and teacheth us them a hundred times better than the old philosophers.

1. Sleight (Prudence). 2. Temperance. 3. Strength. 4. Doom (Justice), are the four cardinal virtues.

1. Prudence keeps man from being beguiled.
2. Temperance preserves man from being marred by wicked love.
3. Strength bears him up against sorrow.

These are the four towers that make the house of the good man sure and strong.

Of the office of the four virtues.

[Fol. 38. a.]
These four virtues have diverse offices.

Prudence hath three offices to direct man aright as to thought, word, and deed.

OF þE UOUR UIRTUES CARDINALES.

Of þe uour uirtues cardinales spekeþ moche þe yealde filosofes. Ac þe holi gost hise yefþ / and tekþ / betere an hondredsipe. ase zayþ salomon ine þe boc of wysdome. Of þise uour uirtues þe uerste me clepeþ / sle3þe—. þe oþer temperance. þe þridde / strengþe. þe uerþe / dom [ri3tuolnesse]. Þise uour uirtues byeþ y-cleped cardinals. uor þet hi byeþ he3est amang þe uirtues / huer-of þe yealde filosofes speke. Vor be þise uour uirtues þe man gouerneþ him-zelue ine þise wordle. ase þe apostles gouerneþ holy cherche be his cardinals. Sle3þe : lokeþ þane man þet he ne by be none sle3þe of þe kueade y-gyled. Temperance. þet he ne by be none kuede loue amerd. Strengþe. þet he ne by be tyene. oþer be drede. oþer be zor3e : ouercome. þise þri hyeldeþ man ine guod stat auorye him-zelue. Dom. hine zet ine ordre and ine ri3t stat a-yens oþre. Vor hi yelt to echen al þet his is. þise byeþ þe uour tours ine þe uour cornyeres of þe house of þe guode manne / þet makeþ þet hous ziker and strang. Sle3þe : hit wereþ wyþ þet yeast be porueyng e aye þe perils. Temperan[ce] / aye þet zouþ. aye þe wykkede hetes. Strengþ. aye þet norþ. aye þe wyckede cheles. Iustice. ay[e] þe west. a-ye þe wyckede raynes.

OF þE OFFICE OF þE UOUR UIRTUES.

Þise uour uirtues habbeþ diuerse offices / and mochel ham diuerseþ ine hire workes / ase zayþ an ald filosofe þet hette platoun ine his boc þet he made of þe uour uirtues. and hise to-delf wel sotilliche. and zayþ. þet sle3þe heþ þri offices. uor be þise uirtue al þet man deþ / and zayþ / and þengþ. al he di3t / and let / and reuleþ to þe lyne of scele. ne noþing he nele do : bote ri3t and scele. And ine alle his workes he him porueyþ þet hi by do / by þe ordinance / and by þe wylle of

god / þet al y-zizþ / and demþ. A grat lhord ssolde he
by ase me þingþ / þet þise onelepi uirtue hedde : and
be þise þri þinges him gouernede.

TEMPERANCE.

Temperance.

þe uirtue of temperance heþ þri offices. Vor herte
þet þise office heþ ne wyle / ne ne wylneþ þing : þet
makeþ to uorþenche. Ine none þinge he ne agelt þe
laze to louie zikerliche. and onder him of scele he zet /
and dret alle þe couaytises of þe wordle. þet is to
zigge. he þet heþ þise uirtue. he him loki / þet he ne
by amerd be þise þri þinges þet þe wordle ssent. ase
zayþ saint Ion. zenne of ulesse : and prede of herte.
couaytise of þe wordle.

The virtue of tem-
perance hath three
offices.

It keeps man from
being marred by
the sin of the flesh,
pride of heart,
and the covetous-
ness of the world.

STRENGTH.

Strength.

þe uirtue of strengþe / heþ alsuo þri offices. Vor
huo þet þise uirtue heþ : he him a-rereþ an hez a-boue
þe perils þet byeþ ine þe wordle. No þing him ne dret /
bote vileynie.

This virtue hath
three offices, and
raiseth man above
the perils of the
world.

Aduerseté / and prosperité / he berþ / and poleþ
wyþ-oute wepinge. ne ariþthalf ne alefthalf. Wel ssolde
he by guod knyzt / þet ine þise þri þinges were wel y-
proued. þise þri uirtues armenþ / an ordayneþ. and
agrayþeþ man / ase to þri deles of þe herte / þet me
cliepeþ¹ scele. loue. and strengþe. Prudence / lokeþ
þane scele² / þet hi ne bi becazt. Temperance / lokeþ
þane loue / þet hi ne by amerd. Strengþe. lokeþ þet
wyl : þet hi ne by ouercome.

It governs the
three faculties of
the heart,—rea-
son, love, and
strength.

RiȝTUOLNESSE.

Rightfulness.

Riȝtuolnesse. makeþ þane man ordeneliche libbe
amang oþren. Vor ase zayþ platon. þis is þe uirtue /
þet makeþ þet þe man a-yens echen deþ þet he ssel do.
Vor hi yelt reuerence to ham þet byeþ a-boue. loue to

Rightfulness
makes a man to
live orderly
among others,
to yield reverence
to those above
him,

¹ MS. chepeþ² MS scele

to love his equals,
and to show kind-
ness to those be-
neath him.

Philosophy sig-
nifies the love of
wisdom.

The old philoso-
phers who strove
to climb unto the
Hill of Perfection
by strength of
their own virtue,
put so-called
Christians to
shame, who, hav-
ing the true be-
lief, yet wallow in
the mire of this
world.

[Fol. 38. b.]

Wherefore saith
St Paul, that the
Pagans doing the
law without the
law shall judge us
that have the law
and do it not.

Virtue without
charity is like a
dead coal or dead
man.

The four cardinal
virtues are four
kinds of loves.

Prudence is the
love of the heart
whereby he for-
sakes all that may
harm.

Temperance en-
ables man to give
himself wholly to
God.

ham þet byep bezide. grace to ham þet byep beneþe.
Be þise uour uirtues ydo / is þe man worpi þet he by
gouernour uerst of him-zelue. and efterward of opren.
Ine þise uour uirtues ham studeþe þe yealde filozofes
þet al þe wordle onworþede / and uorlete / uor uirtue
to zeche and wysdom. and þeruore hi were y-cleþed :
filosofes. Vor filozofé is ase moche worþ : ase loue of
wysdome. A god hou hit ssolde ous ssende and astonie /
huanne þo þet weren paenes / and wyþ-out laze y-write
þet naȝt ne couþe of þe zoþe grace of god / ne of þe
holy gost : ne wenden. hi cliuen in to þe helle of per-
feccion of liue be strengþe be hire oȝene uirtue / and
ne daynede naȝt to loki oþe þe wordle. And we þet
byep cristene / and habbet þe zoþe beleaue and conne
þe hestes of god and habbeþ þe grace of þe holy gost.
Yef we yzeþe þet we miȝte more in one daye profiti /
þanne hi ne moȝe ine one yere y-hol / we waleweþ ase
zuyn hyer beneþe / ine þise wose of þise wordle. þeruore
zayþ sanynte paul / þet þe payens þet byep wyþ-oute
laze / and doþ þe laze. ate daye of dome : hi ssolle ous
deme / þet habbet þe laze / and naȝt hise doþ. Ac uor
þan þet hi ne hedden naȝt riȝte byleue / ne þane holy
gost / ne none uirtue. ne lyf / ne zoþe beknewynge : hi
ne¹ moȝe y-wyte hou moche þet hi weren uayre / uor ase
moche ase þer is be-tuene dyad col / and quyk / man
dyad / and man libbinde : ase moche þer is be-tuene
uirtue þet is wyþ-oute charité / þet is þe guodnesse /
and þe worþ / and þet lyf of þe oþre uirtues. Huer-of
saynt austyn huanne he speþ of þise uour uirtues / he
his to-delp be uour maneres of loue. and be uour þinges
þet zoþ loue makeþ. þanne he zayþ / þet þe uirtue of
prudence : is the loue of herte. þet wysliche uorlet / al
þet him may derie : and chyeþ al þet him may helpe.
and habbe þet he loueþ / þet is god. þe uirtue of tem-
perance is þe loue of þe herte / huerby he him yefþ y-

holliche and wyþoute corrupcion to þet ha loueþ / þet is to god. þe uirtue of strengþe / is þe loue of herte / huer-by he þoleþ strongliche alle þinges þet moze come / uor þet he loueþ. Iustice / is þe loue of herte / huer-by he serueþ onlepiliche and wyþ-oute more / to þet he loueþ. þet is to god. and uor zuo moche deþ onder uot alle opre þinges. þanne dom zet man / ine his rizte stat. þet is aboue alle þinges / and onder god. wyþ-oute þise uour uirtues non ne may cliue into þe helle of perfec-cion. Vor huo þet wyle zuo heze clyue / him behoueþ ate uerste þet he habbe prudence / þet him makie to onworþi þe wordle / and strengþe þermide / þet him yeue grat herte / of grat þing to onderuonge. and uolgi. Of oþerhalf þet he habbe temperance / uor þet he ne by to moche y-charged. and riztuolnesse þer-mide / þet is þe rizte pep. and him ssewy godes riche. ase god dede to Iacob. ase zayþ þe boc of wysdome. Huo þet þise uour uirtues mizte zuo habbe / he ssolde by wel per-fect / and yblissed ine þise wordle / and more ine þe opre. Vor he ssolde by ine payse of herte. and ine blisse gostlych / naȝt ne sso[l]de him failly / ac wexe ine god þet he ssolde habbe ine him / ine huam he him ssolde lyky.

Strength enables him to endure all things.

Justice is the love whereby he serves God and putteth all other things under foot.

Without these four virtues none may climb unto the Hill of Perfection.

Whoso had these virtues should be blessed and perfected in this world, and more in the other.

Nou we ayen comeþ to oure kende. and bidde we mid al oure herte / þane holy gost / þet tekþ þe hertes. þet he by oure auocat / and ous teche to sseawy hou he be þise zeue yeffes : bestrepeþ þe zeue zennes of oure herten. and he zette / and norissy þe zeue uirtues.

Let us pray the Holy Ghost to teach and show us how He, by these gifts, strippeth the seven sins from our hearts.

OF ÞE YEFÞ OF DREDE.

þe yeffe of drede : is þe uerste / of þe yeffes. þet kest out alle þe zennes of þe herte. ase we habbeþ yzed beuore wel propreliche. He bestreþþ þe rote of prede. and zet in his stede : þe uirtue of mildenesse. Nou loke and onderstand wel hou. þe zenezere þet sleþþ ine dyadliche zenne / is ase þe ribaud and dronke / þet heþ

Of the gift of dread.

The gift of dread casteth out all the sins from the heart.

[Fol. 39. a.] It strippeth the root of pride, and setteth in its stead the virtue of meekness. The sinner is like the drunkard

who knows not
his nakedness and
poverty.

The first good that
the Holy Ghost
doth to the sinner
is to bring him to
his senses,

so that he may
see how low he
has fallen,

and how waste-
fully he has
squandered his
heritage.

The sinner is as
one in prison, in
irons and fetters,
and strongly
guarded, as was
St Peter in
Herod's prison.

The wretch
thinketh not of
the gibbet, but
sleepeth and
dreameth that he
goeth to feasts
and weddings.

The Holy Ghost is
as the angel that
awoke St Peter
and delivered him
out of the hand of
Herod, for he
arouseth the sin-
ner and delivers
him out of the
power of the
Devil.

The sinner ween-
eth to be strong,
yet he hath Death
under his clothes.

The Holy Ghost
is the good physi-
cian.

al uorlore in þe tauerne / and is zuo naked and zuo
poure : þet he ne heþ naȝt. ac naȝt he hit ne uelþ ne
playneþ. Ac he wenþ by a wel *grat* lhord.

Ac þanne he heþ y-slepe / and comþ to him-zelue :
þanne he yuelþ his kucad / and knauþ his folye / and
him playneþ of his harm. þet is þet uerste guod þet
þe holy gost deþ to þe zenezere / huanne he him uisiteþ.
Vor he him yelt his wyttes / and his onderstondinge /
and him brengþ ayen to him-zelue. zuo þet he him
knaup / and him reuertep huet guodes ne heþ uorlore /
and ine huet pouerté he is y-ualle be his zenne. ase
dede þe guode mannes zone þet his eritage wastede and
dispendede ine ribaudie and leuede lecherusliche /
alhuet him behouede to loki zuyn. ase oure lhord ous
makeþ þise uorbysne ine his spelle. Atenende þe
zenezeres¹ ase zayþ salomon is ase þe ilke þet slepþ
amide þe ze / and þet ssip spilþ / and he naȝt hit ne
uelþ / ne none drede ne heþ. Ac huanne þe holy gost
him awakeþ : þanne yuelþ he and ziþþ his peril / and
beginþ to habbe drede of him-zelue. And yet eft þe
zenezere is ase þe ilke þet is in prisone in ysnes and
ine ueteres / and ine greate lokinge / ase wes saynte
peter ine herrodes prisone. and þe wreche ne þengþ
of him þet hine halt : ne of þe gibet þet him abit. ac
slepþ and met þet ha geþ to festes and to bredales. Ac
þe grace of þe holy gost is ase þe angle þet awakede
zaynte petren / and him deliurede of þe hand of herrode.
uor hi awakeþ þane zenezere / and him deliureþ of þe
hand of þe dyeule. Ateende² þe zenezere is ase þe ilke
þet wenþ by strang / an hol / and he heþ þane dyap
onder his clopes. Vor he heþ þe kuede humours and
corruptes ine þe bodye / huer-of he ssel sterue wyþ-inne
ane monþe. and he wenþ libbe yet uourti yer / ase
zayþ elyuans ine uers of þe dyape. Do away þe scoffes
and þe scornes. uor zuich me wrikþ onder his clopes
þet wenþ by strang and hol. Ac þe holi gost is þe guode

¹ zenezere ?

² Atenende ?

leche / þet amaystreþ his ziknesse / and chongeþ his humours. and him yefþ zuych a byter medecine: þet him help. and him yefþ þet lif. Alsuo trobleþ oure lhord þe herte þet he wyle hele. ase zayþ dauip in þe sautere. and him wyþ-nymþ¹ / and deþ him come ayen him-zelue to knawe / ase he dede adam: oure uerste uader efter þe zenne þo he him hedde / amang þe trawes of paradys. Hueroore he him zede: 'adam huer art þou?' þri opre acsingges made he be enne of his angles to þe þierne [of] saynt abraham / þet hette agar þo hi uleaþ uram hare lheuedi. Agar he zayde / 'huannes comst þou. Huyder gest þou. Huet dest þou?' þise þri acsingges makeþ þe holy gost to þe zenezere huanne he awakeþ and arereþ and him openeþ þe ezen of þe herte. and him yelt his wyttes and his onderstandinge. 'Huer art þou?' zayþ he: þet is to zigge: 'Yzi² wrecheche ine huiche zorþes / and ine huiche perils þou art in þise wordle. Vor þou art ase þe ilke þet slepp ine þe ssiþe / þet is yspild / and naþt hit not ne onderstant his peril.' 'Huannes comst þou?' þet is to zigge: 'Loke wrecheche þi lif ca³ arrieres / uor þou comst uram þe tauerne of þe dyeule / huer þou hest / þi lif y-wasted / and y-lore þine time / and alle þe guodes þet god þe hedde y-yeue.' 'Huet dest þou?' þet is to zigge: 'Ysy hou þou art fyeble / and brotel / and a-uorye þet body / and a-uorye þe zaule. þou wenst by hol / and strang. ac par auenture þou hest þe humours ine þe bodye þet þe ssolle lede to þe dyape. And ine þe zaule þou hest kueade þeawes / þet þe ssolle lede to þe dyape of helle: bote þe grace of god: þe ne werie.' Efterward. 'huidr gest þou?' þet is to zigge / 'wrecheche þençh / and loke / and onderstand / þet þou gest to þe dyape. oþer þou sselt ualle ine þe hand of herrodes / þet is þe dyeuel / and to his mayné.' And þeruore zayþ þe guode man. 'Man may longe his lyues wene / and ofte him lyezeþ his wrench. ase uayr weder went in-to

that masters the sickness and giveth man such a bitter medicine that it healeth and giveth him life. Our Lord troubles the heart that he will heal.

Three questions asked the angel of Hagar, when she fled from her mistress.

1. Whence comest thou? 2. Whither goest thou? 3. What dost thou?

[Fol. 39. b.]

These three questions the Holy Ghost puts to the sinner when he awaketh him and openeth his eyes. "Look," he says, "in what peril thou art." Look and see how thou comest from the devil's tavern.

See how brittle and feeble thou art, and how thy foul humours lead thee to death.

Look and understand that thou goest to death, and shalt fall into the hand of the devil.

[Loke wel hyer.] Man thinks his life will be long, but often is he deceived.

¹ wyþ-nymþ in MS.

² So in MS.

³ ta in MS.

All shall drink
of death's drink,

wherefore repent
thee, ere thou
fall from thy
bench.

Thou goest into
hell where is fire,
brimstone, and a
thousand ever-
lasting pains.

These four
questions are
like four strokes
of thunder, that
astound and
terrify the
sinner.

How mildness
waxeth in the
heart.

The four
thoughts above
mentioned strip
the garden of
the heart of the
four roots
of pride.

These roots are
the four horns
that God showed
to Zechariah the
prophet.

The four smiths
are the four afore-
said thoughts.

When man
thinketh *whence*
he cometh, and
understandeth
and knoweth the
poverty and vile-
ness of his birth,
[Fol. 40. a.]

then the grace of
God enables him
to feel his own
unworthiness.

rene / and uerliche makeþ his blench. þer ne is noþer
king ne kuene / þet ne ssel drinke of deaþes drench.
man þeruore þe beþench / er þou ualle of þi bench / þi
zenne aquench.' þou gest to þe dome / huer þou ssel
uinde : þane domes man zuo sterne / and zuo stout / an
zuo strayt / an zuo miȝtuol. þou gest in-to helle / huer
þou ssel yuinde : ver. and bernston. and a þousond
pinen / þet neuere ne endeþ þe uor to pini. And þous
deþ þe holy gost to þe zenezere / þe ezen openi and [he]
yzyþ a-boue / and beneþe / and beuore / and be-hynde.
þise byeþ uour strokes of þondre / þet astoneþ þane
zenezere / and makeþ ssake / and habbe drede. And
þise uour to zizþe / byeþ þe uour smale roten of þe rote
of mildnesse. þet þe yefþe of drede zet ine þe herte of
þe zenezere huanne god him uisiteþ.

HOU MILDENESSE WEXT INE HERTE.

þe uour þoztes be-uore ysed strepeþ of þe gardine of
þe herte / þe uour rotin of prede þet þer byeþ. huer-of
þe proude wenþ / of azemoche ase can habbe. oþer
azemoche he is of miȝte. oþer azemoche ase he can
conne. oþer ase moche ase can by worþ. þise byeþ þe
uour hornes. þet is to zigge : þe uour cornardyes þet
amerreþ þo contraye / þet god ssewede to zakarie þe
profete. Ac þe uour smipes þet he him ssewede efter-
ward / þet comen efter þe uour hornes to uelle : byeþ
þe uour þoztes be-uore yzed. Vor huanne þe man þengþ
huanne he comp / and onderstant and knauþ his
pourehede / þe vilhede / þe brotelhede of his beringe /
hou he wes beyete in zenne / and of zuo uoule matere
y-mad And y-ssape. and ine zuo poure house y-her-
berȝed. ine zuo greate pouerté y-bore. and rapre dyad
to þe zaule : þanne ybore to þe wordle. in huiche
zorȝes he wes y-norissed. ine huet trauail he heþ
yleued. hou he heþ his time uorlore. and he yzizþ
þane greate heap of his zennes. and þe guodes þet he
heþ uorlete to done. þanne him deþ¹ þe grace of god

¹ MS *deþ*

yuele mid herte : þet he ne is naȝt worþ. Efterward huan[ne] he þengþ huer he ys / and y-zizþ þise wordle / þet ne is bote an exil and a dezert uol of lyons an of lipars. a forest uol of þyeues an of calketreppen / and of grines. ane ze uol of storm / and of peril. a fornays anhet mid uer of zenne and of zorȝe. a ueld of uiyȝt huerinne him be-houeþ eure to libbe ine werre and wyȝte¹ mid dyeulen þet zuo moche byeþ wyse / and sotil / and strang. þanne him deþ þe grace of god yuele to zoþe / and to aparceiuy his onconnyng / and þet he ne can naȝt. Ate laste h[u]anne he þengþ and onderstant his zennes and his defautes ase he is uol of zennes and ydel of alle guode. þanne him yefþ þe holy gost y-uele his pourehede / and þet he ne heþ naȝt. Efterward huanne he y-zizþ be-uore him huiderward he geþ. and he y-zyȝþ þane dyap to huam non ne may wyþstonde. he yzizþ his demere god / zuo riȝtuol be huas hand him be-houeþ guo. he y-zizþ þe pinen of helle / huiche non ne may ascapie. þanne yefþ him god iuele þet mannes miȝte ne is naȝt / and þet he ne may naȝt. Huanne he y-zizþ þanne / and uelþ / and onderstant þet he ne is naȝt worþ / þet he naȝt ne heþ. þet he naȝt ne deþ / and þet he ne deþ naȝt / and þet he ne may naȝt. þanne beginþ he uor to byenne poure of spirit. Ine þise uour þoȝtes / byeþ þe uour boȝes of þe rote of þe trawe of mildenesse. þis trau is yzet beside þe welle of godes drede. huer-of hit is echedaye y-wetered / ine wyntre : and ine zomere. þet is ine wykkednesse and ine guodnesse. Nou sselst þou conne þet ech of þise zeuen uirtues. huerof ich onderstonde to spekene of his stapes. huer-by profiteþ an cliþ / and wext ine þe herte. and his dedes / and his guode þeauwes / huerby hy hare sseweþ wyþ-oute. Vor uirtue wext an heȝ ase palme / oþer ase cipres. oþer ase cedre. and þanne spret and keste his boȝes : an ech half.

Afterwards when he thinketh where he is, that this world is but a desert full of lions and a forest full of thieves,

then he experiences his own weakness and inability.

And, lastly, the thought of his sins and defaults shows him his utter poverty. Thus then is the sinner led to be "poor of spirit."

The tree of meekness is set beside the well of God's fear.

The seven virtues are seven steps by which one climbeth to good virtues and good deeds.

Virtue groweth as high as a palm, a cypress, or a cedar, and spreadeth its boughs right and left.

Of the steps of
meekness.

OF þE STAPES OF MIL[D]HEDE.

This virtue, hath
seven steps.

The first step is
to know one's
poverty and
defects, and to
feel one's own
unworthiness
and vileness.

Some *know* their
faults but do not
feel them.

The second step
is to feel and
bemoan one's sins,
and to endeavour
to get rid of the
sorrow and
sickness.

The third step of
meekness is to
confess and shrive
and cleanse our
hearts of sin.

The fourth step
is to desire to
make known
one's un-
worthiness.

The fifth step is
to hear willingly,
gladly of our own
failings and
imperfections.

The sixth step is
a willingness to
endure reproach,

Of þe uirtue of mildenesse speeþ saynt ansalm. and
zayþ þet hi heþ zeue stapes huerby hy clifþ an heȝ / al-
huet þet hi come / to perfeccion. Nou onderstand wel
hou. þe uerste stape of mildenesse / is to knawe his
pourehede. and his defaute. Vor ase zayþ saynt
bernard. Mildenesse is þe uirtue þet makeþ þane man
him-zelue to onworþi / and healde uor vil. Huanne he
him knauþ zopliche. þis knaulechinge wext of uour
roten beuore yzed. Ac þer byeþ zome þet wel conne
hyre defautes and hire pouerté / ac naȝt hit ne ueleþ.
þeruore is þe oþer stape : yuele / and playni his de-
fautes and his pouerté. And þet he yuele his zorȝe and
his zienesse / he yernþ blepeliche to þe fisiciane / and
zaiþ þet he y-ueleþ þe kueade humours ine þe bodye.
bliþe he is huanne þet he may his purgi and keste out.
and þeruore is þe þridde stape of myldenese / his zennes
and his kueade wylles blepeliche beknawe / and ssiue /
and his herte clensi. Ac þer byeþ zome þet beknaweþ
hare defautes / and y-ueleþ / and zorȝuolle byeþ / and
wel ham sriueþ. Ac hi nolden anone manere þet oþre
hit wyste hou hy doþ. þeruore þe uerþe stape is of þise
uirtue : wylni to by y-knawe / and y-healde uor uyl /
and onworþ. Ac þer byeþ eftsome some þet wel
yk[n]aweþ and ueleþ / and ziggeþ here defautes / and
ziggeþ wel : ich am a kuead / and zenuol / and zuych /
and zuych. ac yef an oþer him zede : uorȝoþe þet is
zoþ / þet þou zayst : zorȝuolle hi wolden by / and
wolden by wroþe to þe dyafe. þeruore is þe vifte stape
of þise trawe / yhere blepeliche of him-zelue. and þet
me him zigge his defautes. and þet is þet saynt bernard
zayþ / þet þe zoþe milde : wyle by hyalde uor vyl.
naȝt ase milde y-praysed. þeruore is þe zixte stape
huanne þe man þoleþ in þolemodnesse þet he by uoul-
liche y-draȝe / and ase persone onworþlych / ase dede

þe guode king dauid / þet þolede zueteliche / and lhest
ane sergont þet hette semey / þet him þreu mid stones /
and him missede / and him zede al þet he coupe of uoul.
Yet eft þer is a stape / huerinne is þe uolle of perfec-
cion of þise uirtue. þet is wylny to zoþe / and mid
herte wylny wyþ-oute fayntise : to by y-hyealde vyl /
and villiche to by y-draze. þet is arizt pouerté of gost.
and mi[l]dehede of herte. Moche louede þise pouerté þe
riche king of heuene. huanne zuo uer he com hit uor
to zeche / ase uram heuene : to þe erþe. Wel he hit
louede ine herte / þo he hit zuo dyere bozte / þet al þet
he hedde / and þe robe of his regge he yaf / uor þet he
wes zoþuolliche poure. Mochel he louede mildnesse /
huanne þe ilke þet neure zenne ne dede. þe ilke ine
huam nes neure defaute / him dede amang þe þyeues.
þet wes amang adames zones / and him cloþede mid þe
cloþe of þe zenuolle / and of þe misdoere / uor þet he
wes villiche y-draze ase a þyef. Hueruore he zede to
his apostles þe niȝt of þe sopiere / mid grate wille.
Ich habbe þerne paske y-wylned. þet is to zigge : þerne
dyap. þise ssame. þise wendinge. Non heȝere ne may
þis trau arise. And huo þet were al-to þise stape of
mildnesse y-cliuē : wyþ-oute drede : he ssolde by y-
blissed ine þise wordle. Vor þe ilke þet þis zede : ne
may lyeze / þet þe heȝeste zoþ zaip mid his mouþe.
‘Y-blissed byeþ þe poure of gost.’ And hou þet þis by /
he him sseweþ huanne he zede. ‘Lyerneþ of me : and
nazt of opren / uor to by milde of herte ase ich am.
and þou sselt uinde reste to þine zaule.’ þis reste is þis
blissinge. Ac huych þet hit is / ne huet hit hatte /
non ne wot : bote he þet hit nimp. þanne yef þou
wylt ywyte huet þet is : do þi miȝte of þine herte zuo
moche ouercome / þet þou by y-cliuē to þe zeuende
stape of mildnesse. and þanne þou miȝt fruyt gaderi
and ete of þe trawe of liue / ase god zayþ ine þe boc of
zizþe.

as did David when
Shimei threw
stones at him, and
spoke evil of
him.

The seventh step
is a willingness to
be esteemed vile,
and to be vilely
persecuted.

This is true poverty
of spirit and meek-
ness of heart.

Much did Christ
love meekness
when he came
amongst thieves,
that is, amongst
the sons of Adam.

Christ teacheth us
to be meek, and to
learn of Him,

so that we may
find rest for our
souls.

[Fol. 41. a.]

When thou hast
climbed to the
seventh step of
mildness, then
thou mightest ga-
ther fruit and eat
of the tree of life.

OF ÞE ZEUE BOȝES OF MI[L]DENESSE.

Of the seven
boughs of meek-
ness.

1. To honour God,
2. to praise others,
3. to despise one's
self, 4. to love po-
verty, 5. to minis-
ter joyfully, 6. to
beflee praise, 7. to
be in good belief.

The man truly
meek honours God
as a child doth its
master.

He believes His
simple word, and
that is the begin-
ning of 'well-
doing.'

The heretics will
not believe God
without good
pledge and strong
evidence.

Of this disbelief
comes all manner
of heresies.

True believers
have a hundred
times more faith
in God's word than
in any miracle;
they may see.

Ovt of þe trawe of mildenesse wexeþ zeue boȝes.
uor þis uirtue him sseaweþ ine zeue maneres. be god to
worþssipie. be oþren to prayzy. be him-zelue to on-
worþi. be pourehede to louie. be bleþeliche to serui. be
heriynge to byuly. be him-zelue of al / ine god y-leue.
þe zoþe milde : worþssipeþ god in þri maneres. Vor he
ylefþ simpleliche. He þonkeþ treweliche. He him bit
deuouteliche. He him worssipeþ uerst / ine þet he him
lefþ simpleliche of al þet he zayþ. ase deþ þe litel child
his mayster. and uor þis skele / heþ oure byleaue
merite. þanne huo þet wel ylefþ : god grat worþssipe
him deþ. alsuo ase he deþ to þe manne worþssipe þet
him lefþ be his simple worde. and þet is þe beginnyng
to done wel / þet is nyeduoł to alle þan / þet wylleþ
ham bouerȝe.¹ ase zaip zainte paul. þet me ylefþ god
ope his simple worde þet al is zoþ þet he zayþ. onlepi-
liche uor þet he zayþ wyþ-oute oþre skele to zeche. and
wyþ-oute oþre proeue zeche. Vor þet byeþ þe bougres
and þe heretiks proude uorlore. uor hi nolleþ yleue
god : wyþ-oute guod wed. þet is to ziggene : bote-yef
hi y-zy kuik scele / ac hi ham hyealdeþ / and ziggeþ
ase þe gaulere he him halt to þe wynnyng þanne to þe
simple worde ne wyle nonen yleue. And þerof byeþ
y-come alle þe maneres of eresye / and of misbeleuinge.
Vor þe blynde proude / þet hare wyt wylleþ emni to
godes wysdome / hi nolleþ y-leue þing þet god zayþ /
bote-yef me ne betoke ham guod wed. þet is to zigge :
oper þane quicke scele / oper aperte miracle. Ac we
þet þe riȝte byleaue hyealdeþ / yleueþ betere an hon-
dred ziþe him þet ne may naȝt lyeȝe : þanne we ne doþ
ne miracle / ne scele / ne him-zelue þet we yzeþ. God
zayþ he wile deme eurinne / be his dedes. and of eche
ydele worde / þe behoueþ yelde scele to him / ate daye
of dome. þe milde þet þis yherþ / hit ylefþ. and dret /

¹ bouȝe ? or borȝe ?

an deþ payne to loky his herte / and his mouþ / and
 alle his workes. Efterward þe zoþe milde / þonkeþ god
 treweliche of alle his guodes / þet he him heþ y-do /
 and þet he him deþ echedaye / and þet he wyle do.
 Efterward ase we habbeþ y-sseawed / ine þe zigginge of
 prede. Vor þe milde is ase þe poure man / þet of
 little elmesse: heþ greate blisse. and yelt þonkes mid
 herte / to his guod doere. þanne huanne þe milde / ne
 yziþ ine him naȝt / huer-bi he bi worþy to þe breade
 þet he et / he be-knaup treweliche / and y-ziþ / and
 onderstant / and yleþ / þet al hit is of klene grace /
 and of yefþe. and naȝt of him. al þet god him zent /
 and yefþ / and lenþ. And uor þet he ne leþ naȝt of
 him-zelue / of þe guodes of his lhorde / þet be his hand
 paseþ: þeruore is þe sergont trewe / ase zayþ sant
 bernard. Efterward þe zoþe milde worþ ssiþeþ god /
 and him byt mildeliche. þet his to zigge mid zoþe
 teares / þet comeþ of godes grace / and mid riȝtuolle
 oninge of herte. Vor hit him þingþ / þet he is ase þet
 child þet is echedaye beuore his maistre / and naȝt can
 his lessoun. Oþer þet he by ase ys þe poure ine dette.
 þet is y-ualle ine þe hand of gauleres. and naȝt ne heþ
 huermide hit may endy. Oþer þet he by ase is þe þief
 yproued / and y-nome and mid mo þanne an hondred
 misdedes þet heþ nieȝ þe wyþþe ine þe nykke. And þet
 he is ase þe y-maymed ate porche of þe cherche / þet
 ne heþ none ssame uor to sseawy alle his maines to
 alle þon þet þer guoþ / uor þet me ssolde habbe of him
 pité. Yef þou wilt þanne lyerni god to bidde. and to
 aouri ariȝt: þise uour hit wytnesseþ. þet child. he þet
 is ine dette. þe þyef. and he þet is ymaymed.

The truly mild
 thanketh God for
 all His gifts that
 he hath received
 of Him,

for all that he re-
 ceiveth comes of
 pure grace and of
 gift.

He prays to God
 meekly, with true
 tears and simpli-
 city of heart,
 [Fol. 41. b.]

for it seems to him
 that he is as the
 child, that is each
 day before his
 master and know-
 eth not his les-
 sons,

or like a thief
 guilty of more
 than a hundred
 misdeeds; that he
 hath the rope very
 near his neck.
 He is like the
 maimed at the
 church-porch, who
 hath no shame to
 show all his maims
 to excite the pity
 and alms of those
 who enter.

þe oþer boȝ of mildenesse.

Wone is of þe zoþe milde oþren to herie / and
 praysy. and poty him uorþ / an worþssipij. Praysy ine
 herte / herie ine mouþe. and be dede: worþssipe / bere.

The second bough
 of meekness.

The meek in heart
 ever desires to
 hear others praised
 and honoured.

He is like the bee
that seeketh the
flowery fields and
beflees stench.

He taketh no heed
of other men's
faults.

He praiseth others
for three reasons.

1. He believeth
other men's wit
more than his
own.
2. He desires the
will of others to
be followed more
than his.
3. He trusteth
more in others'
virtues than in his
own.

Themeeke excuseth
and palliates the
faults of others.

The proud man,
on the contrary,
delights to hear of
other men's
defects.

Of meek heart.
The meek heart
keeps all his vir-
tues behind his
back, and his de-
fects before his
eyes.

[Fol. 42. a.]

He is like the co-
vetous man, he

He is ase þe smale uleze þet makeþ þet hony. and
beulyȝþ stench. and zekþ þe ueldes yfloured. and of þe
floures zoucþ þane deau huerof hi makeþ þet hony uor
his hous to astori. þet deþ þe milde herte þet naȝt ne
nymþ hede of stench. ne of þe lackes of opren. ac alle
þe guodes þet opre habbeþ y-rewarded. and loueþ. and
hereþ. and prayzeþ and conceyueþ þe zuetnesse : of
denocion. hueruore his bodi is ondo : and his inwyt
uolueled. 'Vor-zoþe zoþ hit is y-bore of stones and of
ulyntes / kan he zouke þe oly / and þet hony :?' ase ous
tekþ þe sauter. Vor he ne wille nenne zuo kuead / ne
zuu hard / ne zuu zenuol : þet he ne can draze materie :
god uor to herie. Ine his herte he prayzeþ opre / ine
þri maneres. Vor he yleþ more opremanne wyt :
þanne his oȝen. He wile þet þe wil of opren bi more
y-do : þanne his. He him fyeþ more in opres uirtue :
þanne ine his. Al þe contrarie deþ þe proude / ase we
habbeþ be-uore yssewed. Efterward he hereþ / and
prayseþ þe opre be speche. þe guodes þet opre doþ / and
habbeþ : he hise hezeþ / and hereþ. þe kueades : he
his excuseþ / and lozeþ. and lesseþ. þe myddelguodes :
he onderstant ine guode / and went alneway in-to þe
guode half. And þet is aye þe þri queade techches of
þe misziggeres / þet arereþ þet quead : an lozeþ þet
guod. and þe middel þinges ouerþraweþ and mis-wend-
eþ. Be dede he worþssipeþ eurunne / and prayseþ ase
moche ase he ssel and may do. wyþ-oute misdo. þet ne
deþ naȝt þe proude. ac al þe contrarie / ase we habbeþ
be-uore y-ssewed. ine þe chapitele of prede.

OF MILDE HERTE.

Wone is of milde herte. þet alle his guodes he heþ
behinde his regge. and alle his queades : beuore his
eȝen. An þerof comp / þet of asemoche þet he prayzeþ
more þe opre : þe more he him-zelue misprayseþ. He
is ase þe wel couaytouse wreche / þet alneway heþ

þet ege to þe guodes : þet oþre habbeþ / and doþ alneway.
 and makeþ alneway semblont : þet he ne heþ naȝt. Vor
 asemoche ase þer is an holy prede : alzuo þer is an holy
 coueytise / and an holy enuye. Hit is ase hit is of þe
 litel childe / þet is þe kinges zone / and eyr of þe king-
 riche þet wepþ ine his crete. and naȝt ne kan of his
 heȝnesse / ne of his richesse. He is ase þet simple ssep.
 ine huam al hit is guod and profitable. and wolle. and
 skin. and uless. and melk. and frut. and dong. and ne
 wenþ / and ne kan naȝt. ne naȝt ne þengþ. Ine þise
 manere zayþ saynt abraham þe greate patriarche. þet he
 nes bote essse and doust And saynt Iob. þet wes zuo
 moche grat to þe wordle. and holy ine god / þet zayde
 of him-zelue. ‘Huet am ich bote essse. and spearken.
 and hor. and stench. wermes. wynd. ssed. and smeche.
 þet þe wynd berþ and gadereþ draye. þet to naȝt ne` is
 worþ : bote to þe uere.’ And alsuo ase þe zoþe milde
 hereþ þe oþre and mid herte / and mid mouþe / and
 mid dede. ase we habbeþ ysed. alsuo he blameþ him-
 zelue ine þise þri maneres. he him þingþ þet Ieromes
 zayþ of himzelue. þet yef he eth / oþer yef he drincþ /
 yef he wakeþ / yef he slepþ / þet þe ilke orible bosyne
 him went to þe yeare : ‘com to þine dome.’ And þeruore
 þe ilke þet nele naȝt by þer ydemd : he ne endi neure
 hiere : him-zelue to deme and damni. wiþ-nyme his
 dedes. and his wordes. and his þoȝtes. and clensi. and
 telle. and weȝe. and wyþerweȝe. and wyþ-nime. Vor he
 y-zizþ more ynoȝ of cheff : þanne of corn. And þeruore
 þet he ne by y-demd ine þe cort of riȝte / ne he nele
 naȝt lete ne smal ne grat / þet ne ssel by examened /
 and y-zed / and y-demd / ine þe cort of merci. þet is
 ine holy ssrifte ine þo cort. huo acounteþ aȝt : he is
 al quit. Ac ine þe cort of riȝte / þet ssel bi ate daye of
 dome / huo þet ssel aȝt : him behoueþ paye. ne neure
 aquitti he ne may. and þeruore ha ssel by ydammed.
 Vor he mot yelde : oþer hongy. A. alas huet ssel þe

hath an eye to the
 goods of others.
 (for there is a
 holy covetousness
 and a holy envy).

He, like the simple
 sheep in whom all
 is good and profit-
 able, wool, skin,
 flesh, milk, fruit,
 and dung, and yet
 weeneth nothing
 thereof.

In this manner
 Saint Job speaks
 of himself as but
 ash, spauks,
 filth, stench, ver-
 min, wind, shad-
 ow, and smoke.

As the true meek,
 one praises others
 in a threefold
 manner,
 so in three ways
 he blames himself

and condemns his
 deeds, words, and
 thoughts.

He sees more
 chaff than corn in
 his life,

and he examines
 himself in the
 Court of holy
 Shrift,

so that he may not
 be damned in the
 Court of Right at
 Doomsday.

Woe to the man
whose neck shall
then be loaded
with deadly sin.

The sinner must
shrive him gladly
and oft.

He must doom
himself as a thief
to the gibbet of
penance.

ilke paye : þet naȝt ne heþ bote þane nhicke y-carked
mid zenne dyadlich? Huo þet onderstode and yuelde
þise þinges / he him wolde hyealde / and wyþdraze
uram scornes and uram leazinges / þet he heþ yuounde /
aye þe zoþe milde / þet god dredeþ. þet uor þan hy
wylleþ ham loki clenliche / hy ssriueþ ham bleþeliche /
and ofte. Ac litel is worþ to maky guod dom : bote
þe demere ne by efterward yprayzed treweliche. and
þeruore al-zuomoche ase þe zoþe milde / makeþ of him-
zelue guod dom / ine zorþe of herte. and ine ssrifte of
mouþe. and zuo deþ be dede zoþ dom. Vor he him
demp ase ane þyef. and he him deþ zoþliche to þe
gybet of penonce wyþ-oute slacnesse / and wyþ-oute
ypocrysye.

The fourth bough
of meekness.

[Fol. 42. b.]

The true meek one
loveth poverty,

for three reasons :
1. For the perils of
riches,
2. for the virtues
in poverty,
3. for God loved
poverty.

God hears the
prayers and de-
sires of the poor,
and is their refuge
and safety.
God is Father to
the poor.

Christ blessed the
poor,
and cursed the
rich.

The world does
not believe that
poverty is blessed.

þe UERþE BOȝ OF MY[L]DENESSE.

Hvo þet hateþ prede : he loueþ pouerté þet zet þe
herte loze / and þeruore alle zoþe milde loueþ pouerté /
and byeþ poure of gost. þe zoþe milde loueþ pouerté
uor þri sceles. Vor þe perils þet byeþ ine riches.
Vor þe guodes þet byeþ in guode pouerehede. And
uor þet god louede zuo moche pouerté þo he wes ine þe
wordle / and yet hit loueþ / ase þe holy wrytinge wyt-
nesseþ in uele stedes. þanne zayþ he in þe sautere /
þet he y-herþ þe benes / and þe wylls of þe poure. and
ham poruayþ / and agrayþeþ hare lyfnop zueteliche /
and mid guod sauour. and he is hire refu / and ham
ssel souy. Iob zayþ / þet god is þe uader to þe poure.
and ham heþ y-yeue mizte / oþren to iuggi. And oure
lord ate biginnynge of his uayre sermon zayþ. 'þet y-
blyssed byeþ þe poure: and a-corsed bied¹ þe riche / þet
habbeþ hyer hire paradis.' Ac þe zoþe paradys / heþ
he y-yeue þe poure. zuo : þet hi hit moze yeue / and
zelle. Ac þe wordle nele y-leue / þet god zigge zoþ /
þet pouerté by þing y-blissed. Ac þet is of þe rede of
god þe uader. þeruore Iesu crist zayþ ine his spelle.

¹ biþ ?

‘Vayre uader ych yelde þe þonkes and heri ynges. þet piſe þinges y-hed / and y-hole heſt : to þe wyſe. and hiſe heſt y-ſſeawed to þe milde.’ þe milde hiſ y-zyeþ / and wel hiſ yleueþ / and louieþ / an hondredziþe more pouerté : þanne þe niþing deþ hiſ richesſe. Ine þri þinges ſſeweþ þe man / þet he loueþ pouerté. Huarne he loueþ and halt bleþeliche þe uelaꝝrede. and þet lyf. and þe woneſ of þe poure. Hire uelaꝝrede he loueþ / aſe ieſu criſt dede þer huilſ ha weſ ine þe wordle. Vor kende wyle þet þe lambren louie ham togidere / and beuly þe wolueſ. and þe children ham louie to-gidere. and beuly þe uelaꝝrede of þe greaten. and þe milde ham louie to-gidere / and become uelaꝝeſ to-gidere. Liſ of poure man iſ poure. uor he ne zeþþ / ne metes of *grat priſ* / ne robeſ out of ſcele. ne non boſt hi¹ ne zecheþ / ne ine robeſ. ne ine ridingeſ. ne ine mainé. ne ine feſteſ. ne ine uelaꝝredeſ. Bliþe he iſ yef he heþ hiſ : ſoſtinoſce. ac he ſoffreþ and honger / an þorſt. and chald and hot. and cheaſteſ / and manye biterneſeſ. and alle zuiche þingeſ þet þe kueade poure deþ / and poleþ : wille he nolle he. þe zoþe milde wilneþ / and poleþ gledliche uor god. a-laſt hit iſ wone of þe poure manne / þet yef he ne heþ naȝt / ne naȝt ne may wyne : he ne heþ none ſſame to acſi. And þe zoþe milde : beggeþ echedaye. þe benes and þe oreꝝſonſ of guode uolke / and of uryendeſ of god. huer he wenþ meſt of guode. and more he be-leþþ ine hare helpe : þanne he do ine hiſ oȝene guodeſ.

þe VIFTE BOȝ OF MILDENEſſE.

Prede / loueþ wel heȝe ſtedeſ. Mildeneſſe : þe loȝe. þiſ iſ þe dyamod² of noble kende. þet nele naȝt ſitte ine gold. ac ine poure metal aſe yȝen. And zuo hit iſ of þe hyeape of huete y-þorſſe. þe comeſ byeþ beneþe / and þet cheſ a-boue. Ac oure lhord ſſel uazni hiſ corn / ate daye of dome / aſe zayþ þet godſpel. and ſſel þrawe

The meek man loves poverty a hundred times more than the niggard his wealth. This he shows in three ways.

1. He loves and holds communion with the poor, as Christ once did,

and avoids the society of the great and rich.

[¹ *he?*]

Glad iſ he iſ he have hiſ ſuſtenance.

2. He ſufferſ and endureſ all thiſ meekly for God.

3. He haſ no ſhame to aſk for what he wanteſ, and begſ eache day in hiſ prayerſ to God.

The fifth bough of meekness. Meekness loves low places. It is the diamond that needs not to be set in gold. The corn is ever below the chaff. Christ shall ‘fan’ His corn at Doomsday.

[Fol. 48. a.]

² So in MS.

The chaff shall go into the fire.

The meek man prefers low places, and follows the example of Christ and His sweet mother.

Meekness is the mother of obedience,

and bedecketh her with all her ornaments.

þet chef in-to þe uere : and þet corn in-to þe greynere.
 þe more þet / þet gold is clene : þe more hit weep. and
 þe more þet hit is heui : þe rapre hit ualþ to þe botme
 And þe more þet þe man is milde : þe more he loueþ
 loze stedes. ase dede Iesu crist and his zuete moder /
 þet ous yeauē uorbisne to serui and to bouze. naȝt wyþ-
 oute more to þe gratteste : ac to þe leste. and þe more
 þe seruise ys onworþ : þe bleþelaker þe milde him deþ
 þerto. þeruore wyle teche oure lhord Iesu crist / þa
 uet to wesse to his poure. þanne mildenesse / is moder
 propreliche / of boȝsamnesse. and hire norisseþ / and
 tekþ / an lokeþ / þet hi ne by y-corumped / ne by
 ydele blisse / ne be zorȝe / ne be grochchinge / ne be
 oȝene wytte / ne be oȝene wille. ne ine oþre manere.
 Hy hise agrayþeþ and azet : mid alle hire ournemens.

Of obedience.

OF BOȜSAMNESSE.

There are seven ornaments of obedience.

That is, that one obey, 1. readily, 2. gladly, 3. simply, 4. cleanly, 5. generally, 6. swiftly, 7. willingly. The meek obedient one is like a sailor ever ready to obey the captain.

He is as obedient as the ass is to its master.

David preferred God's behests to gold or precious stones. He obeys simply, as doth the horse or the sheep.

Holy simplicity is the character of meekness.

þe ournemens of boȝsamnesse : byeþ zeuen. þet ys :
 þet me bouze prestliche. gledliche. simpleliche. klen-
 liche. generalliche. zuȝftliche.¹ and wiluolliche. þe milde
 y-zyȝþ beuore² his eȝen : þet he ys poure and naked. and
 ne heþ niede bote uor him-zelue. and þeruore he is
 alneway agrayþed / ase byeþ þe sspimen ine ssipe. þet
 ase zone ase he³ y-hyerþ þane smite of þe lodes-manne :
 hi yerneþ / hi lheaþeþ ase wode. þe milde bouȝþ gled-
 liche / uor he is ase þe hassasis. þet ys bliþe huanne he
 heþ þe heste onderuonȝe of his maistre. þet þe perils /
 and þe pinen / an þane dyab he onderuangþ þerwyþ /
 mid to greate blisse uor þe loue þet he heþ to þe obedi-
 ence. þeruore zayde dauib ine þe sautere. þet he louede
 betere þe hestes þet god him made : þanne he dede /
 gold / oþer stones of pris. þe milde him bouȝþ al
 simpleliche ase deþ þet hors / oþer þet ssep / þet þe
 ssepherde let huer ha wyle / þet ne zayþ neure huer-
 uore guo ich hider : more þanne þider. Vor one of þe
 guode doȝtren þet mildenesse heþ : is holy simplesse.

¹ *Zuȝftliche* in MS.

² *be-uore* in MS.

³ *hi?*

þe milde is wel trewe to god / ase is a guod lheuedi to hire lhorde. þet nele to nonen queme folliche bote to hare lhorde onlepiliche. and þeruore non ne bouȝþ zuo clienliche¹ / ne mid zuo clene onderstondinge : ase deþ þe zoþe milde. þet ne hateþ bote uor to kueme þe wordle. *Afterward* þe milde is wel zuift and wel ingnel / huanne uirtue of obedience and þe wyl of god / mid his ouerling him berþ. Ac huanne his oȝene wyl him berþ and let him. he is slac an sleuol wel to done. Ase is þe sterre þet hatte saturne makeþ þet asemoche yernþ in onelepi daye mid þe firmanent ase þe firmament hine let : ase he deþ ine þritti yer ine his oȝene sercle / and ine his oȝene yerninge. Ate laste þe milde bouȝþ generalliche oueral þer he ylefþ þet he queme to god / and ine alle þinges ase deþ þe asse of þe melle. þet ase blepeliche berþ bere : ase huete. and lyad. ase þet corn. to þe poure : ase to þe riche. *Afterward* þe milde is wel strang. uor he chongeþ his strengþe mid godes strengþe. ase zayþ ysaye þe profete. þeruore nis he naȝt : þet ne may bere. Vor god berþ and him and his berdone / hueruore he boȝþ wiþ guode wille and bleuin-deliche. uor he ne is neuremo weri / ne þe zonne þet god let / and brengþ uorþ. and þe more ha leueþ / þe more him wext his stre[n]gþe. alsuo ase þe litel amote. Nou miȝ[t] þou wel y-zy / hou mildenesse þe tekþ wel to serui / and parfittliche bouȝe.

The meek man is true to God.

He seeks not to please the world. He is swift to obey God, and slow to obey his own will.

He is like the Star Saturn.

He is like the mill-ass that will as lief carry barley as corn.

[Fol. 43. b.]

He is strong, for he changes his strength for God's strength.

He is like the sun that is never weary.

þe zixte boȝ of mildenesse.

þe greate maister of mildenesse Iesu crist þo he hedde y-preched / and y-ued þet uolk / and þe zike / and þe ymamed y-held. þo he uleaz aboue þe uolk in-to þe helle / uor to by ine bedes / ous uor to teche to beuly þet los and þe blondingges. and þeruore þe trewe herte milde / ase him pineþ to done wel huanne he bouȝþ. alsuo him paineþ to be-uly los / of him-zelue ansuerie uor þane wynd of ydele blisse / and þet

The sixth bough of meekness.

Christ was the great master of meekness.

He taught us to avoid praise and flattery,

wherefore the mild heart strives to befly all vainglory.

¹ MS. *chenliche*

His trust is in
a rock.

This rock is Christ.

Our Lord is a
dove-cot,
wherein resteth
the meek heart.

In recording the
life of Christ, the
mild heart forgets
all his sorrows.

He desires to be
lost to, and for-
gotten by the
world.

When alone he is
with his two
best friends,
with God and
himself.

He takes delight
only in what is
pleasing to God.

Thus the soul
loves solitude and
quietness.
Modesty is one of
the fairest
daughters of
meekness.

A maid in love
hath great shame
when she is
espied,

gadereþ uor þe rage / and uor þe tempeste of euele
tongen / ine þe ssede of þe roche. ase zayþ ysaye. þe
ilke roche is Iesu crist him-zelf. þet his reste / and
bri[3]tnesse to þe milde. þer him restep þe irchouon. ase
zayþ þe sauter. þet by þe milde herten y-carked mid
þornes of ssarpnesse of penonce. An þet is þet coluer-
hous / huerinne restep and him dep þe colure oure
lhord. þet byep þe milde herten and simple uor þe
uozeles of praye. þet byep þe dyeulen. Huanne þe
milde herte / heþ zuo moche y-do / þet he is y-guo in-
to þe hole of þo roche ase þe colure ine his coluerhous.
þet is huanne he recorderþ þet lif of iesu crist / and his
holy passioun : uor þanne he uoryet alle his zorþes /
and prayseþ lite al þet þe wordle heþ. and is worþ. and
may. Herte þet þis heþ a-sayd / nazt ne willieþ more /
þanne uor to by uorlore / and uoryete to þe wordle.
þe wordle is him prisoun. onhede / paradis. Vor ase
zayþ þe wyse of him-zelue. þet he ne is neuremo lesse
allone / bote huanne he is one. ne more ine niedes :
bote huanne he is ydel. Vor he ys þanne mid his
tuaye beste urief[n]des. þet is mid him-zelue / and mid
god. þer treteþ he of his greate quereles hueroore alle
opre niedes him þingþ truffes. þer he him to god / and
god to him / be holy þoztes / and be stedeuest wil.
þer he uelp¹ þe greate zuetnesse of confort / þet god
yefþ ine priué stedes / to þan þet him dredeþ. ase zayþ
þe sauter. and þanne alle speches / and alle wordes him
tyeneþ / and greueþ / bote-yef hi ne by to god / oper of
god / oper uor god. þous biginþ þe zaule to louie on-
hede / and stillehede. and þanne him wext ine herte
ane holy ssamnesse / þet is one of þe uariste doþter² of
mildenesse. Vor al ase a mayde þet be greate loue
loueþ / heþ² grat ssame heþ² þanne hi is aspid / and y-
herþ þet me spekp : of hire. alzuu heþ þe ilke huanne
hi y-hyerþ þet me spekp of hire : and of þe guodes þet
god him heþ y-do. And nazt uor þan hi dep ase dep

¹ An s has been cancelled before u.² So in MS.

þe ilke mayde strongliche opnome of loue.¹ uor huet þet
þe wordle zigge / oper conne speke : alneway zecþ hi þe
halkes and þe derne stedes. ase þe ilke þet ne zecþ bote
uor to by y-rauissed ase wes say[n]te paul.

and she seeketh
retired places.
[Fol. 44. a.]

So doth the
truly meek.

þE ZEUENDE BOȝ OF MILDENESSE.

Of þise aquayntonce and of þise priuité þe ilke holy
zaule be-ginþ to habbe of god be-tuene hire / and an
holy prede. Vor huanne hi is y-reaued / þanne to
heuene / hi lokeþ ope þe erþe uram uer / ase zayþ ysaye /
and hise yzyþ z[u]o lite to þe ziþþe of þe gratnesse of þe
heuene. zuo y-zieþ þe ilke greate uayrhede / zuo dim /
to þe ziþþe of þe grate briztnesse / zuo emti. to þe ziþþe
of þo greate blisse : þanne onworþeþ and misprayseþ to
þe zoþe al þet he heþ ine þe wordle of riches and of
worþssipe / of uayrhede / of noblesse. zuo moche him
þingþ þet hit is ase þe play of children a-midde þe
strete / huer y-noȝ hi trauayleþ and naȝt ne wynneþ.
Him hit þingþ þet hit is al wynd / and metinge / and
lyezynge / ase zayþ salomon. And þanne he be-ginþ
arizt to sterue to þe wordle / and libbe ine god / ase
zayþ zaynte paul. And þanne is hi zuo poure of gost :
þet hi ne heþ naȝt. Vor god him heþ zuo his oȝene
gost y-reaued and be-nome. and ayen y-ueld of his
oȝene / ase he dede þe apostles at lokes. þanne him
yefþ þe holy gost ane zuo greate herte : þet ne pros-
perité / ne aduerseté of þe wordle hi ne prazeþ ane
nhote. Ane zuo greate zikernesse of inwyȝt : þet hardi-
liche abit þane dyap. ane zuo greate hope heþ ine god :
þet þer ne is naȝt / þet hi ne dorste nime anhand uor
þe loue of god. Vor hi heþ þo byleue huer-of god speķþ
ine þe godspelle. þet is ase þet zed of mostard huerby hi
may hote to þe stones an to þe helles / and hi him
bouzeþ. þet zed o mostard is wel smal / ac hit is wel
strang / and wel bitinde. uor hit is hot ine þe uerþe
degre / ase ziggeþ þise fisiciens. be hete : me onderstant /

The seventh
bough of
meekness.
The holy soul
is proud of
her acquaintance
with God.

She looks upon
the earth from
afar, and sees its
littleness.

The world's riches
and honour
appear to her
utterly worthless,

and as wind,
dream, and lies.
Then she begins
to die to the
world and she
becomes poor
of spirit.

She cares not a
nut for the world,

and prefers
death to life.

She is ready to
undertake every-
thing for the
love of God,
so great is her
belief in Him.
This belief is as
the grain of
mustard-seed,
spoken of in the
gospel.

¹ MS. has *lone*.

The first kind of love is to love only oneself.
The 2nd is to begin to love God.
The 3rd is to know God better and to love Him for his goodness.
The 4th is to be so possessed with love as to love God only.
This last love hath the true meek one.
The poor of spirit are blessed in this world.

Hope makes the meek men to be kings of heaven.

[Fol. 44. b.]

The kingdom of heaven is theirs by behest and heritage.

The full possession shall take place in the next world.

Of the virtue of love.

Dread makes the heart mild (meek).

Pity maketh it sweet and merciful.
It is an antidote to envy.

It bestrips the root of envy from the heart.

It produces the root of good love.

from whence comes a fair tree.

loue. þe uerste stape of loue aze zayþ saynt be[r]nard is / huanne þe man ne can nazt louie : bote him-zelue / and his ozene guod. þe oþer huanne he beginþ god to louie. ac hit is uor his ozene guod. þe þridde / huanne he knauþ betere god / and him loueþ propreliche uor his guodnesse. þe uerþe. huanne he is zuo ynome of þe holy loue / þet he ne louie ne him-zelue / ne god :¹ bote uor god. þanne hyer let zoþe mildenesse þane man. Nou miȝt þou y-wyte openliche hou þe poure of gost byeþ y-blissed ine þise wordle. Vor hi ham byeþ zuo moche yloȝed / and emti / þet hire gost is al to nazte be-come.² and þe holy gost heþ þet hous ayen-yueld þet is lhord of þe herte. and uelþ zuo moche þet hi uelþ þe mylde. þet hi his makeþ king of heuene / be holy hope / and be zikernesse of inwyȝt. And þeruore zayþ oure lhord þet þe kingdom of heuene is hare / nazt wyþ-oute more be beheste : ac be saysyne zykere ase þe ilke þet beginþ to onderuonge þet frut and þe rentes hou hi ssolle by y-blissed ine þe oþre wordle. þet ne may non parfityliche y-wyte / al-huet he is þer. Vor herte of man dyadlich / ue may hit þenche / ne mouþ deuisi.

OF ÞE UIRTUE OF LOUE.

þe uerste yefþe of þe holy gost : makeþ þe herte milde and dreduol. and þeruore heþ he þane name / þe yefþe of drede. þe oþer makeþ þe herte zuete and milde / and piteus. and þeruore he hatte : þe yefþ of pité. þet is propreliche a dyau / and a triacle a-ye alle kueadnesse / and nameliche aye þet uenim of zenne of enuie / huerof we habbeþ beuore y-speke. Vor þis yefþe bestreþþ þe rote of enuie of þe herte / and hire help zikerliche. þanne þe herte þet onderuangþ þise yefþe / onderuangþ ane zuete deau / þet his makeþ springe / ane zofte rote / and wel y-tempred / þet is guod loue. þanne þer wext a trau uair and heȝ and wel berinde frut. þet is

¹ guod ?

² be-come in MS.

a guod uirtue and uayr / þet me clepeþ ine latin / man-
 suetudo / oþer beningnitas. þet is zuyetnesse of herte.
 þet makeþ man zuete and milde / manhede : and
 charitable. louiinde / and louerede / uor hi deþ man
 parfitliche louie his nixte ase him-zelue. þis trau heþ
 zeue stapes / huerby hit clyfþ an he3. þe ilke zeue
 stapes ous sseaweþ saynte paul / þer he ous amonestep
 and bit / þet we do oure payne / þet we by al on ine god.
 þet is þet we habbe one herte / and enne gost / an one
 loue in god. þe uerste scele hueruore we ssolle by al
 on. and þe he3e / and þe lo3e / and þe riche and þe
 poure / is uor þan / þet we alle habbeþ enne uader ine
 heuene / þet is god þet ous made alle comunliche to his
 anlicnesse an to his ymage. þeruore þanne þet we alle
 habbeþ enne sseppere / þet ous made alle of one
 materie / and heþ yssape. and to onelepi ende. þet is
 þet we by al on ine him / ase he zayþ ine his spelle.
 Mochil is grat scele þet we to-gidere louie. uor ech best
 ase zayþ salomouns loueþ his anliche. þe oþer scele is
 uor we byeþ alle cristene ine one cristenedome / and
 riche and poure. þet is þet we byeþ alle y-wesse of one-
 lepi le3e. þet wes mid Iesu cristes precieuse blod. and
 ybo3t mid onelepi moneye. and asemoche costnede þe
 on : ase þe oþer. Moche ssel þanne þe on louie þe oþer
 and worssipie / þet god heþ¹ zuo moche yloued and y-
 prayzed / and ymad of suo greate dingneté. þe þridde
 scele / uor þet we healdeþ alle one beleaue / and we
 byeþ alle ybounde mid one la3e þet is al uolued / ase
 zaiþ sainte paul ine þise worde. ‘Loue þine nixte ase
 þi-zelue.’ Of þise dette ne is non quit / uor þing þet
 he deþ. þise dette ssel ech to oþren. and huo mest his
 yelt : mest he ssel. þe uerþe scele is. uor we habbeþ
 ennelepi lhord / þet is god of huam we hyealdeþ alle
 and body / and zaule / and al þet we habbeþ. alle he
 heþ imad communliche / alle ybo3t communliche / to
 allen porueyþ communliche / and alle ssel deme com-

which is called
 “Sweetness of
 heart.”

This tree hath
 five steps by
 which we climb
 on high.

We should try to
 be all one in heart
 and spirit.

Because, 1st, we
 have one Father,
 that is, God,
 who made us all
 in his own like-
 ness.

Secondly, we are
 all Christians in
 one Christendom

and are all washed
 with the blood of
 Christ.

[1 MS. he3]

Thirdly, we all
 have one belief,
 and are bound by
 one law.

[Fol. 45. a.]

Fourthly, we
 have one Lord of
 whom we all hold
 both body and
 soul,

and by whom we
all shall be pun-
ished or rewarded.

Fifthly, we are
all fellow-soldiers
in the host of our
Lord,
and all look for
one reward.

Sixthly, we all
live by one spirit,

and are all God's
children by
adoption.

Seventhly, we are
all limbs of one
body, whereof
Christ is the head.
We all live on the
same meat, that
is, the flesh and
blood of Jesus
Christ.

Seven steps of
love spring out of
pity.

The boughs of
love.

Of this stock come
seven boughs,
for this virtue is
seen in seven
ways.

1. One limb for-
bears and bears
the defects of an-
other.

We should do to
others as we
would be done by.

munliche / and alle medi largeliche / þo þet habbeþ y-
hyealde his hestes / and þos ssolle by to-gidere yloued
treweliche. þe vifte scele is / uor þet we byeþ alle
uelazes ine þe ost of oure lhorde. and his kniȝtes / and
his soudeurs / þet alle we abydeþ on-lepi ssepe / þet¹ is
þe blisse wiþ-oute ende / huer þe loue and þe uelazrede
ssel by uoldo and y-confermed / þet hier ssel by wel y-
hote. þe zixte scele is uor þet we libbeþ alle of one
goste gostliche / ase we libbeþ of on eyr bodylich. Be
þa goste we byeþ alle goles children be adopcion / þet
is be auouerie / and children of holy cherche / broþer
germayn of uader and of moder / be ane broþerhede
gostlich / þet asemoche is worþ betere : þanne þe
broþerrede ulesslich. ase þe gost is more worþ : þanne
þet bodi. þe zeuende scele is uor þet we byeþ alle
lemes of one bodye. huerof Iesu crist is þet heaued /
and we byeþ þe lemes. þet we libbeþ alle of onelepi mete.
þet is of þe holy uless and of þe holy blod of Iesu crist
þet ous zuo moche loueþ / and zuo moche halt ous worþ :
þet he ous yeffþ his blod to drinke / and his uless to
etene. þeruore zuo ofte sainte paul dep ous to be-þenche
þise loue / þet he ous sseweþ. Vor more quic scele /
ne more uayrer uorbisne he ous ne may sseawy of zoþe
louerede. Yef þou wilt wel þenche to þise zeue sceles.
þou sselt vinde. zeue stapes of loue / þet comeþ of þe
yeffþe of pité.

þe BOȜES OF LOUREDE.

Of þise stocke wexeþ zeue boȜes. Vor þise uirtue
him sseweþ ine zeue maneres. ase me knauþ þane loue
þet is be-tuene þe lemes of þe bodye ine zeue manyeres.
Verst þe on leme uorberþ / and lokeþ an oþer / þet me
naȝt him misdo / ne angrisi / ne harmi / be his miȝte.
and ine þise we onderstondeþ² þe innocence þet we
ssolle loki þe on a-ye þe oþre. Vor þis heste is y-write
ine þe herte of eurichen. þet þou ne do to oþren : þet /
þet þou noldest þet he þe ne dede. ne þin riȝt hand

¹ MS. beþ

² orderstondeþ MS.

dede to pine left hand. Efterward þe on leme þoleþ
 zuetliche ¹ / of þe oþre þet he him deþ of angrice / and
 naȝt him ne aw[r]eȝþ. ne non arizinge of wreþe ne
 uelþ þe leme þe on aye þe oþer / ne ne of-hyealdeþ. Ine
 þisen we onderstondeþ to uohelle mildenesse þet heþ
 þri stapes. þe uerste is þet man him ne awreke naȝt. þe
 oþer þet me ne hyealde naȝt ire longe. þe þridde / þet
 man ne uele none arizinge of ire / ne of hate aye his
 nixte uor naȝt þet he deþ. Efterward þe lemes
 bouzeþ alle to hare ouerling. Vor hi doþ alle mid hare
 miȝte þet þe herte acseþ / and þet eȝe ham tekþ. Ine
 þan we onderstondeþ þe uirtue of boȝsamnesse huerof
 we habbeþ beuore y-speke / þet he ssel bi ine loue
 agrayþed / and ine charité / ase zaiþ zaynte peter.
 Efterward þe on leme helpþ and serueþ þe oþren wyþ-
 oute grochinge and wyþ-oute wyþzigginge / and wyþ-
 oute auarice. Ine þisen we onderstondeþ þe uirtue þet
 me clepeþ charité. þanne a man huanne he helpþ and
 him a-cordeþ blepeliche þe oþre mid þe helpe þet god
 him heþ y-yeue. oþer him ret / oþer tekþ / of his wytte
 þet he heþ. Oþer yeþþ and to-delþ largeliche uor god
 þe guodes þet he heþ. Oþer he chasteþ and diȝt þe foles
 be þe autorité þet he heþ. Ac þanne zayþ me þet he is
 uol of charité. And þous hit hat zaynte peter / þet þe
 guodnesse þet god ous heþ y-lend þet we hise diȝte to
 oure nixte. þanne tulles þe filozofe zayþ. 'we ssolle
 þenche þet al þet is ine þe wordle and wext : al hit is
 ymad man to helpe. an þe man uor to helpe þe on / þe
 oþren. byeþ beyete.' 'do we þanne' zayþ he / 'þet : huer-
 uore we byeþ ybore / and þet kende ous tekþ. and
 zeche we alle þet *commun profit*.' Vor ase zayþ zaynte
 paul. 'we byeþ alle lemes of onelepi bodye.' Efterward /
 alle þe lemes ueleþ / and drazeþ to ham þet me deþ to
 echen / by hit guod / by hit kuead. by hit blisse / by
 hit zorȝe. huanne me smit þane uot : þe mouþ zayþ /
 pou me blechest. Be þan we onderstondeþ þe uirtue

2. One limb does
not wreak its
spite on another.

¹ [MS. *zuetliche*]

3. The limbs
obey their head
(i. e., the heart
and the eye).

By this we under-
stand the virtue
of obedience.

[Fol. 45. b.]

4. One limb helps
and serves an-
other willingly
and gladly.
In this we see the
virtue of charity,

whereby one man
helps his fellow
Christians by his
advice,
his riches, or his
authority.

The philosopher
Tully saith we
should all seek
the "common
profit,"

as Nature teach-
eth us.

5. All the limbs
feel what is done
to one of them, be
it good or bad.

By this we under-
stand the virtue

of pity, that hath
two offices,

the one to be glad
of others' prosper-
ity, and to be sor-
rowful for others'
woe.

6. If one limb is
sick the others
heal it.

In this we under-
stand the virtue
of doom and
amendment,

and we learn how
to reprove, cor-
rect, and punish
the faults of one
another.

Faults should be
corrected by
love and com-
passion.

First, we should
apply the plasters
of sweet admo-
nitions,
afterwards the
powders of sharp
rebuke.

Next, the deeds of
teaching.

Then, if these fail,
must come the
sword of excom-
munication.

7. The limbs hon-
our one another,
and have a kindly

[Fol. 46. a.]

feeling for each
other.

The good man
bears patiently
with fools,

as the bones bear
the tender flesh.

8. The limbs pro-
tect each other.

of zoþe pité / þet we ssolle habbe *communliche* / þet
heþ tuaye offices / ase zayþ zante paul. Blisuol sselt
þou by / to þe guodes þet oþre habbeþ / and doþ.
Zorzuol sselt þo[u] by / to þe kuedes þet oþre ueleþ and
doþ. Efterward / yef þe on leme is zik / oþer y-wonded :
alle þe oþre him helpeþ to þet he by held. Ine þise we
ondersto[n]deþ þe uirtue of dom / and of amendement.
wiþ-oute huam / þet body of holy cherche ne may
yleste. Vor þe leme uorroted ssolde ssende þe hole.
Huo þet wile þanne conne hou he ssel his broþer chasti.
his nixte / oþer his seriont wyþnime / and punissi : nime
hede to him-zelue / huanne on leme is zik / oþer y-wonded.
hou moche zorþe heþ þe herte and *grat compassion*
y-uelþ. and be þe greate loue þet he heþ ine him / he
him deþ þe hand wel zueteliche. And aze zayþ senekes /
ase of þe bodye / alsuo of þe herte me ssel zueteliche þe
wonden agrayþi. Vor of zoþe loue / and of *grat com-*
passion ssolle þe amendes by y-do. and mid greate
drede he ssel þe honden do þerto. Verst he ssel þerto
do þe smeringes / and þe plastres of zuete warningges.
Efterward yef þet ne is nazt worþ : þe poudres efter-
ward and prekiinde / of harde wyþnimminge. Efterward
þe dedes of techinge. and yef he ne deþ wyþ-oute
emparement : þanne behoueþ come þet zuord hit uor to
dele / oþer be manzinge / oþer be hotinge out of con-
traye. oþer him do uram him-zelue. Efterward þe lemes
worssipeþ þe on / þe oþer. and uorbereþ. uor ase zayþ
zay[n]te paul. we ssolle bere ech oþren worþssipe / and
reuerence. and nameliche þo / þet habep mest nyede : of
uorberinge. þo byep þe meste foles / and þe fybleste.
zuiche me ssel mest uorbere. þanne þe guode man and
þe wyse bereþ / and uorbereþ alneway þe foles / and þe
fiebles / ase þe buones bereþ þe tendre uless. and þe pos[t]
þet hous. þis is aye þe missiggeres þet zuo moche
gredeþ bleþeliche þe kueades / and þe defautes þet hi
zyep ine oþren. Efterward þe on leme wereþ þet oþer

ate nyede / and him zet uor him. uor ate niede me
y-zijþ huo is urend. Huanne þe on uot slyt : þe oþer When the one foot
slips the other
helps it.
him helpp. An haste huanne me wyle smite þet heaued :
þe hand hire deþ be-uore. Ine þisen we onderstondeþ / In this we under-
stand pure love
and friendship.
uoluelde / and clene louerede. þeruore zayþ god in his
spelle. ‘þet more louerede ne may by : þanne zette his
zaule uor his urend.’ þise urendrede ous ssewede Iesu This friendship
Christ showed for
us.
crist þe zoþe urend þet uor ous layde his zaule and his
body to þe dyape. and þet dede he ous uor to yeuene
uorþysne. ase zayþ zaynte peter / and sain Ion zayþ. Wherefore we
ought to be will-
ing to give our
souls for our
brethren.
yef god layde his zaule uor ous : and we ssolle legge
oure zaules uor oure broþren / þet is uor oure nixte. yef
we byeþ a riȝt leme of þe bodie / huerof is þet heaued.
Huo þet þise uirtue hedde / ich wolde zigge openliche
þe[t] he ssolle by þe riȝte yblissed. þis is þe uirtue þet This virtue Christ
taught when he
said—
oure guode maister Iesu crist ous toȝte / þo he zede.
‘Yblissed byeþ þe milde : uor hy ssolle by in sayzine of
þe erþe.’ þet is to onderstonde ine þri maneres. Verst / “Blessed be the
mild, for they
shall possess the
earth.”
of þe londe of þe libbinde þet is god zelf / þet is 1. They shall have
God himself,
woniȝnge of þe libinde / þet is of þe halȝen / and of
guode men. Ase þe erþe is woniȝnge of bestes and of
men. And þeruor þet god þet is þe land of þe libbinde : who is the land
of the living.
he heþ his y-blissed in his saysine. uor hi ne makeþ
none stre[n]gþe þet quemeth god ine hire sayzine / ase zayþ
þe sauter. þe milde zayþ / he ssel habbe þet land ine None shall have
this possession
unless they are
lords of their
hearts.
kende. and saynt augustin zuo zayþ / þet non ne ssel
habbe god ine possession. Vor hi byeþ riȝtuolliche
lhordes of hire herten. ac ire / and felonie his
amaystreþ. þe milde amaiastreþ þe queade þeawes. And
betere is worþ / þet zayþ salomons / huo þet ouercomþ The meek man
subdues evil
habits.
wel his herte : þanne þe ilke þet nimþ be stre[n]gþe /
casteles and cites. Efterward / þe milde byeþ lhordes
of þe erþe / þet is of erþliche guodes. Vor yef hi hise
lyezeþ : hi ne wreþeþ ham naȝt / ne ne troubleþ. Ac þo
þet ham wreþeþ huanne hi hise lyezeþ / hi ne ne byeþ
naȝt lhordes : ac rapre þrelles. and þeruore he zayþ / hit 2. The meek are
lords of earthly
goods.
They grieve not
at the loss of
them,
and are not slaves

to worldly possessions.

The poor shall have heaven, and the meek the land where the "bitter and fell" shall be unknown.

[Fol. 46. b.]

The first step of Righteousness. The 1st gift of the Holy Ghost maketh man meek, the 2nd piteous, and the 3rd full of wit.

This last gift casteth out the root of ire, that driveth a man out of his wits.

This gift enlightens the heart, so that it is not beguiled.

The good men have "seven sights."

For they see into their hearts and all about them.

This gift is the master of works.

It is the line, rule, lead, and level.

It makes the line

is riȝt / þet þo þet habbeþ hier þe timliche guodes and gostliche / and ham-zelue ine possessioun. þet hi habbe ine þe ende : þet land of þe libbinde / þet is god himself ine possessioun. Ac nou onderstand and loke / þet / þet god yefþ to þe poure þe heuene. and to þe milde : þet land / huer ssolle by þe bitere and þe felle wyþoute / ine þe zorȝe of helle.

ÞE UERSTE STAPE OF RIȝTUOLNESSE.

þe uerste yefþe of þe holy gost / makeþ man milde / and dreduol. þe oþer him makeþ zuete / and pitous. þe þridde him makeþ briȝte to zyenne / and uol of wytte. and þeruore hit hatte : þe yefþe of wytte. Vor he makeþ man wytuol / and wys. and amesureþ alle þing. þes yefþe huanne he comþ in-to þe herte : bestreþþ and kest out þe rote and þe zenne of ire / and of felonye / þet troubleþ þe herte / and makeþ þane man al oute of wytte. zuo þet he no þing ne yziþ. ne uor him / ne uor oþren to lede. Ac þes yefþe alizt þe herte of ech half / zuo þet hi ne may by y-gyled of nonen. Ase þe yefþe of pité him makeþ innocent : zuo þet he nele gyly nenne. þanne saint Ion zayþ ine þe boc of zizþe ine goste. þet þe holy man þet wes uol of piȝe goste / wes uol of eȝen be-uore and be-hinde. And an angel ssewede to zacarien þe profete ane ston huerine werin zeue eȝen. þet byeþ þe zeue zizþes þet þe guode men habbeþ. Vor hi zyeþ briȝtliche / and ine hare herten / and al abo[u]te ham. þet is to zigge. be-neþe / and aboue / be-uore / and behinde / and of riȝt half / an of left half. þes yefþe is þe maister of workes. þet is to zigge / of þe uirtues of man. uor he deþ al to wyll. and to þe line / and to þe reule / and to þe leade / and to þe leuele. He nimþ uerst his priȝke. and his boune and þet is þet þe wyse zayþ. 'Of al þet þou sselst beginne : loke þane ende. and to huet heauede þou sselst come.' Efterward / he halt his line. uor he ne heþ beuore be

riȝte way / and be riȝte onderstondinge. naȝt ase þe
 eddre / oþer ase þe nox. Efterward. he deþ al be reule /
 þet makeþ þane wal emne / and man be þe *commune*
 lyue of þe guode / wyþ-oute vinde newe hedes. Efter-
 ward he proueþ ofte his work mid lead. uor he nimþ
 hede þet his tour / ne hongí / ne stoupi / ne ariȝ[t]half
 be *prosperité* : ne alefthalf : be aduersité. þes yefþe is
 priour ine þe cloystre of þe zaule. þet lokeþ þe ordre /
 and deþ hi loki oueral. Verst ine þe herte [þet] heþ tuo
 zides. þe onderstondinge. and þet wyl. þe skele / and
 þe affeccoun. Huanne þise tuo ziden / acordeþ : hi
 makeþ wel zuete melodie / and moche uayr seruice. þet
 is huanne wyl wyle / al þet cnderstondinge tekþ of
 guode. and guod wil uelþ : þet scele onderstant. nou
 onderstand wel þise tuo ziden / þet byeþ ine þe zaule /
 hou hy ssolle accordi. Ine þe one zyde byeþ uour lokes /
 and ine þe oþre : uour. Vor þe skele heþ uour offices.
 þet is uor to ascy. Vor to deme. Vor to beþenche.
 And to ssewy þet hi onderstant be worde. And þe ilke
 yefþe tekþ þane scele / þet hi ssel lyerni / and ascy.
 and ine huyche ordre / and ine huiche manere / and to
 huet ende. And þet is wel *grat* nied. Vor to misdo
 ine zuiche þinges / is wel *perilous*. He deþ þane sc[e]le
 onderstonde / and to lyerni þet / þet is nieduol and
 profitable / and oneste. and hire wyþdraȝþ of þe *con-*
trarie. A. god hou me lyst þane time and costni[n]gge
 uor to lyerni þing þet naȝt ne is worþ bote to ydele
 blisse / oþer to zenne Ac þe holy gost be þise yefþe
 tekþ liztliche. and makeþ man lyerni ordeneliche / þet
 is mest nyed to þe zaule to þe loue of god. and al
 makeþ to done ine riȝte onderstondinge / and to riȝte
 ende / þet is þe worssipe of god. and uor þe profit of
 his zaule. and uor to helpe his nixte. Efterward he
 deþ þane skele wel to zeche þet zoþe of þinges. and
 nameliche hou hi ssel beleue. Wel beleue is huanne
 me belefþ simpleliche al þet god made. zayþ. and hat /

of conduct to be
 straight.

It makes the life
 of the good even
 and uniform.
 It makes him firm
 and upright
 against prosperity
 and adversity.

This gift is the
 prior in the
 cloister of the
 soul.

The heart hath
 two sides :

1. The under-
 standing and will.
 2. The reason and
 the affection.
 When these ac-
 cord then is there
 sweet melody.

In each side are
 four locks.

Reason hath four
 offices :

1. To question,
 2. to deem,
 3. to bethink,
 4. to express
 thought by words.
 This gift (doom)
 teacheth reason
 what to learn and
 to ask,

and what is need-
 ful, profitable, and
 honest.

[Fol. 47. a.]

By this gift the
 Holy Ghost teach-
 eth man what is
 most needful for
 the soul to learn,

for the honour of
 God and its own
 profit.

He teaches the
 soul right belief,
 that is, to believe

without doubt
whatever God has
made, said, or
commanded.

True belief is not
hasty or slow.
It examines and
desires right judg-
ment.

It does not meddle
with matters that
do not belong to it.

This gift enables
reason to distin-
guish between
good and evil,

between little
goods and the
greater.

It causes man to
remember all
needful things
past.
To understand
things present, to
see the things
to come.

It makes man to
speak or to be
silent in season ;

so that each word
is of its right
weight, neither
too much nor too
little.

Throw not pearls
before swine.

wyþ-outē to moche acsi / and wyþ-outē to zēche þe red
of god / and þe dyepnesse of his domes / and þe
heȝnesse of his magesté / and þe skele of his opes. Wel
beleue is / huanne me ne lefþ ne to raþe. ne to late. ne
to alle / ne to nonen. uor þe on and þe oþer : zuo is
uice / ase zayþ seneke. *Afterward* wel acsi : wile wel
deme. Wel to deme be-longeþ þet me naȝt ne anfermi :
bote me hit habbe wel of-acsed. and þanne bote-yef me
by ziker : þet me ne entremetti to deme þing þet naȝt
to him ne belongeþ / ase byeþ þe þinges anhyalde. þe
onderstondinges of herten / of þinges þet ne moȝe torni
to þe riȝthalf / and to þe lefthalf / þet me his onder-
stonde ariȝt ine þe guode half. þanne þes gost / be þise
yefþe / makeþ þane scele wel to deme / and knawe
ariȝt. and to destincti be-tuene þe guode þinges and þe
kueade. be-tuene þe greate kueades and þe lesse. be-
tuene þe little guodes / and þe more. Vor he deþ ech
þing praysy / ase hit is be riȝte worþ. *Afterward* he
deþ þane scele beþenche. uor he be-þengþ to þe manne /
al þet him is nyed / ase god zayþ ine his spelle. þe
þinges þet byeþ y-pased / he hise deþ beþenche. þe
þinges þet byeþ present / he deþ his onderstonde / and
to y-zy. þe þinges þet byeþ to comene : he deþ poruay /
and ordayny. and þise byeþ þe þri deles of þe uirtue of
prudence be þe filosofe. *Afterward* he makeþ þane
scele be mesure speke / and bleþeliche by stille. and
speke onneþe. zuo þet þe speche come raþre te þe uile :
þanne to þe tonge. þet hi by y-weȝe ase guode moneye
and y-proued. ase zayþ. salomon. þet is þet hi by of
guode matire / ase of guod metal. and of guode sseppe /
þet is of guode manere y-speke. and hi habbe his riȝte
wyȝte / and his riȝte tale. þet is þet þer ne by ne to
moche / ne to lite / and þet hi by wel bezet. uor guod
moneye / ne guod word / me ne ssel naȝt y[e]ue uor
naȝt. Huerof zayþ ous god ine his spelle. þet we ne
þrauue naȝt oure pre-ciousse stones to-uore þe zuyn. þes

yefþe acordeþ / and ordeyneþ / þe oþer half of þe herte.
 þe[t] is þe wyl / huerof þer byeþ uour deles. Loue.
 Drede. Blisse. and zorþe. þet is / þet he habbe þet he
 ssel / and ase he ssel / and asemochē ase me ssel.
 and þet me yleue alsuo þet me ssel / and ase me ssel
 and ase moche¹ ase me ssel. Huanne þise uour
 deles byeþ atamed / þanne zayþ me þet þe man is
 attempre. Ase me zayþ of one rote / oþer of one herbe /
 þet hi is attempre / huanne hi is ne to chald / ne to
 hot / ne to wet. Alsuo ase to þe bodye of man / comeþ
 alle eueles uor þe destempringe of þise uour qualites /
 oþer of þise uour humours : alzuō of þe herte of þe
 manne comeþ alle þe uices / and alle þe zennes be þe
 distemperance of þise þeawes. Huanne þise tuo ziden
 of þe herte byeþ acorded and y-ordayned. þet is þe
 scele and þet wyl. þanne is þe man ordine wyþ-inne
 him-zelue. þet byeþ þe tuo roten of þe rote of ane wel
 uayre trawe. þet is of ane wel uayre uirtue þet me
 clepeþ riȝtuolnesse. Riȝtuolnesse is *propereliche* / þet
 me deþ be dome riȝtuol and trewe / ne to nessse / ne to
 hard / wyþ-oute bouȝinge to þe one half / ne to þe
 oþren. Huanne me geþ uorþ onlepiliche / and a-riȝt ase
 line. Vor riȝtuolnesse ne is oþer þing bote oninge /
 þet is trewþe. Huo þet heþ þise uirtue : he is guod
 iustise and wys. uor he ne deþ noþing bote hit by wel
 ofaced and y-trid / ase ssel do þe guode demere.
 þanne þe uerste stape of þise uirtue is / þet þe
 man by guod demere of his oȝene herte. uor he ssel
 guo in-to him-zelue / and ysy his inwyȝt and wel ex-
 amini his þoȝtes / and his wyȝles þet hi bi guode : oþer
 kueade. and al ordayny to þe lokinge of scele / zuo þet
 þe wyl and þe scele : by of one onyngē. Vor ase zayþ
 sain bernard. ‘uirtue ne is non oþer þing : bote þe
 onyngē of scele / and of wille.’ þet is huanne wyl comp
 wyþ-oute wyþȝigginge. speke / and maky / and do to
 worke þet scele zayþ / and sseweþ / and tekþ.

This gift governs the will.

The will hath four faculties, love, dread, bliss, and sorrow.

When these four are held in subjection, then they are “tempered.”

[Fol. 47. b.]

As all bodily evils arise from the “distempering” of the four humours, so all vices spring, from the “distemperance” of these four virtues.

The roots of the tree of “rightfulness” are a well-ordered reason and a subdued will.

Rightfulness is true and uniform conduct.

It is nothing else than union and truth.

He who hath this virtue is a good and wise judge.

The first step of this virtue is that a man be a good judge of his own heart.

Virtue, saith St Bernard, is the union of reason and of will,

that is, when the will obeys reason.

The second step of rightfulness. The second step is to hold the body in proper subjection.

Reason should be the arbitress between the spirit and the flesh.

So that the spirit be lord of the body.

For there is great need that moderation should be observed in meat, drink, and clothing.

[1 þe ?]

The five wits of the body should be under the authority of reason.

When these five wits are well guarded, then is the castle secure, for they are the gates and windows of the soul.

The third step of rightfulness.

[Fol. 48. a.]

The third step of this virtue is that man judges between himself and the things before him, that is, between himself and temporal possessions. The covetous are ensnared in the devil's nets.

þE 0þER STAPE OF RIȝ[T]UOLNESSE.

Of þise uirtue þe 0þer stape is. þet me by riȝtuol demere / and healde riȝtuolliche / þe line of riȝte. betuene him : and þet is onder him. þet is his bodi þet he heþ to loki. huich he ssel zuo norissi : þet he moȝe serui / and zuo teche / and chasti : þet he wyle bouȝe. Vor þe scele ssel by ase a trewe arbytres be-tuene þe goste and þe ulesse þet byeþ alneway striuinde. þet ssel loki þet riȝt / of one half : and of 0þre. Ine zuiche manere þet þe gost by guod lhord / and þet body : by guod sergont. Nou is hit *grat* nyed to hyealde in þise half oueral riȝtuolnesse / and mesure / ine mete / and ine drinke / and ine cloþinge / and ine hosiynge / and ine ssoinge. and ine alle þe þinges þet / þet bodi acseþ. Vor hit wel ofte bouȝþ more to / to ¹ moche : þanne to þe litle. Efterward hit behoueþ þe vif wyttes of þe bodie wel lede / and rede. be scele / and be riȝtuolnesse / zuo þet ech serui of his office wyþ-oute zenne / and wyþ-oute wyþnimminge. Ase þe eȝen : to zyenne. þe yearen : to hyere. þe nase : to ssmelle. þe mouþ : to zue[l]ȝe / and to sspeke. þe honden / and al þet body : to vele. Huanne þise vif wyttes byeþ wel y-loked þanne is þe castel ziker / and ysset. þet byeþ þe gates of þe zaule. þet byeþ þe wyndowes huerby comþ in / þe dyað ofte to þe zaule / ase zayþ þe profete.

þE þRIDDE STAPE OF RIȝ[T]UOLNESSE.

þe þridde stape of þise uirtue is. þet þe man by guod demere. and hyea[l]de riȝtnesse be-tuene him : and þan þet is beuore him. þet byeþ þe þinges of time / þet destrueþ ofte and bodi and zaule / huanne me deþ þerto to moche / ase doþ þe niþinges and þe couaytous. and alle þo þet þe wordle louieþ to moche. þet habbeþ zuo þe herten engrined ine þe dyeules nette / ase zayþ Iob. þet to timliche [eyse]¹ / and to nyedes wyþ-oute / þet to hare

¹ *cye* or *lost* seems wanting here to complete the sense.

herten hi ne moȝe guo in / ne hare lif ordayny. þanne
hit yualþ þet hit is zoþ / þet senekes þe wyse zayþ / þet
we be þan zenezþ alle / and foruions þet of þe parties of
þe liue ech þenche / and is soigneus. ac of al þe liue to
ordayny non ne þençþ / ne studeþ. Nou is þanne wel
grat nied þet me ne do naȝt to moche þe herte ine þise
þinges wyþ-oute. Vor huo þet him deþ to moche þerto :
he ualþ in þe hate / and ine þe couaytise of þe wordle /
þet is þe rote of alle uices / ase we habbeþ be-uore
y-ssewed

All sin who take
more care for the
things of life than
for the life itself.

Set not the heart
too much on out-
ward things, lest
it fall into worldly
covetousness,
that is the root of
all vices.

ÞE UERÞE STAPE OF RIȝTUOLNESSE.

þe uerþe stape of þise uirtue is. þet man clirliche
yzi ane his riȝthalf. þet is þet he nime hede to ham þet
byeþ guode / þet byeþ ase ane his riȝt zyde. and þet of
þe guode / and of þe wyse / he nime wyt / and uorbysne.
Ac ine þise zide hit be-houeþ hyealde riȝtuolnesse and
discrecion. Vor al uole ne moȝe naȝt guo be one waye.
ne alle þe guode / ne alle þe wyse / ne habbeþ naȝt one-
lepi grace. alsuo ase þe lemes of þe bodie / ne habbeþ
naȝt onelepi office. and þerof byeþ uele herten nouices
of þan / ase zayþ þe boc of collacions of holy uaderes /
þet draȝt of þe perfeccion of uirtue. Vor huanne hi
zyeþ ane man wel y-mad þet wyle profiti ine on stat /
oþer ine one grace: anon hy willeþ / and him y-lyche
wylleþ by. And huanne hi eft zyzeþ anoprene / þet
ine anopre stat / deþ manie guodes: alsuo hi wylleþ
and yerneþ efter. an alsuo to þe þridde / and to þe
uerþe / ne to nonen ham ne zetteþ. þo byeþ ase is. þe
yonge grihound / þet is yet al nouis / þet yernþ efter
eche beste / þet yernþ beuore him. and ne makeþ bote
him weri and his time lyese. þerof zet ysopes þe fable
of þe little hounde and of þe asse. þe hond at eche time
þet he yhyerþ [þet] his lhord comeþ hom. he yernþ to-yens
him / and lhappþ aboute his zuere. and þe lhord him
makeþ uayr chiere / and him froteþ / and makeþ¹ him

The fourth step of
rightfulness.

The fourth step of
doom is to take
heed to those who
are good, and fol-
low their ex-
ample.

Discretion is here
very needful.
All folk have not
the same virtues,
nor have the
limbs of the body
all one office.

Some novices en-
deavour to follow
the special virtues
of too many men,

and so attain to
none.
They are like the
young greyhound
that runs after
every beast that
it sees.

[exemplum.]

The fable of the
Little Hound and
of the Ass.

The hound wel-
cometh his master's
home-coming by
fawning and rub-

¹ maker in MS.

bing and fair
cheer.

The ass attempts
to follow the dog's
example,
and throws his
feet about his
master's neck,
and is well beaten
for his pains.

By such fables

[Fol. 48. b.]

the wise man
taught his house-
hold,
not to desire vir-
tues that were be-
yond their powers.
Wherefore take
heed of whom
thou takest pat-
tern.

The fifth step of
rightfulness.

It is necessary
that a man should
see clearly right
and left of him.
On the one side he
sees fools of whom
he should have
pity,

and should avoid
their follies.
Solomon took
note of the slug-
gard and his
doings.

Discretion is here
necessary.

We must pity and
not deride fools
and sinners.

greate feste. þe asse him be-þoʒte / þous ssolde ich
do / and zuo wolde mi lhord me louie. Betere he ssolde
me maki ioye / þet ich serui eche daye þanne þise
hounde þet him serueþ of naʒt? hit nes naʒ[t] longe efter-
ward þet þe asse ne yzeʒ his lhord come hom : he beginþ
to lheap / and yernþ to-yens him. and him þraup þe
uet aboute his zuere / and beginþ zinge grat-liche. þe
sergons þet hit y-zeʒe / nome steues / and byete þane
asse riʒt to þe uolle. And þerof þet he wende habb[e]
worþssipe / and guod : he hedde ssame and harm. Be
zueche fables wes y-woned þe wyse man teche his
mayné / and be þise uorbisne / he ham ssewed þet hi ne
ssolle naʒt wylni to þe graces huer hi ne moʒe naʒt
come to. and þet ilke zelue tekþ salomon. 'zone' zayþ
he / 'ne arere naʒt þine eʒen to riches' / þet is to
graces þet þe ne miʒt naʒt come to. þeruore hit is grat
nyed to habbe discrecion þet me zi of huam me may
uorbysne nime.

þE VIFTE STAPE OF RIʒTUOLNESSE.

Alsuo hit is grat nyed þet þe man zyz bry[3]te ane his
left half and þet is þe vifte ioyel / and þe vifte stape.
uor he ssel zyz þe foles and þe kueade / þet byeþ ase
a þe left half. uor by byþ a þe worse zide. to ham me
ssel nime hede uerst / uor þan þet he habbe pité an *com-*
passioun. Efterward uor þet me be-ulyʒt hire folye / and
hire uorlyezinge / ase zayþ þe wyse salomon. 'Ich wente'
he zayþ 'be þe uine / and be þe ueldes of þe fole slen-
uolle. and izeʒ þet al hi weren uolle of nettlen and of
þornes / and of þise uorbisne ich habbe y-nome wyt /
and po[r]ueyonce.' uor me kan zigge : þet zoʒte he him
chastep : þet be opren him chastep. Efterward / uor
þan þet me louep more god / be huam man is *quit* of
zuyche zennes. Ac moche hit behoueþ ine þa zyde / to
loki riʒtuolnesse / and discrecion. Vor huanne ich zyz
þane fol and þane zenegere / ich ssel habbe pité / and

mid polyinge. and nazt maki þerof bisemers an scornes.
 Ich ssel alneway hatye þe zenne: and louie þe kende.
 and wel me behoueþ to loky þet ich ne wille ine mine
 herte nenne deme. ne me anlicny to nonen. uor þaz he
 by kuead to day: he may by guod to morþe. and zuich
 is to day guod: ha may by kuead to morþe. Efterward
 ich me ssel ase moche ase ich may wyþ-oute misdoinge
 a-yens ham paye. and condecendre ine dede / and ine
 speche / ham uor to wynne to god. and wyþ-draze uram
 zenne. Vor ase zayþ senekes / and saynt gregorie. 'we
 ne moze nazt / þo þet bieþ yualle: a-rere. bote-yef we
 wyлле hou þet hit by to ham bouze.'

Let us hate sin
but love the sin-
ner.

The bad man may
be good to-mor-
row.

Try by kind
actions and words
to win the sinner
back to God.

þe zixte stape of riȝtuolnesse.

þe zixte stape is / þe zixte eze: þet habbeþ þe guode
 men. þet is þet hi yzy briȝtliche be-hinde þe grines and
 þe dyeules ginnes / þet byeþ ous ase be-hinde. Vor þe
 vyend ous y-zizt / and we him ne more¹ ysy. Oure
 vyendes: þet byeþ þe dyeulen / þet byeþ wel stronge
 and wyse / and sotile and soigneus ous to gyly. Vor
 hy ne zuykeþ neure niȝt ne day / ac alneway bieþ ine
 waytinge uor ous to gily be hare crefte / an by hire
 ginnes / huerof hi uzeþ more þanne a þosend maneres.
 and ase zayþ saint gregorie. þe dyeuel yzizþ wel sotil-
 liche þe stat of þe manne / and his manyere / and his
 complexioun / and to huet vice he ys mest bouȝinde.
 oþer be kende / oþer be wone. and of þo half him
 asayleþ stranglakest. þane colrik: mid ire: and mid
 discord. þane sanguinien: mid ioliueté / and mid
 luxurie. þane fleumatike: mid glotonye / and be
 sleaupe.² þane melanconien: mid enuie / and mid
 zorþe. And þeruore him ssel eurich more defendi of þo
 half huer ha yzizþ þet his castel is mest fyeble / and
 aye þe ilke vice uiȝte / huer ha zizþ þet he is mest
 asayled. ine zuyche guod / þet he / ne spari nenne. uor

The sixth step of
rightfulness.

The sixth step is
the sixth eye that
the good have,
by which they see
the devil's snares.

Our enemies are
the devils, that are
strong, wise, sub-
tle, and busy us to
beguile.

They never cease,
but are always in
wait to deceive us.

The devil knows
what is man's be-
setting sin.

Some he assails
[Note hyer wel.]
with anger and
discord, others
with luxury,
and with envy.

[Fol. 49. a.]

Therefore man
must defend the
weakest part of
his castle.

¹ moze = may.

² At bottom of page are the catch words *and mid sleupe*.

The spirits of
men and angels
are a spiritual
mirror.

The soul receives
imprints of ob-
jects be it sleeping
or waking.

One mirror will
reflect the forms
seen on another.

Divers forms are
reflected from the
devil upon the
soul of man,

just as one re-
ceives impressions
of objects in the
pearl of the eye.

It is a difficult
thing to distin-
guish between the
thoughts of the
heart, and those
set there by the
devil.

They may easily
recognize some of
the devil's
thoughts,
but others are
more subtle and
dangerous.

One must try the
"ghosts" ere one
receive them.

he is hardy / and bold. ase þe ilke þet assaylþ godes zone
his lhord Iesu crist. 'Yef þou [wost']¹ / zede oure lhord to
iob / 'ine hou uele wyzen he him desgyzeþ' / alsoe ase
yef he zede non ne wot bote ich. Vor ase zayþ saynt
denys. 'al[l]e þe angles and þe guode and þe kueade / and
alle þe gostes of men byeþ ase a ssewere gostlich.
þanne ase a ssewere onderua[n]gþ anhaste alle þe ssepþes
and þe prientes þet comeþ him be-uore : alsoe deþ þe
gost of þe manne / by hit slepinde by hit wakinde.
Nou nim þanne ane mirour and zete hine to-ayens an
opren. an haste alle þe ssepþes þet byeþ ine þe onen þou
sselt yzy ine þe opren.' Ine zuyche wyse me zayþ þet
þe dyeuel sseweþ to þe goste zuiche, sseppinges and
zuiche figures ase he wyle huanne god hit þoleþ / and
þe zaule hit onderuangþ al a-ye his wyl. and oþerhuil hit
is ase to þe þozte / oþer ase to þe ymaginacion ase a-ye
mi wyl / me be-houeþ to zyenne and o[n]deruonge ine þe
perle of þe eze þe ssepþe of þe þinge þet is him be-uore.
Nou is hit a wel grat grace of god / and a wel grat
yefþe of þe holy gost / onderstonde wel þe speches alle /
of þe dyeule / and knawe wel alle þe uisages. Vor ase
zayþ saynt bernard. hit is wel sotil þing / and strang to
conne / distincti be-tuene þe þoztes þet þe herte þengþ :
and þo þet þe viend : þerinne zet. Huanne he comp
ase uelaze / oþer ase uriend / oþer ase chapman. and
sseweþ þe zennes / hou hi byeþ likinde. and lostuolle /
liztliche me may hit knawe. Ac huanne he comp ine
gyse of angle / and sseweþ þet guod : uor to draze to
kueade. þanne is þe temptacion mest strang. And
þereuore zayþ saynt Ion. þet me ne leue nazt þe gostes /
ac þet me hise prouy erþan þet me hise onderuonge. zuo
dop þo / þet makeþ hire sristeuader guod / and holy
man / and wys / and wel yproued ine zuiche þinges
timliche / to huam hi sseweþ ofte / and grat / and smal /
alle þe þoztes þet to þe herte comeþ and guode / and

¹ This word is necessary to the sense.

kueade. Vor ase zayþ solomons. ‘y-blyssed he is : þet alneway is dreduol.’ and ine an oþre stede zayþ he. ‘Do be red al þet þou dest / and efterward hit ne ssel þe uorþenche.’

“Blessed is he,”
saith Solomon,
“that always is
cautious.”

ÞE ZEUEDE STAPE OF RIȜTUOLNESSE.

Þe zeuende stape / is þe zeuende eȝe. þet hit behoueþ habbe þet wile habbe þise uirtue. þet is þe ilke þet an heȝ lokeþ / þet heþ god alneway to-uore him. Of þan zayþ oure lhord ine his spelle. ‘Yef þine eȝe is simple and clene : al þi bodi ssel by elyer and brizt. And yef þin eȝe is wycked and dym : al þi bodi ssel by þyestre and dim.’ þet is to zigge / yef þin onderstandinge of þine herte is clen¹ and simple / and geþ uorþ þane riȝte way ase streng al a-midde þise stapes alle / þet we habbeþ y-nemned / þe hyap of þine workes ssel by uayr and elier / and lykinde to god. And yef þe onderstondi[n]gge is wrong. oþer yef hy tuystep oþer wyþwent ayen ase deþ þe quarteus al þe inwyt ssel by piestre / and þe hieap of uirtues. Vor wyþ-oute riȝtuolle onderstandinge : elmesse be-comp zenne / and uirtue vice. þe onderstandinge is simple / þanne þe man deþ guode workes riȝtuolliche uor god. Hy is wrang / huanne he hise deþ uor þank of þe wordle / oþer uor ydeleblisse. Hy tuystep ine tuo : huanne me wynep of one half to god : and of oþerhalf to þe wordle. Ac hi went ayen : ase deþ þe cerceaus huanne þe man zekþ his oȝene note in al þet he deþ. Nou hest þou y-herd þe zeue stapes huerby þis trau clifþ an heȝ.

The seventh step
of rightfulness.
The seventh step
is the seventh
eye that one ought
to have,
and which hath
God always be-
fore it.

If the eye is dim
thy body will be
dark.

If the understand-
ing is clean and
simple,

thy works will be
fair and clean.

[Fol. 49. b.]

Without right
understanding
aïms become sin.

The understand-
ing is wrong when
it tries to please
the world instead
of God.

OF ÞE BOȜES OF RIȜTUOLNESSE.

Þe boȝes of þise trawe : byep þe zeuen principals uirtues / þet ansuerieþ² to þe zeue vices. ase deþ boȝsamnesse a-ye prede. Loue : a-ye enuye. Mildnesse : a-ye felhede. Prouesse : a-ye slacnesse. Largessè : a-ye scarsnesse. Chasteté : a-ye lecherie. Sobreté a-ye glo-

Of the boughs of
rightfulness.

There are seven
boughs :

1. Obedience.
2. Love.
3. Mildness.
4. Prowess.
5. Liberality.
6. Chastity.
7. Sobriety.

¹ Written *clene* in MS.

² Written *ansuerieþ* in MS.

These seven virtues leadeth aright the ghost of wisdom.

Discretion is the carter of virtues, and the rudder of the ship, that is, the soul.

Without discretion virtue becomes vice.

These seven virtues before mentioned are the boughs of equity, and they produce the fruit of good works.

"Blessed be those," said Christ, "who in all things hold to discretion."

He does not say blessed be they who sin not,

but "blessed be they who weep,"

that is, who see and know their faults,

and are sorrowful because of their sins.

The world is called the vale of tears,

because none may live without tears, that hath the gift of wit.

tounye. þise zeues uirtues lokeþ and ledeþ wel riȝte and wel zikerliche þane gost of wytte þet hise let be þe waye of riȝtuolnesse. ase zayþ salomon. be huiche waye : discrecion and scele / þet is þe cartere of uirtues. ase zayþ sant bernard. and þe roþer of þe ssiþe of þe zaule his let and brengþ uorþ. þet hi ne guo naȝt amis ariȝthalf ne alefthalf. and þus hi profiteþ and wexeþ and bereþ frut to þe uolle. þeruore þanne þet þe uirtue of riȝtuolnesse / be discrecioun him sseweþ ine alle þe workes of oþre uirtues. and wyþoute þise / alle þe oþre uirtues lyezeþ þane name of uirtue : and becomeþ uices. Zigge ich wel / þet in on wyt / þise zeue uirtues be-uore yzed byeþ þe bozes of riȝtuolnesse and al þet frut of guode workes þet of ham wexeþ / belongeþ to þise trawe. Nou onderstan[d] wel hou þegreate maister of uirtues ous spekþ of þise uirt[u]e / uor hi ne is naȝt ine his reule. 'Yblessed byeþ þo þet riȝtuolnesse hiealdeþ oueral / and ine alle þinges habbeþ discrecion and mesure wyþ-oute misnimynge.' Vor we ne habbeþ hire onneaþe y-wonne. Vor non ne is þet ne misnimþ ine uele maneres. And þeruore ous conforteþ wel zueteliche oure zuete maiste[r] Iesu crist huanne he ne zayþ naȝt. 'y-blissed byeþ þo þet ne zenezeþ ne misnimeþ / ac doþ al be riȝtuolnesse / and be lingne.' Ac he zayþ wel cortaysliche uor to conforti þe zenuolle. 'Yblissed byeþ þo þet wepeþ / uor hy ssolle by confortet.' þet is to zigge : þo byeþ yblissed : þet yzyeþ and onderstondeþ and knaweþ wel hire defautes : ine alle þise zeue poyns of riȝtuolnesse þet we habbeþ hier y-nemned / and þeruore wepeþ and byeþ zorȝuol þet hi uindeþ zuo ofte onriȝt / huer hi ssolden healde and uinde riȝtuolnesse. Vor þeruore is þe wordle y-cleped þe dane of tyeares. and non ne may ine þe wordle libbe : wyþ-oute tyeares þet heþ onderuonge þe yefþe of wyt / huerof we habbeþ yspeke. þanne behoueþ ase zayþ salomon. uor huo þet mest can / and mest zyȝþ þe zorȝes and þe kueades of þe wordle : þe

more heþ zorþe to his herte / and tyeares / and wepinges. [Fol. 50. a.]
 And þus beginþ þis wordle to tyeny. And þe more þet
 tyeneþ þis lif: þe more me wynneþ þet oþer. And
 þerof wexeþ oþre tyeres uor þe wynninge of þe oþre liue.
 Nou sselþ þou þus þenche. Zix maneres of tyeres þet
 þe holy man heþ ine þise wordle be þe yefþe of wytte.
 þe uerste comeþ of þet me zyzt þet me heþ god ofte
 ywreþed be þozte / be speche / and be dede. þe oþer
 comeþ þerof þet me yziþ þe greate tormens hidouse
 an eurelestinde of helle. Huerof ech man ssel habbe
 grat drede. þe þridde wexeþ of þe kueades / þet me
 yziþ þe guode þolye. þe uerþe comeþ of þe zennes þet
 þe kueade doþ. þe vifte uor þise liue þet tyeneþ / and
 uor þe oþre þet deþ auerst. þe zixte comeþ of deuocoun
 and of grat plenté and of blisse of þe presense of
 Iesu crist / and of þe uelinge of þe holy gost. and þise
 byeþ arizt yblissed þet zuo wepeþ / uor hi ssolle by
 y-conforted ase zayþ þe writinge. Alsuo ase þe norice
 conforteth þet child þet wepþ. uor hi wypeþ þe ezen /
 and him kest / and hi deþ him leze be strengþe. alsuo
 ssel do oure lhord to ham þet wepeþ ine þise wordle ase
 ich habbe yzed. Vor he wyle zuo wyþi hare ezen / þet
 neuremo ne ssolle wepe / ne ne ssolle yuele kuead ne
 zorþe. Ac euremo ssolle by myd god ine paise and ine
 lezinge and ine blisse wyþoute ende.

Sorrow causes
man to dislike the
world,

and to desire the
other life to come.
Six manner of
tears the holy man
sheddeth.

1. The first come
because of God's
anger.

2. The second
come because of
the torments
of hell.

3. The sufferings
of the good.

4. The sins of the
wicked.

5. Weariness of
this life, and
desire of the
other.

6. Devotion and
bliss caused by
the presence of
Christ and the
Holy Ghost.

As the nurse com-
forts and wipes
the eyes of the
weeping child,

so our Lord com-
forts the mourn-
ers.

Evermore shall
they be with God,
in peace, laughing,
and bliss.

OF ÞE YEFÞE OF STRENGÞE.

Nou we habbeþ yspeke of yefþes and of uirtues /
 þet gouerneþ þo þet ine þe wordle libbeþ mid þe lozeste
 of þri states / huerof we habbeþ beuore y-speke. Nou
 ssolle we mid þe helpe of þe holy gost speke of þe
 yefþes and of þe uirtues þet more propreliche belongeþ
 to ham þet þe wordle onworþeþ / and to þe heze helle
 of perfeccion wynneþ. Of þan zayþ propreliche Iob.
 þet lyf of man ope þe erþe: is ase kny[3]thod. Vor
 mannes lyf ine þe erþe: is ase borgeysye. Nou yziþ

Of the gift of
strength.

We have spoken
already of the
virtues which
govern those in
the world.

Now we shall
speak of those
virtues which be-
long to them
that despise the
world.

Life of man on
earth is as knight-
hood or as citizen-
ship.

Much has the one
of new and diverse
thoughts,

and strives to be
rich and esteem-
ed.

The knight de-
sires to act court-
eously and liber-
ally,

and to purchase
fame and high
station.

Some men keep
from great sins,
do penance, &c.,
and it sufficeth
them if they may
be saved at last.

Others are dis-
gusted with
worldly perils,
sins, and pains,
and have no peace
of mind.

[Fol. 50. b.]

They see no
treasure to be
compared to God's
love,
and had they
God's love, peace
of heart, and joy
of soul, they
would think them-
selves more than
emperors.

When God gives
man the gift of
strength,

He gives him a
new, noble, and
hardy heart,

that enables him
to endure all the
world's threaten-
ings.

He only is wise
who despises
harm for his
friend, i. e. God.

ane yongne boryeis and ane newene kniȝt. Mochel
habbeþ þos of uele þoȝtes newe diuerses and wyluolle.
þe borgeys wylneþ to chapfari / an to wynne and to
gaderi. and þe ende of his wylle is al þerto : þet ha by
riche ine guodes. and ine his tounne y-worþssiped. þe
knyȝt newe / geþ al anoþerne way. Vor he wilneþ
corteysyes to done / an largeliche yeue / and kny[3]thod
to lyerny and guo to armes. kueades to þolye / ssewy
prouesses. porchaci los / and ine heȝe stat cliue. þise
tuo states we zyeþ aperteliche ine tuo maneres of uolke.
huerof þe on is / þet wel ham wylleþ uram greate zenne
loki / do penonce. yeue elmesse. hyealde godes hestes /
and of holy cherche and wel ham hit were ynoȝ / yef hi
miȝte ate ende be¹ zuo moche by y-borȝe. þise byeþ ine
guod stat / and wel ham moȝe soui. þe oþre byeþ to
huam þet þe wordle anoyþ uor þe perils and þe zennes
and de² pinen / huerof hi is al uol. zuo þet non ne may
habbe pays of herte / ne stedeuest inwyȝt. Hi yzeþ of
oþer half þet þer ne is no tresor þet moȝe³ by worþ to
godes loue. no zuyetnesse zuo grat : ase pays of herte.
no blisse of þe wordle þet by worþ / to þe blisse of
klene inwyȝt. zuo ham þingþ and wel hit is zoþ / þet
huo þet þise þri þinges may winne : he ssolde by more
þanne emperour. ac þet is zuo grat þing þet ueawe þer
byeþ zuiche / þet dorre þise niminge maki. ac huanne
god yefþ to þe manne þise grace. and þe ilke yefþe þet
me clepeþ þe gost of strengþe. he hym yefþ ane newe
herte / ane noble herte / and hardi. Noble : uor to
onworþi al þet þe wordle mai behote / and yeue.
Hardyesse uor to þolie alle þe kueadnesse þet þe wordle
may þreapni. And of þise hardiesse speķþ oure uader
huanne he zede. þet 'yblysseþ byeþ þo þet habbeþ
honger and þorst / of riȝtuolnesse.' Salomon zayþ. þet
'he is riȝtuol / þet onworþeþ his harm / uor his uryend' /
þet is uor god / þet is riȝt urend. And saint bernard
zayþ. 'he ne is naȝt riȝtuol / þet ne yziȝþ naȝt ine his

¹ *bo* MS.

² So in MS.

³ *more* ?

herte: and uelþ / and onderstant / þet he is yeldere.
 and a-yens god of treuþe / toppe alle þing.' þe ilke þet
 zopliche wylneþ mid al his herte to yelde þise dette to
 gode / þe ilke is of þan / huerof oure lhord speķ
 huanne he zede. þet þe ilke byeþ yblissed / þet habbeþ
 hunger / and þorst: uor riķtuolnesse. he ne zayþ naķt /
 'y-blissed hi byeþ þo þet habbeþ / oþer þet doþ riķtuol-
 nesse: ac þo þet habbeþ hunger and þorst.' Vor þis
 riķtuolnesse ne may by yhyealde / ne þis dette ne may
 by uolliche y-yolde / ine þise wordle. Ac ine þise
 wordle hi is y-wylned / and ine þe oþre / y-payd.
 þeruore ne zayþ naķt oure guode lhord and mayster.
 'þo byeþ yblissed þet þise riķtuolnesse ssolle do / and þet
 þise dette ssolle yelde.' Ac he zayþ wel cortayslaker /
 ase he þet wot oure pouerté. 'Yblisseþ¹ byeþ þe ilke
 þet of þise riķtuolnesse / habbeþ hunger / and þorst.'
 Vor he ne akseþ naķt þet we him yelde hyer his dette /
 ac hit is him ynoķ / yef we habbeþ guod wyl to yelde.
 þis wylninge huanne hi is zoþ in herte / behoueþ þet he
 hit ssewy be dede. Vor ase zayþ salomon. 'non ne may
 þet uer ine his bosme hede / þet his robe ne berne.' þis
 ssewyngne ne may bi wyþ-oute uirtue / and wyþ-oute
 prouesse. Vor be wytnesse / ne by playtinge: me ne
 proueþ naķt þet he by guod knyķt / ac be moche dede
 of armes / and be moche poliyngne / and to y-leste.
 And þet is þe uerþe uirtue / þet þe holy gost yefþ to
 þe manne uor to strepe of al: in al. þe uerþe vice.
 þet is þe zenne of sleawþe and of onlosthede. þis
 uirtue is of zuo greate digneté / þet amang alle þe oþre
 uirtues / þis one berþ propreliche be him-zelue þane
 name of / uirtue. Vor uirtue / and prouesse is al on.
 þise uirtue / god yefþ to his sergons / huanne he his
 wile maki kniķtes / ase he dede to his apostles at lokes.
 of huam we redeþ / þet hi weren zuo dreduol / þet hi
 ne² dorste guo out of hare house / alhuet hi weren mid

Man is a debtor
to God.

Blessed are those
that hunger and
thirst after right-
eousness,

This rightfulness
may not be fully
obtained in this
world.
It is desired here
and got in the
other world.
Christ does not
say they are
blessed who have
this righteous-
ness,

but those are
blessed who desire
it in their hearts.

This desire ex-
hibits itself in
virtue and in
prowess.

The good knight
proveth himself
such by his deeds
of arms.

Prowess strips
man of sloth and
idleness.

God bestows it on
his servants,
as he did at
Pentecost to His
apostles,

who nevertheless
were timid and
cautious.

¹ So in MS.

² no in MS.

[Fol. 51. a.]

þise uirtue yarmed. Ac more hi yeden ledinde blisse /
 huanne me dede ham ssame and hardnesse.

The division of
 virtue (prowess).

The old philoso-
 phers divided
 this virtue into
 six parts.

Our Lord added
 a seventh point.

1. Magnanimity.
2. Affiance.
3. Security.
4. Patience.
5. Stedfastness.
6. Magnificence.
7. Hunger and
 thirst of right-
 eousness.

Magnanimity is
 highness, great-
 ness, nobleness of
 will, and of great
 aspirations.

[i. *deles* ?]

The first division
 of it is prowess—
 a noble contempt
 of difficulties.

The second is
 rational enterprise
 of difficult things.

He who has this
 virtue thinks but
 little of the cares
 of the world,

counting them
 no more than a
 spider's web.

Solomon truly
 said, "All is
 vanity."

The world is
 vanity, and full
 of vanity.

ÞE TO-DELINGE OF VIRTUES.

þe filozofes þet of þise uirtues drozen / hi to-delden
 þise uirtues ine zix deles. þet byeþ ase zix stapes /
 huerby þise uirtues cliueþ / and profiteþ. Ac oure
 master þet made þe filozofes / and filozofie. þet is Iesu
 crist : he zet / þane zeuende poynt. þe uerste poynte
 of prowess / hi clepieþ / magnanimité. þæ oper :
 fiaunce. þe þridde : zikernesse. þe uerþe : polyinge.
 þe uifte : stedeuestnesse. þe zixt : magnificence. þe
 zeuende þet oure mayster zette : hatte hunger and þorst
 of riztuolnesse. þise uirtues me ne may nazt propre-
 liche nemni ase onderstondinge hise to-diȝt / ine latin.
 Magnanimité is heȝnesse. gratnesse. and noblesse of
 wylhede / huerby þe man is hardi ase lyon / and of
 greate nimminge. þis uirtue heþ tuo delles.¹ greate þinges
 onworþi. and wel *grater* to nime an hand / and to
 chiese. Of þe uerste dele : zayþ zaynt austin. Prowesse
 is / huanne corage onworþeþ / al þet ne is nazt in his
 pouer. þet is al þet he may lyese / wylle him nolle
 him. And seneke zayþ. 'amang wordleliche þinges / no
 þing ne is *grat* / bote herte / þet greate þinges onworþeþ.'
 Of þe opre dele zayþ þe filozofe. þet 'magnanimité / is
 renable nimminge of heȝe þynge / and dreduol.' Huo þet
 þise uirtue heþ : he yziȝþ þe wordle uram uer. ase zayþ
 ysaye. þe profete. And þus him þingþ al þe wor[d]le lite /
 ase a sterre hit þincþ to ous. þanne al þe wordle / and
 alle þe bisyhedes / and þe greate niedes of þe wordle
 him þingþ ase nazt. and þeruore hise ne prayzeþ nazt /
 bote ase þe web of þe spiþre. þanne salomon huanne he
 hedde al þe wordle y-went. and of alle þinges / and of
 foles / and of wyse ystrüed. he zayde his dom ine zuiche
 manere. 'ydelnesse. ydelnesse. ydelnesse. and al þet ich
 izi : is ydelnesse.' þet is to zigge / þe wordle is ydel-
 nesse. and zuo hi is al uol of ydelnesse. And þe man

him-zelf uor huam þe wordle is y-mad : zuo is al ydel-
 nesse. uor ine him is alle manere ydelnesse / ase zaip
 þe sauter. ydelnesse / be steruinge. Vor his lyf ulizþ
 ase ssed. ydelnesse / be bysihede. Vor þise bysyhede
 byeþ ase meteles. Ydelnesse / be kueadnesse. Vor
 zenne him makeþ more nazt / þanne þing þet is ine þe
 worddle. Nou is þanne þe uerste del of þise uirtue.
 þet him dep þe wordle onworpi / ase habbeþ ydo ine
 ariere and þe filozofe payen. and þe holy cristene man.
 þe oper del is zuo / þet hi makeþ þane way of perfec-
 cion to nimene. and þet lyf þet zuo moche sseweþ ssarp /
 an dreduol to chiese. þet is þe way þet let in-to þe
 helle of god. þet is ine þe stat of perfeccion. þet is þe
 way of priué red / of oure lhorde / þet he ssewede to
 his apostles ine þe helle / huerof þis bok spekp. þerne
 way chy[e]zeþ þo. to huam ne is nazt yno3 to loki / þe
 hestes of god / huerto hi byeþ y-hyealde. and wylleþ
 uoluelle his redes / huer hi ne byeþ nazt be dette y-
 hyealde / ase byeþ þo / þet leteþ al þet hi habbeþ : uor
 god. and y[e]ueþ ham to sterue / uor þe loue of him : þet
 starf uor ham. oper ine þe londe be-yende þe ze / oper
 ine anopre stede. And ase dop þo / þet uorleteþ / and
 al onworpeþ uor god. and guodes. and uryendes. and
 ham-zelue. and makeþ ham-zelue þrelles of opren þet
 weren vry. and makeþ ham-zelue poure : þet weren
 riche : oper myzten by. hy dop ham to þolye grat
 ssarpnesse / þet hedden ine þe wordle : greate lostes.
 ase byeþ manie / þet byeþ ine religion. and of herte /
 and of bodie. Vor litel is worþ to by ine religion /
 oper ine ssarpnesse of penonce / yef þe herte ne is nazt
 þerto. Vor þe clopinge / ne makeþ nazt þane monek.
 ne þe armes þane knyzt : ac þe guode herte / and þe
 dedes of prouesse.

This life flies as a
 shadow.
 Its cares are as
 dreams.

The first step then
 of this virtue is
 to despise the
 world.

The second is to
 undertake
 the way of per-
 fection, that lead-
 eth to the hill of
 God.

This way choose
 those who not
 only keep God's
 behests,

but forsake all
 they have for His
 sake,

[Fol. 51. b.]

both goods and
 friends and them-
 selves.

They become the
 slaves of others,
 and endure
 poverty.

They put them-
 selves to great
 hardships,

as many do who
 have entered a
 religious order.

Arms do not
 make the knight,
 but the good
 heart and the
 deeds of prowess.

þe oper STAPE OF PROUESSE.

þe oper stape of þise uirtue is : beleaue. Vor huo
 þet heþ þane guode way ynome / hit be-houeþ þet he

The second step
 of prowess.

The second step
 is to believe.
 Belief enables

man to pursue
the good path,

and to withstand
the assailings of
the devil, world,
and the flesh.

The flesh says,
I cannot forsake
my old habits.
The world pur-
sues him like an
escaped thief.
The devil says,
"Wretch, what
wilt thou do?"

God's new knight
undergoes these
assaults.

By stedfast believ
he fears not,

for whom God
will help none
may harm.

him hyealde vestliche ine his wylle / and þet he hadde
guode beleaue ine god / þet he him uoluelle þet he heþ
agonne. þise uirtue hi clepieþ / beleaue. hi is wel
nyeduol a-ye þe asaylinges of þe wordle / of þe ulesse.
and of þe dyeule. þet stranglaker asayleþ þane man ate
a-gynninge. þet uless him zayþ. ych ne may þolye þis
lyf / ne mine ealde wones lete. þe wordle zekþ efter /
uor þan to wyþdraze / ase me zekþ ane þyef huanne he
is ascaped of þe prisone. þe dyeuel him zayþ. 'wrechche
huet wyltou do / hueruore þe yelst þe zuo. Vor þou
miztest þe oþerlaker wel wytye.' þise byeþ þe uerste
asaylynges / þet godes newe knyzt poleþ : þet þengþ to
wynne þe regne of heuene. Ac huanne he him yefþ to
god be guode an stedeneste be-leaue / he ne heþ none
hede. Vor he is þe treweste urend / þet may / and
can / and wyle / his oþene loki. and huam þet god wile
helpe : no þing him ne may derie.

The third step of
prowess.

The third step of
prowess is se-
curity (or confi-
dence),
whereby one
dreadeth not the
perils before one's
eyes.

The Holy Ghost
causes man by
this gift to under-
take great things.

He makes him
confident as a
lion.

As the new
knight desires
tournament, so
does he desire
peril and death.
St Agace went
to torment as
joyfully as if to
a wedding.

þe þRIDDE STAPE OF PROUESS[E].

þe þridde stape of prouesse : is zikernesse. zyker-
nesse ase zayþ þe filozofe is a uirtue / huerby me ne
dret nazt þe kuedes / ne þe perils / þet bieþ beuore hare
eþen. And þet is þe þridde guod / þet þe yefþe of
strengþe deþ. Vor þe holy gost / huanne he heþ y-
armed his knyzt of his uirtue : uerst he him yefþ noble
herte / greate þinges to nimene. Efterward he him yefþ
ane greate hete / and a grat wyl to uolzy / and grat
hope uor to uoluelle. Efterward he makeþ him ziker
ase lyoun. zuo þet he ne heþ drede / ne of perils / ne
of pinen / ne of dyape / ne of torment. ac he his
wilneþ / ase deþ þe newe knyzt þe tornemens. an suo
dede þe martires ase hit þingþ ine hare liue. huer-of we
redeþ of zaynte agase / þet mid greate blisse hi yede
to torment alsuo ase hi yede to feste / oþer to a
bredale.

ÞE UERÞE STAPE OF PROUESSE.

The fourth step of prowess.

Ase þe holy gost makeþ his knyzt ziker uor to abide þe tormens and þe zorþes þet hyeþ to comene. Alsuo he him makeþ strang and þolyinde. uor to þolye huanne hi comeþ. and þet is þe uerþe stape þet hi clepieþ / pacience. be þise uirtue / þe guode ouercomp alle his uyendes. þane dyeuel. þe wordle. and þet uless. and al þet hi moze zigge and do. Vor þet is þe sseld of gold / to him þet uor godes loue þoleþ / þet him wriþ of eche half / ase zayþ þe sauter. zuo þet no strok / ne may him breke þe herte. þise uirtue non ne heþ : þet ne heþ bi uoded. Vo[r] tribulacion : makeþ pacience. Ase zayþ zaynte paul. ase þet uer : makeþ þe tezele / hard. Wyþ-oute þise uirtue non ne is y-proued. ne þet gold ne may by wyþ-oute uer y-clensed. wyþ-oute pacience : non ne heþ uictorie. Vor huo þet lyst pacience : he is ouercome. wyþ-oute pacience : non ne comp to perfeccion. Þerof we yzeþ uorbisne / ate leste ine alle þe mestyeres þet me deþ mid hand. Moche þoleþ þe coupe of gold of strokes of yzen / erþan hi by yzet ope þet bord of þe kinge. and þe chalis er ha by yblissed / and y-zet ope þane weued. Moche þoleþ þe tonne of greate strokes / er me do þrin þet guode wyn. Mochel is defouled mid þe uet of uolleres þe robe of scarlet / erþan þet þe kuen his do an. And ase uele mizt þou to þan vinde uorbisnes : ase þer byeþ workmen at paris of alle mestyeres. Be þise uirtue is strang þe man / ase þet ysen þet alle metals a-daunteþ. Of grat pris ase þet gold / þet þe more hit is ine uere : þe more hit is clene / and clyer / and trefable. ase þe salamandre þet leueþ ine þe uere. and ase þe viss þet ine þe trauailinde wetere : him baþeþ and norisseþ.

The Holy Ghost makes his knight strong and patient,

so that he may overcome all his enemies.

[Fol. 52. a.]

Patience must be acquired by trial, for the fire hardens the tile,

and gold is purified by it.

Patience is necessary to perfection.

The cup of gold bears strokes of iron ere it is set on the king's board.

The scarlet robe is oft defiled by the feet of the fullers ere the queen puts it on.

By this virtue is man strengthened,

as the salamander in the fire, or the fish in the water.

ÞE VIFTE STAPE OF PROUESSE.

The fifth step of prowess.

þe vifte stape of þise uirtu is ycleped constance.

The fifth step is called constancy,

þet is a uirtue þet makeþ þe herte strang and stedeuest
 ine god ase a tour yzet ope ane stronge roche / and ase
 by which man is
 established as a
 tower,
 a traw yroted ine guod land / þet hit ne ssake uor
 nemne wynd / þet may come ne blawe / þet is ine no
 cas þet moze come / ne guode ne kueade. wyþ-outē.
 and by which he
 secures victory,
 þise uirtue / non ne comþ to ui[c]torie. uor huanne godes
 knyzt heþ ido zome prowesse : þanne him asayleþ þe
 dyeuel be ydele blisse. and þanne is þe batayle ine þe
 and overcomes
 vain-glory.
 herte þe stranger uor him-zelue to ouercome / þet he ne
 ualle be ydele blisse : þanne alle þe uerste uondinge /
 ne wes. Huerof dauid zayþ ine þe sautere / þet þe
 dyeuel'ouerþraup þe wel stronge of lefthalf be aduersité /
 and þe wel stronge a riȝthalf : be ydele blisse. þise
 uirtue preyseþ moche seneke þet zayþ. þet þer ne is
 uirtue bote þe ilke þet geþ uorþ proudliche be-tuene þe
 one auenture and þe oþre / þet is be-tuene þe guode
 and þe kueade. and grat onworþnesse of on an of
 oþer.

The sixth step of
 prowess.

þe zixte stape of PROUESSE.

The sixth step of
 prowess is mag-
 nificence.

This virtue Christ
 calls perseuer-
 ance,

by which the good
 knight endures
 to the end.

All other virtues
 fight, but this
 wins.

[Fol. 52. b.]

He who perse-
 ueres to the end
 shall be saved.

The virtue of the

þe zixte stape of prowesse / hi clepieþ / magnificence.
 þise uirtue hi descriueþ þous. Magnificence is hi
 ziggeþ of heze nyede y-blissede bleuinge. þise uirtue
 oure greate filosofe Iesu crist clepeþ / perseuerance. be
 huam þe guode godes kny[3]t þoleþ þe kuedes / and ylest
 al to þe ende ine þo heze waye of perfeccion þet he heþ
 ynome. Of þise uirtue zayþ zaynte paul. þet alle þe
 uirtues yerneþ : ac þis wynþ þet zuord. alle hy vizteþ :
 ac þis heþ þe uictorie and þe coroune. Alle wercheþ :
 ac þis berþ away þane ssepe aneuen. Vor ase zayþ oure
 lhord. huo þet blefþ al to þe ende : he ssel by borze /
 and non oþer. More uorþ ne coupen þe filosofes lede
 þe uirtue of prowesse. Ac þe deciplis of oure mayster
 Iesu crist / guoþ ynoȝ more uorþ. Vor ase zayþ
 salomon. huanne hi habbeþ al asummed / þanne uerst
 ham pingþ / þet hit is al to aginne. þe uirtue and þe

prouesse of þe filozofes wes al uor þe uices to ouercome / and to zeche þe uirtues. Ac þe prouesse of halzen uor to ouercome þe uices and þe uirtues to zeche. and þerto princípalliche uor to healde riȝ[t]uolnesse / an treuþe auoreye Iesu crist. He ne is naȝt riȝtuol / þet ne yelt þet ha ssel : be his miȝte. And uor zoþe mochel is riȝtuol þing / and sceluol / þet ich yeue mi lif / and mi dyeaþ / uor him þet his lif and his dyeaþ / yaf uor ous. And asemoche ase he is worþ betere þanne ich : zuo moche ich am yeldinde be riȝte riȝtuolnesse. ase zayþ saynt anselm. þise riȝtuolnesse 'ich may wynny / ac ich / ne non oþer / ne moȝe hier hit yelde / ne uolliche hit paye' / ase we habbeþ be-uore y-zed. And þeruore is þe zeuende stape of þise uirtue / þe ilke þet oure mayster Iesu crist deþ þerto / huerto þe filozofes ne miȝte come / þo he zede. 'yblissed byeþ þo : þet habbeþ hunger and þorst of riȝtuolnesse.' þanne byeþ þo ariȝt y-blissed / þet þe zix stapes of prowesse byeþ ycliue / and habbeþ hunger / and þorst / and grat wyl þe zeuende stape / be hare myȝte cliue.

old philosophers was to overcome vice, but the prowess of the saints enabled them to hold righteousness and truth.

We owe our lives to Christ who died for us,

and his life was more precious than ours.

We may desire to pay our debts, but are unable to do so.

Blessed are they who hunger and thirst after righteousness, and who have climbed the six steps of prowess.

þe BOȝES OF PROWESSE.

Ine þise trawe ase ine þe oþren / we vindeþ zeue boȝes. Vor ine zeue maneres of viȝt : þer comeþ zeue maneres ouercomeinges. and be þise zeue ouercomeinges : hi wynneþ zeue maneres of corounes. þet byeþ zeue medes. huerof saynt Ion speķþ ine þe apocalipse. Vor ase zayþ saynt bernard. 'Mochel is he fol / and ouerweninde / þet wyþ-oute ouercomeinge abit to habbe þe coroune. and huo wyþ-oute viȝt : wenþ habbe þe maystrie.' huerof zaynte paul zayþ. þet neure to coroune ne ssel come : þet triewelliche ne viȝt. trewelliche / þet is to zigge : be þe laze of þe uelde of þe y-prouede / þet wes y-woned to byenne þe ealde manere at rome. þet þe ilke þet to þe uelde him dede / uor to habbe los : ouercom alle þo þet þe mayster of þe uelde /

The boughs of prowess.

In this tree are seven boughs, for in seven battles there are as many victories, which gain seven crowns.

He is a fool who thinks to have the crown without the victory.

The custom in former times at Rome was this :—

He who desired fame in the field, had to overcome

all whom the
master of the
field sent against
him.

This master is
Christ, and he
knows the might
of each,

and suffers us
not to be tried
above our
strength.

They that over-
come shall have
seven kinds of
rewards.

The first fight.
[Fol. 53. a.]

The first fight of
the Christian is
against deadly
sin.

The bold heart
finds it an easy
task to gain the
victory.

He that falleth in
this fight hath
more need of
strength
than he that is
standing.

As the fish goes
into the net will-
ingly, so man
goes into sin,

but he may not
go out of himself.

The arms of pen-
ance enable man
to overcome in
this fight.

Three points to
be observed in
true penance.
1. Repentance of
heart.

dede come ayen him. þe mayster of þe uelde /
is Iesu crist / þet asayþ his newe knyȝtes ase hit is
ywrite ine þe boc of kinges. þes mayster is wel trewe
ase zayþ zaynte paul. and kan uol wel þe miȝte of
eehen / he ne þoleþ þet no vyend ous uondy ouer oure
miȝte. ne non aduersari ous asayli / þet we ne moȝe
ouercome : yef we willeþ mid his helpe. þet ine þe viȝt
ous wext oure strengþe / ase zayþ zaynte pael. Saynt
Ion ase we habbeþ yzed / topartē zeue ouercomei[n]gges.
and zeue corounes. þet is to zigge : zeue maneres of
medes / þet god be-hat to þan / þet ouercomeþ.

þe UERSTE VIȝT.

þe uerste uiȝt þet þe cristene habbeþ : is a-ye
dyeadlich zenne. ine þis viȝt neure ne is ouercome : þet
nele to senne consenti. he ouercomp þane viȝt / þet is
wel liȝt to ouercome to þe bolde herte. and lang and
riotouse to þe sleauuolle / and to þe onlosti / þet byeþ
slacke to godes seruice. þet ne byeþ ne wel chald be
poer. ne wel hot : ine þe loue of god / ase zayþ saint
Ion. þe ilke þet ualþ an is ouercome ine þise viȝtinge :
heþ more strenger to done him-zelue to do arere / and
him-zelue to werie. þanne þe ilke þet is stondinde. uor
he ne heþ none miȝte him-zelue to arere : bote god
him hyalde þe hand be his grace. Vor ase viss geþ in /
be him-zelue and be his wille in-to þe nette : alsuo þe
man geþ in / be him-zelue and be his wyll in-to
zenne. Ac out ne may he naȝt guo : wyþ-oute oure
lhordes helpe / þet him yefþ huanne he wyle / and þe
armes of penonce / huerby he may ouercome his y-uo.
þet is þe armure þet þe apostel zainte paul het to nime
ine þise viȝtinge / uor man on-armed : ne is naȝt worþ
ine viȝt. Nou sselt þou conne þet to þan þet þe man
by wel y-armed uor to ouercome parfitliche zenne. hit
behoueþ þet he habbe þri þing þet byeþ ine zoþe penonce.
þe uerste þing is : uorþenchinge of herte. þe oþer :

ssrifte of mouþe. þe þridde: is ynoʒamendement be dede. Of þise þri þinges is y-hol: þe hauberk of penonce. Yef þe on of þise þri þinges fayleþ: þe armure is al uals / and he þet hit berþ: ouercome. Vorþenchinge: acseþ grat zorþe and greate zykinges of herte / uor þet he heþ y-wreþed his sseppere. And þe more þet me him heþ y-wreþed: þe more gratter ssel by þe zorþe.

2. Shrift of mouth.
3. Amendment in deeds.
If one of these three things fail the armour is false.
Repentance demandeth great sorrow and deep sighings of heart.

OF ÞE UORÞENCHINGE OF KYNG DAUIÞ.

þous uorþuʒte þe kyng dauþ ase he zayþ ine þe sauter. 'Ich zuynke and trauayli in mine zykinges. and wille wesse eche niȝt mi bed and mine couche mid mine teares.' þe ilke þet god heþ y-wreþed be dyadliche zenne: he ssel zorþy mid dyepe herte / zuo þet þe herte melte al in-to tyeares / and in-to greate zorþes. and mid greate zikinges me ssel grede to god merci / ase his þyef / ase his manslaȝþe / ase his bezuykere: þet heþ ofserued þet gibet of helle. þe zeneȝere is godes þief. uor þe guodes of his lhorde þet ne hyeþ him bote ylend uor to wynne. þet byeþ þe guodes of kende / and of grace / and of hap. huerof him behoueþ / rekeninge / and scele yelde wel straytliche. He hise heþ folliche y-spended ine euele wones / and al ylayd to an hazard. Efterward he is moyrdrer of þe kinges doȝter. þet is of his oȝene zaule þet wes godes doȝter be grace. þet he heþ yslaze be dyadlich zenne. Efterward he is godes bezuykere. uor þe castel of his herte / and of his bodye / þet god him heþ ytake to loki: he heþ yolde to his yuo dyadlich / þet is þe dyeuel. Wel þanne he ssel grat zorþe habbe þet is in zuich poynt. and ofte mid his teares his bed wesse. þet is his inwyȝt. huerof þe uenimouse eddre of helle *sest geus*. zueche tyeares driueþ þane dyeuel uram þe herte: ase þet hote weter cacheþ þane hond out of þe kechene. Efter þe uorþenchinge ssel come þe ssrifte þet is þe guode chomberier þet clenzeþ þet hous and kest out al þe uelþe

Of the repentance of king David. David says in the Psalter, I will wash my bed with my tears.

The sinner (in deadly sins) shall so sorrow that his heart shall melt into tears,

and cry mercy to God as a thief and a murderer.

The sinner is a thief,

because he hath foolishly and evilly spent the gifts and graces of God.

He is a murderer of the king's daughter, that is, of his own soul.

He is a traitor to God, for he hath sold his soul to the devil.

Wherefore the sinner should wash his bed, that is, his soul.

After repentance shall come shrift, the good cham-

[Fol. 53. b.]

berer that cleanseth the house. mid þe besme of þe tonge. huerof spekþ dauid ine þe sautere. & *meditatus sum cum co[r]de meo & excercebar & scopebam spiritum meum.*

Of Shrift.

OF ÞE SSRIFTE.

There are six conditions of shrift.

1. That it be made wisely,
(a) to take heed to whom one makes shrift,

and to seek a good confessor,

one who hath power to absolve and enjoin penance.

(b) Who that will wisely shrive him must think of his sins before he comes to confess them.

The sinner shall go into house, that is, his heart,

and there he shall remain and see all his defects,

and shall think of

Nou onderstand wel hier hou me ssel by yssriue / þerto þet be ssrifte by worþ to þe helpe of zaule. þerto behoueþ zix condicions. þe uerste is þet hi bi ymad wyslyche. þis wyt is ine tuo þing. þe uerste: þet me nime hede to huam he ssel him ssriue. Efterwar[d] huerof. Saynt austin zayþ. uor þet me deþ uor te beuly þane dyap of þe bodie: me ssel do uor to askapie þane dyap of þe zaule. þe zike uor to be-uly þane dyap / and uor to habbe helpe / zekþ blepeliche þane beste fisician and þane wyziste þet he may habbe. Alzuo zayþ saynt augustin / þet hou þet wille wysliche him be rede / and grace auoreye god uynde: he ssel zeche zuch ane confessour: þet conne bynde / and onbynde. þet is þet he conne wel y-knawe zenne / an þane zenezere wel rede. And þet he habbe power him to asoyli / and him penonce to anioynj be þe zenne. *Qui uult confiteri peccata sua ut inueniat gratiam: querat sacerdotem qui sciat ligare & soluere / &c.*

Efterþan huo þet him wisliche wyle ssriue / he ssel mid wylle þenche and his zennes auore þet he come to ssrifte / and al his herte zeche / and his inwyt / hou he heþ god / and his yblyssede moder / and his halzen ywreþed. and mid greate drede al his lyf beþenche / ase dede þe guode king ezechie / þet zayde þus. 'Ich wylle beþenche alle mine yeres / ine biternesse of mine zaule.' þe zenezere ssel guo in-to his house / þet is in-to his herte. nazt pasindeliche ase þe iogelour þet ne bleþ nazt blepeliche in his house. uor he ne heþ no worse hous þanne his oʒen. Ac þer he ssel bleue / and ysy alle his defautes huerof he ssel yelde rekeninge / and skele to god / an to his preste. þet is to his ssrifteuader. An ssel þenche of him-zelue ase þe ilke þet heþ day uor to

rekeny of his onderuongiuge and of his spendinges beuore his lhorde. þanne he ssel him diligentliche þenche beuore / and izy þet writ : of his inwyȝt. þet he ne faly ine his rekeninge. Vor yef he faileþ at his rekeninge : god nele naȝt faly at his. Huanne me heþ diligentliche y-þoȝt of his zennes / and yzoȝe hou / and ine hou uele maneres he heþ god y-wreþed. and hou uelezyþe. and hou kueadliche he heþ yzeneȝed. and hou longe ybleft ine þe zenne. þanne ssel he him of al hasteliche ssriue.

the account to be rendered to God.

When he hath seen in how many ways he hath wrathed God, and how wickedly and long he hath sinned, then shall he hastily shrive him of all.

And þis is þe oþer condicion þet ssel by ine ssrifte. þe kyng dauid aros at midniȝt him uor to ssriue ase he zayþ ine þe sautere. Onneape abod he ane monþe / ne alhuet half a yer. And þe wyse ine oþre stede ine þe writinge zayþ þus. ‘Ne abyȝd naȝt þe to wende to god / ne zech naȝt to lenge / ne beuly. and naȝt ne uerste uram daye to daye / uor þe abidinge is wel perilous uor manye skeles.’ *Non tardes conuerti ad dominum neque differas de die in diem. Subito. n[am]. ueniet ira illius / & in tempore uindictæ perdet te.* Verst uor þe condicion of zenne. uor zenne is a uer berninde þet ne may naȝt by y-kuegt bote be tyares of ssrifte. And mochel ssolde he by fol þet zeȝe his hous berne : þet nolde an haste yerne to þe wetere. Efterward zenne is wel grat ziknesse : and þe ssrifte is þe medecine. And uorzoȝe he praizeþ lite his helþe / þet him-zelue yziȝþ zik al to þe dyape / and naȝt ne wilneþ zone to by hol. Efterward þe dyap þet is yredy / and oueral aspib þane zenezere / him ssel sterie zone him to ssriue. uor he not ne þane time / ne þane day / ne þe oure : huanne þe dyeap ssel come. þet ofte ondernimþ þane zenezere huer he ne nimþ none hede. And uorzoȝe huo þet wyste huet day he ssolde sterue : he hine wolde agraypi ase zone ase he miȝte. Efterward yef þe zenezere y-ziȝþ wel þet peril huer hit is : uor he is ine þe prisone of zenne / ine þe þrote of þe lyone of helle /

2. Do not delay shrift.

Delay is very perilous for many reasons,

[Fol 54. a.]
(a) Sin is a burning fire, and can only be quenched by tears of shrift.

(b) Sin is a great sickness, and shrift is the medicine.

(c) Death may overtake the sinner before he has shriven himself.

(d) The sinner is in great peril in the prison of sin, in the throat of the lion of hell.

(e) Delay may occasion the loss of everlasting life.
[1 *heþ* ?]

(f) The mercy of God knocketh at the sinner's door to hasten him to shrift.

(g) He who delayeth shrift oft forgetteth his sins.

3. Shrive openly, clearly, and nakedly.

As the sick man must make known his sickness to the physician if he would recover,

so must the sinner show his sins for to have mercy.

4. Shrive wholly, confess thy sins, great and small.
[Fol. 54. b.]

and of þe dragoune þet him wyle uorzuelþe / he wolde grede to god be ssrifte aze zone aze he miȝte. Efterward yef he yzeþe þe greate guodes þet he het¹ uorlore be his zenne / þe guodes eurelestinde / and þe guodes gostliche / his time / and him-zelue / þet al may habbe ayen be ssrifte : mochel ssolde he by fol bote yef he him hastede te habbe hit ayen. Efterward þe merci of god þet him abytt / and ssoþf at his dore / aze zayþ þe apocalipse : ha ssel him hasti to ssriue. Vor azemoche aze god abytt more þane zenezere : þe more he him smit þe more fellaker : huanne he him yziþ onlosti and sleauuol. Ase þe ssytere / þe more þet he draȝt his boze : þe harder he smit. And uorzope he heþ his oꝛene boze y-bent and adraze / ase zayþ þe sautyer / uor to slaȝe þane zenezere / bote yef he him ne wytye. Efterward þe ilke þet late ham ssriueþ / uoryet ofte his zennes / zuo þet onnyeaþe hit beualþ þet he by wel y-ssriue. uor he uoryet manye zennes / huerof he neure him ssel be-þenche. and zuo him ne ssel neure uorþenche / ne neure by ssriue. and þet is to him wel grat peril. Efterward huanne he is beuore his ssrifteuader / he ssel him ssriue openliche. þet is to zigge þet he ssel zigge his zennes clyerliche and nakedliche / zuo þet þe ssriuere izi openliche þe herte / and þe onderstondinge of him þet him ssrifþ. Vor þe zike ssel onwri his ziknesse. uor oþerlaker þe fizicien ne may naȝt wel werche. ne þe leche ne may naȝt werche mid þe zike / bote-yef he yzi his wonde. And þeruore zayþ boeice þe wyse / þet ‘yef þou wilt þet þe leche þe hele : hit be-houeþ þet þou onwri þine wonde.’ þanne þe truont þe ssel teche to by ssriue / þet sseweþ hare pouerté and hare ziknesse / and doþ þet uo[u]leste beuore / uor to habbe þe elmesse. Alzuo ssel þe zenezere onwri / and sseawy his zennes : uor to habbe merci. an þis is þe þridde condicion þet ssel by ine ssrifte. Efterward þe zenezere him ssel ssriue yhollyche / þet is þe uerþe condicion. Vor he ssel zigge alle his zennes / and greate and smale / and þe aboutestondinges of þe zennes.

þanne ssel he uerst yzy þe zeue dyadliche zennes / of
 huychen we habbeþ aboute y-speke. and yholliche of
 echen him ssiue be þan þet he him y-uelþ gelty. no þing
 to hele / no þing wyþzigge. naȝt him to defendi. ne
 nenne oþrenne wraye. And þus him ssrof dauþ þet
 zayde ine þe sautere 'Ich wylle me ssiue and ich wille
 zigge alle mine zennes aye me.' naȝt of oþren / ne ayens
 oþren ase doþ þe ypocrites / þet doþ þet uayreste wyþ-
 oute / þet telleþ hire guodnesses / and wryeþ hare
 kueadnesses. and wrayeþ þe oþre / and þerof þet hi
 byeþ mest ham-zelue galti. þet y-zyeþ þet mot ine þe
 oþres eze / and ne zyzeþ naȝt þane refter ine hire oȝene
 eze. Zuyche weren þe farizeus of þe godspelle / þet
 zayde his guodnesses / And onworþede þane publycan
 þet mildeliche byet his bryest ine þe temple / and him-
 zelue demde beuore god / and zoȝte merci : and zede.
 'Lhord god haue merci of me zenuolle.' And þus him
 ssel deme þe zenezere be-uore¹ god / naȝt uor to lessi his
 zennes / ac uor to mori and weȝe wyþoute lyeasinge.
 Efterward þe ssrifte ssel by yhol / naȝt to-deld ine uele
 ssriuere. Vor me ssel zigge al to onen. naȝ[t] o del to
 onen / and þet oþer del to an-oþren. uor god ne takþ none
 hede of zuiche tales. Efterward me ssel zigge naȝt
 onlepiliche þe zennes / ac þe aboutestondinges alle þet
 moreþ þe zennes. Vor þe zenne is gratter ine one manne :
 þanne ine an-oþren. ase ine man of religion : þanne ine
 ane seculer. and ine ane prelat : þanne ine ane loȝer.
 ine ane greate lhorde : þanne in ane simple manne.
 Efterward / hit is more zenne ine one stede : þanne
 ine an-oþren. Ase in holi cherche / oþer ine oþer holy
 stede. Efterward ine one time þanne in an-oþre / ase in
 lenten / oþer in ane heȝe messedaye. Efterward huanne
 me zenezep wytindeliche / me zenezep more ynoȝ / þanne
 onknawyndliche. Efterwar[d] me ssel zigge þe condicion
 of þe zenne. uor hit is more zenne ine wyfinan yspoused /
 þanne in ane sengle. oþer ine man / oþer ine wyfman of

Tell first the
seven deadly sins.

Excuse not thy-
self, nor accuse
others.

Be not as the
hypocrites, that
hide their sins,

that see the mote
in others' eyes,
but see not the
rafter in their own
eyes.

The sinner shall
not try to lessen
his sins before
God.

One must confess
to one shriver,
and not to many.

Confess not only
thy sins, but the
circumstances
that increase
them.

Sin is greater in
one person than
another—more
heinous in one
place than in an-
other,

and worse at one
time than an-
other.

Tell the condition
of the sinner,

¹ *bo-uore* in MS.

and whether the
sin be an unnat-
ural one.

Say how often
thou hast fallen
into sin, and 'how
long thou hast
remained therein.

Confess whether
thou hast resisted
sin,

and relate the
cause, the man-
ner, and the
temptation.

Afterwards one
shall pass on to
the limbs where-
with one hath
sinned.
(Shrift must be
made of "ghostly
and fleshly
thoughts.")

[Fol. 55. a.]

Take heed first
to the head,
whereon one set-
teth great value,
as do ladies who
curiously deck
themselves out,

who make great
horns of their
hair,

and who wash,
comb, and pore
into mirrors.

Men are not

religion. ine ane preste oþer in ane dyakne. uor þe
hezere þet byeþ þe hodes : þe gratte[r] is þe zenne.
Afterward yef þe zenne is a-ye kende / oþer kendeliche.
Afterward. hou ofte he heþ yualle into zenne / and hou
longe he heþ y-bleued þerine. Afterward me ssel zigge
yef he ne heþ nazt yuoʒte aye þe uondinge. oþer yef he
heþ y-porchaced þe zenne. oþer yuoʒte ine þe uondinge.
Vor þer byeþ some þet ne abideþ nazt þe uondinge / ac
his porchaceþ / and zuo hi ualleþ. Afterward / þe
cause and þe uondinge þet comþ to do zenne. me ssel
zigge and alle þe oþre causes / and þe aboutestondinges
þet moze mori þe zenne.

Afterward me ssel zigge and yerne by þe lemes
huermide me heþ y-zeneʒed. Verst me ssel guo to þe
herte / and zigge his þoʒtes huyche þet hi by / oþer
ulessliche / oþer gostliche. Gostliche : ase aye þe
byleue / oþer of ydele blisse / oþer of enuie. oþer of
wreþe. oþer of oþre manere huerof þer is to moche. þe
ulessliche belongeþ to lost / an to wylninges. zuo me
ssel wel loki ine alle þise þoʒtes yef þer is consentinge /
oþer lang bleuinge ine þe lostes / þet is oþerhuil ase
mocher worþ : ase to consenti. And of alle zuiche þoʒtes
he ssel him ssriue.

Afterward / me ssel nime yeme / yef me heþ y-
zeneʒed be þe lemes of þe bodie. uor me kan zeneʒi ine
uele maneres. Verst be þe heauede. hueran me zet ofte
grat cost / ase doþ þise leuedis / þet zuo curiouseliche
agrayþeþ hire heaueden mid preciouise agrayþinges uor
klene ydele blisse. uor to liki. and uor to draze zenne.
Hueruore hi zeneʒeþ ofte kueadliche. and nameliche þo
þet makeþ zuo greate hornes of hare here / oþer of oþren /
þet hi sembleþ wel fole wyfmen. Ynoʒ þer is of ydel-
nesse aboute hire heaued / to kembe / to wesse / ine
trossinge / an ine sseweres pouringe. huerof god mochel
him wreþeþ. Of þise ydelenesse / ne byeþ nazt quitte
þe men þet doþ zuo grat payne ham to kembe and to

pouri ine sseaweres and ine hare here wel to croki an to
bleue be strengþe / to þan þet hi habbe uayr dorilot /
þet is ine tokne of kneadnesse / and of zuiche ydelenesse
hi ssolle ham ssriue.

wholly free from
this vice, for they
also pore into
mirrors, and take
great pains to curl
their hair.

Afterward me ssel yerne to þe vif wittes of þe bodie /
huerby me zenezep¹ wel ofte. oþer be þe ezen ine fole zizþe.
oþer be þe yearen ine folliche to hierie / and y-here bleþe-
liche þe misziggeres. and þe blonderes. and þe scorneres.
and þe lyezeres. and oþre folyes. Oþer be þe mouþe / ine
folliche to spekene. ine to moche ethe / and to moche
drinke. Oþer be þe nase / ine to moche him to liky in
guode smelles. Oþer be fole takinges and inhoneste-
liche / oþer ine him-zelue / oþer ine his wyue. þet he heþ.
oþer ine oþren þet wors is / bi hit man / bi hit wyfman.

Look to the five
wits of the body
whereby one sin-
neth: by the eye
in foul sight, by
the ears in foolish
hearing, by the
mouth in evil
speaking, by
the nose in de-
lighting in good
smells,

by foul handling.

Alsuo he him ssel ssriue of mochel hede þet me deþ
ine ssredinge to bedde and to regge / and hosiinge and
ssoinge. and of alle oþre þinges þet he beþengþ. And
þous is þe ssrifte y-hol huanne me zayþ alle þe lackes
greate and smale. And þis is þe uerþe condicion: þet
ssel by ine ssrifte.

Also shall one
shrive him of a too
great regard to
clothing, to bed
and back, hosing,
shoeing.

þe vifte condicion zuo is þet me ssel by y-ssriue
mildeliche. uor þe zenezere spekp to god þet yzizþ his
herte. þanne þe ssriuere ne is bote þet yeare of god.
and þet ha yherþ / he not naȝt ase man: ac ase god.
And þeruore ssel þe zenezere him mildi ase moche ase
ha may beuore god / and zigge his zennes mid greate
drede. and ssel his zennes alle keste out touore him /
ase zayþ þe writinge. Ase me helt uol a pot of wetere.
huanne þet weter is y-sset: þer ne bleþþ no colur. ase ine
melk. ne smel ase ine wyn. ne smac: ase ine hony.
Alzuo me ne ssel ofhyealde of þe zenne zepþe he hit heþ
yzed ine ssrifte / ne þet colur / þet is þe kueade manere
þet me heþ yhet / oþer ine speche oþer ine zizþe / oþer
ine kueade uelazrede to uolzý / oþer ine oþre þinge þet
heþ colur of zenne. Efterward me ssel lete þane smak

5. Shrift
must be made
meekly.

The shriver is an
ear of God.
Therefore shall
the sinner confess
his sins with great
dread,
and as water shall
he cast them out.

He must let no-
thing remain that
has the colour of
sin.
Afterwards he
must forsake the
"smack" of sin,

¹ MS. *zenezep*

and never think
pleasantly of his
past sins.

[Fol. 55. b.]
He shall think of
his sins with great
dread, sorrow, and
shame.

He shall after-
wards fly from
the "smell," and
listen no more to
sinful speech.

6. Shrift must be
made often, for
many reasons.

a. To ensure
greater purity of
life.

b. For the abso-
lution of "venial
sins."

c. To drive away
the devil.

d. To learn to
shrive well, for
practice makes
perfect.

e. To prevent for-
getfulness of our
sins.

f. Because one
knoweth not
whether shrift
has ever been well
performed.

g. To get greater
meed of God.

h. To bethink of
sins unconfessed.
[*Vifþingestor-
beþ sscrifte.*]

Five things de-

of *zenne*. yef he ofhalt þane smak of *zenne* þet þengþ
of þe *zenne* þet he heþ y-do / and him lykeþ wel ine
þe þoʒte and is ypayd. Ac he ssel þenche of his *zennes*
mid greate drede and mid greate zorþe of herte / and
him-zelue ssende ine him zelue / and habbe greate
ssame to-uore god / and uest wil þet neuremo to *zenne*
ne ssel wende ayen þaʒ me ssolde hine al to-heawe.

Afterward me ssel lete and be-uly þane smel. þer
byeþ zome þet wel uorleteþ þe *zenne* : ac bleþeliche
hi hereþ þerof speke. Ac he þet him wel uorþingþ :
he ne ssel naʒt þerof yhere speke / þet he ne ssolde
habbe wlatiinge.

þe xixte *condicion* þet ssel by ine sscrifte is / þet me
ssel ofte by yssriue uor manie skeles. Verst / uor to
zeche þe more grace of clennesses / ase þet line cloþ þet
is y-huyted be ofte wessinge. Afterward uor þe *zennes*
uenials huerine me ualþ ofte. and huo þet ofte him
beuelþ : ofte he him ssel wesse. Alsuo ase hit behoueþ
ofte þet ssip lhade out þet weter þet alneway geþ in.
Afterward uor to cachie and uerri þane dyuel uram him.
þe uoʒel him uerreþ bleþeliche uram þannes huer me
brekþ his nest. and uram þannes huer me him benimþ
his eyren. Afterward / uor to lyerni him wel to ssriue.
uor wone : makeþ maister. ase hit sseweþ ine þise oþre
creftes. Afterward / uor þet me uoryet ofte þe *zennes* /
þeruore me ssel ofte by y-ssriue and telle. Afterward /
uor þet me not yef me heþ wel yby yssriue / oþer uor-
þenchinde. zuo me ssel ofte winne ayen / þet me heþ
lesse ynoʒ y-do. Afterward / him-zelue þe more uor to
bouʒe / and uor to habbe þe more mede of god. þeruore
me acsede ane abbotte / hueruore he him ssrof zuo ofte.
and he ansuerede / 'þeruore' he zede / 'þet ich habbe
alneway drede / þet ich ne am naʒt wel y-ssriue. After-
ward / ich me beþenche ofte of some þinges þet ich ne
habbe naʒt yzed. and þeruore þet be þe sscrifte ich me
arere alneway þe more milde.'

Nou hest þou yherd hou me ssel by y-ssriue. nou

þou sselst y-wyte þet vif þinges specialliche destorbeþ
zope ssriffþe. stroyeth true
shriff.

þe uerste is ssame. þet he ne dar naȝt zigge his
zenne uor ssame / and þet deþ þe dyeuel / þet him zet
beuore þe ssame / him uor to ssette þane mouþ. ase deþ
þe þyef þet þraup þane little bal in-to þe hondes þrote
þet he ne ssel naȝt berke. Vor of zuȝche kende is þe
ilke litel bal : þet makeþ þane hond domb huanne me
hit þrawþ in-to þe þrote. Ac þe zenezere ssel þenche
þet þe ssame þet me heþ ine þe ziggenge of þe zenne : is
grat del of þe amendinge. Efterward he ssel bleþeliche
drinke a lite of ssame : uor to beuly þe greate ssame.
þet þe zenezeres abideþ ate daye of dome huanne ech of
þe wordle ssel yzi his ozene zennen. þet oper þing is
wycked drede uor to do greate penonce. þanne þe dyeuel
deþ in-to þe eare of þe zenezere : ' þou ne miȝt naȝt lete
pine wones' / zuich uolk is y-lich þe horse þet heþ drede
of his ssede / and uorzope hit ne is bote ssed al þet me
may do of penonce ine þise wordle / to þe zizþe of þe
pine of helle / oper of purgatorie. þe þridde / kueade
loue / þet þe dyeuel heþ zuo þane zenezere uorzoke /
þet he loueþ zuo his lost / þet he hit nele lete. zuo
þengþ þet uor naȝt he him ssriff. zuo he sleþþ ine his
zenne : ase ðeþ þet zuyn ine þe wose. þe uerþe þing
is / hope of lang lif. þeruore þe dyeuel zayþ. ' þou art
yong man / þou sselst libbe longe / Arere þe / and do
þi wyl / þou sselst wel come þer to þe to ssriue.' Ac he
ne zizþ naȝt þane dyap þet him wayteþ / and þet hine
wile nime : rapre þanne he ne wene. Vor god þet
behot uoryeuenesse to him þet uorþingþ : he ne behat
him naȝt to-morȝe / ase zayþ saynt gregorie. þeruore
þe dyeuel playþ ofte mid þe zenezere ase deþ þe cat mid
þe mous þanne he his heþ ynome. and huanne he heþ
mid hire longe yplayd : þanne he his eth. þe vifte
þing is / wanhope huerine þe dyeuel deþ þane zenezere.
Ac he ssolde þenche þet god uoryeþþ liȝtliche to ham /

1. Shame, which
prevents confes-
sion.

The devil acts
like the thief who
throws a little
ball into the
hound's mouth, to
keep him from
barking.

The shame of
confession is a
great part of
amendment.

2. A wicked fear
to do great pen-
ance.

Some sinners are
like the horse
that is afraid of
its own shadow.

3. Wicked love of
sin, that maketh
the sinner to sleep
in his sin, as the
swine in his filth.

[Fol. 56. a.]

4. Hope of long
life,

whereby the sin-
ner seeth not
death,
that will seize
sooner than he
weeneth.

The devil plays
with the sinner
as the cat doth
with the mouse.

5. Despair.

The sinner should
think that God is

more willing to
forgive than we
to ask.

þet uorþingþ. and more is bleþelaker uor to yeue uor-
yeuenesse : þazne we uor to aksi.

OF YNOȝBOTE.

Of amendment
(penance).
Amending must
be made by fast-
ing, alms, and
prayers.

He must obey the
shriner, as the
sick man his phy-
sician.

The sinner has
to fight against
sin.

1. And first
against the death
of sin,
which may be
overcome by pen-
ance.

2. The second
fight is a wrestling
with one's own
heart, as to pen-
ance and what
life to lead.

Some are over-
come in this
battle,

for they are as
the weather-cock,
that turneth with
the wind.

3. The third

After þe ssrifte comp ynoȝbote / þet is þe amendinge
þet me ssel do bi þe wille / and bi þe rede of þe ssriuere /
þet ssel deme þe amendes be þe geltes. oþer ine uest-
inges. oþer ine elmesse. oþer ine benes. oþer ine oþre
þinges / ase be þan þet þe zenne aceseþ. And þe zike
ssel bleþeliche bouȝe to þe fisicien uor to habbe helpe.
And þet guode chi[I]d deþ bleþeliche þe heste of his
uader gostlich uor þe guod of his zaule.

Nou hest þou yherd þe þri þinges þet heleþ þet
hauberk of penonce huermide god armeþ his newe knyȝt
uor to ouercome þet viȝt þet he heþ aye zenne. And he
ssel ouercome þise viȝtinge : he ne heþ hede of þane
oþrene dyap / ase zayþ sayn Ion. þe uerste dyap of þe
zaule is þe dyap of zenne þet me ouercomeþ be penonce.
huerby me askapeþ þane oþrene dyap þet is þe dyap of
helle þet sterue ne may. þet is þe uerste boȝ of þe
trawe of prouesse. Huo þet ouercomeþ þane viȝt / he
ouercomþ ane oþrene. Huan þe man him uorþingþ of
his zenne : þane com[þ] þer a newe wrestlinge to his oȝene
herte huet penonce he ssel do / and huet lif he ssel lede.
and tle þer byeþ zuyche þet ine þo viȝt byeþ ouercome.
Vor ase god zayþ ine his spelle. nou [h]y leueþ / nou hi
misleueþ. nou hi wylleþ / nou hi ne wylleþ. nou hi pro-
posent / nou hit is betere. þeruore hi byeþ ase þe
wedercoc þet is ope þe steple / þet him went mid eche
wynde. Ac huanne þe man serueþ god and strengþeþ
his herte ine his guode wille. þazne if þe ilke viȝt ouer-
come. an þanne makeþ him god strang and stedeuest
ase a pos[t] ine his temple / þet is holy cherche / ase
zayþ saint Ion. þis is þe oþer ouercominge and þe ssepe
þet he him keþþ.

Efter þise wrestlinge comp þe þridde / þet þe man

heþ to his ozene ulesse / þet mochel him playneþ and
 grocheþ / huanne hi¹ beginþ to uele þe harnesses and þe
 smertnesses of penonces. and mochel ha vizt uor to
 come ayen to his yealde wones. þet ules is þet kueade
 wyf huerof spekeþ salomo. þet huo þet mest deþ hare
 wil: þe worse him is. and þe more hi is ayen him.
 And huo þet him let ouercome be his ulesse. he is ine
 a wel zorzuol þreldome and wel vil. And þet wes
 betokned ine samson þe stronge / þet uorþan þet he
 let him ouercome be ane wyfinanne: he uorleas his
 her of his heauede huerinne wes his greate strengþe.
 and þe ezen of his heauede: and þe strengþe of his
 bodie. and uil into þe honden of his yuo / þet
 him deden grinde ate querne ssamuolliche. Al þis deþ
 þe dyeuel gostliche to þan þet him let ouercome be his
 ulesse. Huo þet þerne vizt ouercomp¹ god him behat þe
 huyte robe of chastetee and of innocence / ase zayþ þe
 apocalipse.

wrestling is with
 one's flesh,
 [1 he f]

which resisteth
 penance.

[Fol. 56. b.]
 He who is over-
 come by his flesh
 is in sorrowful
 and vile thraldom,
 and that was be-
 tokened in Sam-
 son the strong,
 who lost the hair
 and eyes of his
 head, as well as
 the strength of
 his body.

[1 MS. ouercomþ]

After þise uiztinge comp þe wordle and dame
 fortune mid al hare huezel / þet asayleþ þane man a
 riht half and a left half / þet byeþ tuo wel greate
 viztinges huer moche uolk is ouercome a riht half and a
 left half / ase zayþ þe sauter. Vor more is strang þe
 uondinge þet comp of worþssipes / of riches / of
 lostes: þet þe dyeuel byet / and deþ beuore: þanne by
 þe ilke þet comp be aduerseté / ase of pouerté / of
 zyncnesses þet god zent. And þe ilke þet ouercomp þane
 uerþe vizt: þet is huo þet ulizþ and onworþeþ mid
 herte þe worþssipe of þe wordle. god him behat worþ-
 ssipe and heznesse ine heuene. Vor he him wyle do
 zitte mid him ine his trone / ase zayþ þe apocalipse.
 To him þet ssel ouercome þane vifte vizt þet is aleft-
 half: þet is aduerseté of þise wordle: god him behat þe
 manné þet is y-hed. þet is þe greate zuetnesse an þe
 greate likinge of paradis / þet non ne him may benyme.
 Vor be þe manne þet wes zuo zuete / þet ech uand

5. After this fight-
 ing cometh the
 world, and dame
 Fortune with her
 wheel.

He overcometh
 this fight who
 despiseth the
 world's honour.

To him who shall
 overcome adver-
 sity,

God hath pro-
 mised the great
 sweetness of Para-
 dise.

6. The sixth fight
is against the
wickedness of the
world,

against the limbs
of Antichrist,

the destroyers of
martyrs and
Christian men.
[¹ MS. *bouore*.]
The limbs of this
beast (Antichrist)
are wicked princes
and rulers.

He who trusts in
God shall over-
come this fight,
and all his foes.

[Fol. 57. a.]

The devil assails
the good man by
vanity and pre-
sumption.

Lucifer fell low
on account of his
pride.

Wherefore a man
should be cau-
tious,
for the ship is
often destroyed
close by the
haven.

zuych smac : ase he wolde. is onderstonde / þe greate
zuetnesse / þet greate lost / þet god hordeþ / and
wyteþ / to ham þet ouercomeþ þe aduersetes of þise
wordle. þe zixte vizt þet is wel strang / is a-ye þe
kueades þet byeþ ine þise wordle / þet byeþ þe lemes of
anticrist þet werreþ þe guode men be hare strengþe /
ase deden ine ealde time þe tyrans þe martires / þe
eretiks : þe guode cristene men / and ssolle do ine þe
ende of þe wordle. þe lemes of anticrist þet ssolle werri
zuo þe guode cristene / þet onneaþe ssel by eny þet dor
by-knawe þet by *cristen* / uor þe strengþe of anticrist
and of his lemes. þet is þet best þet sayn Ion yzeþ þet
werrede þe halzen huerof we habbeþ beuore¹ yspeke.
þe lemes of þise beste ham sseaweþ nou ine kueade
princes / and ine kueade ouerlinges / þet be hare greate
couaytise / defoulent and be-uleaþ / and etheþ [h] are on-
derlinges / zuo þet þe guode men þet byeþ onder ham
habbeþ ynoþ to þolye / and ynoþ of zorþes / and of
greate misual. Ac þe ilke þet al nimþ ine þolmodnesse
ase dede iob. and him lefþ al ine god : ouercomp þis
vizt. and to þan þet hit ouercomp / god him behat þet
he him wyle yeue miþte / ouer his yuo / ase zayþ zaint
Ion ine þe apocalipse. Efter alle þise viztinges comp
þe laste þet mest is strang. Vor þe dyuel þet mochel
is kueduol / and sotil huanne he yziþ þet þe man is
ycliue ope þane hel of perfeccioun. and he heþ alle þe
uiztes beuore yzed ouercome. þanne he asayleþ him be
ydele blisse and be presumcion. Vor him þingþ þet he
is a wel guod man / and wel mid gode / uor þet he heþ
zuo moche y-do / and yþoled uor him. Hueruore he
ualþ oþerhuil uram zuo heze : zuo loze / ase dede
lucifer. And þeruore hit is grat nyed / þet þe man by
wys / and ywer him uor to werie uram ydele blysse þet
makeþ þe efterwarde. Vor ine þe ende / lip ofte þe
accombringe. and nyxt þe hauene : spilþ ofte þet sship /
þet geþ zikerliche ine þe heze ze. þeruore hit behoueþ

þet he agrayþi his zayl / þet is his onderstondinge to þe
 hauene of helpe / þet is to Iesus crist / be þe wynde of
 stedeuest loue / and of grat wylninge of god. þis is þe
 ende of riȝtuolnesse / huerof we habbeþ aboue yspeke /
 þet comp of þe yefþe of strengþe / and of þe uirtue of
 prowesse. aze þe guode kniȝt and orped / þet heþ guod
 herte and hardi / and heþ y-by ine uele prestes mid
 grat wil / and grat hunger to ssewy his strengþe ine
 tornemens oþer ine viȝtinges / him uor to alosi. and
 uorzoþe huo þet heþ grat loue of god and grat hunger /
 and grat wilninge of his helpe. he ouercomp liȝtlyliche
 þise laste viȝt. Vor he nele ne naȝt ne wylneþ ine þise
 liue bote þet is to þe worþssipe and to þe blisse of god /
 and helpe of his zaule. And huo þet þis uiȝt ouercomp /
 he winþ þe mede huerof saint Ion spek / huer þet oure
 lhord zayde ine þe apocalipse / 'to him þet ssel ouer-
 come. ich wylle him yeue to ethe of þe trawe of liue
 þet is amidde paradys.' þet is Iesu crist þet yefþ lyf
 eurelestinde / huerby alle þe halȝen libbeþ ine þe blisse
 of paradys and byeþ alle uolle and uolued. And þet
 is þe blissinge þet oure guode mayster behat ine his
 spelle to his guode kniȝtes huanne he zede. 'yblissed
 byeþ þo þet habbeþ hunger and þorst of riȝtuolnesse' /
 þet is of god to serui and to louie / uor hi ssolle by
 uolued of þe frut of þe trawe of liue. þet is þe ende
 and þe guodnesse of þise uirtue þet is yelepēd prowesse
 huerto ous lede þe yefþe o strengþe.

Let the soul be
 guided by the
 wind of sted-
 fast love.

The good knight,
 desiring to exhibit
 his skill and cour-
 age, obtaineth re-
 nown in the tour-
 nament.

He who over-
 cometh this last
 fight

shall receive the
 gift of everlasting
 life,

and be filled with
 the fruit of the
 tree of life.

OF ÞE YEFþE OF RED / AND OF UIRTUE OF MERCI.

Ase þe holy gost yefþ strengþe and wyl of greate
 þinges to onderuonge : alsuo he yefþ red / huerby me
 comp to guode heauede and to guode ende of þet me
 nimþ an hand. þet is a grat grace þet þe holy gost
 yefþ / þet is yelepēd þe yefþe of red. huerby þe man heþ
 grat bezyinge / and grat beþenchinge in þet he nymþ
 an hand. And þet he ne by to hastif ine his niminges.

Of the gift of
 counsel and of the
 virtue of mercy.

The gift of coun-
 sel is a great
 grace of the Holy
 Ghost,
 it guideth man
 aright,

Hasty counsel is followed by repentance.

This grace sheweth itself in three ways.

1. To seek good advice.

Folk fall, says Solomon, for want of counsel.

Beware of false advisers, and ask no counsel of fools. Seek advice of the old and experienced.

Rehoboam lost a great part of his kingdom through following bad advice.

He who hath this gift

is not easily led astray by the counsel of others,

but followeth only good advice,

Vor ase zayþ þe filozofe / 'greate þinges byeþ y-do / naȝt be strengþe of bodie ne be armes : ac be guod red.' And anoþer zuo zayþ þet hette socrates / þet 'of hastif red : hit uorþingþ eft[e]rward.' and þeruore zayþ salomon. 'Ne do naȝt wyþ-oute guod red. and efter þe dede hit ne ssel naȝt þe uorþenche.'

þis grace him sseweþ ine man ine þri maneres. Verst to zeche bleþeliche guod red. þous redde tobye / his zone. 'Vayre zone' zayþ he / 'zech euremo red of wyse men.' And salomon þus zayþ. 'þer no guod red ne ys : þet uolk to-ualþ / and is al onzauwed. ac hi is wely -holpe huanne þer is moche guod red wyþinne.' 'Ac loke' þe zayþ þe wrytinge 'uram kueade rederes. and ne akse no red at foles / uor hi ne louieþ / bote þet ham likeþ. naȝt þet payeþ god.' Alsuo tekþ þe wrytinge / þet me ssel zeche red ate yealden / and naȝt mid þe yonge þe ne byeþ naȝt yproued ine nyedes. Ac mid þe yealde þet habbeþ yzoze and yproued þe þinges / þet is þet wyt / and þet red. Vor þan þet roboam salomounnes zone / uorlet þane red of þe yealden guode men / uor þane red of yonge : he uor-leas þet gratteste del of his kingdome.

Efteward / huo þet heþ þise yefþe / he onderzekþ þe redes þet me him yefþ / and þengþ mid greate beþenchinge : þet is grat bezyinge : yef me him ret wel / and treweliche / naȝt liztliche yleue to þe rede / oþer to þe ziggenge of one manne / ne of tuaye / hou moche þet hi by his priues / and his urendes. Huerof seneke zede. þet 'wys man exameneþ þe redes / and ne yleþ naȝt liztliche. uor þe ilke þet yleþ liztliche : uint ofte þet me him gyleþ / and misret.' Efterward / huo þet þis yefþe heþ / he boȝþ to guod red þanne he hit heþ yuounde. Vor naȝt he zekþ red / þet ne heþ no wyl to do laȝe. Huerof salomon zayþ. þet 'hit þingþ to þe fole þet he is ine rizte waye. Ac þe wyse zayþ. on red is to zigge. uor þe wyse bouȝþ to guod red / þet

þe foles onworþeþ.' þe meste profitable red þet me may
 habbe / is þe red of oure guode maistre Iesu crist þet is
 þe wysdom of god þe uader of huam comp al guod red
 [and] ous brengþ uram heuene / þe ilke þet is þe angle of
 red / ase zayþ þe writinge. þet is þet red þet he ous yefþ
 ine his spelle huanne he zede. 'yef þou wylt by parfit :
 guo and zel al þet þou hest / and yef hit þe poure uor
 godes loue. an com efter me / and þou sselst habbe grat
 hord ine heuene.' Yziȝ and þench huo yefþ þane red.
 uor þet is ase zayde þe wysdom of god þe uader. þe
 angel of red / þet is zoþ god / and zoþ man / þet com
 ine erþe þe uor to rede / and þe uor to teche þane way
 and þane riȝte peþ to guonne into paradis. þet is þe
 peþ of pouerté / huerby let þe holy gost þo þet he alizt
 of þe yefþe of red. Zoþ hit is þet ine oþre manere /
 and be oþre waye hi moȝe ham soui. ase be þe waye of
 þe hestes of oure Lhord Iesu crist loki : ase ine
 spoushod / oþer ine wodewehod / and ine riches of
 þe wordle huanne me his uzeþ wel. Ac þe holy gost be
 þe yefþe of red / let and draȝþ uorþ more riȝtuolliche
 and more zikerliche be þe peþe of zoþe pouerté / huer-
 by me onworþeþ and deþ onderuot þe wordle and alle
 couaytise / uor þe loue of god.

which foles de-
 spise.
 The most profit-
 able advice is that
 of our good Mas-
 ter, Christ.

He is the angel of
 counsel,
 true God and true
 man ;
 who came on to
 the earth to teach
 man the way to
 Paradise,

by the path of
 true poverty.

þes yefþe of red bestrepp þe zenne of auarice and of
 couaytise / and zet a wel uayr trau / þet is þe uirtue of
 merci / þet is zorȝe and þolemოდnesse of oþremanne
 kuead / and of oþremanne misdede. þet trau heþ zeue
 stapes huerby hit wext and profiteþ.¹ þet byeþ þe zeue
 þinges þet moche ledeþ man to merci / and to habbe
 þolemოდnesse of oþre manne kueade. þet uerste þing
 þet ssel man sterye to merci : is kende. uor ase zayþ þe
 boc þet spekeþ of kende of bestes. 'no uoȝel ne eth of
 oþren yef he is of his kende.' Efterward þe ilke zelue
 boc zayþ. þet 'on mere draȝþ uorþ þet colt of an oþre
 huanne hi is dyad.' Efterward me heþ moche yzoȝe and

This gift of coun-
 sel destroyeth
 auarice and covet-
 ousness, and pro-
 motes sorrow and
 patience.
 The tree of mercy
 hath seven steps,
 [Fol. 58. a.]
 for there are
 seven things which
 lead to mercy.

1. Nature.

No fowl eateth
 another of its own
 kind.

¹ MS. *porfiteþ*

The wolf protect-
eth 'for-cast' chil-
dren from other
beasts,
wherefore a man
should pity the
sin of another of
his own kin.

yproued / and is ine þo boc yuonde. þet þe wolues
drazeþ uorþ þe children þet byeþ uor-kest / and wereþ
his uram opre bestes. Wel ssel þanne a man habbe
pite / and þolemodnesse of þe kueade of þe opre þet is
him anlich ine kende. þet alle we byeþ of one kende /
and of one ssepþe. and to one uorbisne ymad / ase we
habbeþ y-zed be-uore. þe oþer þing þet ssel man draze

2. Grace.

We are all limbs
of one body, and
one limb natural-
ly bears with an-
other.

We are all bought
with one price,
with the blood of
Christ.

to merci / and to þolemodnesse of opre manne kuead /
þet is grace. uor alle we byeþ lemes of o body / þet is
of holy cherche be grace. and o leme heþ kendeliche of
anopren : þolemodnesse. Efterward alle we byeþ wiþ-

bozt of one zelue pris. þet is mid þe blisuelle blode [of]
Iesu crist þet he ssedde uor ous ine þe rode / ous uor
to wiþ-begge uram þe dyape eurelestinde. Huanne
godes zone wes þanne zuo reuþeuol / zuo uol of merci
auoreye ous : wel ssolle we habbe reuþe / and þole-

We are all child-
ren of one Father,
by belief and by
grace.

modnesse þe on of þe opre. helpe / and soucouri þe on
þe oþer. Efterward / alle we byeþ children of [on] uader
and of moder be byleauue and be grace. uor we byeþ
godes children and of holy cherche. and þe on broþer

3. The Scriptures exhort us to be merciful.

ssell helpe þe opren : þanne he yziþ his niede. uor ate
niede : me yziþ huet þe urend is. þe þridde þing þet
ssell moche man sterie to merci : is þe heste of þe holy
writinge. þet redeþ and hoteþ þe workes of mersi aboue
alle opre workes. Huerof þe wise salomon zayþ / 'y-
wyte þe' zayþ he / 'þet þin heued ne by nazt wiþoute
oyle.' Vor be oyle is y-uorþed þet uer ine þe lompe.

The oil feeds the
fire in the lamp.
The lamp is
mercy.
As the oil up-
riseth in the
lamp above all
other fluids,
so does mercy
above all other
virtues.

and ine lompe is onderstonde merci þet ssel by euremo
ine þine heuede / þet is ine herte. And al ase þe oyle
op arist ine þe lompe / alle þe opre woses : alsuo merci
alle þe opre uirtues. An alsuo ase þe oyle norisseþ and
lokeþ þet uer ine þe lompe. and huanne hit faileþ : þet
uer is y-kuenct. alzuu huanne merci fayleþ : þe loue of
god faileþ : ase saynt Ion zayþ. 'Huo þet yzeze his broþer'
zayþ he ' habbe niede and mezayse / and he [ne] him yefþe
[sset] þe dore of his herte' / þet is to zigge / 'huo þet ne

When mercy fail-
eth the love of
God faileth.

heþ reuþe and him ne helpþ yef he may / hou is' he zayþ / 'godes loue ine him?' / ase yef he zede / þet ne may naȝt by. Vor þe oyle of merci is y-faled ine þe lompe of his herte.

God's love is not in him that helpeth not his brother in his need.

Afterward þe guode tobie toȝte his zone / and zayde þus. 'Vayre zone bi merciul as þe miȝt. yef þou hest ynoȝ of guode : yef largeliche. and yef þou hest lite : of þo litle yef gledliche.' And oure Lhorde Iesu crist zayþ ine his spelle. 'guo zayþ he and zel al þet þou hest / and yef hit þe poure.' þet is þe uirtue þet þe holy writinge ret. more generalliche. Vor þet is þe uirtue þet god mest is mid ypayd ase zayþ þe writinge. Huer-of god zayþ be þe profete. 'ich wille he zayþ merci : and naȝt sacrifice.' and saint austin þus zayþ / þet 'þer ne is no þing þet makeþ man zuo by beloued mid god : ase pite.' Vele men makeþ to god sacrefices / of uestinges / of peregrinages / of ssarpnesses of bodye / ac uor to do elmesse / hi byeþ straitte and wrechchen. Efterward þer byeþ manie men to huam god heþ largeliche y-yeue of timliche guodes. and makeþ sacrefices naȝt to god : ac to þe dyeule / oþer to þe wordle / in þet hi despendeþ folliche hare guodes ine ydelnesses uor bost of þe wordle ac uor to yeue uor god : hy byeþ harde ase an [di] aymont.

The good Tobie taught his son to be merciful and to give willingly.

Christ said, "Go sell all that thou hast, and give it to the poor."

[Fol. 58. b.]

As God saith, "I will have mercy and not sacrifice."

Some men are willing enough to fast and perform pilgrimages, but sparing of their alms.

Many men so foolishly spending their money offer sacrifices to the devil.

Efterward ase merci likeþ to god alsuo hit ne likeþ noping to þe dyeule. Vor þet is þe armure huer-by he is þe rapre ouercome / ase zayþ a glose ope þe sautere. Vor he ne may naȝt þolye þane guode smel of þe ilke smerieles namore þanne þe boterel þanne smel of þe vine. Zuych smel ne miȝte naȝt Judas þolye þo þe magdalene smerede Iesu cristes uet mid þe precious smerieles. Vor him þoȝte þet hit wes þing uorlore. and he betere louede þet zeluer ine his porse be his couaytise. Of zuiche uolke is lhord a dyeuel and mayster. þet is ine helle. þet is y-cleped : ssette-pors. þet an hermite y-zeȝ / þet zede þet he hedde þet mestier uor to

Mercy is displeasing to the devil,

for it is the armour whereby he is soon overcome.

He cannot endure the smell of the ointment of mercy. Such smell Judas could not abide.

The lord of the unmerciful is the devil, who is a very "shut-purse."

ssette þe porses of þe wrechchen / þet hi ne ssolle by open to do elmesse.

4. The liberality of our Lord. God giveth liberally to all, for the sun shineth upon the good and the evil,

wherefore we should be kind and courteous to one another.

The son should be like the father.

The merciful are God's sons.

5. The honour of God. He who honours God will do good to the poor.

The poor are the little household of our Lord.

He who honours the poor, honours God,

as was seen by St Martin, who gave his mantle to a poor man. [Fol. 59. a.]

6. The dread of doom. Doom without mercy shall be to those who do not the works of mercy.

þe uerþe þing þet ssel man sterie to merci / is þe greate largesse of oure lhorde / þet yefþ largeliche to allen / be þet / þet hy byeþ. ase zayþ saint Iacob. and makeþ þe zonne ssine ope þe guode / and ope þe kueade / ase he zayþ ine his spelle. Vor þazne huo þet is zuo large to ous. uor he ous yefþ al þet we habbeþ of guod : we ssolle by large and cortoyis / þe on / a-ye þe oþre / and helpe þe on / þe oþre. uor þus he ous hat ine his spelle þo he zede. 'byeþ uol of merci ase youre uader is.' þe zone ssel by ylich þe uader oþer he is onkende be zaynte peter. And þeruore zayde þe wyse ine þe writinge. 'by merciul and reuþeuol to þe uaderlyese / ase hire uader / and hire moder. and þous þou sselst by godes zone.'

þe vifte þing þet ssel man sterie to merci / is : worþssipie god. Vor ase zayþ salomon. þe ilke worþssipeþ wel god oure lhord : þet deþ guod to þe poure. uor þet me ham deþ : me hit deþ to god / ase him-zelf hit wyt-nesseþ ine his spelle. 'þet þou hest y-do he zayþ to onen of mine poure : þou hit hest y-do to me.' þe poure byeþ þe little mayne of oure lhorde. yef þou worþssipes þe pouere þou worþssipes god. Vor huo þet worþssipeþ þe mayné : he worssipeþ þe lhordes sergont. and huo þet deþ ssame to þe mainé : he deþ ssame to þe sergond. Of pisen we habbeþ uayre uorbysne ine mine lhorde sant martin to huam god him ssewede þe nigt efterward þet he todelde his mentel to þe poure / and wes beuealde ine þe mentle / and zede. to his angles. 'Martin yet nou y-primsened me heþ yssred mid þise cloþe.'

þe zixte þing þet ssel moche sterie ane man to merci : is þe dred of dom. Vor ase zayþ saint iacob. 'dom wyþ-oute merci / ssel bi do to þan : þet ne deþ workes of merci.' Vor ase god zayde in his spelle. 'Huazne me comp to þe dome / þe dom ssel by yeue aye

þo þet ne habbeþ y-do þe workes of merci.' uor god ham wile do þet dyaue eare. and þerof hit ne is no wonder / to þan þet anhaste makeþ ham dyaue to þe poure / ase hit sseweþ ine þe godspelle. ine þe uorbisne of þe riche manne / þet onworþede þane lazre. uor þet he him wernde his elmesse : god him wernde ane drope of weter / þer he wes ine uere of helle. Alsuo to þe fole maydenes þet ne hedde non oyle ine hire lompen / god ham ssette þe gate of þe sposayles / and ham zede. ich not huo y[e] byeþ. zuo þet hy bleften wyþ-oute. þus he ssel do ate day of dome to wrechchen and to þe couaytous / þet ne ssolle habbe þe ledinge of me[r]ci / þet let þe zaules in-to paradis / and ham makeþ way to comene to-uore god. ase zayþ þe wrytinge. ase me makeþ way and ondeþ þe gate bleþeliche to þan þet brengþ uayr present. Vor-zoþe arizt accorsed ssel by þet uram reuþe went þane reg at þo daye. Vor god ssel yeue dom wel dreduol / þet ssel by zuo uest and zuo stable / and uor alle time y-confermed / ne neure ine none time wyþcleped. þes dom yzed beuore / ssel he do ase king. þanne ssel he keste his greate manzinge as þe heze bissop an souerayn pope. Vor king he is : and bissop / ase zayþ þe wrytinge. Vor he nom kende of man of kinges kennd / and of bissoppes. þe ilke amanzinge sel by ope alle þo uolke / þet ssole by a left-half / non ne worþ uorbore. þet ssolle by þe kueade huiche he ssel miszigge uor hare on-trewþe. and þus he ssel ham zigge. 'Guoþ ye acorsede in-to þe greate uere eurelestinde ine helle þe stinkinde / and þyesterness of ssed / þet is agrayped to þe dreduolle dyuele / and to his uelazes / þet habbeþ ymad his messages.' A. allas / þes dom þaz hit by wel ssort : uor-zoþe hit ssel by wel zorzuol and hard. Huanne he his ssel wreke out of his uelazrede. Mochel is to drede zuo harde to-deling.

God will turn the deaf ear to the unmerciful.

This Christ showed us in the parable of Dives and Lazarus.

The covetous shall not find the way to Paradise at doomsday,

but cursed shall they be that turned their backs on mercy.

Christ shall give doom as a king,

and cursing as a high bishop and sovereign pope,

for He took the nature of man, of king, and of bishop. This cursing shall be upon all on the left hand.

"Go," he shall say, "ye accursed, into everlasting fire, prepared for the devil and his fellows."

This doom shall be short but sorrowful.

þe zeuende þing þet ssel moche man sterie to merci :
 *is a zed þet betere makeþ frut ine lhene land / þazne hit

7. The seed of mercy beareth good fruit.

Mercy multiplieth
temporal riches.

St Germain had
given all his
money to the
poor,

except three pence
retained by one
of his deacons,
who was told to
give them also to
the poor.
The deacon gave
only two pence
away.

[Fol. 59. b.]
St Germain dis-
covered the fraud
by receiving two
hundred instead
of three hundred
pence from a rich
knight.

A rich gentleman
was robbed by
thieves of all that
he had,
and he complain-
ed to John the
Almoner, who
ordered his stew-
ard to give him
fifteen pounds of
gold,
but the servant
gave only five.
A gentle widow
sent John five
hundred pounds,

and he told his
servant that if he
had given the
15 pounds, our
Lord would have
sent him 1500
pounds by the
good woman,

do ine uette. Hou merci multiplieþ þe timliche guodes.
hyer-of we habbeþ uele uayre uorbisnen. huerof ich
wille hier zome telle. Me ret of saint germain of
ancerne. þet þo he com uram rome / ate out-guoinge
of melane he acsede at onen of his diaknen yef he
hedde eny zeluer. and he ansuerede þet he ne hedde
bote þri pans. uor say[n]t germayn hit hedde al yeue to
pouren. þanne he him het : þet he his ssolde yeue to
þe poure. uor god hedde ynoȝ of guode huerof he hise
uedde uor þane day. þe dyacne mid greate pine and
mid greate grochinge yeaf þe tuaye pans / and ofhild
þane þridde. þe sergont of ane riche kniȝte him
broȝte ane his lhordes haf tuo hondred pans. þo
clepede he his dyacne and him zede / þet he hedde
benome þe poure ane peny. and yef he hedde yeue
þane þridde peny to þe poure : þe kniȝt him hedde
yzent : þri hondred pans.

Afterward me ret ine þe lyue of Ion þe amoner þet
wes zuo ycleped uor þe greate elmesses þet he dede.
A riche ientilman wes y-robbed of þieues / zuo þet him
naȝt ne blefte. He him com to playni to þe uorzede
manne. and he him zede his cas. he hedde greate
reuþe þerof. and het his desspendoure þet he him yeaue
uyftene pond of gold. þe spendere be his couaytise ne
yeaf bote vyf. An haste a gentil wymman wodewe
zente to þe uore yzede Ion / uif hondred pond of gold.
þo he clepede his spendere / and him acsede hou moche
he hedde y-yeue to þe kniȝte. he ansuerede : vyftene
pond. þe holy man ansuerede : þet nay. he ne hedde
bote vyf. and huanne he hit wiste / þe ilke zelue þet
his hedde onderuonge / zuo zayde to his spendere. þet
yef he hedde y-yeue þe viftene pond þet he hedde y-
hote : oure lhord him hede yzent be þe guode wyfman :
a þouzond and vyf hondred pond. And huanne he
acsede ate guode wyfman þo he hedde hise ycleped
hou moche hi hedde him y-lete / hi andzuerede / þet

uerst hi hedde y-write ine hare testament / þet hi him
let a þousend and vyf hondred pond. Ac hi lokede
afterward ine hare testament and hi yzeþ þe þousend
pond defaced of hire write / and zuo ylefde þe guode
wyfman / þet god wolde þet hi ne zente bote vif
hondred.

which was the sum
she had at first left
him in her will,
but the 1000
pounds was after-
ward found de-
faced.

Afterward saint gregori telþ þet saint boniface
uram þet he wes child / he wes zuo piteuous : þet he
yaf ofte his kertel and his sserte to þe poure uor god.
þaþ his moder him byete ofte þeruore. þanne be-vil
þet / þet child yzeþ manie poure þet hedden mezeyse.
he aspide þet his moder nes naȝt þer. an haste he yarn
to þe gerniere / and al þet his moder hedde y-gadered
uor to pasi þet yer : he hit yaf þe poure. and þo his
moder com and wyste þe ilke dede : hy wes al out of
hare wytte. þet child bed oure lhorde : and þet garnier
wes an haste aluol.

St Boniface show-
ed great kindness
to the poor, for
which he was
often beaten by
his mother.
On one occasion,
his mother being
absent, he emptied
the garner for the
poor,
and his mother
was nearly out of
her wits, but sud-
denly, at the
prayer of the
child, the garner
became full.

Afterward þer wes a poure man ase me zayþ. þet
hedde ane cou / and yhyerde zigge of his preste ine his
prechinge / þet god zede in his spelle þet god wolde
yelde an hondreduald al þet me yeaue uor him. þe
guode man mid þe rede of his wyue / yeaþ his cou to
his preste þet wes riche. þe prest his nom bleþeliche /
and hise zente to þe opren þet he hedde. þo hit com
to euen : þe guode mannes cou com hom to his house
ase hi wes y-woned / and ledde mid hare alle þe prestes
ken al to an hondred. þo þe guode man y-zeþ þet /
he þoȝte þet þet wes þet word of þe godspelle þet he
hedde y-yolde. and him hi weren yloked beuore his
bissoppe aye þane prest. þise uorbisne sseweþ wel þet
merci is guod chapuare. uor hi deþ wexe : þe timliche
guodes.

A poor man hear-
ing that agift to
God is required
a hundred-fold,

gave his cow to a
rich priest, who
took it home with
him, and placed it
among his other
cows.
At eventide the
good man's cow
came back, bring-
ing with her an
hundred cows be-
longing to the rich
priest.

Mercy is good
chaffer and mul-
tiplieth temporal
goods.

OF ÞE GUODNES OF ELMESSE.

Nou hest þou y-hyerd þe boȝes of þe trawe of merci.
ac uor þan þet moche uolk byeþ / þet hare elmesse þet

Of the goodness
of alms.

[Fol. 60. a.]
Many bestow
alms wrongly
and uselessly.

Alms should be given to the needful, and should be made pleasing to God.

In almsgiving three things are to be considered.

1. A man must give of what belongs to him, and not of that pertaining to another.

Alms given of theft, toll, robbing, usury, are not pleasing to God.

He who maketh sacrifice to God of the goods of the poor, is as he who slayeth the child before his father. That is not gift which one taketh readily and the other loseth weepingly.

2. Look to whom thou shalt do good.

Give to the good and not to the shrew and the sinner,

that is to say, as the reward of their wickedness, as one giveth to ribalds and minstrels.

Nevertheless alms may be given them on account of their poverty.

hy doþ : hi lyezeþ / and hare oþre guodes. uor hi ne doþ naȝt ase hy ssolde. þeruore ich þe wyle sseawysortliche / hou me ssel maky elmesse : to þan þet hi by behofsam. and þet hi liky god.

þanne huo þet ssel do elmesse : hel ssel loki þri þinges. Verst : huerof he deþ elmesse. uor he hit ssel do of his oȝene / and naȝt of oþremanne. and þerof þet he heþ of guode wynnyng and trewe. god ne heþ hede of kueade yefþes. ac he his loueþ trewe and guode. Elmesse þet is y-do of þyefþe. of tol. of robbing. of gauelyng. oþer of oþre kueade gaderinge : hit ne likeþ noþing god. Huerof þe writinge zayþ. ‘þou ne sselt naȝt maky none sacrefice to god of oxe / ne of ssep / þet by spotty. uor god heþ grat wlatyng / of zuych sacrefice.’ and þe wyze zayþ in þe writinge. ‘þe ilke þet makeþ sacrifice to god / of þe guodes of þe poure : he deþ ase þe ilke þet sslaȝt þet child be-uore his uader.’ And saynt austin þus zaiþ. ‘huet yefþe is þet’ he zayþ. ‘þet þe on nimb gledliche / and þe oþer hit lyst wepindeliche :?’ and þeruore ssel ech loki huerof he deþ elmesse.

Afterward he ssel loky to huam he hit deþ. þanne þe writinge zayþ. Loke to huam þou sselt do guod. do guod to þe guode. þet is to þan : þet þou wenst by guod. and ne yef naȝt to þe ssrewe. ne ne loke naȝt þane zenezere. þet is to zigge : þet þou ne sselt naȝt yeue to þe kueade / be þe scele of his kueadnesse. ase doþ þo þet yeueþ þe ribaus / and menestrals / uor hare wykkednesse.¹ ne oþerlaker hi nolden ham yeue naȝt. þet is wel grat zenne ase ziggeþ þe haȝen. Ac huo þet ham yefþ / naȝt uor hare kueadnesse : ac uor reuþe / and uor þolemodnesse of hare pourehede / and of hare wyues / and of hare children. yef hi hise habbeþ. oþer of hire uader / oþer of hire moder. oþer uor oþre guode skele / ase his uor to wyþdraȝe uram zenne : he deþ

¹ MS. *wylkednesse*.

wel. þanne elmesse y-yeue to þe poure. and more to ham þet byeþ riȝt poure of herte / and of wyl. þet habbeþ ylete uor god þet hi hedden / oþer þet hi miȝte hadde. þet þo þet ne byeþ naȝt poure of wyllē : ac poure of nyede : wel ich hadde þe eft / y-zed. And alneway me ssel ham bleþeliche yeue / and nameliche to þe poure ssamueste. and to þe uaderlease. an to wyfmen wodewen. and to oþre nieduolle / þanne me yziȝþ þe nyede / and me hit moȝe do. and zuo me is y-healde to þe oncouþe / aboue alle oþren me is y-hyalde : to uader and to moder / huanne me y-ziȝþ hare nyede. Vor þe kende hit tekþ / and god hit acseþ / and hat.

Give alms to the poor, and especially to the poor of heart, to the fatherless, to widows, and other necessitous persons.

Me ret of þe heyrone þet he draȝþ uorþ his uader and his moder huanne hi byeþ ealde / and ne moȝe ham naȝt porchaci. þeruore kende tekþ þet me ssel guod do to uader and to moder. and huo þet hit ne deþ : he is onkende. and zenezep a-ye kende / and a-ye god. þet hat to worþssipie uader and moder / and þeruore hit is wel riȝt þet hit misuallē to him and to hare þet deþ harm uader oþer moder / ase hit is manye ziȝe yuallē.

Above all shall one help his parents in their need.

[.a uorbisme.]

Nature teacheth us to do good to our father and mother.

[Fol. 60. b.]

Afterward me ssel ysy hou me ssel do elmesse / and þe manere his uor to yeuene. Vour *condicions* be þe writinge ssolle by ine elmesse. þe uerste is þet me hise yeue gledliche and mid guod herte. uor god lokeþ more þe herte : þanne þe honden. Huerof saynt gregorie zayþ. þet god ine his sacrement ne lokeþ naȝt hou grat þing me yeue / ac mid huet herte. ase hit sseweþ wel in þe godspelle of þe poure wyfman þet ne hedde bote tuaye uerþinges þet hi offrede to þe temple. Huerof oure lhord zayþ / þet hi hedde more y-layd : þanne alle þe oþre þet hedden y-layd greate þinges. Vor more likeþ oþerhuil to god an alfpeny þet a poure yefþ gledliche uor god : þanne a riche man yeaue an hondred marc grochindeliche and mid zorȝe of herte. and þeruore zayþ þe wyse ine þe writinge. ‘make’hezayþ ‘uayre chiere’

3. Consider how to give alms, and the manner of giving them.
1. Give gladly and willingly.

God looketh not to the gift, but to the heart of the giver,

and He is better pleased with the poor man's half-penny than the rich man's hundred marks.

There are some
so discourteous to
the poor,

that they accom-
pany their alms
with many twit-
tings and up-
braidings.

2. Give thy alms
soon and hastily.

Say not to thy
friend, "Go, and
come again to-
morrow."

Make no delay,
when thou hast
it in thy power to
give.

"Nothing," says
Seneca, "is so
dearly bought
as what one hath
by delay."

Give thy offerings
to God while thou
livest,

for death waiteth
for none.

Give thy alms
for the love of
Christ.

and glède ine alle þine yefþes.' And zaynte paul zuo zayþ þet 'god loueþ moche þane yeuere þet is gled and corteys.' And zome þer byeþ zuo uyleyne to þe poure huanne hi ham yeueþ enye elmesse / an haste his misziggeþ uoulliche / and his clepyeþ truons / and ham ziggeþ zuo uele atuytinges / and of folyes er þan hi ham aȝt yeue / þet wel is worþ þet zeluer. þe ilke elmesse / ne payþ naȝt god. and þereuore zayþ þe wyse ine þe writinge. 'bouȝ þin eare he zayþ 'to þe poure / wyþ-oute zorȝe / and him ansuere mildeliche.'

þe oþer þing þet behoueþ ine elmesse is. þet me hit do zone and hasteliche. þerof salomon zayþ. 'ne zay naȝt to þine urende / guo / and com ayen to morȝe / and þanne ich wylle þe yeue : huanne þou him miȝt an haste yeue.' And ine anopre stede he zayþ. 'ne leng naȝt þine yefþe uram þe nyeduolle.' þet is to zigge / 'ne make him naȝt abyde : huanne þou miȝt an haste yeue.' þet is aye uele riche / þet makeþ grede þe poure þet hebbeþ to done mid ham. and zuo moche his doþ abide / zuo uele ȝiþe hit behoueþ ham bidde and bezeche / beuore er hi wylleþ aȝt do / þet to moche hy ham zelleþ þe guodnesse þet hi ham willeþ do. Vor ase zayþ senekes. 'No þing ne is zuo diere y-boȝt : ase þet me heþ be biddinge.' And þis is þet me zayþ ine atwytinge. 'Dyere ha bayþ : þet byt.' And þous ssel ech man wel do zuyf[t]liche uor his zaule þerhuyle þet ha leueþ / and hol. þanne þe wyse zayþ ine þe writinge. 'Vayre zone' he zayþ 'do guod of þinen : yef þou hest huerof. and offre to god worþi offringe þerhuyls þet þou leuest. Vor þe dyap ne abyȝt naȝt.' And ine anopre stede he zayþ. 'do guod to þine uriende : to-uore þe dyape.' þet is to þine zaule / to huam þou sselȝ do guod to-uore þine dyape. oþer to þine trewe urende / þet is Iesu crist to huam þou sselȝ guod do to-uore þine dyape / doinde elmesses uor þe loue of Iesu crist to his poure. Vor þet me deþ þe poure :

me deþ hit to him. ase he zayþ ine his spelle. þanne
 þe elmesse þet me yefþ ine lyue / and ine helpe / more
 is worþ : þanne þe ilke þet is y-do efter þe deape. Alsuo
 ase þe lanterne þet me berþ be-uore þe manne / him let
 bet / and more zikerlaker / þanne þe ilke þet me berþ
 behynde þe regge. And þeruore ous amonestep sainte
 paul þet we do guod / þerhuyle þet we libbeþ. H[u]anne
 a riche man ssel come to ane toune / oþer to ane cite.
 he zent his messagyers be-uore¹ uor to nime guod in.
 oþer oþerlaker he miȝte wel fayly : guod in uorto habbe.
 þe guode forriers þet nimeþ and agrayþeþ þet hous of
 paradys to þe riche manne : byeþ þe elmessen þet ha
 deþ ine his liue. þe elmessen þet byeþ y-do efter þe
 dyape : byeþ ase þe hewe recreyd þet late comþ hom.
 zuo þet þe lhord is oþerhuil euele y-herberzed.

[Fol. 61. a.]

Alms given in
 life-time are
 more worthy than
 those given after
 death.

A lantern carried
 before a man is
 better than one
 borne behind his
 back.

[1 MS. *be-uore*]

Our alms are our
 good forerunners,
 that prepare for
 us the house of
 Paradise.

þe þridde condicion þet ssel by in elmesse is / þet
 me ssel yeue largeliche be þan þet me heþ huerof. þe
 wyse zayþ. 'yef to god / be þan þet he heþ þe y-yeue.'
 And thobye zayþ alsuo. 'be þine miȝte by reuþeuol /
 and merciul. Yef þou hest moche guod : yef large-
 liche. and yef þou hest lite : yef þerof bleþeliche / and
 corteisliche.' þanne ech ssel yeue efter his miȝte / and
 be þet / þet god him heþ y-yeue. Me vint of ane
 kinge. to huam a poure acsede ane peny. he hym
 ansuerede / þet zuich a lite yefþe ne wes naȝt uor ane
 king. And of alisondre me ret. þet [he] yaf ane cite / to
 onen of his sergons. an huanne þe ilke hise wolde uor-
 zake. uor þet / grat þing him þoȝte / to nime zuych
 yefþe. Alisondre ansuerede and zayde. 'Ich ne loky
 naȝt þet belongeþ þe to nimene : ac me to yeuene.'

3. Give liberally.

If thou hast
 much, give
 abundantly ;

but if little, give
 gladly and cour-
 teously.

Each shall give
 "after his
 might."
 Alexander gave a
 city to one of his
 servants, who
 would refuse it
 on account of
 the greatness of
 the gift.
 The king said to
 him, "I consider
 not what is proper
 for thee to take,
 but for me to
 give."

þe uerþe condicion is / þet þe elmesse by y-do mid
 wille / and mid condicion. þet me ne zeche none ydele
 blisse / ne þet me ne onworþi þe poure. to huam þet me
 hit yefþ. ne uor elmesse þet me deþ ine dyadlich zenne.
 me heþ presumpcion uor to by y-borȝe. Zom uolk þer
 byeþ / þet yef hy doþ elmesse : hi willeþ þet alle hit

4. Give willingly,
 and with a pure
 mind.

Some folks give
 alms and desire
 that all should

hear of their
charity.

Christ hath com-
manded us to
give our alms
secretly and
without ostenta-
tion.

Good works may
be done before
the folk, for good
example's sake,

so that God may
be glorified.

The alms-giver
must not despise
[Fol. 61. b.]
the poor reci-
pient.

Some folk despise
the poor,
and speak largely
and proudly to
them.

[a tokne þet iob
was king.]
Job was not
ashamed of poor
men.

The fellowship of
the poor

wyte. Ac þe wyse zayþ / þet me do þe elmesse in-to
þe greade of þe poure. Vor ase zayþ saynt gregorie.
'hit is y-noȝ to þe guode manne / þet yef he hit zent / of
huam he onderstant his ssepe to habbe.' And þeruore
zayþ oure lhord ine his spelle. 'Huazne þou dest elmesse.
ne wyte naȝt þi left hand : huet deþ þi riȝt hand. zuo
þet þin elmesse by y-hed. and þi uader of heuene þet
izyt þin hedinge : hit þe halt.' þet is to zigge. þazne
þou sselst do elmesse : loke þet ydele blisse. þet is to
onderstonde be þe left half. ne by naȝt y-mengd. Ac
do his in riȝte wone / and riȝte onderstondinge. þet is
onderstonde by þe riȝt half. Ich ne zigge naȝt þet me
ne ssel do þe guode workes oþerhuil to-uore þe uolke /
uor to yeue guodē uorbysne / hueruore god by yhered :
and y-þonked. Vor þus him zayþ oure lhord ine his
spelle. þet we maki oure guode dedes to-uore þe uol-
kerede / þeruore þet god by y-hered and y-glorefied naȝt
uor þe los of uolke ase deþ þe ypocrite. and þeruore
zayþ saint gregorie / þet me do his workes aperteliche /
þet þe onderstondinge bi riȝtuol bezide.

Afterward huo þet wyle do elmesse / he hit ssel zuo
do / þet he naȝt ne onworþi þe poure to huam þet he
hit deþ. þeruore zayþ þe profete. 'Ne onworþe naȝt' he
zayþ 'þi uless. þet is þe poure þet is ilich þe / and of
zuiche kende of uless and of blod ase þou art. and of
zuiche wose.' Zom uolk byeþ þet onworþeþ þe poure /
and ne dayneþ naȝ[t] to speke to ham. and yef hi spekeþ :
gratliche and proudliche hi spekeþ. Zuo ne dede naȝt
iob / þet zede / þet [he] ne onworþede neure þe guoinde /
vor þet hi weren naked. ac rapre ham yaf clopinge /
and mete and drinke. þe holi man þaz he were king /
and heȝ man / ne hedde none ssame of þe poure / ase
doþ zome greate lhordes of þise wordle. þet wel doþ
elmesse to poure / ac alneway his habēþ ine onworþ[þ]nesse
uor hare pourehede. And yef hi weren riȝtuolliche
milde : hi ssolden betere louie þe uelazrede of poure

men / þet byeþ poure uor god. þet hise moze wel edefie
 be uorbisnes and be wordes / þet of manie riche men hi
 habbeþ aboute ham / huer þer ne is bote covay[ti]se /
 ulaterie / yelpinge / and ham makeþ lete moche wel to
 done / and makeþ ham moche kuead to done / be hare
 euele rede.

is often to be
 preferred to that
 of rich men.

Afterward þer byeþ som uolk þet dop yno3 elmesse /
 ac alnewey hi ne leteþ na3t to done hare greate zenne.
 þe ilke elmesse ne ssel his na3t ber3e. Vor yef hi
 sterueþ ine zuich stat : hire elmesse ne ssel ham na3t
 wytie / þet hi ne ssolle by uor-lore. þanne zuich uolk
 byeþ ase þe ilke þet of one half makeþ þet hous / and
 of oþer half he hit brekþ. And þeruore zayþ þe writ-
 inge. 'Yef þou wilt kueme god : haue uerst reuþe /
 and merci / of pine zaule. uor huo þet is kuead and
 ontrewē to him : to huam ssel he bi guod and trewe ?'
 zayþ þe writinge : ase yef he zede. [he] ne may na3t¹ by
 guod and trewe to oþren : þet to him-zelue is kuead.
 And þeruore saint austin zayþ. 'Huo þet wile ri3tuol-
 liche do elmesse : he ssel beuore aginne at himzelue.
 uor he ssel more louie his o3ene zaule : þanne anopres :
 uor god.' Non ne wolde zigge þet yef he were reuþeuol /
 and uol of merci / þet ne ssolde habbe reuþe of his
 moder poure and zik. hou moche he hedde reuþe of
 oþren. Alzuo ich zigge / þe ilke þet ne is na3t reuþeuol
 ne uol of merci / þet ne heþ pité of his zaule : huarne
 he wot þet hi is zik to þe dyape / þet is ine dyadlich
 zenne.

Some folk give
 enough alms, and
 yet forsake not
 their preuailing
 sins,

Alms alone will
 not save a man.

If thou wilt please
 God, have first
 mercy upon thy
 own soul.

[1 MS. naþt]

Let alms be pre-
 ceded by repent-
 ance.

He is not merci-
 ful that hath no
 pity on his own
 soul, that is sick
 unto death.

Nou ich habbe þe y-no3 y-ssewed of þe trawe of
 merci. þe stapes. þe bozes. and þet frut. þet comp ine
 þise wordle / and ine þe oþre. of þe frut of þise trawe
 ous spekþ dauip ri3t wel ine þe sautere / þer he zayþ
 þous. 'ybyssed byeþ þo þet ham yeueþ to þe poure /
 and to þe nieduolle.' þet is to zigge : þet ne abit na3t :
 al-wet þe poure him bit / ac rapre him yefþ wyþ-oute
 aksinge. Vor me wes ywoned to zigge / and zoþ hit

Blessed be those
 that give to the
 poor and needful,
 without delay,
 and without soli-
 citation.

is. þet to mo[c]he bayþ / þet byt. Ne þe ilke ne heþ
 [Fol. 62. a.] herte to yeuene : þet ne yefþ er me acsi. þe ilke deþ
 wel þet yefþ to þe poure þet acseþ. ac he deþ bet : þet
 yefþ wyþoute aksinge. And of þan zayþ þe sauter.
 The merciful 'Y-blissed is þe ilke þet onderstant to þe poure.' and
 shall be blessed, hueruore is he y-blissed ? he zayþ afterward ine þe ilke
 and shall be de- uers. þet god him wyle deliuri in þe kueade daies of his
 livered from his yuo. þet ssel bi ate daye of dome þet ssel by hard and
 foes at the day of kuead to þe wickede / þet ssolle by y-damned / uor þe
 doom. workes of merci / þet hi ne habbeþ naȝt ydo. þanne
 The unmerciful þe demere ssel ham zigge at þo daye. 'guoþ ye¹ acorsede /
 shall be cursed in-to þe uere of helle / mid alle þe dyeulen / þet you is
 [1 MS. þe] y-diȝt uram þe ginnynge of þe wordle. Vor ich hedde
 and driven from God's presence, honger / and þorst / ye ne me yeaue mete / ne drinke /
 ich wes zik / þou ne come naȝt to me.' And þus he
 and shall be given ssel ham attwyte : þe workes of merci / þet hi naȝt
 over to their foes, habbeþ y-do. and þeruore hi ssolle bi betake at þo
 the devils. daye : to hare yuon. þet byeþ þe dyeulen of helle. Of
 huam þe rewþeuolle / and þo þet doþ ham to þe poure /
 The merciful and to þe workes of merci. ssolle bi betake at þo daye /
 shall inherit the and ssolle by do in-to sayzine of þe riche of heuene / ase
 kingdom of hea- zayþ oure lhord ine his spelle. Vor he ssel zigge to þan
 ven, þet habbeþ y-do þe workes of merci / 'comeþ þe¹ yblissede
 [1 MS. þe] of mine uader / onderuongeþ þe riche of heuene / þet
 is to you y-dyȝt / uram þe ginyng of þe wordle. Vor
 þet ye habbeþ y-do to mine poure : ye hit habbeþ me y-
 do.' Grat worþssipe god ham ssel do / þanne he ham
 þonkeþ / of þe workes of merci. and he ham ssel y[e]ue :
 þet lyf wyþoute ende. And þeruore he zayþ ine his
 and for their alms spelle. 'Yblissed byeþ þe merciulle : uor hi ssolle
 shall obtain mercy. habbe merci.' uor þet hi habbeþ ylengd / þet lyf of þe
 They shall have everlasting life, poure be hare elmesse. Wel hit is riȝt / and skele / þet
 god ham yeue þet lyf wyþoute ende / þet is / and ssel
 by wyþoute ende. and þeruore þet hi habbeþ y-het
 reuþe / of Iesu cristes lemes ine þe erþe / and hise
 habbeþ y-loked / and y-conforted ine hare nyede. Hit

is wel skele þet me do ham ate ende merci / and þet me
his deliuri of alle kueadnesse / of alle nyede. and þet
ssel he do / huazne he ssel yeue þe blisse eurelestinde /
mid merci his let uorþ / and his ssel herbergi.

and Christ shall
"harbour" them
for ever.

þe yefþe of onderstondinge. and of þe uirtue of
CHASTETE.

The gift of under-
standing, and of
the virtue of
chastity.

Holy Writ ous tekþ / tuo maneres of liues. huerby
me comp to þe liue wyþ-outende. þe uerste is yhote
workuol [active] / uor þet hi is ine zuynch of guode
workes / and makeþ man onderstonde to þe profit of
him-zelue / and of his emcristen. þe oþer is y-hote
resteuol [contemplatiue]. uor þet hi is reste / of workes
wyþ-oute / and ne dep him naȝt bote to god uor to
knaue / and louie. hueroore hy his ydel of nyedes
wyþ-oute / and ase aslepe. Ac hi is awaked wyþine to
þenche of god / and him louie / and naȝt ne wylni :
bote him to habbe / and uor him / alle oþre þinges /
dep ine uorýetinge. Vor hi is of al y-robbed / and y-
piȝt ine god. and wylneþ uor to by to-deld uram þe
dyadliche bodye : uor to by alneway mid Iesu crist /
ase zaiþ zainte paul.

There are two
modes of life,
whereby one
cometh to the
life without end.
The first is active
—a life of good
works.

The second is
contemplative—
a life in which
the soul seeks to
know only God,
and to forget all
else,

and desires to be
separated from
the mortal body,
and to be with
Christ.

þe uerste lif is ine þe viztinge / ine þe uelde of
guode workes / huer þe knyȝt lierneþ / ham proueþ /
and alosep. þe oþer his reste wyþ god ine þe chombre of
clene inwyt. þe uerste onderstant to uede god / mid
þe mete of guode workes. þe oþer onderstant to by
yued / and yueld of god be zoþe confort gostlich. þanne
þe uerste is be-tokned be marþen / þet wes bisy uor to
uede oure lhord / ase zayþ þet godspel. þe oþer is be-
tokned be Marie / þet hire zette ate uet of Iesu crist /
and lheste his wordes. þe uerste is way / and inguo-
inge' to þe oþren. Vor non ne may come to þe liue
restuolle : bote he by uerst wel y-proved ine liue by-
zye / ase zayþ sain gregorie. þe yefþes / and þe uirtues
huerof we habbeþ y-speke aboue be-longeþ / to þe uerste
liue þet is ycleped workuol. þe tuo laste huerof we

The first life is in
fighting in the
field of good
works.

[Fol. 62. b.]
The other is rest
with God in the
chamber of a pure
conscience.

Martha is a type
of the first life,
and Mary of the
second.

The gift of understanding and wisdom belongeth to the life contemplative.

To this life belong also a right knowledge of God and a stedfast love.

The gift of understanding given by the Holy Ghost,

is a light and a grace of brightness which enables man to know his Maker, and those spiritual matters pertaining to the help of the soul.

This gift is called light, for it cleanseth the understanding of the darkness of pride and of spots of sin,

and enables man to know clearly and surely God his Creator.

The sick eye may not see clearly, neither may man's understanding perceive spiritual truths without being first purified by the Divine light.

ssolle speke mid þe helpe of gode and of þe holy gost. þet is to wytene / þe yeffþe of onderstondinge / and þe yeffþe of wisdom : belongeþ to þe opre liue þet is y-hote restuol. þet lif is ine tuo þinges / ase we habbeþ aboue y-zed. þet is to wytene / ine rihte knowlechinge of god / and ine stedeueste loue. þe loue of onderstondinge leth to stedeuestnesse of rihte knaulechinge. þe yeffþe of wysdom / leth to stedeuestnesse of loue.

Nou we willeþ zigge uerst of þe yeffþe of onderstondinge / be þan þet þe holy gost wile ous teche. þes yeffþe þet is y-hote yeffþe of onderstondinge / ne is oþer þing / be þe halzen / and bi þe maistres / bote a lyzt and a grace of brihtnesse / þet þe holy gost zent in-to þe herte / huerby onderstondinge of man is arered uor to knawe his sseppere / and þe gostliche þinges þet ne moze naht by y-zoþe bodilich ine alle þe þinges þet belongeþ to þe helpe of zaule. mid skele kendelich ne onderstondinge of man of him / ne uor him / ne may come. þes god is y-cleped lyzt. Vor he clenzeþ þe onderstondinge of man / of piesternesse of prede / and of spottes of zenne. Vor ase þet lyzt bodilich deþ away piesternesse and makeþ brihtliche izy þe þinges bodilich : alsuo þis lyzt gostlich clenzeþ þe onderstondinge of man / al to þan þet he moze brihtliche ysy / and þet he moze knawe brihtliche and zikerliche / ase me may y-knawe ine þise dyeadliche liue god his sseppere / and þe sseppinges gostliche / ase bieþ þe angles / and þe zaulen. þet belongeþ to þe helpe of zaulen. ase byeþ þe articles of þe beleaue / huerof we habbeþ beuore y-speke ine ane stede be him-zelue. þis knawynge nis bote in inwyrt wel yuayred / and wel yclenzed. Vor ase þe zike eze ne may naht wel yzi brihtnesse. alsuo þe onderstondinge of man ase moche ase in him is / ne may ysy / ne knawe þe þinges gostliche / bote he by wel yclenzed / of alle lac of uelpe / be zoþe byleaue / þet clenzeþ þe herten / ase zayþ þe writinge. Ac þe

yefþe of þe holy gost / huerof we spekeþ hier / uol-
makeþ þise uayrhede / and þise clennesse ine herte / to
þet his holy zaule / þet is y-clenzed / and alizt / mid
þise lizte of onderstandinge : miȝte ysy and knawe
god / and al þet him is niede / and guod to his yborz-
inge / and þet is þe blissinge / huerof god spekeþ ine
his spelle / þo he zede. 'yblissed byeþ þo : þet byeþ
clene of herte / uor hi ssolle ysy god ine him-zelue ase
he is be byleauē alyȝte / and y-strengþed be þe yefþe
of onderstonndinge.' Vorzoþe efter þe dyeape / ine
paradis hi ssollen yzy him / al aperteliche / wizage /
to visage.

The Holy Ghost
enlightens the
soul.

The clean of
heart shall see
God as He is, by
belief through
the gift of under-
standing.

[Fol. 63. a.]

þanne zayþ zaynte paul. þis yefþe deþ away alle
uelþe of herte / and hire clenzeþ parfitliche of alle
lackes / and specialliche of þe lacke of þe zenne of
lecherie. Vor huo þet is be-uelde mid þo lac : he is
riȝtuolliche yblent / and heþ ylore þe eȝen of þe herte /
skele and onderstandinge / zuo þet he ne may y-knawe
his sseppere / ne þinges þet wendeþ to þe helþe of
zaule. Ac is ase best þet ne heþ wyt ne skele ine him.
þanne dauip zayþ ine þe sautere. þet man to huam þet
god heþ y-do zuo grat worþssipe þet hine made to his
ymage and to his anliknesse huerby he may y-knawe
god and habbe / þet he ne heþ y-do none beste : heþ
zuo uoryete his sseppere / an þe guodnesse þet he heþ
him y-do / þet he is become ilich to fole bestes / þet
ne habbeþ none onderstandinge. þe zenne þet mest
makeþ man ilich to uoule bestes / and to uelþe : is
zenne of lecherie. huerof we habbeþ be-uore y-zed þer
we speke of zenne. þe yefþe þanne of onderstandinge /
þet is of erþe specialliche / to þo uelþe bestrepp of þe
herte þe zenne of lecherie / an he tekþ uayrhede and
clennesse / huerof wext a wel uayr traw. þet is þe
uirtue of chasteté / huerby me comþ to þo greate
blissinge þet god be-hat to þan þet lokeþ clennesse of
herte : huanne he zede. 'yblissed hi by þe clene of

This gift puts
away all filth of
the heart, but
especially lechery.

For who is defiled
with this sin has
lost the eyes of
his heart,

and is no better
than a beast.

Lechery makes a
man like to foul
beasts.

The gift of under-
standing strips
the heart of this
sin.

Blessed are the

pure of heart,
for they shall see
God.

herte uor hi ssolle zzy god.' uor þet hi ssolle habbe þe
ezen of herte wel yclenzed and wel alizt of þe yefþe of
onderstondinge.

Of the seven steps
of chastity.

OF ÞE ZEUE STAPES OF CHASTETÉ.

I. A clean con-
science.

Without an un-
defiled mind
there is no chas-
tity pleasing to
God.

He who consents
to evil thoughts
is not chaste,
though he be
far from the
deed.

Three things tend
to produce purity
of heart.
The first is to
hear joyfully the
word of God.

The second is
true shrift, which
is the laver in
which one shall
oft wash.

Bear in mind the
story of Naaman's
washing in Jor-
dan seven times.

Jordan signifies
the stream of
judgment, and
betokens shrift,
in which man
shall judge him-
self with great
sorrow of heart,
and repentance,
so that a stream
of tears run from
his eyes.

þys traw wext and profiteþ / and clifþ ase doþ þe
opre to-uore yzed / be zeue stapes. þe uerste stape is
clene inwyt / þet is þe rote of þise trawe uor wyþ-out
clene inwyt : no chasteté ne lykeþ to god. þis chasteté /
þis clennesses / þis purté / acseþ þet me loki þe herte
uram euele þoztes / þet hi nazt ne *consenti* / and of
kuede wilni[n]gges. Vor huo þet him *consenteþ* to kueade
wylles / and to þe kueade þoztes of his herte : he ne is
nazt chast. þaz he by uer uram þe dede. uor be þe
consenting wyþ-out more : he ssolde by uorlore yef
he sterf þerinne.

þri þinges moche byeþ worþ to loki þe clennesses of
herte. þe uerste is / bleþeliche y-hyere þe wordes of
god / and his spellen. Huerof oure lthord zayþ ine his
spelle / to his deciples. 'ye byeþ' he zayþ 'alle clene / be
þe wordes þet ich you habbe yzed.' Vor godes word is
ase a uayr ssewere / ine huam me yziht alle þe lakkes of
þe herte. þet oper þing is zoþe ssrifte þet is þet lauor /
huer he him ssel ofte wesse. þe writinge zayþ ine þe
bok of kinges. þet elyseu þe profete het to naaman þet
wes mezel / þet he him wesse ine þe flom Jordan zeue-
ziþe uor to by clene of his euele. And þo he þer wes
ywesse : þo wes he al klene and al hol of his euele. þe
flum iordan þet is ase moche worþ : ase stream of dom /
and be-tokneþ ssrifte. huer man ssel him-zelue deme
mid greate zorþe¹ of herte / and mid greate repentonce /
zuo þet o stream of tyeares : yerne be þe *condut* of þe
ezen. and zuo þe mezel ssel bi al hol and clene. þet is
þe zenezere / yef he him wesst zeuezyþe / þet is to

¹ MS. *zorþe*

zigge / of alle his zeznes. And þeruore zayþ saynt bernard. 'loue ssrifte : yef þou wilt habbe uayrhede. Vor ssrifte ne is nazt wyþ-oute uayrhede.'

[Fol. 63. b.]

þet þridde þing is / beþenchinge of Iesu cristes pine. Vor no uondinge / none euele þoztes ne moze bleue ine herte : þet ofte recorder þane dyap and þe pine of Iesu crist. Vor þet is þe armure þet þe dyeuel dret mest ase þe ilke be huam he wes ouercome / and be huam he lyeas his mizte. þet is ous betokned in þe writinge of þe eddre of bres þet Moyses be þe heste of oure lhorde arerede ope þe pole zuo heze : þet al þet uolk hise yzeþ. And alle þo þet his yzeþe : weren y-held of þe prekiynges of þe eddren. þe eddre of bres arered ine þe pole : be-tokneþ þet body of Iesu crist y-hanged ine þe rode. þet wes þe eddre wyþ-oute uenym huerof wes y-mad þe triacle of oure helpe / to ham þet byeþ y-smite / and enuenimed of þe prekiynges of þe uenimous eddre¹ of helle / þet is þe dyuel. Loke be zoþe belyaue ine þe eddre of bres. þet ys to zigge / þet he þenche of þe pinen of Iesu crist. and anhaste he ssel by hol / and by y-uryd of þe uondinges of þe dyeule.

The third thing is a remembrance of Christ's passion,

for that is the armour most dreaded by the devil.

This is betokened in the Scriptures by the adder of brass.

The adder denotes the body of Christ.

[¹ MS. *eddras*] Look by true belief to the brazen serpent, that is, to death and passion of Christ.

þe oþer stape huerby þis traw clyfþ and profiteþ. is to loki þane mouþ uram uoule wordes / þet wendeþ to ribaudye and to onclennesse. uor be zuych blest and be zuych wynd : is ofte aquyked þet uer of lecherie. Huerof þe writinge spekeþ. þet 'word of fole wyfman / is berninde ase uer.' An zaynte paul þus zayþ. þet 'þe kueade wordes of fole wyfmen : amerreþ guode þeawes.' And þeruore huo þet wyle loki chasteté : hit behoueþ þet he him loki uram zuyche wordes. Vor huo þet bleþeliche hise zayþ / oþer bleþeliche his yherþ : he sseweþ wel þet he ne is nazt chast. Vor þer ne may go oute of þe uete : bote zuych ase þer is inne. Yef þe wordes byeþ uoule and lodliche / þet is apert tokne þet þe uoulhede and þe lodlichhede byeþ ine þe herte. Vor

II. Keep the mouth from foul words,

which oft kindle the fire of lechery.

Evil words of foul women mar good virtues.

He who will say and listen to foul words is not chaste.

If the words be loathsome, it is sign that there is filth in the heart.

be þe mochelhede of þe herte : þe mouþ spekeþ. þet
zayþ our lhord ine his spelle.

III. Guard all the
wits of the body—
the eye from foul
sights,
the ear from foul
words,
the hands from
wicked handling,
&c.

These are the
five gates of the
city of the heart,
whereby the
devil oft goeth
into the heart.

Samson, David,
and Solomon were
overcome through
not guarding
these gates.

St Gregory says,
"The tower of the
heart may not be
taken unless the
gates be open to
the devil's host."

[Fol. 64. a.]

Philosophers of
old fled into
deserts to pre-
serve their chas-
tity.

The bodily wits
are as a horse
without a bridle,

but a chaste
heart restrains
them with the
bridle of reason.

IV. Let the flesh
be governed by
the spirit.

The lusts and
pleasures of the
heart mar chas-
tity.

þe þridde stape is wel to loki alle þe wyttes of þe
bodye / ase þe ezen uram fol zyþe. þe earen / to hyere
fole wordes. þe honden ura[m] wyckede takinges. þe
nase : uram to moche lostuolle smelles. þane mouþ
uram to lostuolle metes / and ine guode smackes. þise
byeþ þe vif gates of þe cité of þe herte / huerby þe dieuel
geþ in ofte ine þe vif þerles of þe house / huerby þe
dyeuel ofte geþ in-to þe herte / ase zayþ þe profete.
Vele guode men and stronge habbeþ by y-nome and
ouercome / þe þan þet hi ne lokede naȝt wel þise gates.
And yef þou wylt habbe uorbisnes : þenche þet non ne
wes strengre þanne samson fortin. ne wiser þanne
salomon. ne more milder þanne dauid. and alneway
uillen be wyfmen. Ac uorzoþe yef hy hedden wel
yemd þe gates : þe uyend ne hedde naȝt ynome zuo
greate casteles. Vor ase zayþ saint gregorie. 'þe tour of
þe herte ne may naȝt by nome bote þe gates by opene
to þe ost of þe dyeule.' Huerof yealde filozofes hem
uledden in-to uerre stedes in-to dezert. þeruore þet hi
ne miȝten zy / ne yhere / ne uele / þing huerby þe
strengþe of hire workes uledde away / ne huerby hi
ssolden lyese hire chastete. þe opre þeruore þet hi nere
ine zenne to þenche of filozofie / hy presten out hare
ezen of þe herte / þet hi ne zezen þing þet ham miȝte
wyþdraze uram hire contemplacion. þanne þe bodiliche
wyttes byeþ ase þet hors þet yernþ wyþ-oute bridle zuo
þet hit deþ ualle his lhord. Ac þe herte chaste / ham
ofhalt mid þe bridle of skele. Nou ich habbe þe yzed
þane skele.

þe uerþe stape is ssarpnesse of liue to do his uless
onderuot þet is wrang to þe goste / ase zayþ zaynte
paul. Vor huo þet wile quenche þet uer of lecherie :
he mot do away þe aliztynges þet norisseþ zuych ver.
þet bieþ þe lostes and þe cysces of þe herte / þet berneþ

and alizteþ þet uer of lecherie / and amerreþ chasteté.
 þanne saint bernard þous zayþ / þet chastete spilþ þe
 lostes. þe writinge zayþ / þet Ieremies brechgerdel /
 rotede beside þe wetere. Vor chasteté / þet is onder-
 stonde / and betokned be þe brechgerdle : þet uor-
 rotede / ine þe wetere of uoule lostes. And þeruore /
 huo þet wyle him loki uram berninge : he ssel do a-
 way þe ilk brondes / be wyþdrazings of mete / and of
 drinke / and be ssarpnesses of his bodie. Huer-of þe
 writinge zayþ. þet þe children þet weren y-norissed
 mid greate metes / nolden nazt ethe of þe lostuolle
 metes / weren y-borþe ine þe fornayse of babyloyn.
 huerby is onderstonde : zenne of lecherie / þet is
 yquenet mid uorberinge of mete and of drinke / and be
 ssarpnesse of lyue. Ac þe greate metes / and þet
 stronge wyn / alizteþ and norisseþ lecherie / ase oyle
 oþer grese alizteþ and st[r]engþeþ þet uer.

þe vifte stape is be-uly kueade uelazrede and þe
 enchesons of zenne. Moche uolk byeþ y-ualle ine
 zenne be kueade uelazrede þet nazt elles ne hedden
 yualle. Ase þe leuayne zoureþ þet doþ and hit draþþ to
 smac : alsuo þe queade uelazrede amerþ þet guode los
 of þe manne. A roted eppel amang þe holen : makeþ
 rotie þe yzounde. yef he is longe þer amang. A quic
 col berninde ope ane hyeape of dyade coles : hit his
 zet alle auer. Huerof þe sauter zayþ. ‘þou sselst by holy
 mid þe holy. and poure mid þe poure.’ ase yef he zede.
 ye f þou wilt loki þine kleznesse and þine chasteté :
 beuli þe uelazrede of þe kueade. Vor yef þou louest þe
 uelazrede of þe queade : þou sselst by zuch ase hi byeþ.
 Vor huo þet loueþ uelazrede of fol : hit behoueþ þet he
 by fol. þet zayþ þe wyse ine þe writinge. Alsuo be-
 houeþ him beuly þe encheysones of zenne / ase speke
 priueliche to wyfinan in stede suspecton : wyþ one.
 Vor þet yefþ ofte encheysoun to zenezzy huanne me heþ
 þane time and þane stede. Huer-of we redeþ ine þe boc

Jeremiah's girdle
 that became rot-
 ten beside the
 Euphrates,
 denotes chastity,
 which is marred
 by foul lusts ;
 and therefore we
 must put the sin
 away, by fasting,
 and by penance.

The children who
 would not eat of
 “ lustful meats,”
 were preserved
 in the furnace of
 Babylon.

Great meats
 nourish lechery,
 as oil or grease
 keep up the fire.

V. Avoid the fel-
 lowship of the
 wicked,

for it mars a
 man's good fame.

A rotten apple
 will spoil a great
 many sound
 ones.

If thou lovest the
 company of the
 wicked thou shalt
 be such as they
 are.

Avoid the very
 appearance of
 evil, and go not
 into temptation.

The story of
Amon, king
David's son.

Avoid those things
that lead to
lechery.

[Fol. 64. b.]

Lot was com-
manded not only
to leave Sodom,
but all its
bounds.

So one must for-
sake lechery, and
the temptation
leading to it.
The moth flieth
about the candle
until it is burnt.

VI. Be occupied
with good and
honest works.

The devil tempt-
eth the idle man.
Idleness is the
mistress of much
wickedness.

[¹ steppe ?]

"Wherefore,"
says St Jerome,
"let the devil al-
ways find thee
employed."

Sodom fell into
sin through pride,
idleness, and
plenty.

of kinges. þet amon þet wes dauþ is zone : huanne he hild his zoster / on : to one / priueliche ine his chombre / he hise uorlay. Josepes lheuedy þo hy uand alone him / hi wolde do him zenezi mid hire. ac he him uledde / ase wys / and hise uorlet. þeruore zayþ zainte paul. beuly fornicacion. þet is to zigge / þe encheysons þet moze lede to zenne of lecherie. Vor me ne may naȝt betere ouercome zenne of lecherie / ne loki chasteté : þanne to by-uly þe encheysones of zenne. þeruore þe angle zede to lot / þet he ssolde guo out of þe cité of sodomme / and alle þe boundes. Vor hit ne is naȝt ynoȝ to lete þe kueade uelazrede ne þe zenne : bote he ne lete þe markes of zenne. þet is to zigge : þe encheisons of zenne. Me couþe zigge. zuo longe geþ þet pot to þe wetere : þet hit comp to-broke hom. and zuo long ulizþ þe ulindre aboute þe candle : þet hi bernþ. Alsuo me may zuo moche zeche þe enchesouns of zenne / þet me ualþ. þanne huo þet wyle him loki / uram berninge he ssel him wyþdraze.

þe xixte stape is / to by ine nyedes of guode workes and oneste. Vor þe uyend þet neure ne / slepþ / huanne he uint man ydel and sleawol guod uor to done / he him deþ ine his niedes / and deþ him stempe ¹ litzliche in-to zenne. þanne þe writinge zayþ / þet idelnesse / þet is to zigge / sleuþe and onlosthede wel to done / is maystresse of moche quead. And þeruore zayþ zaynte paul. 'Ne yef naȝt' zayþ he 'stede to þe viende.' þet is to zigge : ne by naȝt ydel / þet þe uiend ne uinde stede þe uor to uondi. Vor he is ydel of guod workes : þet yefþ stede to þe zaule hire uor to uondi. þeruore zayþ saint gerome. 'Do alneway zome þinges of zome guode workes / zuo þet þe dyeuel þe uynde alneway workinde. uor huo þet is ydel / he him ne may naȝt longe hyalde þet he ne ualle in-to zenne.' þanne þe profete zayþ. uor þet wes þe zenne of sodome / þet prede. ydelnesse. and plenté. þet is to zigge / þet hi ethen / and uorzuoȝe /

and nazt ne dede. huer-by hy uillen in-to þe uoule
zenne þet nazt ne is to nemni. alsuo deþ moche uolc
þet lyeseþ hare time / and hine bezetteþ ine ydelnesse /
and ine to moche of metes an drinkes / and ine fole
pleþes. ine childhedes / ine liþthedes / ine zonges / ine
karoles / and ine tables / in ches / and ine oþre fole
gemenes. Ine zuyche liþthedes wasteþ hare time. and
þeruore hi ualleþ liþ[t]liche ine moche uoul zenne / and
ofte in-to þe pette of helle. þet is ate pricke of þe
dyaþe / huerof he ¹ ne nimþ none hede.

Much folk lose
their time in idle-
ness, in meats,
drinks, foul plays,
childishness,
levity, songs,
carols, tables,
chess, and other
foul games,
and so fall into
sin.

[¹ M.]

þe zeuende stape is guode benes to god / þet moche
is worþ to ouercome alle zenne / and nameliche zenne of
lecherie. þanne saynt ambroyse zayþ. 'holy bene is a
guod sseld / a-ye alle þe berninde gaulockes of þe
dyeule.' and ysidre zayþ. þet / þet his remedie aye alle
zenne. to him þet yernþ to holy benes / an haste
huanne þe vyend asayleþ þe herte. Vor wone to bidde :
aquenchþ alle þe asaylinges of zenne. Holy bene is wel
miþ[t]uol auoreyegod. uor hi is y-ssored / mid uour þinges
ase mid uour poss[t]es.

VII. Offer good
prayers to God.

Holy prayer is a
good shield
against lust.
It is powerful
before God, for it
is shored with
four things, as
with four posts.

þe uerste is rihte beleaue huer-of zayþ oure lhord ine
his spelle. 'In al þet þou acsest ine þine benes / haue
guode beleaue / and uest hope ine god : and þou sselt
habbe / þet þou acsest.' Saint Jacob zayþ. þet me acsy
to god / ueste bileue / wyþ-oute drede. uor huo þet
dret : he is ase þe waze of þe ze / þet þe wynd let hider
and þider. And þeruore he þet geþ ȝerninde / and
talyinde / ne þengþ nazt aye god. þe oþer þing þet
ssel by ine bene is hope uor to habbe þet me byt.
Huer-of þe sauter zayþ. haue guode hope ine god / and
he þe wile do þet þou him acsest. And þeruore zede he
ine ane oþre stede. 'Lord haue merci of me : uor min
herte hopeþ ine þe.' Grat hope ous yefþ him uor to
bidde / zuo þet he ne zayde nazt / ine behotingge / þo
he zede ine þe godspelle. 'huo þet acseþ : he nimþ. and
huo þet zekþ : he vint. and huo þet clepeþ : god him

1. The first is
true belief.
Have a good
faith and hope,
and thy prayers
shall be answered.

He who is with-
out faith is as the
wave of the sea,
driven by the
wind.

[Fol. 65. a.]

2. Have good
hope to have what
thou askest for.

Ask wisely, diligently, and perseveringly,

and God shall hear in haste thy prayers.

Some ask more than is proper for them, as did the apostles John and James,

who were reproved by our Lord for their presumption.

Let no man be overweening like the Pharisees,

[1 *fariseu* ?]

but let him pray meekly before God.

Take heed to the poor beggars, how they exhibit their evils in order to excite pity.

So shall one show meekly before God his lacks and sins.

Other folk pray for temporal gifts,

but God will not give thee a pear or an apple as one doth to a child.

openep.' þet is to onderstonde / huo þet acseþ / wysliche. huo þet zecþ / diligentliche. and huo þe[t] clepeþ / bleuindeliche. Huanne þise þri þinges byeþ ine hire skele. wyt. diligence. and perseuerance : god ham y-herþ an haste. wyt : þet þou acsi wisliche. Moche uolk acseþ / þet ne byeþ naȝt y-herd / uor hi makeþ kueadliche hire acsinge. Huerof saint Jacob zayþ to þan þet ne wyteþ huet hi acseþ. 'þou acsest' he zayþ 'to god ofte / ac naȝt ne onderua[n]gst.' zome akseþ to heȝ þing / more þanne ham behoueþ / ase dede þe tuaye apostles saint Jon / and saint Jacob. þet acsede þet on of ham zete ane þe riȝthalf of oure lhorde ine his regne / and þe oþer ane his lefthalf. Hi ne acsede naȝt wisliche ac raþre hit þoȝte grat presumcion. And þeruore he ham ansurede oure lhord hardliche and ham zede. 'Ye ne wyteþ huet ye acseþ.' þanne huo þet wile wysliche bidde god / yef he him lokeþ uram presumpeion / oþer þet he ne wene greате þinges of him-zelue ase dede þe farisen¹ þet yalp ine his benes / and onworþede þane pubblycan. Ac mildeliche me ssel to god bidde / and him-zelue deme beuore god þet yziȝþ þe herten of þe uolke. and wot hare eueles / and hire lackes / and wot huet ham is nyed / betere þanne ham-zelue conne. Nim hede to þe poure truons / hou hi sseweþ hire eueles / and hare defautes / uor to maki þet uolk / to habbe þe more reuþe of ham. Alsuo me ssel do to-uore god / mildeliche'ssewy his lackes / and his zennes þere recordy / uor to habbe grace and uoryeuenesse. þe oþre byþ þet ne conne acsi bote þinges libbinde and little / ase byeþ þe guodes of time. God þe wyle wel gratter þinges yeue. He nele þe yeue pere / ne eppel / ase me deþ ane childe. ac greате þinges he wile þet þou him acsi. þinges þet þe by profitable / to helpe of zaule / ase his grace and his blisse. Vor huo þet acseþ to god riches / worþssipes / heȝnesses / oþer dyaþ of his yuon : he zent to gode uoule benes. and þeruore he ne

hierþ his naȝt. þeruore zayþ zaint austin. 'Ne onderstand naȝt' he zayþ 'of god uor greate þinges / þe guodes þet he yefþ / alsuo wel to þe kueade / ase to þe guode.' he wyle zigge. me ne ssel naȝt hyealde uor greate þinges / þe guodes pasinde þet god yefþ / alsuo and more yet to þe kueade : þanne to þe guode / and þeruore his yefþ god to þe wyckede : þet þe guode lierni to onworpi þet he yefþ to þe kueade / ase zayþ zaynt austin. 'Huanne þou bist þanne god' / zayþ saynt ambroyse / 'acseþ grat þing / þet byeþ þo þet euremo ilesteþ wyþ-outende / naȝt þe þinges pasinde. Vor þe ilke bene ne comp naȝt to gode.' þeruore ous tekþ oure guode mayster Iesu crist / uo[r] to acsi wysliche. and ous sseþþ oure acsinge þo he zede. 'Yef þou acsest eni þing to mine uader / ine mine name : he hit þe wile yeue.' Yef he hit acseþ mid þe name of Iesu crist / þet acseþ þet behoueþ¹ to helpe of zaule. Vor Iesu / is asemoche worþ : ase helpe. And huet þing ssolle we þanne acsi : he ous tekþ ine his spelle þo he zede. 'Verst ocseþ godes riche / and his riȝtuolnesse. and alle þise timliche þinges : þou sselt habbe to auontage.' Vor ase me can zigge / 'to þe meste niede : me ssel alneway yerne.' We habbeþ niede of tuo þing. of gostliche guodes / and of timliche guodes. Ac wel more nyede we habbeþ of gostliche guodes. and þeruore we ssolle his uerst and principallliche bidde. and god his wile ous yeue / and ous wile do auontage of þe opre guodes / þet byeþ þe timliche guodes. We ne ssolle naȝt maki of þe opre [seconde] guodes principals / ase doþ þe couaytouse / þet ne zecheþ oper lif / bote þet / þet ham faileþ / and ham ascapeþ wille hi nolle hi. Ac þe riche of heuene is þet lif eurelestinde : we ssolle bidde be ofseruings of guode workes. And þet is þet god zayþ. 'biddeþ uerst godes riche / and his riȝtuolnesse.' þet is / do guode workes / huerby me may come to þo riche þet neure ne ssel faili. an huo þus hit bit : god deþ him

He desires us to ask what is profitable to the soul. Temporal gifts are bestowed upon the evil as well as upon the good,

wherefore the good should not set great store by them.

[Fol. 65. b.]

We must ask all things in the name of Jesus.

Jesus signifies help.
[1 MS. *bohoueþ*]

"Seek first," says Christ, "God's kingdom and his righteousness," &c.

We should yearn for the greatest gift,

for we have more need of spiritual than of temporal gifts.

Wherefore let us pray for life everlasting,

and power to do good works, whereby one may come to God's kingdom.

The covetous men
of this world are
never satisfied.

auontage of þe timliche guodes. uor he hise him yefþ
to his wone ynozliche. uor naȝt ne lackeþ to ham þet
louieþ god / and dredeþ / ase zayþ þe writinge. Ac þe
couaytouse of þe wordle : þe more þet hi habbeþ / þe
lesse hi habbeþ. huo þet mest heþ of mayné / and mest
him faileþ¹ of mete. and þet mest heþ hors : mest him
fayleþ gromes and stablen. And sain[te] Ierome zayþ.
þet 'to þe wreche fayleþ : þet he heþ / and þet he neþ.'

Nou þenche þanne huanne þou woldest bidde god
and acsi wisliche / and diligentliche / þet is ententif-
liche / and perseuerantliche : and he þe wille y[e]ue :
þet þe hest niede to þi profit / an to helpe to þine
zaule.

3. Let there be
devotion of heart
in thy prayer.

Say thy prayer in
thine heart,

and put out all
fleshly and foul
thoughts.

We pray truly
when we think of
nought else.

What good is it
to move the lips,
while the heart is
dumb ?

The voice of
prayer is but
chaff and bran.
The devotion of
the heart is the
corn and flour of
wheat.

þe þridde þing þet ssel by ine bene : is deuocion of
herte / þet is to arere þe herte to god / wyþ-oute þoȝte
ine oþre stede. þanne oure lhord zayþ / 'huanne þou
sselt bidde god / be-tuene þine tep.' þet is to zigge / ine
þine herte. ssete þe dore ope þe. þet is to zigge : do out
alle þoȝtes ulessliche / uoule / and wordleliche / and
zuo bide þine uader of heuene ine halke. Saynt
ciprian þous zayþ. þet alle þoȝtes ulessliche and
wordleliche me ssel diȝte uram þe herte / þet wyle god
bidde. zuo þet his herte ne þenche to oþre þinge : bote
to þet he ssel bidde. 'hou' zayþ 'he / wenst þou / þet
god þe y-here / huanne þou ne hierst nat þi zelue?'
And ysidre zayþ. 'þanne / we biddeþ zopliche / huanne
we þencheþ nawerelles.' And saint augustin zayþ.
'Huet is hit worþ to sterie and to beate al day þe
lippen / huanne þe herte is al domb?' zuyche difference
ase þer is be-tuene þe cheue and þe corn / be-tuene
bren and flour of huete / betuene þe uelle and þe beste :
zuyche difference is betune þe rearde of þe bene / and
þe deuocioun of þe herte. God ne is naȝt goth² to uede
mid leaues. alsuo þe bene þet is y-wriȝe ine leaues of
wordes / wyþ-oute deuocion of herte / ne likeþ naȝt to

¹ MS. *saileþ*

² *got* ? = goat

god / ac rapre him mis-payþ / and him¹ went þet yeare /
 þet he hit ne yhiere. uor he ne onderstant naȝt zuiche
 speche. Huo þet bit god wyþ-oute deuocion of herte :
 he speķþ to god patroyllart. ase þe ilke þet speķþ half
 englis and half urenss. he speķþ to god mid mouþe :
 ac þe herte speķþ oþre speche / huanne he þengþ
 elleshuer. þanne hit þe þingþ þet zuych uolk / þet zuo
 biddeþ god : him scornep. ase he þet wile scornj ane
 dyaue : he waggeþ þe lippen onlepiliche and makeþ
 semblont to spekene : and naȝt ne zayþ. To zuiche
 uolke makeþ god þet dyaue eare. Ac þe bene þet
 comp / of þe dyepnesse of þe herte : þo yherþ oure
 lhord. Vor ase zayþ þet godspel. 'god is a gost. and
 þeruore huo þet wile by yhiere of god : hit him behoueþ
 þet he bidde ine goste / and in zoþe.' Dauip ous tekþ
 to bidde god deuoutliche ine þe sautere / þo he zede.
 'lhord mj bene bi ydiȝt beuore þe : ase þet stor.' þet
 stor huanne hit is ope þe uere smelþ zuete. alsuo deþ
 þe bene : huanne hi comp of bernide herte of þe loue
 of god / smelþ wel zuete to-uore god. oþerlaker þe bene
 ne comp naȝt beuore god / bote hi come of þe herte.
 ase þe messenger þet none lettres ne brengþ / oþer þet
 ne is naȝt wel yknaue : ne comp naȝt liȝtliche touore
 þe kinge. bene wyþ-oute deuocion / is messagier wyþ-
 oute lettres / and wyþ-oute knowlechinge. huo þet
 zuych messenger zent to cort : euele ha deþ his niedes.
 Vor ase me zayþ communliche. huo þet fol zent : fol
 abyȝt. Huo þet wyle þanne zoþliche bidde god : he
 ssel to god grede mid dyepe herte / ase dede dauid þet
 zede ine þe sautere. 'lhord god yhyer mine bene and
 mine rearde þet ich grede to þe / mid þe dyepnesse of
 herte.' þe hete of loue : is þe gredinge of herte / þet
 zayþ saynt augustin. þe ilke rearde and þe ilke gred-
 inge / him likeþ. naȝt rearde uor to telle tales. Saint
 gregorie zaiþ. þet zoþliche bidde god : is biter zobb-
 inge of uorþenchinge. þet is to zigge / of zorþe / and of

[1 MS. *Mm*]

[Fol. 66. a.]

He who prays
 without devotion,
 addresses God as
 one that speaketh
 half English and
 half French.

Such folk scorn
 God as one
 mocks a deaf
 man.
 To such God
 turneth the deaf
 ear.

God is a spirit,
 and must be
 prayed to in the
 spirit.

Prayer of a fer-
 vent heart is
 like the incense
 on the fire.

Prayer without
 devotion is a mes-
 senger without
 letters of recom-
 mendation.

Pray to God
 with a deep
 heart.

Prayer consists
 of bitter out-
 pourings of the
 spirit,

and not of smooth words,

Such prayer drives away the thieves, that is, the devils.

God gave the water of tears to quench the fire (lust) of our hearts.

The peril of sin is like the peril of waters,

and the tempest of death.

We should pray God to preserve us from
1. the thieves of hell,
2. covetousness,
3. evil thoughts.

Pray specially to God on Sunday in church.

[Fol. 66. b.]

We forsake the works of the week in order to serve God better on that day. Some pray to be seen of men.

and others pray so loud as to disturb those near them.

repentonce of herte / keste to god. nazt wordes afaited and y-sliked ueleuold. Zuych gredinge cachep þe þyeues / þet byep þe dyeulen þet ous wayteþ ous to robbi. and þeruore ssolle we ofte grede to god / þet he ous loki uram þo þieues. Alsuo ssolle we strangliche grede to god / þet he ous loki uram þo þyeues. and uram þe uer of couaytise / and of lecherie / þet he ous yeue þet weter of tyeares uor to quenche zuich uer / þet hit ne berne oure herten. Alsuo ssolle we grede aye þe foles of euele þenchinges / þet ouerguop ofte þe herte. þet þe herte ne spille be grauntinge. þeruore gredde dauip to god ine þe sauter. þet zede. lhord / y-wyte me uram þe peril of weteris / þet is niez y-guo in-to mine herte. And þe deciples of oure lhorde þo hi yzezen þe tempeste of þe dyape ope ham gredden. 'Sire / y-wyte ous / uor we spilleþ.'

Vor þo þri þinges þet ich habbe hier y-zed / me ssel ofte grede to god / þet he ous wytie uram þise þri perils / of þe þyeues of helle / uram þe uere of couaytise. of foles and of kueade þoztes / and uram uond[n]gge.

Nou ssel þou conne / þet ine eche time / and ine eche stede : miȝt þou bidde to god. ac specialliche and more deuouteliche me ssel him bidde at cherche / þane zunday / and ine festes þet bieþ iset god uor to bydde. herie / and worþssipie. and þeruore me let of bodiliche workes of þe woke / uor betere to onderstonde to bidde god. serui / herie / and worssipie. þer byep tuaye manere benes / on þenchinde ine herte / þet me may oueral bidde. an oþer ine speche of mouþe. þet me ssel bidde ine oneste stedes / nazt ine longaynes ase doþ þe ypocrites / þet ham sseaweþ wy[þ]-oute / and nazt wiþ-ine. and alsuo þer bieþ oþre þet gredeþ hare benes zuo lhoude þet þo þet byep y-hende / byep desstorbed of hare deuocion be ham / and þenchep zuych ich am. And þeruore to zuichen zayþ god.

Vorzoþe ich zigge to yow : ye habep onderuonge youre mede. Yef god het / zuo straytlic[h]e loki þane zeterday / ine þe yealde laze / þet he made. ane man / to stene / to-uore al þe uolke / uor þet he hedde y-gadered / a lite wode / þane zeterdey. huet ssel he do / of þan / þet doþ / greate zennes / þane zonday / and ine festes / and wastep þane time in ydelnesse / and ine folies. and worse doþ ine festes : þanne in opre dazes. Vorzoþe hi ssolle by more y-pined / and more y-damned ine þe opre wordle : þanne geus / þet breken hare zeterday. Vor þe zonday is more holy : þanne þe zeterday.

If a man was stoned for gathering wood on the Saturday,

what shall be done to him who commits great sins on the Sunday ?

For the Sunday is more holy than the Saturday.

Also byep þe festes principals / þet byep yzet ine holy cherche / uor god to bidde / and þonki / serui / herie / and worþssipie. of þe greate guodnesses þet he þe heþ y-do / ase holy cherche recorderþ. Ine zuyche festes ase at cristesmesse / his beringe / hou he wes y-bore / of þe mayde. At yestre / his oparizinge / hou he aros uram dyape / to liue. Ate assencion / hou ha steaz to heuene / ine zizþe / of alle his apostles. At lokes / hou he zente þane holy gost : ope his apostles.

The great festivals are set apart for worshipping God.

Christmas reminds us of Christ's birth, Easter of his uprising, Ascension of his going into heaven, Whitsuntide of the descent of the Holy Ghost.

Alsuo þer byep yzet þe festes of halzen / ine holy cherche / uor to worþssipie / an uor to serui god / and herie / and his halzen / of þe miracles þet he dede uor ham. uor to uestni oure beleaue. And þeruore / we ssolle þe festes of halzen loki / and bidde / þet hi ous helpe auoreye oure lhord Iesu crist / þet zuo moche his worssipeþ / ine heuene / and ine erþe. þanne zenezep he wel kueadliche / þet ne lokep þe festes. Vor he dep aye godes heste. and of holy cherche.

There are the feasts of saints, which must be observed.

Let us pray that they help us before God.

Ac zome mizte zigge. 'lyeue sire / me ne may nazt alneway bidde god / ne by at cherche. huet kuead is hit / yef ich guo playe. and solaci. þer-huile þet ich me solaci / an playe : iche ne þenche none manne kuead.' To þan ich wille ansuerie liztliche. uor al þane time / þet þou bezeit in fole gemenes / in ydelnesse /

Some might say, "One cannot always be praying, nor be in church."

All time not given to God is lost time.

He loseth a great thing that loseth his time,

for he loseth the good that he might do in that time.

[Fol. 67. a.]

Be occupied in good works, for time is short, and we know not when we shall die.

Another may say, "If all days are to be mass days and holy, how then should we sow, reap, mow, &c.?"

The answer I leave to those better able to answer it than I.

When at church a man should remember that the place is holy.

It is a house of prayer.

and ine nides / þet ne byeþ naȝt i-diȝt to god: þou his lyeſt. Vor þou ſſelt ywyte / þet al þane time / þet þou ne þengſt naȝt a god: þou hiſe ſſelt rekeni uor naȝt. þet zayþ an halȝen. þet iſ to onderſtonde / huanne þou ne þengſt / bote to ydelneſſe of þinge / þet ne iſ ydiȝt / ine none maner to god. And uorzoþe he lieſt grat þing / þet lieſt hiſ time / zuo zayþ ſenekes. uor he lyeſt þe guodes þet he ſſolde do / ine zuo moche time / aſe he lyeſt ine þe playes / and ine ydelneſſe. and þet ne iſ naȝt wyþ-oute zenne / to lieſe þane time / in queade wones. Vor god wile acſi rekeninge / ate daye of dome. þiſ zayþ ſaint anſelm. And þeruore me ſſel alneway wel do / and wel bezette þane time / ine guode workes / aſe moche / aſe me may / þer-huile þet he leueþ. uor þe time iſ ſſort / aſe zayþ þe writinge. ne non ne wot / hou longe he hit ſſel hadde. uor non ne wot / huanne he ſſel ſterue / ne huanne he ſſel paci.

An oþer may zigge. 'Yeſ hit were ſuo / þet alle dazeſ ine þe yeare were meſſedazeſ / and y-hote hyealde be holy cherche. huō þanne ſſolde erye / and zawe. ripe / and mawe. and oþre erþliche workes to done / huer-by men ſſolle libbe?' þerne anſuere ich lete to ham: þet betere conne anſuerie / þanne ich. Huō þet wyle þanne loki þe feſtes / aſe he ſſel: he him ſſel loki to done þing / þet to gode ne iſ naȝt likinde / ne to hiſ halȝen. and wel to bezette þane time / in god to bydde / herie / and þonki of hiſ guode. y-here hiſ ſermons / and onderſtonde to alle guode workes. Alſuo / huanne at cherche / man him ſſel hadde / wel oneste / and do worþſſipe / an reuerence / to god. and to hiſ halȝen / uor þe ſtede iſ holy / and iſ y-zet / to bidde god. naȝt uor to iangli / uor to lhezze / ne uorto truſſy. þanne oure ſire zayþ. 'Min houſ / iſ houſ of bene.' and þeruore me ne ſſel oþer þing do / ne zigge: bote þet huoruore hit iſ y-zet. þiſ zayþ ſaynt aſtin. þe ilke þet ſſel come to-uore þe kinge ine hiſ chombre / uor zome

grace to bidde / he him loki wel to zigge þing / þet
 naȝt ne liki þe kinge. Wel more he him ssel loki / þe
 ilke þet comþ to cherche / þet is godes chombre / and
 godes hous / to done / and to zigge / to-uore god / and
 to-uore his angles / þing þet him ne liki. God nele
 naȝt þet me maki his hous marcat / ne boþe / huerout
 he wreke / þo þe zyalde / and boȝte / ine þe temple. uor
 he nele / þet me maki uorewerdes / ne noyses / ne
 nyedes seculeres / þerinne. ac raþre wile / þet me on-
 derstonde / to bidde god deuouteliche / and him herie /
 and þonki of al his guode. þer me ssel wyþ-clepie his
 herte to him / and do al out / alle seculere niedes.
 yemere þoȝtes. and þenche an his sseppere / and ane
 his guode guodnesses þet god him heþ y-do. and him
 deþ communliche. recordi his zennes / and his lackes /
 and him-zelue mildi / to-uore god / and bidde uoryeue-
 nesse / and grace / him to loki uram zenne. and
 bleuinge ine guode liue / al to þe ende. þere ssolle þe
 greate lhordes / and þe greate lheuedyes uoryete hare
 blisse / hare miȝte. hare dingneté. and hare heȝnesse.
 and þenche þet hi byeþ beuore hare demere / þet ssel
 his zette to skele / of þe guodes þet he ham het y-do.
 of þe dingneté / huer he his heþ y-zet. hou hi hit
 habbeþ y-used. and ham ssel yelde be hare ofgoinge.
 þeruore hi ssollen þer / ham moche mildi to god / naȝt
 glorifie hare heȝnesse / ne of hare uayre diȝtinge / ne of
 hare uayre robes / to þe uorbysne of kinge dauþ / þet
 hedde uoryete his dingneté / þo he bed god / and on-
 worþede him-zelue / touore him. 'Ich am' he zede 'a lite
 worm / and no man.' and ine þet / he bekneu / his
 polemodnesse. his pourehede / and his uoulhede. Vor
 ase þe worm is uoul / and lite / þing onworþ / and wext
 al naked / of þe erþe / al-suo is man / uoul þing of
 him-zelue. uor huanne he yede / in-to þe exil of þise
 wordle : naȝt he ne broȝte : ne naȝt ne ssel bere away.
 al naked he com : and al naked he ssel guo. þarne

It is God's cham-
 ber and God's
 house, and we
 should say before
 Him only what
 is pleasing to
 Him.

Wherefore pray
 devoutly, and
 thank God for
 all His gifts to
 thee,

and think of His
 goodness to thee.

Pray for forgive-
 ness, and for
 grace to live
 holily.

In church great
 lords and ladies
 should lay aside
 their dignity,

and, like David,
 humble them-
 selves before
 God.

Man is like a
 worm,

naked and worth-
 less,

[Fol. 67. b.]

filth, a sack full
of dung, and
meat for worms.

Great ladies
should take pat-
tern by Queen
Hester,

and should leave
their fine robes
at home.

God is disgusted
with those who
rejoice in these
things, and desire
to please fools.

God is pleased
with a mild
heart and a pure
conscience.

Women should
come to church
with clean cloth-
ing and not
dressed above
their station.

They should be
meek and shame-
faced.

They should not
be too busy about
decking their
heads with gold
and silver,
for at church

saint bernard zayþ. 'huet is man / bote uelþe / and a
zech uol of donge / wermene mete?' He is wel uoul an
stinkinde zed ine þe byetinge.¹ a zech uol of donge ine
his liue. mete to wermes / ine his dyape. Alsuo þe
greate² lheuedyes / þet comeþ zuo idiȝt mid gold / mid
zeluer / mid stones of pris / and mid robes of grat cost /
to cherche be-uore god / hy ssolden nime uorbisne of
þe quen hester / þet dede of hire coustouse robes / and
hire oþre agrayþinges / þanne hi com to cherche / to
bidde god / and hire to loȝy / and bekneu hare poure-
hede to-uore god / and zayde to god. 'Ihord þou wost
þet ich hatie þe toknen of prede / and þe blisse of
agrayþinges / and of ioȝaus / þet me behoueþ do / ope
mine heauede ine grat wlatiynge.' Vorzoþe / and zuo
heþ god grat wlatiynge / to ham / þet ine þise þinges
habbeþ blisse / and ham agrayþeþ / ham uor to ssewy /
and to paye þe foles. God ne heþ naȝt to done mid
zuyche payinges / ine his cherche. ac of milde herte /
and of clene inwyȝt. Zainte pael tekþ riȝt wel / hou
þe guode wyfmen / ham ssolle agrayþi / huanne hi
comeþ to cherche / to bidde god. He zayþ þet hi ssolle
habbe clenliche cloþinge / wyþ-oute to moche. þet is to
onderstonde : be þan þet þe wyfman is. Vor þet / þet
is to moche ine one wyfman / ne is naȝt to moche ine
anopre. More behoueþ to ane kuene / þanne behoueþ
to ane borgayse / oþer to ane simple wyfman. After-
ward he tekþ / huiche byeþ of simple zizþe. þet is to
zigge / milde / and ssamueste / naȝt þe bolde / ne þe
naȝt ssamueste / ase byeþ þe fole wyfmen / þet guoþ
mid stondinde nhicke³ / ase hert ine launde / and
lokeþ azide / ase hors of grat cost. Afterward / he
nele naȝt þet hi bi to bysi / of hare heaueden to agrayþi
mid gold / and mid zeluer / and mid preciousse stones.
And he wile yet eft / þet at cherche / þet hi habbe /

¹ For 'beyetinge.'

² MS. *gretate*.

³ MS. reads *niheke*

hare heaueden 'y-wreȝe / zuo þet non ne bi ine kuede
 þoȝtes uor ham. and þet hi ne yeue none enchesoun /
 to þenche quead / to ham / þet hise ysyep. Ac hi
 ssollen bi ydiȝt¹ ase he zayþ / ase guode wyfmen / þet
 sseawep þe guodnesse of hare herten / be guode dedes /
 and þeruore zayþ saynt Ambroyse. 'Huo þet wyle by
 yherd ine his benes: he ssel do away uram him / alle
 toknen of prede / and he ssel bouȝe to god / be zoþe
 boȝsamnesse / uor to sterie god to merci.' Vor ase he
 zayþ. 'prouduol cloþinge / ne wynþ naȝt of god. ac yefþ
 encheisoun / euele to deme / of þan oþer of hire: þet hit
 berþ.'

their heads should
be covered.

[1 MS. *ydiȝt*]

He who desires
his prayers to
be heard, must
put away all
tokens of pride.

Nou ich þe habbe y-ssewed / þri þing / þet ssol by
 ine bene. beleaue. hope. and deuocioun. Ac to þan þet
 þe bene / by parfitliche licuol to gode / and worþi to
 bi y-herd: hit behoueþ / þet uerþe þing. þet is þet him
 behoueþ / tuo wyngen / þet hit bere touore god. þise
 tuo wyngen / byep: uestinge / and elmesse. þeruore /
 þe angle zayde to tobye. þe bene is guod: huaune hi
 heþ mid hire / elmesse / and uestinge. and wyþ-out
 þise tuo þinges: bene ne may naȝt / vly to gode. ac
 zenne amerþ and him wiþdraȝþ ayen. þeruore þou sselt
 y-wyte / þet ine tuo maneres is bene amerd / ase zayþ
 ysaye. Vor þet me ne let naȝt euele to done. And
 þeruore / þet me nele uoryeue / his misdeds / ne his
 euele ywyl. Vor alsuo ase þe smeryeles / ne is naȝt worþ /
 to hele þe wonde / ne non oþer þing / þer-huile þet / þet
 yzen is þerinne: alsuo hit ne is naȝt worþ / ne naȝt ne pro-
 fiteþ þe bene / to him þet hit zayþ: þer huile þet he is /
 ine dyadlich zenne. ne ase longe ase he heþ / quednesse
 ine his herte. And þeruore zayþ þe profete. 'Arere we
 oure herten / and oure honden to god / þet ophebbep
 oure benes be guode workes.' And þe apostel tekþ /
 þet me arere / clene honden ine bene. þe clene
 honden / þet byep þe clene benen / þet byep y-do ine
 clene inwyt. Vor God ne yherþ naȝt þe bene / þet

Two wings are
needed to bear
the prayer to
God.

They are fasting
and alms.
Without these it
will not fly to
God.

[Fol. 68. a.]
In prayer there
must be no ill-
will in the heart.

Therefore saith
the prophet,
"Raise we our
hands to God that
upheaveth our
prayers by good
works."
The clean hands
are the clean
prayers.

God will not
listen to prayers
from a filthy
soul, that is, from
those with bloody
hands.
They have bloody
hands who ill-use
the poor.

They eat bloody
morsels, for
which they shall
pay hard scot
in the other
world.

He who will be
heard, must not
come before God
empty-handed,

but must bear a
present of good
works.

We read in the
gospel that the
gate was shut
against those
maidens whose
lamps were
empty.
God hears those
that have their
lamps full of
oil,

that is, whose
hearts are full of
pity.

Prayer thus

comþ of inwyt uol of uelþe / and of zenne. þanne he
zayþ be þe profete. ‘Huanne þe multepliest þine benes :
ich nelle none y-here. uor þine honden byeþ al bloody.’
Huo byeþ þo / þet habbeþ þe honden blodi : bote þo /
þet be-uleaþ þe poure uolk / þet byeþ onder ham / and
benimeþ ham hire guodes be strengþe ? Hy habbeþ hare
honden al uol of blode / of þe poure. uor hi benimeþ
ham hare lyf / and hare sostinonce / be hare couaytise
and be hire roberie. and makeþ þe greate to mochel-
hedes / and eteþ þe blodi snoden. Huerof hi ssolle
paye hard scot / ine þe oþre wordle / bote þe writinge
ne lyeþe / þet zayþ. þet god wyle acsi / þet blod of þe
poure : of hare honden. þanne hit behoueþ þet hi
yelde : oþer þet hi hongi. Vor ase me zayþ : ‘oþer yelde :
oþer hongi.’ And þeruore god ne yhyerþ naȝt zuich
uolk / uor hi ne byeþ naȝt worþi. Huo þet wyle þanne
by yherd : ne come naȝt beuore god / mid zuorde
adraȝe / and mid blodi honden / ne ydel honden. þet is
to zigge : in wyl to zeneȝi / ne mid lac of ontreuþe / ne
ydel of guode workes. uor þus zayþ oure lhord ine his
spelle. ‘þou ne sselt naȝt sseawy þe / beuore me : ydel-
honded.’ þe ilke comþ to-uore god / mid ydele honden :
þet comþ him to bidde / wyþ-oute makiȝnge of presont
to god / of guode workes. uor ayens þan / ha sset his
gate : þet him bit / and naȝt ne brengþ. Of þisen we
habbeþ ane uorbisne / ine þe godspelle / þet zayþ. þet
þe gate was y-sset / aye þe fole maydines / þet hedden
hare lompen ydel. and god ham zede. ‘ich ne knawe you
naȝt.’ þet is to zigge : ‘ich not huȝ ye byeþ.’ Vor god ne
knaup bote þo : þet him trewliche seruþ / þet habbeþ
hare lompen uol of oyle : ase hedden þe wyse maydenes.
þet is to zigge : þet habbeþ hare herten uol of pite / and
hit sseweþ be guode dedes. Zuich uolk he y-herþ / and
to zuiche uolk he openeþ his gates / uor he onderuangþ /
bleþeliche hare benes.

Nou ich zigge þanne / þet bene þet is yssored mid /

þise uour poss[t]es / ase ich habbe beuore yzed : ys wel
 miztuol be-uore god. uor he ssel habbe lyztliche of him / al
 þet he heþ niede / by hit to þe bodie / by hit to þe zaule /
 ase-wytnesseþ þe writings. þanne saint Iacob zayþ. þet
 mochel is worþ bene of guod man. uor hi is worþ uor to hele
 þe zike / of bodie / and of zaule. Huerof him-zelf zede.
 yef he is ine zenne : hit ssel him by uory[e]ue. þe
 writinge zayþ. þet Moyses ouercom amalek / and al his
 ost / naȝt be uizt : ac be his holy biddinges. uor ase
 zayþ an holy man. more is worþ an halȝen / and may
 biddinde : þane uele þousond of zenezeres : uiztinde.
 þe bene of a guod man / openeþ þe heuene. hou ssolde
 he / bote ouercome þe wyckede ine erþe. A guodald wyf /
 porchaceþ more of heuene / ine one-lepi oure biddinde :
 þanne ssolde do / a þouzond knyȝtes / of þe londe in lang
 time / be hare armes. And þeruore hit is guod / to zeche
 þe benes of guode men. and specialliche of men of re-
 ligion / þet byeþ to-gydere / god uor to serui / and uor
 to bidde uor ham / þet doþ ham guod. Vor yef þe bene
 of ane guode manne / is moche worþ be-uore god / ase
 zayþ þe writinge : more is worþ / and may : þe bene /
 of uele guode. Vor ase zayþ an halȝen. Hit ne may
 naȝt by / þet þe bene of uele guode men : ne is y-herd.
 þe benes of a couent / byeþ raþre yherd of þe abbote :
 þanne þe bene of one moneke. alsuo yherþ god raþre þe
 benes of þan þet byeþ to-gidere him uor to serui. þanne
 he zayþ ine his spelle. ' yef tuo of ous / oneþ ham to-
 gidere / me uor to bidde : Al þet hi biddeþ / mine
 uader : [he] ham wile do.'

shored with
 these four posts
 is powerful before
 God.

The prayer of a
 good man is able
 to heal the sick-
 ness of soul and
 body.

Moses overcame
 Amalek by
 prayer.

. [Fol. 68. b.]

The prayer of a
 good man openeth
 heauen.

Wherefore it is
 good to seek the
 prayers of good
 men.

The prayers of
 many are more
 effective than the
 prayers of one
 man.

The prayers of a
 convent to the
 abbot are sooner
 heard than the
 prayer of one
 monk.

þe ZEUE BOȝES/ OF CHASTETÉ.

Nou ich habbe yzed þe zeue stapes / huer-by clifþ /
 and wext / and profiteþ / þet trau of uirtue / and of
 cha[s]teté. Nou behoueþ to zigge / of þe boȝes / of
 þise trawe / þet byeþ zeuen. be þe zeue states / of þe
 stapes of uolke / þet byeþ ine þise wordle.

The seven boughs
 of chastity.

The seven
 boughs of chastity,
 are seven states
 of men in this
 world.

The first state is
of those that are
whole of body,
and have well
kept their maid-
enhood.
In marriage one
shall observe
chastity of heart
and of body.
Children should
have good
guardians,

lest they be mar-
red by foolish
companions.

Children should
be chastened and
taught while
young to practise
good manners.

Such form as the
shoe takes at
first it evermore
keeps.

The other state
is of them that
have lost their
chastity.

[1 So in MS.]

[Fol. 69. a.]

Even in this
state chastity
should be ob-
served by having
a fast purpose
to abstain from
sin,
and the flesh

þe uerste stat / is of þan þet byþ yhole of bodie / and
habbeþ wel yloked hire maydenhod. Ac alneway / hi
ne byþ naȝt y-bounde þerto / þet hi ne bi ine mariage.
Ine þet stat / me ssel loki chastete / þet is clenness of
herte / and of bodie. þeruore þe children of riche men /
ssolle habbe guode lokeres / and oneste / þet hi by
be-zide ham / and þet hi bi diligent ham wel to teche /
and loki uram zenne / and uram kueade uelaȝrede.
Vor þe fole uelaȝredes / amerreþ ofte children. and hare
te[c]hinge. þet kueade uolk / þe wordes of kueadnesse /
of ribaudie / þe fole takinges / and inhoneste ine zenne
of lecherie. and oþerhuil of þo lecherie / þet is aye
kende. þerof anopre time we habbeþ yspeke ine þe
chapitle of uices. an þeruore hit ne behoueþ naȝt to
reherci. uor þe ilke kende ne is naȝt uayr. And þeruore
me ssel þe children chasti / and wel teche / and bi bezide
ham þerhuile þet hi byþ yonge. And wonye his to
hyealde þe guode techinges. Vor ase zayþ salomon. 'þet
child lyerneþ ine his yeȝeþe : he hit wyle healde ine his
elde.' And þe filozofe zayþ. 'Hit ne is naȝt lite þing / to
wonie guod / oþer kuead / ine his yeȝeþe.' Vor ase me
zayþ. 'Huo þet tekþ colte endaunture : hyalde hit wyle
þerhuyle hit ilest.' Zuiche fourme ase þe sso takþ ate
ginnyng : he halt eumor ine þet stat. þanne heþ
chasteté nyede of guode lokinge. uor oþerlaker hy ssel
zone by uorlore.

þe oþer stat is of ham þet bieþ naȝt clene of bodie /
and habbeþ hare chasteté uorlore / and hare maydenhod /
er þan hy weren euerte ¹ ymarissed / ne y-bounde mid
bende. huo may ham wyþnyme uorte bi y-marissed. and
alneway hy byþ y-ssriue and uorþenchinde of hare
zennes. Ine þo stat me ssel loki chasteté. Vor huo þet
is ine þet stat : he ssel habbe uest porpos / and wyl /
þet neure mor ne ssel ayen yerne to þe zenne of his
bodye. ac rapre he him ssel loki be his miȝte. wyþ-oute
þet / þet he him mo e marissi yef he wyle. And huo

þet wyle ine þet stat loki his chasteté : hit behouep þet he defouly and chasti his uless be hardnesse of uestinges / and be penonces. þis is þe oþer boʒ of þise trawe.

should be rendered chaste by severity of fasting, and by penances.

þe bridde is of ham þet byep y-bounde be mariage. ine þo stat me ssel loki chastete / out-ynome þe dede of spoushod. Vor hi ssolle loki hare bodi þe on to þe oþre klenliche and treweliche / wyþ-oute do onriȝt : þe on to þe oþren. and þet acseþ þe laze of spoushod. þet þe on bere to þe oþren laze and trewþe of his bodie. Vor þerhuyle þet hy byep y-uestned to-gidere be spoushod þe on to þe oþre / hi byep o body / ase zayþ þe writinge. and þeruore ssel þe on louye þe oþren / ase him-zelue. Vor ase hi byep on body. hi ssolle by on herte be trewe-loue / ne nanmore ham to-dele / be herte ne be bodie þerhuile þet hi libbeþ. þeruore hi ssolle loki hare bodyes clene. and chastliche out-ynome þe dede of spoushod. and þeruore zayþ zay[n]te paul. þet þe wyues ssolle louie hare lhordes / and worssipie. and deuouteliche by chast and sobre. chaste to loki hare body uram oþren þanne of hare lhordes. sobre ine mete and ine drinke. uor to moche drinke / and to moche ethe : is grat aliztinge to þe uere of lecherie. Alsuo ssel þe man loki his body clenliche þet he ne yeue hit naȝt to oþre wyfmen / bote to his. Spoushod is a stat þet me ssel wel klenliche / and wel holylyche loki uor manie skeles. uor hit is a stat of greate autorité. uor god hit made ine paradis terestre ine þe stat of clennesse. erþan man hedde y-zeneȝed. And þeruore me ssel hit holyliche loki / uor þane skele þet god hit made / and uor þane stede huer hit wes ymad. Efterward / hit is a stat of greate digneté. uor god wolde by bore of wyfinan yspoused. þeruore þe mayde marie made of spoushod hire mentel : hueronder wolde by godes zone bi y-conceyued / and y-bore. Under þo mentle wes y-hole uram þe dyeule / þe priuite / and

The third state comprehends those bound by marriage. They should keep their bodies in purity and truth, the one towards the other. For man and wife being bound by marriage are one body,

wherefore they shall be of one heart by true love.

Wives shall love their lords, and be chaste and sober.

Chaste in their bodies and sober in meat and in drink.

The man shall not give his body to other women.

Marriage is a state of great authority, and was ordained in Paradise.

It is a state of great dignity.

For God was born of an espoused woman.

Under her mantle
was the secret
of the soul's help
hidden from the
devil.

It is a holy state,
being one of the
sacraments ;

so what was before
deadly sin, be-
came no sin in
marriage.

He hath great
merit who may
do the deed of
marriage without
sin.

The deed of
spousehood may
be sinless first
when one desires
to beget children
to serve God.

Secondly, when
the one yieldeth
to the other his
debt when he
asketh it.

[Fol. 69. b.]

The one hath a
right in the
body of the
other.

Thirdly, when it
is done to keep
away lechery from
his wife.

In this there is
no sin, but rather
merit.

þe red of oure scele / and of oure helþe. þeruore þanne
me ssel hit worþssipie and clenliche loki. Efter þet me
ssel hit loki holyliche / uor his holynesse.¹ uor hit is on of
þe sacremens of holy cherche. and betokneþ þe spoushod
þet is be-tuene holy cherche : and Iesu crist and betuene
god / and þe zaule. þanne þet stat of spoushod is zuo
holy and suo honeste : þet þe dede þet wes dyadlich zenne
out of spoushod / is wyþ-oute zenne ine spoushod. and
naz onleþiliche wyþoute zenne : ac hit mai by to merite
uor to wynne þet lif wyþ-oute ende. And þou ssel
ywyte þet ine þri cas me may do þe dede of spoushod
wyþ-oute zenne. and he mai habbe grat merite ase to þe
zaule.

þe uerste cas is huanne me deþ þe ilke dede ine
wylle uor to habbe child to serui god. uor ine zuiche
onderstondinge wes uerst spoushod yzet. þe oþer cas
is : huanne þe on yelt to þe oþre his dette / þanne he
hit akseþ. and þerto ssel sterie dom : þet yelt to echen
his riȝt huanne he hit akseþ and bit be mouþe / oþer be
tokne ase doþ þe wyfmen þet byeþ ssamuest zuich þing
uor to acsi. þe ilke þet uorzakþ þane oþrene þet acseþ :
zeneȝeþ.² uor he deþ him wrang of his oȝene þinge. uor
þe on heþ riȝt ine þe bodie of þe oþre. Ac he þet acseþ
þet he ssel : he deþ wel and ariȝt. huanne he hit deþ ine
þo onderstondinge he ofserueþ auoreye gode. uor riȝt
him diȝt þerto / and nazt lecherie. þe þridde cas is
huanne me hit acseþ his wyue of þo dede / uor to loki
hire uram zenne. nameliche huanne he yziȝþ þet hi is
zuo ssamuest / þet hi nolde neuremo acsi hare lhorde of
zuiche þinninge. and yleþþ þet hi ssolde ualle bleþeliche
in-to zenne / oþer liȝtliche bote yef me hire ne acsede.
Huo þet ine þo onderstondinge / yelt / oþer acseþ zuiche
dette : he ne zeneȝ[eþ] nazt / ac rapre ofserueþ auoreye
god. uor pite him stereþ þet to done. Ine þise þri cas /
ne is no zenne ine þe dede of spoushod.

¹ MS. *holynesse*

² MS. *zeneȝeȝ*

Ac ine oþre cas me may zenezi / oþer liztliche / oþer dyadliche. and specialliche ine þri cas. þe uerste is. huanne me ne zekþ ine zuich dede: bote þe lecherie and his lost. and ine þo cas me may zenezi / liztliche / and deadliche. Liz[t]liche / huanne þe lost ne paseþ naȝt þe markes / ne þe zetnesses of spoushod. þet is to zigge / huanne þe lost is zuo y-led mid scele / þet þe ilke þet is ine þet stat nolde naȝt þet þing do: bote ine his wyue. Ac huanne þe lecherie and þe lost is zuo *grat* ine his wyue þet scele is y-blent / and ase moche wolde do he ine hire: þaȝ hy nere naȝt his wyf: ine þet cas is þe ilke *zenne* dyadlich. uor zuich lecherie geþ ouer þe markes of spoushod. huerof god *him* wreþeþ ofte to zuiche uolke / and yefþ oþerhuil *grat* miȝte to þe dyeule ham uor to slea / ase me zayþ of saren¹ raguelis doȝter / þet wes yonge tobies wyf. þet hedde y-het zeue housboundes / þet alle were y-slaȝe of þe dyeule: þe uerste niȝt þet hi wolden ligge by hire. þeruore þe angel zayde to tobyen þet hise ssolde habbe to wyue. ‘Ich þe wyle zigge’ he zayde / ‘ine huet uolc þe dyeuel heþ myȝte / ine þan þet doþ out god / zuo out of hare harten / and of hare þoȝtes. þet ne yeueþ ham naȝt / bote to hare lecherie to uoluelle / ase an hors deþ. oþer a mule.’ and þeruore ham benimþ god oþerhuil hare frut / zuo þet hi ne moȝen habbe no child. Yet hi moȝe zenezi dyadliche ine an oþre manire. þet is to wytene / huanne þe on deþ aye kende / and oþerlaker þanne kende of man acseþ / ne laȝe of mariage acseþ / ne oueryernþ. zuich uolk zeneȝeþ more *gratliche* / þanne oþre beuore yzed. Ac þo þet in hare spoushod lokeþ þe drede of oure lhorde / and lokeþ klene hare spoushod ase hit is yset. zuych uolk payeþ god.

þe oþer cas huer me may zenezy be spoushod / is huanne man geþ to his wyue ine time þet he ne ssolde naȝt guo. þet is huanne hi is ine þe ziknesse þet wyfmen habbeþ *communliche*. zuo þet he his naȝt ne spareþ

On the other hand, one may sin in three cases. The first is when one seeketh only to satisfy lusts.

The sin is venial if it is temperate,

otherwise it is deadly.

With such sin God is exceedingly wrath.

[¹ *sareu* ?]

The devil hath power over those who give themselves up to their lusts,

as a horse or a mule.

Those that in marriage have the fear of our Lord, please God.

The other case of sin in “spousehood” is when a man goeth to his wife in a time that he should not go.

God hath forbid-
den this improper
fellowship,
for in such state
are oft begotten
the crooked,
blind, lepers,
deaf, dumb, &c.

[Fol. 70. a.]

Also they shall
abstain from the
deed in holy
times such, as in
great and solemn
feasts,

and in times of
fasting appoint-
ed by the church.

[2 like *bele* in MS.]

Also when the
woman lieth in
childbed, or is
near her time.

Kings, earls, and
barons, have at
such times their
chambers to them-
selves,
or they go to
their castles,
and therefore
they have such
fair children.

The elephant
will not dwell
with his wife
while she is with
child.

huazne he wot þet hi is in zuich stat. zenezep gratliche
and uor þan þet god uorbyet / þet man ne habbe uelaz-
rede mid his wyue. ine zuich stat / and uor þe peril of
his children. Vor ase zayþ saint gregorie. ine zuych
stat byep ofte beyete þe crokede / þe blynde / and þe
mezels. þe dyaue / þe doumbe / þe ssornede¹ / þe scallede.
and men and wyfmen þet habbeþ opere zyknesses in hare
bodie þanne hi comeþ to manhod ase goutes / and beles.
and opere ssrewede eueles. þeruore þe wifman ssel wel
zigge to hire lhorde huazne hi ys ine zuych stat / þet he
abyde. and hi alsuo abyde: perhuile hi is ine þe ylke
stat. Alsuo hi ssollen to-gidere spari uram þe dede of
spoushod: ine holy times / ase ine greate festes and
solemnnes / to yeue ham-zelue þe betere god uor to serui.
Alsuo in times of uestinge of holy cherche hi ssolle abide
mid þo dede. nazt uorþan þet hit by zenne zuych þing
to done ine zuiche time. and ine zuiche onderstondinge
me may hit do. Ac operhuil hit is þet me ssel abide /
þet me moze hit do wyþ-oute zenne: ucr betere² to habbe
of god þet me him bit / ase zayþ saynt austin. Alsuo ine
time þet þe wyfman lyþ a chi[l]dbedde / oper nye; uor
to childi. he ssel him loki uram þe dede of spoushod /
uor onestete / and uor peril þet miȝte by. þeruore þise
kinges / erles / barouns / and opere lhordes habbeþ hare
chambren be ham-zelue uram hare wyues ine zuiche
time. oper hi wendeþ to yzy hare kasteles / oper hare
opre stedes. and þeruore hi habbeþ zuo uayre children
and zuo cliene³ of bodye. Me uint ine þe boc þet spekþ
of kende of bestes. þet þe elifans nele nazt wonye mid
his wyue: perhuyle þet hi is mid childe. and man be
scele ssel bi more antempred þanne a best. and þeruore he
ssel more him-zelue ine þo stat þolye / and ine þo time.
Ac alnewey / ich ne zigge nazt þet yef he deþ þe dede
of spoushod ine þo time be guode cause / and ine guode
onderstondinge / huerof god is demere yef hit is zenne.

¹ Looks like *ssorned* in MS.

³ MS. *chene*

þe þridde cas is / huerine me may kneadliche zenezi
 ine his spoushod : is. ine holy stede. uor ine holy stedes
 ase ine cherchen þet byeþ apropred uor god to bidde and
 hym seruy. me ne ssel naȝt do þe dede of spoushod uor
 worþssipe of þe stede. And huo þet ine zuyche stede
 ne lokeþ him naȝt þo dede uor to do : he zenezep uor þe
 scele of þe stede þet godes uless and his blod byeþ
 y-sacred inne. uor zuich þing mai by zenne in one stede /
 and ine one time : þet ne is no zenne ine oþre. þe¹ uerþe
 stat is of ham þet habbeþ yby ine spoushod : ac dyap
 heþ to-deld þe on uram þe oþere. And þe ilke þet is
 ybleued ine lyue he ssel him loki chastliche ase longe
 ase he is ine þe stat of wodewehod. þet is a stat þet
 zaynte paul prayzeþ moche / þet zayþ to wodewon. ‘huo
 þet guod is : he him hyealde ine þet stat. and yef hit
 him naȝt ne lykeþ : he him wyui. Vor betere and
 more holy þing is to wyui : þanne him-zelue berne.’ þe
 ilke bernþ / þet to zenne graunteþ. Vor he zet his
 herte be wyll and be wilninge to þe uere of lecherie.
 Ac more hit were worþ him to wyui / þanne himzelue
 of zuiche uere uorberne. and þet is to onderstonde of
 ham þet byeþ ine þe stat of simple wodewehod. naȝt of
 þan þet byeþ ine þet stat y-bounde be heste þet ne moȝe
 naȝt ham spousy / wyþ-oute deadlich zenne / efter þe
 beheste. Ac alneway yef þe beheste is simple / þet is
 to zigge / huanne hi is do priueliche / and wyþ-oute /
 solemneté. þaz hit by zuo þet ha zenezi dyadliche / þet
 efter zuych ane beheste him spouseþ : alneway he may
 bleue ine his spoushod / yef þer ne is non oþer destorb-
 inge. Ac he ssel do penonce / uor þe beheste. Ac
 huanne þe beheste is solemne / ase be hand of prelat /
 oþer be profession of religion. oþer be holy ordre / þet
 me heþ onderuonge / ase sudyakne / oþer dyakne / oþer
 prest. þanne þo² spoushod ne is naȝt. ac rapre hit be-
 houep / to dele þo / þet ine zuiche manyre / comeþ to-
 gidere / uor hi ne moȝe naȝt by soued ine zuych stat.

The third case is
 when the deed is
 done in holy
 places,
 that are set apart
 for the service of
 God.

[1 MS. þer]

Chastity shall
 be observed in
 widowhood.

It is better to
 marry than to
 burn.

He burneth that
 consents to sin.

They who are
 bound by vows
 to remain widows
 cannot marry
 without deadly
 sin.

[Fol. 70. b.]

If the behest is a
 private one,
 its violation
 demands pen-
 ance.

If the behest be
 solemn, as by the
 hand of a pre-
 late,

[2 We may read
 þe ȝ]
 the sin is deadly,
 and the marriage
 must be dis-
 solved.

The turtle dove
teacheth us to
keep the state of
widowhood.

Three things
belong to this
state.

1. The fellowship
of suspected per-
sons should be
avoided.

St Paul reproves
young widows for
being idle,

and fond of
gossiping in
the houses of
others.

2. God should be
devoutly served,

as one readeth
of Anna, the
good widow who
served God in the
temple day and
night.

3. Sharpness of
meats by which
lust may be
quenched.

The heart is
drowned in the
water of lusts of
this world.

The clothing of
widows should
be humble.

They should
imitate the ex-
ample of Judith,

To loki þet stat of wodewehod / me ssel sterie þe uorbisne of þe turle. Vor ase zayþ þe boc / of kende of bestes. efter þet þe turle heþ ylore hare make : hi ne ssel neuremo / habbe uelazrede / mid oþren. ac alneway hi is one / and be-ulyzt / þe uelazrede of oþren.

þri þinges belongeþ moche / to ham þet byeþ ine þe stat / of wodewehod. þe uerste is him-zelue kepe / and priueliche bi ine his house. nazt uor to uolzþ þe uelazredes suspiciouses. þerof we habbeþ uorbisne of Iudit / þet wes wodewe / and hi wes a uayr wyfman / of huam me ret ine þe writinge. þet hi hild hare ine hare boure be-sset mid hare maydenes. Huerof zaynte pael wyþ-nimþ þe yonge wyfmen wodewen / þet were ydele / and bysye to guonne / an to comene / ganglinde / and to moche spekinde. ac bisset hy ssollen by ine hare house / and yeue ham guode workes to done / ase saynte paul tekþ.

þe oþer þing is / yeue ham to bidde god. and bleþeliche bi at cherche ine deuocion / and ine tyares / ase me ret ine þe godspelle of saint luc. þet þe ilke guode wodewe / þet hette anne / þet hy ne to-delde hire nazt / uram þe temple. and seruede god nigt / and day. ine benes and ine uestinges.

þe þridde þing is / ssarpnes of metes. Vor ase zayþ saint bernard. þys spilþ ine lostes. alsuo ase he spilþ ine þe wetere / þet zuo longe he may by þer onder : þet he lyst þet lif. Non ne may habbe his heaued. þet is his herte / longe ine þe wetere / of lostes of þise wordle / þet he ne ssel lyese þet lyf / þet is þe grace of þe holy gost. be huam þe zaule leueþ ine god. To þo stat belongeþ : ase loze cloþinge. nazt proud / ne bisiuol / to þe uorbisne of iudit. þet let hire uayre robes / and hare riche agrayþinges / þo hire lhord wes dyad. and nom cloþinge of wodewehod / onworþ / and loz / and more wes toene of weþinge / and of zorþe : þanne of goye. and of ydele blisse. þeruore þet hi ledde chasteté / and hi

hit wolde loki al hare lif. Hy hire ssredde mid þe here / and ueste eche daye. and hi wes uayr / and yong / riche / and wys / ac guodnesse of herte / and loue of chasteté : hit hire dede do. And þus ssel libbe : þet wyle loki chasteté ine þo stat. þis is þe uerþe boȝ of þise trawe.

who clothed herself in hair and fasted each day.

þE VIFTE BOȝ OF CHASTETÉ.

þe uyfte boȝ of þe trawe of chastete : is maydenhod. and þet is þe uifte stat / of ham þet lokeþ / and habbeþ alneway lokinge / and byeþ alneway ine wylle / to loki al hare lyf / hare bodyes yholliche / wyþ-oute enye corrupcion / uor þe loue of god. þis stat is moche to alowe / uor his dingneté / uor his uayrhede / and uor his guodnesse. Vor his digneté : uor þet stat makeþ þane þet hit wel lokeþ / anlyke to þe angles of heuene / ase ziggeþ þe halȝen. Ac þos moche habbeþ þe maydines more þanne þe angles. uor þe angles libbeþ wyþoute ulesse : ac þe maydines habbeþ ouercominge of hare ulesse. and hit is grat wonder þet hi lokeþ zuich ane fieblene castel / ase hare fyeble body / aye zuych ane strangne uend / ase is þe dyeuel of helle / þet alneway zeeþ ginnes / huerby he may nime þane castel uor to robbi þet tresor of maidenhod. þet is þet tresor / huerof oure lhord / spekeþ ine his spelle / þo he zede. þet 'þe kingriche of heuene / is anlycened / to þe tresor / þet is y-hed / ine þe uelde.' þet trezor y-hed ine þe uelde : is maydenhod y-hed ine bodie / þet is ase a ueld / þet me ssel eryl / mid penonce / and zawe mid guode workes. þet trezor is anlikned / to þe kingriche of heu[e]ne / uor þet lif of maydines / is anlykned to þe liue of heuene / þet is þet lyf of angles. Huer-of oure lhord zayþ ine his spelle. þet ine þe oprisinge / ne ssel by non spousynge / ase þer is hyer. ac hi ssollen by ase þe angles of heuene.

The fifth bough of chastity.

The fifth bough of the tree of chastity is maidenhood (single life).

[Fol. 71. a.]

This state is much to be praised for its dignity, beauty, and its goodness.

For its dignity—for those in this state are like to the angels.

The devil is always trying to take the castle for to steal the treasure of maidenhood.

Christ speaks of it as the treasure of the field.

The field is the body, which should be eared with penance and sown with good works.

Afterward þet stat is to praysy / uor his uayrhede. For its beauty—it

is the fairest
state on earth.

Solomon associ-
ates brightness
with chastity.

Sinless
chastity is fair
and bright above
other virtues.

[1 MS. *likende*]

Maidenhod is
the white robe
wherein a spot is
sooner discovered
than in any other
cloth.

It should be pre-
served from filth,
blood, and fire.
The filth is the
covetousness of
the world.

None may please
God who seek
to please the
world, that is,
God's foe.

[2 So in MS.]

One sign of
pleasing the
world is the
decking of the
body.

[Fol. 71. b.]

Fairness without
is often gained
by the loss of
purity within.

uor þet is þe uariste stat þet is ine erþe / madenhod
clenliche yloked. Huerof salomon zayþ ine his boc of
wysdome. 'O.' zayþ he / 'huet is uayr chasteté / kenrede
mid briȝtnesse.' he zet riȝt wel briȝtnesse mid chastete.
uor þanne is uayr c[h]asteté / and maydenhod / huanne
hi is briȝt be guode liue / and oneste. Ase þe briȝt-
nesse of þe zonne makeþ þane uayre day : alsuo þe
briȝtnesse of grace / and of guode liue : makeþ þe
maydenhod uayr / and likinde¹ to god. Huerof saynt
Ierome zayþ / þet mochel is uayr and briȝt / to-uore
þe oþre uirtues / maydenhod. huanne hi is wyþoute
lac / and wyþoute uelþe of zenne. Vor huo þet is yhol
of bodie / and uoul ine herte : is ase þe berieles yhuited /
þet is uayr wyþoute : and wyþ-inne uol of stench.
Maydenhod is þe huite robe / huerinne þe spot is uouler
and more yzyenne / þanne in anoþer cloþ. þet ssel by
wel yloked uram þri spottes. uram hor. uram blod. an
uram ver. þise þri spottes be-ueleþ moche þis huite
cloþ. þe spot of hor : is þe couaytise of þe wordle / þet
ne ssel naȝt by ine his herte / þeþ wyle queme god ine
þe stat of maydenhod. uor non ne may y-queme god /
and to his yuo / ase zayþ sainte gregorie. And þe ilke
him sseweþ / þet he ne is naȝt godes vrend : þet wyle
kueme þe wordle / þet is godes uend. þeruore saint
Ion zayþ / þet 'huo þet wyle by urend to þe wordle : he
ssel by uend to god.' and sainte paul zayþ. 'yef ich wylle
queme to þe uolke of þe wordle : iche² ne ssel naȝ[t] by
Iesu cristes seriont.'

O toene / þet me wyle kueme þe wordle is : þe
agrayþinge aboute þet body. uor non ne wolde neure
mor zeche / uairhede / ne bisihede of robes / ne of
agrayþinge : bote yef he ne wende to by yzoze of þe
uolke. Ac huo þet wile zeche zuich uayrhede wyþoute :
he lyst þe uayrhede wyþ-inne / huer-by me kuemþ god.
þeruore saynt bernard zayþ to ham þet zechiþ þe
coustouse robes / and þe uayre agrayþinge uor to kueme

þe wordle / and ham uor to ssewy. 'þe doȝtren' he zayþ
 'of babilonie / þet is of *confusion* / zechep hire blisse /
 and hit ssel wende ham in-to *confuzion* / and to ssame
 eurelestinde / bote yef hi ham ne wytie.' 'Hi ham
 cloþeþ' he zayþ / 'mid pourpre / and mid uayre robes /
 and costuolle / and onder þe uayre robes / is ofte þet
 inwyȝ / poure / and naked. And hi hise alizteþ wyȝ-
 oute / mid stones / and mid broches of gold / and of
 zeluer. Ac hi byeþ ealde / and uoule / beuore god /
 be kueade þeawes.' Ac saint bernard zayþ / and spekeþ
 of ham þet zuo ham sseweþ / ine wykkede onderstond-
 inge / and doþ more þanne hare stat aceþ. Ac al þe
 blisse of þe kinges doȝter of blisse / ase zayþ dauȝ / is
 wyȝ-inne / ine holy inwyȝ / and ine uayre uirtues huer
 þer ne is no couaytise / bote uor to kueme god. And
 þos þe spot of þe hore : ne beueþ hit naȝt.

Purple clothes
 and rich robes
 often hide a poor
 soul.

All the joy of
 the king's
 daughter of bliss
 consists in a holy
 and undefiled
 mind.

And þos me ssel wytye in þet stat / uram þe spotte
 of blod. þet is of þoȝtes / and of ulessliche wynninges.
 Huerof saint Iorome zayþ. þet þe ilke maydenhod is
 sacrefice and ofringe to Iesu crist : þet ne is naȝt be-
 smetted ine herte mid kueade þoȝtes. ne ine ulesse : of
 lecherie. ase himzelf zayþ. 'Naȝt ne is worþ maidenhod
 of bodye : þer þet is uelþe of herte.' Ase þet frut ne is
 naȝt guod / þaȝ hit by wel uayr wiȝ-oute / huanne hit is
 uorroted and wermethe.

The white robe
 should be free
 from blood,
 and from fleshly
 thoughts.

Maidenhood of
 body is worthless
 without purity of
 heart.

Afterward he ssel him loki ine þet stat uram þe
 spotte þet comþ of þe uere. þet uer þet zengþ and
 bernþ ofte þe huyte robe of chastete / and of mayden-
 hod : is bleþeliche zigge / oþer to lhestre wordes þet
 moȝe sterie to zenne. Vor ase zayþ zaynte paul / and
 eftzone we hit habbeþ aboue y-zed. 'þe kueade wordes :
 amerreþ þe guode þeawes.' And þeruore zayþ senekes.
 'loke þe uram uoule wordes þet ne byeþ naȝt honeste.'
 Vor huo þet him y[e]fþ to uoule wordes hi ham ssolle naȝt
 ssamie and afrounti / þet is te zigge / hi lyezeþ þe
 ssame / and ualleþ þe liȝtlaker in-to zenne. and þeruore

The robe must
 be preserved from
 the spot of fire.

Bad words mar
 good manners,

they destroy
 modesty,

and burn or singe
the soul.

Maidenhod is
like the lily, fair
and white.

St John the
evangelist was
the most beloved
disciple of our
Lord,
[Fol. 72. a.]

because of his
maidenhood.

Maidenhod well
rooted in God's
love,

is preserved from
temptation.

The flower of
maidenhood hath
six leaves. -
The first leaf is
holiness and
purity of body.
[*wyoute* in MS.]

The second leaf
is purity of heart.

huo þet wyle loki clenliche þane huyte kertel of maden-
hod : him behoueþ him loki uor to speke / oþer to
y-hiere wordes zuyche / huerof he may him berne /
oþer be-zenge. þe priué cat bezengþ ofte his scin / and
zuo ne deþ naȝt þe wylde cat. Maydenhod amang þe
opre uirtues is anlikned to þe lylve þet is wel uayr and
huyt. þeruore oure lhord zayþ ine þe writinge be
salomonnes mouþe. 'My lemman is ase þe lylve amang
þe þornes.' Oure lhordes lemman special is yloued /
þet lokeþ maydenhod. Vor þet is a uirtue huerby zaule
onderuangþ specialliche more loue / and þe fauour of
oure lhorde Iesu crist. þanne saint Ion þe ewangelist
þet wes mayde / wes amang þe apostles / þe meste
belouede of oure lhorde. and him ssewede oure lhord þe
meste tokne of louerede / ase hit sseweþ ine þe god-
spelle. And zuo ha wes ycleped amang þe opre
decip[les] : þe deciple / þet Iesu crist mest louede. naȝt
uorþan / þet he ne louede wel þe opre / ac þane more
specialliche uor þe maydenhod. þis lylve flour lokeþ his
uayrþede amang þe þornes of uondi[n]gges of þe ulesse.
Vor þet uless is ase a donghel / þet ne carkeþ asemoche
ase is of him-zelue / bote þornes / and netlen. þet byeþ
kucade meniynge / þet ofte prekieþ þane gost. Ac þe
flour of maydenhod ne heþ hede of þo þornes. uor hi is
wel y-roted ine godes loue / þet hire wereþ uram þe
þornes of uondinge.

þis flour hit ssel habbe zix leues / and þry grayns
of gold aboue wypinne. þe uerste lyaf is yholnesse /
and clenness of bodye. þet is to zigge / þet þet body
by y-hol / wyþ]-oute uelþe of lecherie. Vor yef a mayde
were uorlaye be strengþe / and a-ye wyl : hi ne ssolde
naȝt þeruore lyese hare maydenhod / ne þe mede of
hare maydenhod. þeruore sainte lucie zayde to þe
tiront. 'Yef þou me beuelst aye mi wyl : my chasthede
hit ssel by me y-dobbed / ase to þe coroune of blisse.'
þet oþer lyaf is clenness of herte. Vor ase zayþ saint

Ierome. Naȝt ne is worþ to habbe maidenhod of bodey: þet heþ wyl to by y-spoused. He speķþ of þan þet habbeþ behote maidenhod. Vor huo þet heþ behote maydenhod oþer chasteté to loki / he ssel loki his herte chastliche / and clenliche. þe þridde lyeaf is mildenesse. Vor maydenhod proud: ne quemþ noþing god. And þeruore zayþ saint bernard. ‘Hit is wel uayr þing: þet heþ mi[l]denesse mid maidenhod. and wel stranglaker kuemþ to god þe ilke zaule to huam mildenesse yefþ los to maydenhod. and maydenhod / uayreþ mildenesse.’ Ich dar wel zigge / þet wyþoute mildenesse / þe maydenhod of marie / ne hedde neure y-quemd to god. uor wyþoute madenhod / we moze by y-borze: and naȝt wy-oute mildenes. þe uerþe lyeaf of þe flour of lilye of maydenhod: is drede of god. Vor þo þet byeþ zopliche maidines / hi were y-woned to bi dreduol / and ssamuest. and hit nis no wonder: uor hi bereþ a wel precious tresor ine a wel fyebble uet. þanne þe mayde marie wes alneway by hire-selue / and hedde greate drede / þo þe angel ssewede him to hire. Ac þe drede of god / is þe tresoriere / þet / þet tresor of madenhod lokeþ / þet þe dyeuel me may hit stele. uor hi lokeþ þe gates of þe kastele: huer þet tresor is be-sset. þe gates of þe kastele huer maydenhod is: byeþ þe gates of þe herte. þe ilke gates lokeþ / þe drede of oure lhorde / þet hi ne by opene to þe viende be ydele bysyhede of zizþe / of hyerþe / and of speche / oþer of guoinges ine uelaȝredes suspiciouses. uor bisi-hede is specialliche to zzy / and to hyre þe ydelnesses of þe wordle / hy byeþ ofte way to zenne of lecherie. þanne me ret ine þe writinge / þet Iacobbes doȝter / þo hi yede muzi uor bysihede uor to ysy þe wymen of þe contraye huer þet hi wes. Hi wes y-rauissed of þe princes zone of þe cite / and uorlaye. And þeruore huo þet wyle loki maydenhod him behoueþ moche wyþdraȝe his wyttes uor to zyenne ydele bisihede. And

The third leaf is meekness.

Without meekness the virginity of Mary would not have been pleasing to God.

The fourth leaf is the fear of God.

The fear of God is the treasurer of the treasury of virginity.

The gates of the treasury are the gates of the heart.

The fear of God locks these gates so that they are not open to the devil.

[Fol. 72. b.]

Who will preserve virginity must withdraw the wits from idle business.

The kingdom of heaven is likened to the ten maidens, whereof five were wise and the others foolish.

The five wise are those that control the five wits of the body.

The fifth leaf is "sharpness (austerity) of life,"

which is a strong hedge surrounding the garden of the heart.

The sixth leaf is constancy (steadfastness). St Austin saith, "Follow the lamb of meekness, that is, Jesus Christ."

Study perseverance, for it winneth the crown of heaven.

þet me deþ be holy drede of oure lhorde þet me dret alday to wreþi. þet is þet wyt of þe uif maydines huerof oure lhord Iesu crist speķþ ine his spelle þo he zede. þet þe kingriche of heuene is anlikned to þe ten madines. huerof þe vif were wyse. and þe oþre uif were foles. He clepeþ hier-ine þan of þe kingriche of heuene : holy cherche. þet is hier beneþe. huerinne byeþ guode / and kueade / of foles / and of wyse. þet byeþ lemes of holy cherche / by þe byleaue of cristen-dom. þe vif wyse betokneþ þo þet wel lokeþ / and ledeþ þe vif wyttes of þe bodie. huerof we habbeþ beuore yspeke. þe vif foles be-tokneþ þo : þet folliche his lokeþ.

þet vifte leaf is ssarpnesse of liue. Vor huo þet wyle wel loki his maydenhod : him behoueþ wel wysliche his uless ouercome / and do onderuot / be uestinges / be wakiinges / and be benes. Ssa[r]ppnesse of liue / is ase a strang heg uor to loki þane gardin of þe herte uram kuede bestes. þet byeþ þe viendes of helle / þet hy ne moze naȝt in. þet ne wylne[þ] naȝt bote stele : þet tresor of maydenhod. and þeruore ssel þet tresor by wel be-sset / and wel y-do op / þet hit ne by uorlore. uor huo þet hit lyst : neure ne ssel hit habbe ayen. nanmore þanne þe lompe huanne hi is to-broke / ne may by y-held.

þet zixte leaf is / bleuinge / þet is stedeuest wyl to loki þet me heþ behote to god. þanne saynt austin zayþ ine þe bok of maydenhod. and speķþ to maydines / and zayþ þus. Volȝeþ þet lamb of mildenesse / þet is Iesu crist / lokinde uestliche / þet þou hest behote to god. do hardiliche alsuo moche ase þe miȝt. þet þe guodnesse of maydenhod ne spille ine þe. uor þou ne miȝt do no þing huerby hit comþ ayen : yef þou hit liest. ase we þe habbeþ y-zed uorbysue of þe lompe. And saint bernard þus zayþ. Stude þou to bleue. uor hi one / wynþ þe coroune of heuene.

þise zix leues beuore yzed uayreþ moche þe lylve of maydenhod. ac hit behoueþ þet þis flour habbe wyþ-inne þri cornes of gold. þet betokneþ þri maneres to louie god. Vor maydenhod wyþ-oute þe loue of god / is ase þe lompe wyþ-oute oyle. þanne þe fole maydenes uor þet hi ne uelden naȝt hare lompen mid þe oyle : weren beset wyþ-oute uram þe bredale. And þe wyse maydines þet wel uelden hyre lompen of þe oyle : yeden in mid þe bredgome to þe bredale.

Virginity without the love of God is a lamp without oil.

þe þri maneres to louie god / þet byeþ be-tokned be þe þri cornes of þe lylve : saynt austin tekþ þo he zede þus. þou sselst louye god mid al þine onderstondinge wyþ-oute errour. mid ale þine wylle wyþ-oute wyþzigginge. and mid al þine beþenchinge wyþ-oute uoryetinge. Ine zuyche manyere is godes anlyche uolueld ine manne / by þe þri dingnetes þet bieþ ine þe zaule. þet is to wytene. onderstondinge. beþenchinge. and wyl. Huanne þise þri þinges byeþ wel ydiȝt to god ine þri maneres / ase zayþ saint austin / þanne byeþ þe þri cornes of þe lylve wel y-gelt mid þe golde of charité þet yefþ uayrhede / and guodhede to alle uirtues. uor wiþ-oute þo golde / no uirtue ne is be-uore god. Oþerlaker speķþ saynt bernard of þe maniere to louye god. And þus zayþ. ‘O. þu þet art cristen / lerne hou þou sselst louie god / þet is Iesu crist.’ Lerne him to louie / wysliche. zueteliche. stran[g]liche. and stedeuestliche. Wysliche : þet þou ne by y-stered be none prosperité. Strongliche : þet þou ne by ouercome / be none aduerseté. and þus is uayr þet flour of þe lylve of maydenhod / huanne hi is zuych / ase we habbeþ y-zed. And þet is þe oþer scele huer-by þe stat of madenhod / is moche to praysy / þet is uor his uayrhede.

The three grains of the lily teacheth how to love God, with the understanding, will, and thought.

In such manner is God's likeness fulfilled in man by these three properties of the soul.

[Fol. 73. a.]

St Bernard teaches thee to love God,

wisely, sweetly, strongly, and stedfastly. Wisely, that thou be not moved by prosperity. Strongly, that thou be not overcome by adversity.

þe þridde scele huerby hit is to alowe / is uor his guodhede / and uor þe note þet þerof comp. Vor maydenhod is a tresor of zuo grat worþ : þet hit ne may

The third reason why virginity is to be praised is for its goodness.

Nothing is
worthy of being
compared to the
chaste heart.

Virginity brings
forth most fruit.
Marriage thirty-
fold,
widowhood sixty-
fold,
and virginity a
hundred-fold.

[1 *belongeþ* and
bouore in MS.]

In marriage one
shall keep the ten
behests.

In widowhood
one shall keep
the ten behests,
and six works of
mercy.

The number
hundred betoken-
eth a round num-
ber, and is the
fairest of all
figures.

It betokeneth the
crown wherewith
the wise maidens
crowned them-
selves,

[² Originally the
passage stood
thus, *were mid
y-crowned*]

for they have a
special crown
above the crown
of bliss,

by / be nonen y-zet a *pris*. þanne þe writinge zayþ.
þet no þing ne is worþi to be ylykned: to þe chaste
herte. and is to onderstonde specialliche: of þe chaste
maydenhod. uor maidenhod aboue alle oþre states berþ
þet *gratteste* frut. þo þet byeþ ine spoushod yef hit
lokeþ ase hi ssolden: hi habbeþ þet þrittazte frut. þo
þet byeþ in wodewe-hod: habbeþ þet zixtiazte frut. þo
þet lokeþ maydenhod: habbeþ þet hondr[ed]azte frut.
Vor zuo zayþ oure lhord ine his spelle. þet / þet zed
þet vil into þe guode londe: fructefide of one half to þe
þrittazte. of oþer half to zixtiazte. and of þe þridde
half / to þe hondredazte. þise þri nombres of þritti. of.
lx. and of an hondred: *belongeþ*¹ to þe þri states beuore¹
yzed. þe tale of þritti / þet is of þrisiþe ten: *belongeþ*
to þe stat of spoushod. huer me ssel loki þe ten hestes
ine þe byleaue of þe *trinité*. þe tale of zixti þet is wel
gratter / þet is of zixziþe ten. be-longeþ to þe stat of
wodewehod. uor in zuych stat me sse[*l*] loki þe ten
hestes. and mid þan me ssel do þe zix workes of merci /
huer-of we habbeþ aboue y-speke. Ac þe tale of an
hondred þet is þe meste of þe þri uol-do. uor hi betokneþ
ane rounde figure. þet is þe uayreste amang alle þe
oþre figures. Vor ase ine þe rounde figure: þe ende
went ayen to his ginninge / and makeþ ase ane coroune:
alzuo þe tale of an hondred: ioynep þan ende to þe
ginninge. uor tenziþe ten: makeþ an hondred / þet be-
toknep þe coroune þet þe wyse maydynes: ham
corounede.² And þaz hit by zuo þet ine þe stat of
spoushod. and ine þe stat of wodewehod / me may wel
wynne þe coroune of blisse / and more habbe of merite
auoreye god: þane uele madines. Vor manie þer byeþ
ine paradis of ham þet habbeþ yby ine spoushod / and
ine wodewehod / þet more byeþ nier god: þanne manye
maydines. ac alneway habbeþ þe maydines ane speciale
coroune: aboue þe coroune of blisse / þet is þe coroune
to alle þe halȝen. Vor þet þe maydines habbeþ ane

speciale ouercomynge of hare ulesse. uor to uolzȝ þe
 lamb of mildenesse / huyder hit geþ / to huam hi
 byeþ y-spoused. and habbeþ ylete þe ulessliche
 sposayles / uor to by mid him ate sposayles eure-
 lestinde.

[Fol. 73. b.]

for they have
 overcome in an
 especial manner
 the lusts of the
 flesh.

þe tende¹ stat huer me ssel loki cheteté / is of
 clerkes y-hoded / ase byeþ supdeaknes / dyaknes /
 prestes / and bissoppes. Alle þos byeþ y-hyea[]de to
 loki chastete / uor manye sceles. Verst / uor þet hod
 þet hi habbeþ onderuonge / þet acseþ alle holinesse.
 þanne þet sacrament is zuo hez and zuo holy / þet þo
 þet hit onderuongeþ / byeþ ybounde to chastete to loky.
 þet neuremo hi ne moze ham do to spoushod. Efter-
 ward uor hare office þet hi habbeþ. uor hi byeþ y-dizt.
 propreliche to serui god ine his temple at his weuede.
 and handleþ / and be-takeþ to hare honden þe þinges
 þet byeþ y-halzed. ase þe uesseles yblissed. þe chalis.
 þe copereaus. and þet more is *grat* þing wyþ-oute *com-*
parisoun : þet bodi of oure lorde Iesu crist / þet þe
 prestes sacreþ / and onderuongeþ / and betakeþ opren.

The sixth state of
 chastity is of
 hooded clerks,
 as deacons,
 priests, &c., who
 are bound to
 preserve chastity
 for many reasons.
 First, because
 their hood de-
 mandeth holi-
 ness.

Secondly, their
 office is to serve
 God,

to handle sacred
 things,
 and, above all,
 the body of our
 Lord Iesus
 Christ.

Nou hi ssolden þanne by wel klene / and wel holy /
 uor þane scele of þe lhorde to huam hi serueþ / þet is
 holy / and hateþ alle uelþe. þanne he zayþ ine þe
 writinge. ‘Byeþ holy / uor ich am holy.’ uor to zuiche
 lhorde / zuich maine. Vor þe scele of þe stede huer hi
 serueþ / þet is þe cherche / þet is holy / and y-halzed
 god to seruy. Me uint ine þe writinge / þet amang þe
 paenes þe prestes þet lokeden chastete ine þe temple /
 weren to-deld uram þe opren / þet hi ne loren hire
 chastete. Mochel ssollen bi more clene wyþ-oute *com-*
parisoun / and more chast þe cristene prestes / þet
 seruyeþ ine godes temple / þet is y-halzed / and
 apropred god to serui. Yet eft hi ssolle by more
 clene / and more holy / uor þet hi serueþ at godes
 borde of his coupe / of his breade / and of his wyne /

The Scripture
 saith, “Be holy,
 for I am holy.”

Among the
 pagans the priests
 observe chastity
 in the temple.

Christian priests
 should be far
 more chaste,

[¹ So in MS. : read *zixte* ?]

for they serve at
God's table.

St Paul exhorts
Christian bishops
to be chaste.

This chastity
was betokened in
the Old Law by
the girding of
the loins.

The girdle is
chastity.

Aaron and his
children were
clothed in linen
girdles.

Before the linen
"kirtle" is white
it must be beaten
and washed ;
so must the flesh
be disciplined by
penance.

The kirtle must
have above the
white girdle of
chastity.

[Fol. 74. a.]

The linen kirtle
betokeneth chast-
ity of heart.

The girdle above
denotes chastity
of body.

and of his mete. Godes table is þe wyeued. þe coupe
is þe chalis. his bread and his wyn : þet is his propre
bodi and his propre blod. Mochel ssolle hi þanne by
clene and holy / þo þet zuiche seruice doþ. þanne
sainte paul zayþ. hit behoueþ þet þe bissoppes / and þe
opre ministres of huam he heþ y-speke / þet byeþ þe
ministres of holy cherche / by chaste.

þis chasteté wes be-tokned ine þe yealde laze huer
god het to ham þet ssolden ethe of þe lombe / þet be-
toknede þet bodi of Iesu crist / þet hi gerten wel hare
lenden. þe gerdel huermide þe ministres of holy
cherche / ssolle ham gerde / ope þe lenden : is chasteté /
þet wyþ-drazþ þe lecherie of hare ulesse. þo god het
to aaron / þet wes prest and bissop / þet alle his chil-
dren weren ycloþed ine linene kertles / and y-gert
about mid huite linene gerdles. Aaron and his chil-
dren / þet serueden ine þe tabernacle : be-tokneþ / þe
ministres of holy cherche / þet ssol by y-cloþed mid
linene kertles / of chastete / þet is be-tokned be þe
huite ulexe. Vor ase linene kertel erþan hi by huyte :
uelezipe him behoueþ þet he by ybeate / and y-wesse :
And alsuo hit be-houeþ / þet uless beate / and wesse /
be disciplines / and be hardnesses. and ofte wesse his
herte of kueade lostes. and of kueade wynnynges / be
zoþe ssrifte / er þan me moze habbe þane huite kertel
of chastete. Ac þes kertel ssel habbe þane huyte gerdel
about. þet is to zigge / þet chastete ssel bi straytliche
y-loked / and wel wyþ-draze be abstinence [uorberinge] /
ase moche ase scele berþ / þet is þe bocle of þe gerdle.
Oþerlaker me may zigge / þet þe linene kertel / be-tokn-
eþ chasteté of herte. þe gerdel about / be-tocneþ
chasteté of bodie þet ssel wyþdraze þe lostes of þe
ulesse uor to loki þe chasteté of þe zaule. þis ilke selue
is ous betokned / ine þe aube / and ine þe gerdle about /
þet þe ministres of holy cherche doþ an / huazne hi
ssolle serui at godes wyeuede. Vor hi ssolle by chaste

wypine ine þe herte / and wyþ-outē ine bodye. Mochel
 is uoul þe spot of zenne / and nameliche of lecherie /
 ine þe ministres of holy cherche. Vor hi bieþ þe eze
 of holy cherche / ase zayþ þe writinge. Vor ase þet
 eze let þet body / and him sseweþ his way huerby hit
 ssel guo : alsuo ssolle þe prelas / and þe oþre ministres
 of holy cherche ssewy þane way of helpe to oþren.
 þanne alsuo ase þe spot þet is wel uouler ine þe ezen /
 þanne ine oþre lemes of þe bodye : alsuo is þe spot of
 lecherie more uouler / and more perilous ine clerkes
 and ine prelas : þanne ine leawede uolke. Efterward /
 hy byeþ þe sseawere of holy cherche / huerine þet
 lewede uolk lokeþ / and nimeþ uorbysne. Ac huanne
 þe sseawere is briȝt me ziȝþ wel þane spot / and þe
 uelpe þet is ine þe ssewere. Ac þe ilke þet ine zuich a
 ssewere naȝt ne lokeþ / he ne zikþ¹ naȝt his oȝene spot /
 ne þet me deþ mid þe sseawere þet is uoul an dim. Ac
 huanne þe ilke sseawere is wel briȝt and clene : þanne
 may me wel y-zy / and wel y-knawe his spottes. Alzuo
 huanne þe prelat is of guode lyue / and of guod los.
 þanne he ssel nime uorbisne of guode lyue. Efterward.
 hi ssolle by wel klene / and wel holy. uor þet hi
 clenzeþ / and halȝeþ þe oþre. Vor ase zayþ saynt
 gregorie. 'þe hand þet is uoul / and behorewed / ne
 may oþremanne uelpe do away.' and þe writinge zayþ.
 þet þe ilke þet is uoul : ne may nenne oþrenne klensy.
 And þet is to onderstonde : ase moche ase fayleþ of his
 merite. Vor þe sacrement þet is y-mad be þe ministre /
 be þe hand of þe kueade ministre. ne is naȝt lesse worþ
 ine him-zelue / ne lesse uirtuous / ne þe lesse miȝtuol /
 uor to halȝy ham þet hit onderuonȝeþ. Vor yef hit on-
 deruonȝeþ be þe hand of ane guode ministre. uor þe
 kueadnesse of þe ministre / ne apayreþ naȝt þe sacre-
 ment / ne þe guodnesse. Ac alneway þe kueadnesse of
 þe ministre / may anpayri þe oþre be kueade uorbysnen.
 and þe guodnesse edefie / be uorbisne of guode lyue.

Very foul is the
 spot of lechery in
 the ministers of
 the church,

for they are the
 eyes of Holy
 Church.

As the spot is
 fouler in the eye
 than in the other
 limbs,
 so is lechery more
 perilous in clerks
 and prelates than
 in lewd folk.

[1 zikþ 2]

Prelates should
 be pure and holy,
 for they hallow
 others,

but the foul are
 not able to cleanse
 others.

The wickedness
 of the minister
 impairerth not
 the virtue of the
 sacrament.

Ministers should
be an example of
chastity to their
flocks.

þeruore þanne huam þet hi halþeþ / and clenseþ þe oþre
ine þet hi ministreþ þe sacremens of holy cherche : hy
ssolle by þe more holy / and more clene / þanne þe
oþre. Vor yef hi byeþ queade : hi ssolle by þe more
y-harmed / þanne þe oþre. þis is þe zixte stat.
huer me ssel loki chasteté. and þe zixte boʒ of þise
trawe.

The seventh state
is the state of
religion.

þe zeuende stat huer me ssel loki chasteté : is þe
stat of religioun. uor þo þet byeþ ine þet stat / habbeþ
to god behote : þet hi ssolle libbe eueomor chasteliche.

Those who are
dedicated to God
must always ob-
serve chastity,

And þeruore hy byeþ y-hyealde / and y-obliged be
zuych behestē. þet neuremor hi ne moʒe by spoused /
zeþþe hi byeþ profes. And huo þet him deþ spousy :

[Fol. 74. b.]

þe spoushod ne ssel by naʒt. and þeruore hi ssolle do
greate payne / and grat diligence wel to loki hare
chastete / and uor hare stat / þet is stat of holy perfec-
cion. þet þe more þet / þet stat is holy : be zuo moche
is þe zenne þe more / and þe more uoul. þe uouler
þet is þe spot : þe more he is yzyenne ine þe huyte robe.

for their state
is one of perfec-
tion.

And huo þet heʒest ualþ : þe zorer he him blecheþ.
And uor to ouercome hire aduersarie þet is þe dieuel /
þet mest him payneþ uor to uondi and to do ualle þo of
religion. and more is gled huanne he his may ouer-
come : þanne of eni oþer stat. Vor alsuo ase þe angles
of heuene habbeþ grat glednesse of ane zenezere
huanne he him repentē / and deþ penonce uor his
zennes : alsuo þe dyeulen ham gledieþ huanne¹ hi moʒe
ouercome / and do ualle in-to zenne ane guodne man.

for he has greater
joy over the fall
of a good and
great man than
over many others,
as the fisherman
hath greater joy
to take a great
fish than a little
one.

And þe more þet he is of grat stat / and þe parfiter :
þe more heþ he þe gratter glednesse / huanne he him
may gyly. Ase þe vissere heþ more blisse uor to nime
ane gratne viss : þane ane littlene.

Here lieth a
tale.
One readeth in
the liues of the

HYER LYÞ A TALE.

Me ret ine liues of holy uaderes / þet an holy man

¹ MS. þuanne

tealde / hou he com to by monek / and zede. hou þet he hedde y-by ane payenes zone / þet wes a prest to þe momenettes. And þo he wes a child : on time he yede into þe temple mid his uader priueliche. þer he yzeþ ane gratne dyeuel þet zet ope ane uyealdirde stole / and al his mayne aboute him. þer com on of þe princes : and leat to him. þo he him aksede þe ilke þet zet ine þe stole. huannes he com. and he ansuerode / þet he com uram ane londe huer he hedde arered and ymad manye werren / and manye viztinges / zuo þet moche uolk weren ysslaze / and moche blod þer y-ssed. þe mayster him acsede ine hou moche time he hedde þet y-do. and he ansuerede : 'ine þritti dazes.' he him zede / 'Ine zuo moche time / hest zuo lite y-do?' þo he het þet ha wer riȝt wel ybeate / and euele y-draze. Efter þan : com anoþer þet alsuo to him leat ase þe uerste. þe mayster him acsede : huannes ha com. He ansuerode / þet he com uram þe ze. huer he hedde ymad manye tempestes. uele ssipes to-broke / and moche uolk adrey[n]ct. þe maister acsede ine hou long time. he ansuerode / 'ine tuenti dazes.' He zayde / 'Ine zuo moche time : hest zuo lite y-do?' Efterward com þe þridde. þet ansuerode / þet he com uram ane cite huer he hedde y-by at ane bredale / and þer he hedde arered and y-mad cheastes / and strifs. zuo þet moche uolk þer were y-slaze. and þer-to : he hedde yslaze þane hosebounde. þe maister him acsede hou long time he zette þet uor to done. He ansuerode þet ine ten dazes. þo he het þet he were wel ybyate. uor þet he hedde zuo longe abide þet to done : wiþ-oute more. Ate lasten com an-oþer to-uore þe prince. and to him he beaz. And he him acsede / huannes comst þou. He ansuerode þet he com uram þe ermitage / huer he hedde yby uourti yer uor to uondi ane monek of fornicacion / þet is þe zenne of lecherie. and zuo moche ich habbe y-do þet ine þise nyȝt ich hine habbe ouercome /

holy fathers that a holy man told how he became a monk. He was a pagan priest's son. When a child he was once in the temple of Mahomet, and there he saw a great devil sitting on a folding-stool, and all his servants about him. One of his princes came and told him of the wars and bloodshed he had caused in 30 days.

His master the devil ordered him to be well beaten, because in so much time he had done so little.

Another came and said that in 20 days he had caused tempests and shipwrecks.

He too was rebuked for his idleness.

A third came and related how at a wedding he had raised strife, discord, and murder in 10 days,

for which he was ordered to be well beaten for being so long about it. At last there came another,

who said he came from an hermitage, where he had been 40 years tempting a monk to commit fornication, and

[Fol. 75. a.]
was ultimately
successful.
The devil kissed
this prince, and
placed a crown
on his head and
praised him for
his prowess.

and y-do him ualle in-to þe zenne. þo lhip op þe mayster / and him keste / and be-clepte / and dede þe coroune ope his heued / an dede him zitte be-zide him. and to him zede / þet he hedde grat þing y-do / and grat prowessse. þo zayde þe guode man / þet huanne he hedde þet y-hyerd / and þet y-zoze : he þozte / þet hit were grat þing to by monek / and be þo encheysoun he becom monek.

Thus we see how
glad the devil is
when he may
cause a man of
religion to fall
into sin.

Ine þise tale me may ysy / þet greate glednesse habbeþ þe dyeulen huanne hi moze do ualle ane man of religion in-to zenne. Vor huanne þet a man is y-guo in-to religion / he is ase þe ilke þet geþ in-to þe uelde uor him-zelue / to uizte wyþ þane dyeuel. þanne huanne oure lhord wolde by uonded of þe dyeule : he yede in-to desert. uor þe desert of religion : is ueld of uondinge. Religion is ycleped desert. uor alsuo ase þe desert is hard and draye / and uer uram alle men : alsuo ssel by þe stat of religion hard / and draye be hardnesse of liue. þet is a strang heg aye þe wyckede bestes. and a strang armure a-ye þane uyend. þis is remedie aye zenne of lecherie. uor huo þet wyle quenche þet uer of lecherie ine him-zelue : he ssel wyþdraze þe brondes. þet byeþ þe lostes of þe ulesse / þet þe guode religious ssel wyþdraze of his ulesse / be uestinges / be wakiinges / be diciplines. oper operlaker þet uer ne may nazt by y-quenct. Huo þet wyle ane cite oper ane castel nime : he ssel asemoche ase he may / wyþdraze þe metes / and þet weter / uor to asterue his. Vor huanne þe castel is asterued : he ne may hym hyealde aye his yuo. Alsuo þe castel of þe wombe þet is þe strengþe of þe ulesse / ne may him hyealde aye þane gost : þanne he is asterued be uestinges / and be wyþdrazþes. þe stat of religion ssel by zuo yuerred uram þe wordle : þet þe ilke þet is ine þet stat / ne uele nazt huerof he ssel by dyead to þe wordle / and libbe to god. ase zayþ zainte paul. þet alsuo ase þe ilke þet is dyead bodilich / heþ

Our Lord went
into the desert to
be tempted.

Religion is a
desert hard and
dry.

Whoso will avoid
lechery, must
withdraw from
the lusts of the
flesh.

He who will take
a castle must
withdraw the
meat and the
water so as to
starve his foe.

The castle of the
womb may not
withstand the
spirit when it is
starved by fast-
ings and absti-
nence.

ilore alle his bodiliche wyttes / þe zizþe / þe hyerþe / þe speche. þane zuelz / þane smel / and þe uelinge. alsuo ssel by þe religious zuo dyead ase to þe wordle: þet he noþing ne uele þet belongeþ to zenne. þet he moze zopliche zigge þet word / þet þe apostel sainte paul zayde of him-zelue. 'þe wordle' he zayþ 'is y-crucefyed to me: and ich to þe wordle.' he wolde zigge þet al alsuo ase þe wordle him hild uor uyl / and uor wlatuol / ase me deþ enne y-honged: alsuo hed he þe wordle uor vil / and uor wlatuol / ase me heþ þane: þet is y-crucified oþer anhonged uor his misdede. Alsuo ssel þe ilke þet is ine stat of perfeccion / þe wor[d]le hatie. þet is to zigge: þe couaytise / and þe kueadnesse of þe wordle / þet he ne uele naȝt be loue and be wylninge. zuo þet his *conuersacion* by al ine heuene. ase zayþ zainte paul of him / and of ham þet byeþ ine stat of perfeccion. 'Oure *conuersacioun*' he zayþ 'is ine heuene. uor þet body is ine þe erþe. þe herte is ine heuene be loue / and be wylninge.

The religious should be dead to the world.

St Paul held the world vile and hateful, as one doth him that is crucified or hanged for his misdeeds.

He that is in a state of perfection hateth the covetousness of the world,

for their conversation is in heaven.

Man religious ne ssel noþing oȝen habbe ine erþe. Ac he ssel maki his hord ine heuene. ase zayþ oure lhord ine his spelle. 'Yef þou wylt' he zayþ 'by parfit: guo and zele al þet þou hest / and yef hit þe poure uor godes loue / and zuo þe sselt habbe þin hord ine heuene.' Mannes hord of religion: ys zoþe pouerte þet comp of guode wylle / ase zayþ an halȝen ine þe lyues of uaderes. Vor pouerté is þet menet / huermide me bayþ þe riche of heuene. Hueruore oure lhord zayþ. þet þe poure of sprit byeþ y-blissed. Vor þe riche of heuene: is hare. Vorzoþe huo þet is poure of spirit / þet is of wylle. He ne zekþ ine þise wordle / ne lostes. ne riches. no worþssipes. ac rapre uoryet al / uor god. And zuo ssel do þe guode religious / þet wile cliue into þe helle of perfeccion. þanne þe angel zayde to lot / þo he wes y-guo out of sodome. 'ne trost þe naȝt ine þe stede þet þou hest ylete. ac ywyte þe ine þe helle of perfeccion.'

[Fol. 75. b.]
The religious man shall make his hoard in heaven.

The man of religion's hoard is true poverty, wherewith one buyeth the kingdom of heaven.

The good religious man seeks to climb unto the hill of perfection,

for he trusts not
to the world.

Lot's wife looked
back to the burn-
ing city, and was
changed into an
image of salt.

Lot's wife be-
tokeneth those
whose bodies are
in the cloisters
but their hearts
in the world.

They have only
the clothing of
religion.
The image of salt
betokeneth wit
and discretion.

Our Lord exhorts
his disciples to
remember Lot's
wife.

He who sets hand
to the plough and
looketh behind is
not worthy of
heaven.

Those dedicated
to God should
ever have the
eyes of their

[Fol. 76. a.]

Vor huo þet is y-guo out of þe *conuersacion* of þe wordle :
he ne ssel him naȝt trosti / ne hyealde besyde þe wordle
be wyll / ne be wilninge. Ac him asoyny ase moche
ase he may / al huet he is ine þe helle of perfeccion /
and þer me ssel abide to his helpe / wyþoute lokinge
ayen. Lottes wyf lokede behinde hire / þe cite þet
ber[n]de huerout hi wes i-guo. and þeruore hi wes
ychonged in-to an ymage of zalt. Lottes wyf / be-
tokneþ ham / zepþe þet hi byeþ iguo out of þe wordle /
and byeþ yguo into religion. wendeþ ayen be wille and
be wylninge / þet habbeþ hare body ine cloystre / an
zetteþ hare herten ine þe wordle. þos anlykneþ þe
ymage of zalt / þet ne heþ bote þe lyknesse of man. and
hit is hard / and chald ase a ston. Alsuo byeþ þet
uolk chealde ine þe loue of god / and hard wyþ-out
wetnesse of pite : and of deuocion. þanne hi ne habbeþ
bote þe cloþinge of hare religion. þe ymage þet wes of
zalt / be-tokneþ ine þe writinge : wyt / and discrecion.
uor ase þet zalt yefþ smac to þe mete : alsuo ssel man
habbe wyt. and discrecion ine his dedes / and ine his
wordes. þe ilke ymage þanne of zalt ssel y[e]ue wyt /
and onderstondinge / and uorbysne : to ham of religion.
þet habbeþ uorlete þe wordle / þet hy ne wende ayen to
þan þet hi habbeþ y-lete. And þeruore zayþ oure lhord
in his spelle to his deciples / þet him uolȝede. 'bepencþeþ
you he zaip of lottes wyue.' þet is to zigge / ne lokeþ
naȝt to þet ye habbeþ y-lete uor me. þet ye ne lyese þet
lyf of grace and of blisse : Alsuo ase lottes wyf /
uorlyas þet lif of þe bodye / uor þet hi lokede to þan /
þet hi hedde y-lete. þanne oure lhord zayþ ine his
spelle. þet þe ilke þet zet þe hand aþe zuolȝ and lokeþ
behinde him : ne is naȝt worpi to þe riche of heuene.
Vor alsuo ase þe ilke þe let þe zuolȝ lokeþ alneway
beuore him / uor to lede wel his zuolȝ : Alsuo ssel do
he þet zet þe hand to þe zuolȝ of penonce oper of reli-
gion : alneway ssel habbe þe ezen of his herte / þet is to

zigge þe onderstondinge and þe wyl to þan þet is be-uore :
 and naȝt to þan þet is behynde. þet is to þe guodes
 eurelestinde þet ssollen by be-uore ine þe herte. naȝt to
 þe timliche guodes / þet ssolle by behynde. And þus
 dede zaynte paul þet zede / þet he hedde uoryete þet /
 þet wes behinde. þet wes þe wordle and al þe couaitise
 þet þer is / þet he ne prayzede naȝt / and yede alneway
 beuore him. Vor he hedde alneway his onderstondinge
 and his wyl to heuene. Ac moche uolk of religion
 zetteþ þe zuolȝ be-uore þe oksen. uor uele þer byeþ and
 þet is hire harm þet more zechep þe timliche þinges /
 and doþ beuore / þet ssolde by behynde. þe timliche
 guodes beuore : þe eurelestinde. and þe gostliche be-
 hynde. Zuyche religious byeþ ine wel *grat* peril of hare
 uorlyezynge. uor hi ne habbeþ bote þe clopinge of hare
 religion. To þe uorbysne of zainte paul / ssel þe guode
 religious / uoryete þe wordle / and lete his behinde him.
 and þe guodes eurelestinde alneway habbe beuore his
 ezen. and alneway guo uram uirtue / to uirtue / alhuet
 he comþ to þe mont ioye. þet is / to þe helle of blisse
 eurelestinde. huer he ssel clyerliche izy god. and him
 ssel louie parfitliche. and worþssipie euremo. þet is þe
 blissinge huer þe yefþe of onderstondinge let þo þet
 lokeþ clenness of herte / and of bodye / ase we habbeþ
 aboue y-sseawed. And þeruore zayþ oure lhord. þet
 yblessed byeþ þe clene of herte. uor hy ssolle clyerliche
 ysy god. þe ilke blissinge beginþ hyer. uor hi byeþ
 yclenzed of þiesternesne / of errour to þe onderstond-
 inge / and of spottes of zenne / ase to þe wylle. And
 þeruore hi y-zyeþ god be byyleaue alizte / of þe brieznesse
 þet comþ of þe yefþe of onderstondinge / huerby me
 knauþ his sseppere / and al þet belongeþ to helpe of
 zaule wyþ-oute drede / wyþ-oute comparer / wyþ-oute
 chancelier. and ine þe byleue of Iesu crist huer hi byeþ
 zuo to-gidere / and yzet uestliche / þet hi ne moȝe ham
 to-dele : uor dyap / ne uor torment. And þeruore hi

heart directed to
 everlasting bliss,
 and not to tem-
 poral goods.

St Paul always
 directed his un-
 derstanding and
 his will to heaven.

Many religious
 folk seek tem-
 poral things and
 set the plough
 before the oxen.

St Paul exhorts
 them to have
 "everlasting
 goods" always
 before them,
 and go from
 virtue to virtue,
 until they come
 to the hill of
 everlasting bliss.

"Blessed be the
 clean of heart,
 for they shall
 see God."

They shall see
 him by belief and
 by the gift of
 understanding.

The pure of heart
are blessed in this
mortal life,

for they see God
clearly with the
eyes of their
heart.

This blessing
shall be perfected
in the life ever-
lasting,

when they shall
see God face to
face.

[Fol. 76. b.]

In heaven there
is all beauty,
sweetness, and
goodness;

wherefore think
on things above,
and consider how
desirable is that
bliss which com-
prehends all
others.

God is the highest
good:
of Him come all
goods, as the
streams of the
well.
He is greatly
blessed who with
his naked visage

byep yblissed / þe clene of herte / ine þise lyue dyad-
lich. uor hi habbeþ þe ezen of hare herten / and þe
onderstondinge of hare wylle / zuo clene / and zuo clyer /
þet hi zye¹ god / and yleueþ be stronge beleaue / and
zikere. ase zayþ oure lhord to saint thomas þe apostel.
'Vor þet þou me hest y-zo³e : þou me hest yleued. Ac
þo ssolle by yblissed : þet me ne y-ze³e and me yleueþ.'
Ac þis blissinge ssel by uolued / ine þe liue eureles-
tinde. huer þe clene of herte þet hier ssolle ysy him be
byleaue. ac alneway þiesterliche. hi ssolle y-zi face wyþ
face : al aperteliche / ase zayþ zayte paul. þet is þe
blissinge of angles / and of halzen of paradis. þet yzy
god ine þe face / yknaue enne god ine þri persones. to
ysy elierliche ine þo sseawere huerinne alle þinges byep
brizte / mid þe lombe / and þe halzen ham wondrep /
and ham y-zyep. and uolle ne moze by : him an to loki.
Vor þer is alle uayrhede / alle zuetnesse / alle guo[d]-
nesse. welle of lif eurelestinde / and al þet herte may
wynlj / and of guod desiri. Ac ich zigge lite. uor
ase zayþ þe writinge. 'ne eze dyeadlich ne may nazt
ysy. ne eare hihere. ne mannes herte þenche. þet
god heþ agrayþed to his uriendes.' þanne sant
ansalm zayþ. 'Man arere al þine onderstondinge þer
aboue / an þench ase moche ase þe mizt / huet / and
hou moche grat / and huo moche lostuol / is þet guod /
þet heþ þe ioye and þane lost of alle guode. and nazt
zuych lost / ne zueche blisse / ase me uint ine sseppinges :
ac asemoch more : ase þe sseppere is more þanne þe
sseppinges.' Nou zayþ he / 'mannes makinge huet
y-zyxt þou foleant uor to zeche diuerse guodes to þine
zaule and to þine bodye. Loue wel on guod huer byep
alle guodes / and hit is yno³. þet is him-zelf þet is hezest
guod of huam comeþ alle þe opre / ase þe streames / of
þe welle.' Vorzoþe he ssel by wel yblissed zayþ saynt
austin / þet wyþ-oute none nakede uisage onwrize ssel
yzy þe blisse of god. and ssel by y-went ine anlicnesse

¹ For zyeþ.

of þe blisse huer he ssel ysy god ase he is. huych zizþe shall see God
 is coroune wyþoute ende / and al þe ssepe of halzen. such as He is.
 þet ssel by al þe guod of man / zayþ huze de saint
 uictor. auoreye þane man þet he made ine bodye and ine
 zaule / uor þan þet man him y-zeȝ mid þe eȝen of þe
 bodie ine his manhode. and þe zaule him yziþ ine his
 godhede. zuo þet he uand zuetnesse / and lost ine his
 sseppere wyþ-ine / and wyþ-oute / wyþ-inne: ine þe
 godhede. wyþoute: ine þe manhode. þet ssel by þe blisse
 of man / þet ssel by his ioȝe / and his lost / and lif
 eurelestinde þe ilke yblissede zizþe. þet is þe blissinge
 yef hit onderstondeþ: þo þet lokeþ clenness of herte
 and of bodie.

OF þE YEFþE OF WYSDOME. OF þE VIRTUE OF
 TEMPERANCE. AND OF SOBRETÉ.

Of the gift of
 wisdom.

þe laste yefþe / and þe meste / and þe heȝeste: is þe The last gift and
 yefþe of wysdom. þet is a grace þet þe holy gost yefþ to the greatest is
 þe contemplatiue herte. huerby he is ynome of þe loue wisdom,
 of god. þet he naȝt ne wylneþ / ne ne zeȝþ oþer þing / by which the
 þanne him to zȝenne / and to habbe / ine him uor to heart is possessed
 likni / mid him uor to bleue. þis is þet greate of per- with the love of
 feccion / þe ende of contemplacion. þe yefþe of onder- God only.
 stondinge huerof we habbeþ aboue yspeke / makeþ This is the step
 knawe god / and þe gostliche þinges ase be zizþe / and of perfection.
 be simple lokinges. Ac þe yefþe of wysdom / makeþ to
 yuele god / an to y-knawe ase be zuelȝ. þanne wysdom
 ne is oþer þing / þanne knaulechinge smackinde / þet is
 mid smac and mid grat lost of herte. uor oþerlaker he
 knauþ wyn / þe ilke þet hit yziȝþ ine a uayr gles. oþer-
 laker þe ilke þet hit drineþ / and tasteþ / and smackeþ. as one knoweth
 Ac þe filosofes yknewen god be writinge / ase be ane wine by seeing or
 ssewere huerinne hy lokeden. be skele and be onder- tasting it.
 stondinge of his miȝte. his uayrhede / his wyt. and his The philosophers
 guodnesse / erþan hi y-zeȝen þe sseppinges þet he heþ knew God by
 ymad zuo greate / zuo uayre / zuo guode / and zuo wel writing, as by a
 mirror;

and by the works
of nature, and by
natural reason,

[Fol. 77. a.]

but never by
love or devotion.

The gift of wis-
dom joineth
man's heart to
God by the glue of
love,

and there he
feedeth, resteth,
and is nourished,
and forgetteth all
his labours and
desires (carnal
and earthly).

This is the last
step of the ladder
of perfection.

The steps of this
ladder are the
seven gifts of the
Holy Ghost.
By these steps
climb the angels,

going from virtue
to virtue.

Having reached
the highest
step,

there is a greater
need for meekness
and self-abase-
ment.

y-ordayned. þanne hi knewen wel be zyȝþe and be uorbisne / and be simple zyȝþe of onderstondinge / and of kendelich skele. Ac neure naȝt ne yuelded / ne ne miȝte y-uele be zuelȝ of riȝte loue / ne by deuocion. Alsuo þer byeþ uele cristene clerkes / and leawede / þet wel ham yknewe be byleaue / and be wrytinge. Ac uor þet hi habbeþ þane zuelȝ naȝ wel y-dizt be zenne hi ne moȝe no þing yuele nanmore þanne þe zike uint smak ine þe guode mete. þe yefþe of wysdom / þet þe holy gost zet ine herte / zikerliche uayreþ / and clenseþ / of alle uelpe of zenne / and arereþ zuo þane gost of man : þet he him ioineþ to god / be a glu of loue / zuo þet he is al on mid god. þer he him ueth. þer he him norisseþ. þer he him uetteþ. þer he him losteþ. þer he him resteþ. þer he him slepþ. þer he uoryet al his trauail / alle his wylninges ulessliche / and erpliche / and him zelue / þet he him ne beþengþ of naȝt : bote of þet he loueþ / and þet is god onlepiliche. þis is þe laste stape / of þe lhedde of perfeccion / þet Iacob yzeȝ ine his sslepe / þet tok þe heuene / huerby þe angles of oure lhorde Iesu crist cliue op : and down. þe stapes of þise lhedde : byeþ þe zeue yefþes of þe holy gost / huerof we habbeþ y-speke. Be þo zeue stapes cliueþ þe angles. þet byeþ þo þet habbeþ hare herten to heuene / þet ledeþ lyf of angle ine erþe / be uayrehede / and be clemnesse / þet habbeþ hare herten in heuene be wylnyng. huanne hi guop and profiteþ uram uirtue to uirtue / al huet hi zyzeþ god aperteliche and herieþ parfitleche. Ac huanne hi byeþ y-cliuē op al to þe laste stape : oþerhuil hit behoueþ guo down be loȝnesse. Vor ase moche ase man is more parfite : þe more he is milde / and þe lesse him-zelue prayseþ. þerof me kan zigge : he þet is mest worþ : he him mest loȝeþ. þanne þe guode parfite mann ssel by ase þet trau þet is y-karked mid frut / þe more hit bouȝ to þe grunde. Ine anopre manire me may onderstonde / þet þe angles yeden down. uor þe guode men þet ledeþ

lif of angel an erþe / be hire holyhede / huanne hi byep
y-cline op to þe heȝeste stape of *contemplacion* / huyder
þe yefþe of wysdom his let / þet is alsuo y-goyned to
god / þet he uoryet al þet is onder god / be þe greate
zuetnesse þet þe herte uelp / þet is alsuo iroted ine god :
þet he lyst alle oþre lustes. zuo ham behoueþ oþerhuyl
guo doun of þise zuetnesse / of þise reste / of þise loste /
uram his zuete bryesten of solas. huer god ham dep
zouke ine þe *contemplacion* to þe workes of þe bysye
lyue / huerof we habbeþ aboue y-speke. huer þe parfite
abide ssolle / and uor hare note gostlich / and uor
opren.

It behoveth those
leading the life of
angels on earth

to descend to the
works of this
busy life.

Anoþer scele þer is / hueruore hit behoueþ guo doun
of þo ilke zete of *contemplacion* / huer þe gost of wisdom
woneþ. Vor þe corrupcion of þe ulesse is zuo grat þet
þe gost ne may ine þise liue dyeadlich longe bleue / in
zuo heȝ stat of *contemplacion*. ne yuele þe ilke greate
zuetnesse / þet paseþ alle lostes þet me may yuele ine
þise wordle / ase þo wyteþ þet hit habbeþ y-proued.
þeruore þe ayenwyȝte of þe ulesse / is zuo heuy / þet he
draȝþ þane gost a-doun wyll he / nolle he. and þeruore
þe ilke greate zuetnesse þet þe herte *contemplatif* uelp /
be þe yefþe of wysdome ine þise dyadliche lyue. ne is
bote a litel zuelȝ / huerby me smackeþ hou god is
zuete / and zofte as me tasteþ and smackyþ þet wyn.
erþan me drinceþ his uolle. Ac huanne me ssel come
in-to þe greate tauerne / huer þe tonne is be-take. þet is
ine þe liue euelestinde. huer þet god of loue / and of
pays / is / of blisse / and of lostes / and of solas / ssel
bi zuo abandones to echen / þet alle ssolle by uolle.
Ase zayþ þe sauter. þet al þe wylninge of þe herte
ssolle be uolueld þer. huanne god ssel do come ope his
urendes ane ulod of pays / ase zayþ þe prophete. huerof
hi ssolle by zuo uol dronke / þet hi ssolle by alle dronke /
of þe greate plenté / þet is ine þine house / and his ssel
do drinke of þe ulode of þine zuetnesse / and of þine

The corruption
of the flesh is so
great,
that the spirit
may not long
remain in so high
a state of con-
templation.

The flesh drags
the spirit down.

[Fol. 77. b.]

In this earth the
spirit has only a
taste of God's
sweetness,
but when he shall
come into the
great tavern
(heaven),

he shall drink his
fill.

for God shall -
send upon his
friends a flood of
peace,
with which all
shall be drunk.

To win this blessing one shall live soberly in this world.

Sobriety cometh of wisdom.

Gluttony produces sickness and often death.

Death seizes gluttons suddenly, as one doth the fish by the cheek.

Drunkenness deprives man of his freedom.

The drunkard loses his reason, and the wine drinketh (drowneth) him.

The glutton makes a god of his belly,

out of which go filth and stench.

likinge. þet mid þe is þe welle of lyue. þet is þe welle euelestinde / þet alneway kuel¹ / and fayly ne may. þet is god zelf / þet is welle of liue / and sterue ne may. huerof arist / and geþ down aboue alle þe halzen. þet byeþ / and ssolle bi ine paradis / a ulod of blisse / of lost / and of pais. zuo grat / þet alle þo þet þerof drinkeþ : hi byeþ dronke. þet is þet pays and þe blissinge þet ssel by ine þe wordle þet is cominde hire uor to wyne / and habbe / me ssel libbe sobrelliche ine þise wordle. ase zayþ saynt austin. Vor non ne dringþ of þise stremes of pais : þet ne is dronke of þe plente of blisse : þet ne lokeþ sobreté. þet is þe uirtue þet þe yefþe of wysdom zet ine herte / aye þe tomochehede of glotunye. Vor wysdom tekþ sobreté / ase salomon zayþ. Sobreté is a traw wel precious. uor hit lokeþ þe helpe of þe zaule and of þe bodie ase zayþ þe writinge. Of glotonye of mete and of drinke to moche : comeþ uele greate ziknesses. and ofte þe dyap. Vor be to moche drinke and ethe : sterfþ moche uolk / and þe dyap his nimþ sodaynliche / ase me nimþ þane viss by þe cheake. þet is to zigge / þe morsel ine þe mouþe.

þise uirtue me ssel loky toppe alle þinges. uor þe guodes þet hi deþ to þan : þet his wel lokeþ. Verst / sobrete lokeþ be skele / and to þe onderstandinge hire uridom / þet dronkenesse hire be-nymþ. Vor þe ilke þet is dronke / is zuo y-nome of wyn : þet he lyst skele / and onderstandinge / and is ase adrayngt ine wyin. and huazne he wenþ drinke þet wyn : þet wyn dryngþ him. þe oþer guod þet sobreté makeþ is þet hi deliureþ þane man of to uoul þreldom. þet is of þe þreldome of þe wombe. Vor þe glotoun / and þe to moche nimere of metes : makeþ of hare womben hare god. ase zayþ zaynte paul. Vorzoþe moche he him onworþeþ : þet serueþ to ane zuiche uoule lhorde / ase to his wombe. huerof ne may go out : bote uelþe and stench. Ac sobreté lokeþ man ine his lhordssip. uor

¹ For kuelþ.

þe gost ssel by lhord ouer þet body. and þet body ssel
 serui to þe goste. þe þridde guod þet sobreté maked
 is þet hi loki þe gate of þe castele aye þane ost of þe
 dyeule. þet is þe mouþ þet is þe mayster gate of þe
 castele of þe herte / þet þe dyeuel asayleþ ase moche
 ase he may. Ac sobreté him werþ þe gate / þet is þe
 mouþ. And huanne þe gate of þe mouþe is open: þe
 gest of zenne geþ in liȝliche / and uor naȝt he viȝt ayen
 þe oþre zennes / þet naȝt wyphalt his tonge. Huo þet
 heþ þise uirtue: he heþ of his bodye þe lhordssip.
 Alsuo ase me ouercomp þet hors bi þe bridle. sobrete
 heþ þe uerste batayle ine þe ost of uirtues / and lokeþ
 and wereþ þe oþre uirtues. þanne þe dyeuel uondede
 uerst / ase be þe mouþe / of oure lhorde þo he him
 zede / þet he ssolde maki of stones bread. Alsuo he
 asaylede þane uerste man be þe mouþe / and him ouer-
 com. uor he him openede þe gate of his castele / þo he
 him consentede to þe uondinge. To loki sobrete ous
 tekþ / kende. writinge. an alle sseppþe. kende / þet
 amang þe bestes / man heþ þane leste mouþ be þe
 bodie. Efter man to þe oþre lemes y-dobled / ase þe
 eȝen / [and] earen / ac—he ne heþ bote enne mouþ. Ine
 þet ous tekþ kende / þet me ssel ethe lite / and drinke
 lite. uor kende is mid lite y-payd. and be to moche
 of mete / is ofte y-ueld down. þe writinge ous tekþ
 sobreté. ine uele manyeres / and be manye uorbysnes /
 ase moȝe ysi / þo þet conneþ þe writinge onderstonde /
 an þo þet zyȝeþ þe liues of halȝen. Efterward / alle
 sseppþes techēþ sobreté. uor ine alle sseppþes / heþ god
 yȝet riȝte mesure / ase zayþ salomon ine þe holy writ-
 inge. Sobreté ne is oþer þing þanne to loki riȝte
 mesure. þet alneway halt þane middel ine to moche:
 and to lite. be þan þet scele a-liȝt be grace tekþ. Vor
 ine þise timliche guodes / þet / þet is to moche to
 onen: is to lite to anopren / and þet / þet is to moche
 to ane poure manne: to ane riche manne hit were ofte-

The spirit should
 be lord over the
 body.

[Fol. 77. a.]

The mouth is the
 master-gate of the
 castle of the heart.

Sobriety is first
 assailed in the
 host of virtues.

The devil tempted
 our Lord first by
 the mouth.

Man hath some
 limbs doubled,
 but he has only
 one mouth.

All creatures
 teach us sobriety.

Sobriety is a mean
 between too much
 and too little.

Even in fastings,
watchings, &c.,
sobriety must be
exercised.

The virtue of
temperance must
be observed in all
virtues,

for it moderates
all the thoughts,
wills, and desires
of the body.

The end of all
virtues is that the
heart and body
"be well ordained
to God,"

and be withdrawn
from the love of
this world.

[Fol. 78. a.]

The love of God
sets the heart in
peace.

Our Lord saith,
"Thou shalt be in
travail in this
world, but in me
shalt thou find
rest."

zipes to lite. Ac sobreté and temperance / zet ouer-al
mesure. Alsuo ine gostliche gnodes : ase ine uestinges /
ine wakiinges / ine dissiplines / and ine opre dedes of
uirtue / þet byeþ y-do uor god / an uor note of þe
zaule : zet mesure. zuyche ase scele acseþ. þe uirtue
of temperance and of sobreté. þe ilke uirtues lokeþ
mesure sceluolle. nazt onlepiliche ine mete and ine
drinke : ac in alle uirtues. ase zay[þ] saynt bernard.
Vor þise uirtue zet alle þe þoztes. alle þe willes. alle þe
steriynge of þe herte. and alle þe wyttes of þe bodye /
outnime þe lhordssip of rihte scele. ase zayþ tullius þe
wyse. zuo þet a lihte scele be þe yeffe of wysdome /
halt ine pese þe lhordssip of þe herte / and of þe bodie.
and þet is þe ende and þe onderstondinge of alle
uirtues þet þe herte and þet body by wel y-ordayned to
god. zuo þet god onlepiliche by hez lhord. ine zuyche
manere þet al by ine his bozsamnesse al þet he heþ ine
þe regne of bodye and of þe zaule. and þet makeþ
sobre loue of god. þet zet of al / þe herte in-to þe wille
of god. þanne zaynt austin zayþ. þet þe uirtue of
temperance and of sobrete / is alone þet is ylokod to
god y-hollyche wyþ-oute corrupcion. and ous wyþ-
drazþ uram þe loue of hier beneþe. þet is þe loue of
þise wordle / þet troubleþ þe herte of man / and hise
zet ine zorþe. and him benimþ rihtuolle knaulechinge of
god / and of him-zelue. Alsuo ase me ne zizþ nazt
brihtliche ine þe wetere ystered. Ac þe loue of god /
þet is wel y-clensed of alle erþliche loue / and of alle
ulessliche willes zet þe herte ine pais. Vor hi him dep
and zet ine his ozene stede. þet is ine gode. þer he him
restep. þer he is in pais. ne ne heþ blisse / ne reste :
bote þer. þanne zayþ oure lhord ine his spelle. 'þou
sselt by ine trauayl ine þise wordle. ac ine me þou
sselt vinde reste.' And saynt austin zede. 'Lhord :
min herte ne may by ine pais : alhuet hi restep ine
þe.' þe ilke loue ne wext nazt of erþe / ne of mares.

Of þise wordle. Ac hy comþ doun of þe heȝe roche
 hueroppe hi ys yzet and y-mad þe greate cite of
 paradys / and þe cite of holi cherche. þet is Iesu
 crist / ope huam byeþ y-set and ymad uestliche be
 guode bileaue. þe stronge casteles. þet byeþ þe herten
 of guode men. Of þo heȝe roche comþ doun þe welle
 of loue ine herte þet is wel y-clenzed uor þe loue of þe
 wordle. þe ilke welle is zuo clier and zuo y-zendred /
 þet þe herte hire y-knaup / and y-ziþ hire zelue and
 hire makiere. alsuo ase me yziþ ine ane uayre welle
 wel yzendred. ope þo welle þe herte restep efter þe
 trauayl of guode workes / ase we redeþ of Iesu crist
 oure lhord. þet þo he hedde zuo moche y-guo þet he
 wes al weri / he him zette and restede ope þe welle. þe
 ilke welle boue þet guode herte / he þet him wille
 berȝe / him restep is þe loue of god. þe ilke welle is
 zuo zuete and of zuo guod smac : þet þe ilke þet þerof
 dringþ / uoryet alle opre zuetnesses and opre smakkes.
 þe ilke welle ne uelþ naȝt þane fauc ne þe erþe / ne
 þane merss of þise wordle / and þeruore hy is zuete and
 of guod smac to drinke. uor ase moche ase þe welle
 yuelþ lesse of þe erþe : zuo moche hi is þo holer and
 þe betere of to drinke. þet is þe welle of wytte and of
 wysdome. uor þe ilke þet þerof dringþ / he knaup wyt
 and wysdom and velþ / and smackep þe greate zuet-
 nesse þet is ine god / and þet is þe heȝeste wyt of
 man : wel to knawe his sseppere / and him louie mid
 al his herte. Vor wypoute þise filosofie / alle opre
 wyttes ys folȝe.

This love cometh
 down from the
 high rock (Jesus
 Christ).

Of this rock
 cometh the well
 of love into the
 heart.

By that well the
 heart resteth
 after its labour of
 good works.

This well is sweet
 and delicious.

It is pure and un-
 defiled,

and wholesome to
 drink.

It is the well of
 wit and of
 wisdom,
 and whoso
 drinketh thereof
 knoweth wit and
 wisdom.

Zuych wyt zet þe holy gost ine herte / þanne he
 him yefþ þane yefþe of wisdom / þet is herte of gost-
 liche blisse / and hire adraynkþ / and makeþ him
 dronke of holy loue. Huet wyt is þet / þet þe holy
 gost zet in-to þe herte wel y-clenzed : þet ich habbe
 hier be-uore y-ssewed / huer þet is spek of þe wyttes of
 þe zaule / ate ginninge of þe draȝþe of uirtue. and þer-

Such wit the
 Holy Ghost
 giveth,

and setteth it in
 the heart,

to make it sober,
meek, and patient.

None may live in
this world with-
out "some
fighting of tempt-
ation."

[Fol. 79. a.]

The good heart,
when it hath
well fought,
returns to itself
and resteth in
God.

uore ich paci þe ssortlaker. þet gostliche wyt þet comp
of stedeuest loue of god. makeþ þe herte sobre / and
zofte / and alle þinges a-mesureþ / zuo þet þe herte þet
is ine zuich stat is ine payse / ase hi may by ine þise
dyadliche liue. Vor ine þise wordle / non ne may
libbe wyþ-oute torment / and wyþ-oute zome viztinge
of temptacion. þet god zent ofte uor to uondi his
knyztes. and uor þan þet hi conne usy of armes of
uirtue. uor operlaker hi ne moze by guode knyztes.
þanne me couþe maky þe tornoymens ine time of pays.
Ac huanne þe guode knyzt het ouercome þet tornoy-
ment: he went ayen to his house. þer he him restep
al in eyse. Alsuo dep þe guode herte huanne hi heþ
wel yuozte and heþ ouercome þet tornenoyment of
uondinges: ha comp ayen to him-zelue / and him
restep ine god. þet him confortep efter þe trauayl / zuo
þet he þer uoryet al his trauayl. and ne þengþ bote of
god. huer he uint al þet he wilneþ. þet is þet frut þet
þe traw of sobreté berþ / þet comp of þe yefþe of wys-
dom / ase ich habbe aboue yzed.

Of the steps of
sobriety.

OF ÞE STAPES OF SOBRETÉ.

Moderation shall
be observed in
five things.

Ase ich habbe aboue yssewed / sobreté ne is oper
þing / bote to loky rizte mesure ine alle þinges. Ac
specialliche: ine vyf þinges me ssel loki mesure. þet
byep alsuo ase zeue stapes huerby wext and profiteþ þet
traw of sobreté.

1. Set bounds to
the understanding
and to belief.

Those overstep
moderation who
are unbelievers,

[¹ *misbylefinde* ?]

and measure be-
lief by their un-
derstandings.

þe uerste stape of sobreté is / þet me zette mesure in
his onderstondinge. spacialliche to þe articles and to þe
poyns of þe beleaue. þe ilke ouergeþ mesure / þet wyle
zeche kendelich skele / ine þan þet is aboue onderstond-
inge / ase doþ þe bougres / and þe misbylefde.¹ þet
wyllep mesuri þe beleaue be hare onderstondinge. ac hi
ssolden mesuri hire onderstondinge and hare skele to þe
mesure of þe beleaue / þet god ous heþ y-yeue. And
salomon zayde to his zone. 'Vayre zone / do in-to pine

wytte mesure.' þet is to zigge / þet þou ne bi naȝt / of
 zuo oȝene wytte / ne naȝt zuo ypiȝt in þine ouerweninge :
 þet þou ne flechchi / uor to leue to guod red. and þet
 þou ne lete þin oȝene wyt / uor to bouȝe to þe wyser
 þanne þou. And specialliche to þe articles of þe beleaue
 me ssel lete his oȝene wyt / and his onderstondinge
 flechchi / and zette ine þreldom of þe beleaue / ase zayþ
 zayte paul. naȝt uor to apeluchier ne zeche kendelich
 scele. huer he non ne heþ / ase doþ þe bysye / oþer þe
 malancolien / þet byeþ ylich þan þet zekȝ¹ þe crammeles
 ine þe russoles. oþer þan þet zekþ þet uel ine þe aye /
 oþer þane knotte ine þe resse.

Man should not
 be overweening
 and self-confi-
 dent.

He should set his
 understanding in
 thraldom to belief.

þe oþer stape is / þet me zette mesure ine þe loste
 and mid þe likinge of þe wille / þet me ne him ne aslaky
 naȝt to moche þane bridel to yerne to lostes of þe ulesse /
 ne to þe couaytise of þise wordle. þanne þe wyse zayþ
 ine þe writ[i]nge. 'Ne uolȝe naȝt he zayþ þe couaitises ne
 þe wynninges of þine herte / and þe miswende to do þi
 wyl / þet þou hit ne uoluelle naȝt. and yeld guod skele.
 uor yef þou dest to þine herte his wyl : þou makest
 blisse to þine vyendes / þet byeþ þe dyeulen of helle.'
 uor alsuo ase þe ilke þet makeþ blisse to his uo / ayens
 huam he ssel uizte / huanne he him yelt to him ouer-
 come. Yef he him yelt ouercome to þe dyeule þet him
 consenteþ to his euele wynninges. þeruore zayþ zayte
 peter þe apostel. 'ich you helsny / þet ye ase oncoupe /
 and pilgrimes / you loki uram wilninges.' þe ilke þet
 is pilgrim and ine oncoupe contraye / huer byeþ manye
 þyeues an robberes þet aspieþ þe pilgrims / and wayteþ
 þe wayes : ham lokeþ moche / þet hi ne ualle ine þe
 honden of þyeues. and þengþ hou he may guo zikerliche.
 Alle þe guode men ine þise wordle byeþ oncoupe and
 pilgrims. Hi byeþ oncoupe / uor hi byeþ oute of hare
 contraye. þet is paradys. þet is þe contraye / and heritage
 to guode men. Hi ne byeþ þenchinde bote uor to
 uoluelle hire iornayes / al huet hi comeþ to hare eritage /

2. Set measure in
 the lust and the
 pleasure of the
 will.

Follow not the
 covetousness of
 thine heart.

Consent not to
 the devil's sugges-
 tions.

Travellers in a
 strange country
 are watchful for
 fear of thieves.
 [Fol. 79. b.]

All good men are
 like pilgrims.

Their heritage is
 paradise.

¹ For zekþ.

The good pilgrims choose good society,

and pursue their journey by right belief and true love.

They have no fear of thieves, that is, the devil and his host.

Belief and love of God lead them aright.

The heart is like a bird,

and is liable to fly into the snare.

Control thy will, as one doth the horse with a bridle.

Sobriety is the bridle.

Observe moderation in words.

þet is þe cité of paradis / þet þe guode pilgrims zeeheþ. ase zayþ zaynte paul. þet ne habbeþ / ne nolleþ habbe þe eritage hier in þise wordle. Zuyche pilgrims þet willeþ guo zikerliche : hi doþ ham ofte ine guode uelazrede / and ine zikere guoinge. þe guode uelazrede þet let zikerliche and guoþ riȝtuolliche / is byleauē / and loue. beleauē / let þane way to pilgrimes. ac loue his berþ. zuo þet þe way ham greueþ lite / oþer naȝt. Huo þet heþ zuyche uelazrede : he ne heþ of þyues none drede þet wayteþ þe wayes. þet byeþ dyeulen þet nimeþ and robbeþ alle þo / þet none zuiche uelazrede ne habbeþ. þet byeþ þo þet wylleþ do hyere / hyre lostes : þet ham doþ in-to þe honden / and in-to þe grines of þe dyeule. Beleauē / and loue of god. of-halt þe herte / and his wyþdraȝt uram queade þoȝtes / and uram fole¹ lostes / þet he ne consenti. Alsuo ase me ofhalt þane uoȝel be þe ges / þet he ne vly to his wyllē. þe herte is ase is þe uoȝel þet wolde vly to his wyllē / and bote hy by ofhealde / be þe ges of beleauē / and of loue / hy ulyȝþ perilousliche / zuo þet hy hyre spilþ / and ualþ ofte into þe grines / of þe uoȝelere of helle. þet is þe dyeuel / þet ne wylneþ / bote to nime þane uoȝel. þeruore þe guode man and þe wyse / wyþdraȝeþ hare wyl / and hare lostes / and hare þoȝtes. be temperance and be sobreté Huerof senekes zayþ. ‘yef þou louest to bi sobre / and atempre : wyþscore / and wyþdraȝ þine willes / and zete ane brydel to þine couaytises.’ Vor alsuo ase me wyþhalt þet hors by þe bridle þet hit ne guo naȝt to his wille : alsuo me ssel ofhyealde þe herte be þe bridle of sobreté / þet hy ne yeue hire naȝt / to þe wille ne to þe couaytise of þise wordle.

þe þridde stape of sobreté is / zette and loki measure ine wordes. Huerof salomon zayþ. þet ‘þe wyse / and þe wel ytoȝte / tempreþ / and mesureþ his wordes.’ And saynt Ierome zayþ. þet ‘mid ueawe wordes / is y-

¹ MS. *fole*

proued mannes lyf.' þet is to zigge. by þe wordes me
 may yknaue þe folyes / and þe wyttes of men. Vor
 ase me knaup þet zuin be þe tonge / yef hit ys hol.
 oþer aboue y-zawe. and þeruore zayþ þe wyse ine þe
 writinge. þet 'þe wordes of þe wyse byeþ y-weze ine þe
 waye.' þet is to zigge / þet þe wyse ssel zuo weze þe
 wordes ine þe waye of skele and of discrecion þet þer ne
 by naȝt to wyþ-nymene. Zome uolk byeþ / þet ne moze
 ham naȝt hyalde stille / ne naȝt ham loki / þet hi ne zigge /
 by hit zop by hit leazinge. þet byeþ ase þe melle wyþ-
 outh sculse. þet alne-way went be þe yernynge of þe
 wetere. Vor hi habbeþ ase uele wordes / ase þer comp
 of weter to þe melle. Ac þe wise zetteþ þe sculse of
 discrecion / uor to ofhealde þet weter of fole wordes.
 and to uele. þet hi ne guo be þe melle of þe tonge. þer-
 uore zayþ þe wyse ine þe writinge. 'Yziȝ þet weter
 yerne.' þet is to zigge: hald þine wordes ine þe sculse
 of discrecion. uor ase zayþ salomon. 'Huo þet let guo
 þet weter to his wille: he is ofte cause of strif / and of
 chidinge / and of manie kuedes / þet comeþ of kuede
 tonge.' ase ich habbe be-uore yzed / ine þe chapitele of
 uices. huer ich spek of þe zenne of þe tonge. þeruore
 zayþ wel þe wyse ine þe writinge. 'do' zayþ he / þine
 wordes ine waye / and guod bridel ine þine mouþe. and
 nim hede þet þou ne ualle be þine tonge be-uore þine
 uo: þet þe asspieþ.' An-oþer zayþ. 'Do to þine mouþe /
 a dore and a loc. and to þine wordes: a waye and a
 yok.' Huo þet ne weȝþ his wordes ine þe waye of discre-
 cion. and ne ofhalt naȝt his tonge by þe bridle of skele.
 þet ssel ofhyealde þe tonge of kuede wordes. he ualþ
 liztliche ine þe honden of his uon. þet byeþ þe dyeulen /
 þet oueral ous aspief / and wayteþ. Huanne þe von /
 þet vizteþ aye þane castel / yef hi vyndeþ þe gate oppe :
 hi guoþ in liztliche. alsuo þe dyeuel þet uizt wyþ þane
 castel of þe herte / huanne he uint þe gate oppe / þet
 is þe mouþ / he nimþ liztliche þane castel. And þeruore

By words may
 the follies and
 wisdom of man be
 known.

Weigh thy word
 in the balance of
 discretion.

The wise setteth
 the sluice of dis-
 cretion to keep
 back the water of
 foolish words.
 [Fol. 80. a.]

Many evils come of
 the evil tongue.

Take heed that
 thou fall not by
 thy tongue.

Put a door and
 a lock to thy
 mouth.

He who does not
 guard his tongue
 will fall into the
 power of his foe,
 the devil.

The mouth is the
 gate of the heart.

Reason has the
care of the mouth.

Weigh well thy
words ere they be
spoken.

Be not afraid to
speak the truth,

and speak not
falsely to please
any one.

Be careful of what
thou hearest.

If thou hearest
with pleasure
evil of another,
thou art privy to
the sin of the
slanderer.

Great men should
consider well what
they hear.

Flatterers and
liars are plentiful,

but few are truth-
ful.

[Fol. 80. b.]

Great men have
great need of
those who
fearlessly speak
the truth.

zayde dauip ine þe sautere. 'Ich sette guode lokinge to þe mouþe aye mine yuo' / þet is þe dyeuel. þe lokinge of þe mouþe / þet is skele and discrecion. þet exameneþ þe wordes / erþan hi guo out ate moþe. þis is þe vizt huerof þe wyse spekeþ ase ich habbe aboue yzed / huer me ssel weze þet word er hit by yzed. And þou sselt ywyte / þet zoþnesse halt þise rihtuolle waye. Vor zoþnesse acordeþ þe onderstondinge of þe herte: and þet word of þe mouþe / as hit is ine þe herte. þis waye ne ssel hongy of þis half / ne of yend half / ariþthalf ne alefthalf. þet uor none priuē loue of man ne of wyfman. ne uor timlich note. ne uor hate of oþren: me ne ssel lete to zigge zoþ / huer þet me ssel / and huanne hit is nyed. ne leazinges / ne ualsnesse / me ne ssel zigge uor nenne man.

Ase me ssel loki mesure ine wordes: alsuo me ssel loki mesure ine hyerþe. Vor asewel me may zenezý ine kuede hyerþe: ase ine kueade speche. þanne þe ilke þet yhyerþ bleþeliche missigge oþren: ys partiner / and uelaze of þe zenne of þan þet he yherþ. þet non ne wolde zigge bleþeliche kuead of oþren / nameliche to uore greate men / bote yef he ne wende þet hit likede to him þet hit hyerþ. þanne an halzen zayþ. þet 'non ne ssolde by misziggere: bote þer by an hyerere.' þer uore salomon zayþ. 'þe norþene wynd / to-þraup þe raynes / and þe lourinde chiere: þe wordes of þe missiggere.' þise greate men hi ssolden wel ham loki / þet hi hiereþ / and þet hi leueþ. þet hi vindeþ veawe / þet zoþ ham zigge. Ac ulatours / and lyezeres / byeþ to grat cheap ine hare cort. þe meste dierþe þet is aboute ham / is of zoþnesse / an of trewþe. and þeruore hi byeþ ofte y-giled. þet hi yhereþ bleþeliche / and y-leueþ liztliche þet me ham zayþ and þet ham likeþ. Senekes zayþ. þet þer ne lackeþ to greate lhordes: bote zoþ ziggere. Vor hi habbeþ lyezeres / and vlatours: to greate cheape. and veawe zoþ ziggere. Me ssel habbe

þe earen opene / uor to hyere bleþeliche / þe guode
 wordes / þet byeþ worþ to þe help of zaule. and y-sset : Shut thy ears to
foul words.
 to fole wordes / ydele / and queade. þet moȝe do harm :
 and ne moȝe do guod. þeruore þe wyse zayþ ine þe
 writinge. ‘Stoppe þine earen mid þornes. and ne hyer
 naȝt þe queade tongen.’ þe queade tonge : is tonge of Stop them with
thorns,
 eddre of helle / þet þe misziggeres bereþ. and enuenimeþ
 þo þet his y-hereth. Aye zuyche tongen me ssel stoppi
 þe yeren mid þornes / mid þe drede of oure lorde / that is, with the
fear of the Lord.
 oþer mid þe þornes huermide god wes y-corouned / uor
 beþenchinge of his passion : Vor huo þet heþ drede of For who that
feareth God will
not listen to liars
and flatterers.
 god / and beþenchinge of his passion : he nolde naȝt
 bleþeliche y-hyere þe misziggeres / ne flatours / ne fole
 wordes / ne lodliche. In anopre manere me may on-
 derstonde þis word. ‘Stoppe þine yeren mid þornes.’
 þe þornes þet prikiþ / be-tokneþ harde wordes and
 prekiinde / heruore me ssel wyþnime þe missiggeres /
 and maki his stille and ssewy semblont þet me ne hierþ
 his naȝt bleþeliche. þer is an eddre þet is y-hote ine The asp closeth
one ear with earth
and the other
with its tail, so
that she may not,
hear the charmer
 latin / aspis. þet is of zuiche kende / þet hi stoppeþ þet
 on eare mid erþe / and þet oþer mid hare tayle / þet hi
 ne yhere þane charmere. þe ilke eddre ous tekþ a wel
 grat wyt / þet we ne hyere naȝt þane charmere / þet is
 þe lyeȝere / and þe flatour. þet ofte be-charmeþ þe riche
 men. Ac huo þet stoppeþ þet on eare mid erþe / and
 þet oþer mid þe tayle : he ne ssolde habbe none hede to
 bi be-charmed of þe dyeule / ne of kueade tongen.
 þe ilke stoppeþ þet on eare mid erþe : þet þengþ þet he
 is of erþe / and to erþe ssel come. and zuo þenche his
 uoulhede and his ziknesse. hueruore he him ssel moche
 mildi : and naȝt him praysy. þet oþer eare stoppi mid
 þe tayle / uor to beþenche of þe dyabe / þet him ssel
 wel atonie. Huo þet þus coupe stoppi his earen : ¹
 he nolde yhyere bleþeliche zigge / ne recordi þing : þet
 ssolde misliki god. and zuo ssolde he by wel ytempred /

and of death that
will overtake him.
He who thinketh
of these things
will not listen to
words displeasing
to God.

¹ MS. *eraren*

and amesured ine hyerþe and ine lhestinge. And þis is þe uerþe stape of sobrete.

Moderation in clothing is the fifth step of Sobriety.
Excess is a sin,

wherefore we should not be over busy in adorning ourselves.

He is a fool and childish that is proud of his clothing.

The wearing of clothes comes of the sin of our first parents.
[Fol. 81. a.]

Under fair robes there is often a dead soul.

Nature has adorned the peacock and cock.

Nature has given man no clothes of which to be proud.

St. Paul says that women shall adorn themselves with propriety.

Many poor might be sustained by the number of robes that one woman wears in a year,

þe uifte stape is / to loki mesure of ssredinge of preciouise robes / huerof me paseþ moche mesure / and makeþ moche ouerdoinges. and þeruore þet ouerdede is grat zenne / and ueleziþe ancheson to zene ine opren. þeruore me ssel ine zuyche þinges loky mesure. Vor hit is to moche of pris and to moche bysy agrayþinge ne were zenne: oure lhord ne speke naȝt zuo stefliche ine his spelle a-ye þe queade riche / þet zuo ofte ham ssredeþ / ase of to zofte bougeren and of to moche of pris pourpre. O. moche is he fol uorzoþe / and child of wytte / þet of his ssredinge is proud. Me ssolde him wel hycalde fol: þet were proud to bere þe ssredinge. þet ne ssolde by bote a tokne. and a beþenchinge of þe ssame of his uader / and of his ozene. þes wone of robes nes yuounde / bote uor þe zenne of oure uerste uader uor to wry his confusion / and oure. Huanne me yziþ bere ane byrie. þet is tokne þet þer is wyþine a dyad. alsuo hit y-uallþ ofte / þet onder þe uayre robes: is þe zaule dyad be zenne / and nameliche ine þan þet ham gledyeþ / and predeþ. Yef þe pokoc him prette uor his uayre tayle. and þe coc uor his kombe / hit ne is no wonder þet kende ham heþ y-yeue / an doþ be hare kende. Ac man oper wyfman / þet heþ wyt and skele / and wot wel þet kende ne heþ naȝt y-yeue him þet ilke ssroud / he ne ssel him naȝt prede: of þe ssredinge of his bodye. ne of þe quayntises of his heuede. þeruore zayþ þe wyse ine þe writinge. ‘ne gleder þe naȝt ine uayr ssroud.’ And zaynte paul þus zay[þ]. þet þe wyfmen hi ssolle ham agrayþi: mid sobreté. þet is to zigge: be mesure / and wyþ-oute ouerdoinge / be þe ståt / þet þe wyfman acseþ. Vor zoþe þet ne is naȝt wyþ-oute ouerdoinge. þet on wyfman. ssel habbe uor hare body ine one yere zuo uele payre of robes / and of diuerse maneres / huerof manye poure miȝten by

sostened of þan þet is to moche. Ac yet eft yef hi weren ate ende y-yeue uor godes loue to þe poure: yet hit were zomping. ac hi byeþ ofte y-yeue to rybaus þet is wel grat zenne. þeruore me ssel loki mesure ine zuyche þinge be þe stat þet þe persone acseþ ase ich habbe aboue y-zed.

but they are not given to the poor, but to the dissolute.

þe zixte stape of temperance and of sobreté is / þet ech loki guode mesure ine his contenonce / and ine his beringe. þanne seneke zayþ. Yef þou art sobre and atempred / nim þou hede þet þe steriynges of þine herte ne of þine bodye / ne by uoule ne onworþi. Vor of þe discordance of þe herte: comp þe discordance of þe bodie. Zome þer byeþ zuo childhedi / and of zuo nice manere / þet hi makeþ ham-zelue to by hyealde foles. Hit becomþ wel to man of worssipe / and þet is ine grat stat / þet he by wel ordine / and amesured ine alle his dedes / and in alle his zigginges. and of uayre contenonce to-uore alle men / zuo þet non ne moȝe nime of him kueade uorbisne / ne þet he ne by yhealde uor fol / ne uor child. Vor ase zayþ a grat filosofe. ‘child of elde. child of wytte. and child of þeawes: byeþ al on.’ þe writinge zayþ þet / þet child of an hondred year: ssel by acorsed. þet is to zigge. þet þe ilke þet heþ uolle elde / and leueþ ase a child: ssel by acorsed of god. þanne zaynte paul zayde of him-zelue. ‘þo ich wes child: ich dede ase a child. ich þoȝte ase a child. ac zepþe ich com to elde of uol man: ich uo[r]let] alle mine childhedes.’ Vor huo þet halt ald man uor child: he hine halt uor fol. And þeruore zayþ zaynte paul. ‘Ne by naȝt child of wytte. ac ine queadnesse by lite.’ Nou is hit þanne guod þing and oneste. profitable / and worþssipuol to man an to wyf-man / and nameliche to grat uolk. þet hi loki sceluolle mesure / ine berynge / ine contenonce / and þet hi by wel ordyne oueral. and be-uore god / and be-uore þe uolke. And þis is þe zixte stape of þise trawe.

The sixth step of Temperance is moderation in conduct.

Take heed that the feelings of thine heart be not foul or silly.

Some are so childish that they cause themselves to be looked upon as fools.

Look that thy deeds be well ordered, so that none be ‘led astray by thy example.’

The child of an hundred years shall be accursed, for he is of age and yet is childish.

He who holdeth an old man a child holdeth him a fool.

Every man and woman shall so order their conduct that it be decorous, profitable, and honourable before God and man.

Observe moderation in meat and drink.

[Fol. 81. b.]

Load not the heart with the sins of gluttony and drunkenness.

Of excess in meats and drinks see the chapter where the sin of gluttony is treated of.

Moderation is to be found in all virtues.

It is a fair tree, and its fruit is peace of heart.

He who hath this virtue is joined to God by charity, and is separated from the world's love,

and so he resteth in God and hath comfort and bliss.

Such bliss setteth the Holy Ghost in the heart that is perfected by the virtue of sobriety.

þe zeuend stape is / to loki mesure ine mete and ine drinke. Vor ouerdede of mete and of drinke: dep moche harm ine bodie and ine zaule. ase ich habbe beuore yzed. þeruore zayþ oure lhord ine his spelle 'Nimeþ ye hede / þet youre herten / ne by ygreued / ne y-charged of glotounie / ne of dronkehede.' þet is to zigge / þet þou ne do ouerdoinge of mete and of drinke. Sobreté lokeþ mesure ine mete and ine drinke. þet me ne maki ouerdoinge. Of þe ouerdoinges þet me wes ywoned to do ine drinke and ine mete / ich habbe yno3 yspeke ine þe dra3pe of vices huanne þet ich spek of þe zenne of glotunie / to huam þis uirtue huerof ich habbe yspeke / zuo is *contrarie* specialliche. and þeruore ich nelle nanmore hyer speke.

Nou hest þou y-herd þe stapes huerbi þis traw wext and noteþ. and yef þou wylt ywyte þe bozes of þise trawe: yzi3 alle þe opre uirtues / þet byeþ y-contyent ine þis boc. and þou sselt yuinde oueral þise uirtu. Vor ase ich habbe yzed aboue / and y-ssewed. þis uirtue zet mesure in alle þe uirtues. hueruore ich zigge / þet alle þe opre uirtues byeþ bozes of þise. uor hy hyre sseweþ ine alle þe opre bozes. þet traw berþ wel uayr frut. and wel smakinde. þet is pais of herte. ase ich habbe aboue yzed. Vor huo þet heþ þise uirtue: he heþ þe herte zuo to-deld uram þe loue of þe wordle / and zuo y-yoyned to god be charite. þet is charite: loue of god. Vor hi zet alle opre þinges ine uoryetinge þet ne byeþ nazt ydyzt to god. And ine zuyche manyre þe herte him restep ine god. huer hi heþ al hire confort. hire blisse / and hire lost. þet paseþ alle opre lostes. Zuych comfort / zuych lost / set þe holy gost ine herte þet is uolmad ine þe uirtue of sobreté / þet comp of þe yefþe of wysdome / ase ich habbe aboue yzed. Vorzoþe he þet zuich pays of herte mizte habbe / and yuele: he ssolde him resti ine god / þet is þe ende / and þe uoluellinge / and þe somme of

his wylninges. he ssolde bi y-blissed ine pise wordle /
 and ine þe oþre. uor he ssolde habbe y-wonne þe ilke
 blissinge þet god behat ine his spelle to ham þet pise
 ilke pais lokede wyþ-oute brekinge. uor he zayþ þet hi
 byeþ yblissed þe paysible. uor hi ssolle by y-cleped
 godes zones. þo byeþ payzible / þet zayþ zaint austin /
 þet alle þe steriinges of þe herte ordayneþ / and zetteþ
 onder þe lhordssipe of rihte scele and of þe goste. þos
 byeþ ariht y-cleped children / uor hi bereþ þe anlik-
 nesse of hire uader / þet is þe god of loue and of pais.
 aze zayþ zainte paul. and þanne pays and loue of god /
 is þet þing þet mest makeþ man anlikni to god. and þe
 con[t]rarie to þe dyeule þet is godes uo. Efterward /
 hi byeþ y-cleped godes zones. uor hi uolzeþ al hare
 uader wel nier þanne eni oþer. uor pays / and loue / him
 uolzeþ more nyer : þanne eni oþer uirtue. Efterward /
 hi doþ þe workes of hire uader. uor god ne com in-to
 pise wordle / bote to maki pays be-tuene god and man.
 be-tuene man and angle. be-tue[ne] man and himzelue.
 þanne þo he wes ybore / þe angles zonge uor þet pays
 þet god hedde y-broht in-to erþe. and þeruore þet þe
 uolk ne ssolde zeche bote pays. þeruore þanne þet hi
 byeþ godes zones / hi byeþ yblissed ine pise wordle
 be special grace. Ac þe ilke blissinge ssel by uolmad
 huanne hi ssolle by ine payzible possession of þe
 eritage of hire uader / þet is of þe riche of heuene huer
 hi ssolle by ine zikere pays. ine pese uoldo / huer alle
 lostes ssolle by uoluelde. huer ne may by no kuead /
 ne zorþe / ne aduerseté / ne defaute. ac abundance /
 and plenté of alle guode. blisse and ioie wyþ-oute
 ende. þet ssel by pais worþssipuol / lostuol / and
 eurelestinde. Pais þet paseþ / and ouergeþ wyt. ase
 zayþ zaynte paul. And zeþþe þet hi paseþ alle wyttes :
 hi paseþ alle wordes. Vor herte non ne may þenche /
 ne mannes tonge telle : huet þing is þet pais þet god
 heþ behote his urendes. And þeruore ich ne ssolde by

The peaceable are
 blessed and are
 called God's sons.

Those are peace-
 able who control
 the emotions of
 the heart by the
 lordship of reason.

Peace and the love
 of God make man
 like God.

The peaceable
 are called God's
 sons because they
 do God's works.
 Christ came into
 the world to
 make peace with
 God and man.

[Fol. 82. a.]

God's sons are
 blessed in this
 world by special
 grace,
 but their bliss is
 perfected in
 heaven,

where is no sin,
 sorrow, or adver-
 sity,
 but blissful and
 everlasting peace.

No man's tongue
 may tell of the
 greatness of this
 bliss.

Wherefore I were
a mocker to
attempt to de-
scribe it to the
full.

bote a wlaffere ne zigge þing to þe uolle. And þeruore
ich nelle non more zigge. ac hier ich wille endi mine
matire. To þe blisse of oure lhorde / to huam by alle
worþssipe. þet ous lete wonie ine his uelaʒrede / huer
is lif eurelestinde.

This book is come
to an end,
May God his bliss
us send !

þis boc is ycome to þe ende :
Heuene blisse god ous zende. AMEN.

This book is
written in the
English of Kent
for lewd men, for
fathers and
mothers, &c.,
to keep them from
sin, so that their
consciencies maybe
undefiled.
The author's
name signifies
'Who as God,'
and may God
give him the
bread of angels
and receive his
soul when dead.
Amen.

Nou ich wille þet ye ywyte hou hit is y-went :
þet þis boc is y-write mid engliš of kent.
þis boc is y-mad uor lewede men /
Vor uader / and uor moder / and uor oþer ken /
ham uor to berʒe uram alle manyere zen /
þet ine hare inwyttte ne bleue no uoul wen.
'Huo ase god' is his name yzed /
þet þis boc made god him yeue þet bread /
of angles of heuene and þerto his red /
and onderuonge his zaule huanne þet he is dyad.
Amen.

N.B. This book
was finished in
the Eve of the
Holy Apostles
Simon and Judas,
by a brother of
the cloister of St.
Austin of Canter-
bury. in the year
of our Lord 1340.

[*pater noster.*]
Our father that
art in heaven, &c.

Ymende. þet þis boc is uolueled ine þe eue of þe
holy apostles Symon an Iudas / of ane broþer of þe
cloystre of sanynt austin of Canterberi / Ine þe yeare
of oure lhordes beringe. 1340.

Vader oure þet art ine heuenes / y-halʒed by þi
name. cominde þi riche. y-worþe þi wil / ase ine
heuene : and ine erþe. bread oure echedayes : yef ous
to day. and uorlet ous oure yeldinges : ase and we uor-
leteþ oure yelderes. and ne ous led naʒt : in-to uond-
inge. ac vri ous uram queade. zuo by hit.

[*aue Maria*]
Hail Mary !

Hayl Marie / of þonke uol. lhord by mid þe. y-
blissed þou ine wymmen. and y-blissed þet ouet of
þine wombe. zuo by hit.

[*credo.*]

Ich leue ine god / uader almiʒti. makere of heuene /

and of erþe. And ine iesu crist / his zone on-lepi /
 oure lhord. þet y-kend is / of þe holy gost. y-bore of
 Marie Mayde. y-pyned onder pouns pilate. y-nayled a
 rode. dyad. and be-bered. yede down to helle. þane
 þridde day a-ros uram þe dyade. Steaȝ to heuenes.
 zit aþe riȝt half of god þe uader al-mizti. þannes to
 comene he is / to deme þe quike / and þe dyade. Ich
 y-leue ine þe holy gost. holy cherche generalliche.
 Menneſſe of halȝen. Lesneſſe of zennes. of ulesse
 arizinge. and lyf eurelestinde. zuo by hyt.

Uor to sseawy þe lokyng of man wyþ-inne. þellyche
 ane uorbysne / oure lhord ihesu crist zayþ. 'þis uorzoþe
 ywyteþ. þet yef þe uader of þe house wyste huyche
 time þe þyef were comynde: uor-zoþe he wolde waky /
 and nolde naȝt þolye þet me dolue his hous.' Be þise
 uader of house me may onderstonde / þe wyl of skele.
 to huam be-longeþ moche mayné. þoȝtes. and his
 besteriinge. wyt. and dedes / ase wel wyþ-oute: ase
 wyþ-inne. þet is to zigge / huych mayné / to moche
 slac / and wylles uol ſſel by: bote yef þe ilke uaderes
 ſtefhede hiſe ſtrayny / and ordayny. Vor zoþe yef he
 hym a lyte of hiſ bysyhede wyþ-draȝþ: huō may zigge /
 hou þoȝtes. eȝen. earen. tonge. and alle oþre wyttes:
 becomeþ wylde. Hous. is inwyt / in huychen þe
 uader of house woneþ. þe hord of uirtues gadereþ. Vor
 huych hord: þet ilke zelue hous ne by y-dolue /
 heȝlyche he wakeþ. þer ne is naȝt on þyef: ac uele. ac
 to eche uirtue: ech vice wayteþ. þaȝles heȝlyche by
 þe þyene: is onderstonde þe dȝeuel. a-ye huam and hiſ
 kachereles / þe ilke zelue uader / þaȝles yef he ne were
 naȝt onloſti: hiſ hous mid greate ſtrengþe wolde loky.
 þe uader of þe house / ate uerſte guoinge in: he zette
 sleȝþe / to by doreward. þet y-knaup huet is to uorlete:
 and huet ys to wylny. huet uor to beſſette out of þe
 house. huet uor to onderuonge into þe house. Nixt
 þan: ha zette ſtrengþe. þet þe vyendes / þet sleȝþe zent

I believe in God
 the Father Al-
 mighty, Maker of
 heaven and earth,
 and in Jesus
 Christ, &c.

I believe in the
 Holy Ghost, &c.

[Fol. 82. b.]

[Vor to ſſake
 away heuineſſe /
 and drede: and
 lys wende / into
 loue of god.]

If the maſter of
 the houſe knew a
 thief were coming
 he would watch
 and guard hiſ
 houſe.

The Father of the
 houſe is the will
 of Reaſon, that
 hath many at-
 tendants, as
 thoughts,
 emotions, ſenſe,
 deeds.

The ſervants will
 be ſlothful unleſſ
 the maſter is
 active.

If the reaſon is
 idle, the thoughts,
 eyes, and ears
 become wild.

The Houſe is the
 Inwit, or ſpirit.

This houſe is
 undermined not
 by one thief but
 by many

The chief thief is
 the Devil, the reſt
 are hiſ catchpoles.

The Father of the
 houſe appoints
 Sleight (Prudence)
 as the door-
 keeper.

Next he appoints
 Strength to oppoſe
 the devils and
 ſupport Prudence.

Equity sits in the middle and gives to each its own gift.

At what time the thief will come one knoweth not.

Sleight lets some messengers in to give warning.

The messenger of Death demands an entrance, and claims a dead silence, and thus speaks: "I am Dread, and a reminder of Death, who is coming upon you."

[¹ *comynge* ?]

Sleight asks, "Where is Death? When shall he come?"

Dread answers, "She delays not, but is nigh at hand, and a thousand devils shall come with her, and bring great books, burning hooks, and fiery chains. In the books are written men's sins.

The hooks draw the souls out of the bodies, and with the chains are they bound and drawn into hell."

[Fol. 83. a.]

Dread says he comes from hell, which is immeasurably wide and bottomless, full of fire intolerable, and of sorrow and darkness.

to zygge / to keste out: strengþe wyþdroze. þet his uoule lostes wyþ-droze: and wyþ-zede. Riztnesse uorzope ssel zitte amydde / þet echen his ozen yefþ. Hueruore: huyche time þe þyef is comynde / me not. ac eche tyme me ssel drede. þise zuo y-dizt: nazt longe to þe wakynde þe slep of zenne benymþ. Vor al þet lyf is to waky. Zome messagyers slezþe ssel lete in. þet zome þinges moze telle / þet me may a-waki myde. þus þe messägyer of dyape acseþ inguoynge: he is onderuonge. Me him acseþ 'huo he ys. huannes he comþ. huet he heþ ysoze.' He ansuereþ. he ne may nazt zigge: bote yef þer by hezliche clom. Huych y-graunted: þus he begynþ. 'Ich am drede / and beþenchinge of dyape. and dyap comyde: ¹ ich do you to wytene.' Slezþe speeþ uor alle. and acseþ. 'And huer is nou þe ilke dyap. and huanne ssel he come?' Drede zayþ. 'Ich wot wel þet he ne abytt nazt to comene / and nyez he is. ac þane day / oper þane tyme of his comynge: ich not.' Slezþe zayþ. 'And huo ssel come myd hyre?' Drede zayþ. 'A þouzend dyeulen ssolle come mid hire. and brenge mid ham / greate bokes / and bernynde hokes / and chaynen auere.' Slezþe zayþ. 'And huet wylleþ hy do mid alle þan?' Drede zayþ. 'Ine þe bokes byeþ y-write alle þe zennen of men. and hise brengeþ / þet be ham hi moze ouercome men. of huychen þe zennes þerinne byeþ ywryte. þet byeþ to hare rizte. Hokes hi brengeþ / þet þo þet byeþ to hare rizte ouercomeþ: hire zaulen be strengþe: of þe bodye drazeþ out. and hise byndeþ mid þe chaines / and in to helle hise drazeþ.' Slezþe zayþ. 'Huannes comste? Drede zayþ. 'Vram helle. Slezþe zayþ. 'And huet is helle. and huet ysezeþe ine helle?' Drede zayþ. 'Helle is wyd / wyþ-oute metinge. dyep / wyþ-oute botme. Vol of brene on-þolyinde. Vol of stenche / wy-oute comparisoun. þer is zorze. þer is þyesternesse. þer ne is non ordre. þer is groniyng wyþ-oute ende. þer ne is

non hope of guode. non wantrokiyng of kueade. Ech
 þet þerinne is : hateþ him zelue : and alle opren. þer
 ich yzeþ alle manyere tormens. þe leste of alle / is more
 þanne alle þe pynen þet moþe by y-do ine þise wordle.
 þer is wop. and grindinge of teþ. þer me geþ uram
 chele in to greate hete of uere. and buoþe onpolyinde.
 þere alla be uere / ssolle by uorbernd. and myd
 wermes ssolle by y-wasted / and naȝt ne ssolle wasti.
 Hire wermes / ne ssolle naȝt sterue. and hare ver ne
 ssel neure by ykuenct. No rearde ne ssel þer by y-
 hyerd / bote. wo : wo. wo hy habbeþ : and wo hy
 gredeþ. þe dyeules tormentors pyneþ. and to-gydere
 hy byeþ y-pyned. ne neure ne ssel by ende of pyne :
 oþer reste. þellich is helle / an a þousand zyþe worse.
 And þis ich yzeþ ine helle / and a þousandzyþe more
 worse. þis ich com uor to zygge you.' Sleþe zayþ. 'God
 wet ssolle we do. Nou broþren and zostren y-hyreþ
 my red. and yueþ youre. Byeþ sleþe. an wakeþ ine
 youre bedes / porueynde guodes. naȝt onlyche beuore
 gode : ac be-uore alle men.' þolemmodness zayþ. 'Do
 we to worke godes nebsseft / ine ssrifte / and ine
 zalmes : glede we hym. byeþ sobre / and wakyþ /
 uor youre uo þe dyuel / ase þe lyoun brayinde geþ
 aboute þan : þet he wyle uor-zuelþe.' Strengþe zayþ.
 'Wypstondeþ hym : stronge ine byleaue. Byeþ glede
 ine god. Cloþeþ you mid godes armes. þe hauberk of
 ryȝt. þane sseld of beleaue. nymeþ þane helm of helþe.
 and þe holy gostes zuord : þet is godes word.' Ryȝ[t]nesse
 zayþ. 'Lybbe we sobreliche. ryuolliche an bonayrelyche.
 Sobrelyche : ine ous zelue. ryȝtuolliche : to oure
 emersten. bonayrelyche : to god. þet we nolleþ þet me
 do to ous zelue : ne do we hyt naȝt to opren. and þet
 we wylleþ þet me do to ous zellue : do we hit to oþre
 men. and uor zoþe þet is ryȝt.' Sleþe zayþ. 'þer is
 anoþer wyþ-oute þe gates uayr. and gled. hit þingþ þe he
 bre[n]gþ gledesne.' Ryȝ[t]nesse zayþ. 'underuongeþ hym.

There is no hope
 of good, and
 abundance of ills.

There is weeping
 and gnashing
 teeth.

The soul shall be
 tormented by the
 worm of Con-
 science.

Hell is even worse
 than all this by
 a thousand times.

Prudence says,
 "O God, what
 shall we do?"

Be watchful
 and prayerful.

Patience says,
 "Work God's
 likeness in shrift
 and in psalms."

Strength says,
 "Withstand the
 devil by belief.

Clothe you with
 God's armour."

Equity says,
 "Live soberly."

Prudence says,
 "Another messen-
 ger awaits with-
 out." Equity com-
 mands him to be
 received.

The messenger
enters and says
that he is 'Love
of everlasting life.'

He asks for silence
and peace.

Equity says that
his demand is
just.

The messenger
says that he
comes from
heaven,

and that he has
seen God as in a
mirror.

[Fol. 83. b.]
"I saw the ineffable
and indivisible
majesty of the
Holy Trinity :

the light therefrom
dazzles the eyes,
and surpasseth all
sense.

I saw Christ on
God's right hand,

and He bears the
wounds and
tokens of his
passion in his
body.

Next to Christ
I saw the Virgin
Mary,

[I godes ? or
zones ?]

who was inter-
ceding for us.

be cas he ous ssel gledye. uor þes ilke uerste : grat-
lyche he ous heþ y-mad of-dret.' Sleþþe zayþ to þe messa-
gere. 'Guo in. and huo þou art. and huannes þou
comst. and huet þou hest yzoze : zay ous.' þe mes-
sagyr zayþ. 'Ich am loue of lyue eurelestynde. an
wynlynge of þe contraye of heuene. Yef ye me wylleþ
y-here : habbeþ amang you. clom / and reste. Naȝt
uor zoþe amang gredynges and noyses : ych ne may by
yherd.' Riȝ[t]uolnesse zayþ. 'Yef we longe godes drede /
and be-þenchinge of dyape were stille : ryȝt hit is / þet
þe spekinde / wel more we by stille.' Wylningge of þe
lyue wyþ-outende / zayþ. 'þeruore byeþ stille / and
yhereþ myd wylle. Ich come uram heuene. and
þelliche þinges ich y-zeȝ þer. þet no man ne may
dyngneliche zigge. þaȝles zomþyng ich wylle zigge :
ase ich may. Ich yzeȝ god. ac be ane sseawere ine
ssede.'

'Ich yzeȝ þe ilke onspekynde / an on-todelinde
magesté of þe holy trinity. be-gynnyng / ne ende ne
heþ. Ac and lyȝt þer-inne woneþ / þet me ne may naȝt
come to. Vram þo lyȝte byeþ y-þorsse mine eȝen / and
þe zyȝþe þyester. Hyt ouergeþ uorzoþe alle wyttes /
and alle zyȝþes. þe ilke bryȝ[t]nesse. and þe ilke uolnesse.
þaȝles a lytel ich yzeȝ oure lhord iesu crist / ine riȝt
half zittinde. þet is to zyge : ine þe lyue wyþ-outende
regnynde. þaȝ he ouer alle sseþþes by zuo uayr : þet
ine him wylneþ þe angles to zyenne. Yet nou þe
wounden and þe toknen of þe passion he heþ ine his
bodye. huermyde he ous boȝte. be-uore þe uader uor ous
stant uor to bydde. Ich y-zeȝ nyxt iesu crist þe ilke
blisfolle mayde / and moder þe ilke zodes¹ / and oure
lhordes iesu cristes / myd alle worþssipe and reuerence /
y-nemned marie / ine þe wonderuolle trone zittynde /
aboue alle þe holy ordres of angles / and of men : an-
heȝed. hire zone iesus uor ous byddinde. and to huam
hi is uol of merci. Ac þe ilke wonderuolle magesté /

and þe briȝtnesse of þe moder / and of þe zone : ich ne
 myȝte naȝt longe polye / ich wente myne ziȝþe uor to
 yzi / þe ilke holy ordres of þe gostes : þet stondeþ be-
 uore god. of huichen þe eurelestinde holynesse of þe
 ziȝþe of god / an of þe loue. ne hit ne ssel lessi : ne hit
 ne ssel endi / ac eure wexe and blefþ. Ac naȝt þe ilke
 degrez / and dingnetes / herynges alsuo / huyche hyre
 makyere hy bereþ no man uollyche þenche / ne naȝt ne
 may by ynoȝ to telle. þerefter þe profetes ich y-zeȝ.
 and þe patriarkes wonderlyche glediynde ine blisse. uor
 þet hy yzeȝen ine goste : uolueled hy yzeþ. þet ine longe
 anoy onderuyng / þet ouet of blysse wyþ-oute ende
 chongeden. Ich y-zeȝ þe apostles ine tronen zittynde.
 þe triȝȝ / and þe tongen / alle preste. and of poure /
 and of zyke : zuo blisuolle and holy / of oure lhord iesu
 crist / and zuo heȝe / ynoȝ alneway ich am wondrinde.
 Ich y-zeȝ / ac uollyche ich ne my[ȝ]te al yzy / þe innumer-
 able uelaȝrede of þe holy martires / mid blisse and
 worþssipe / y-corouned. þet be þe pinen of þise time /
 huyche hi beren to þo blisse / þet wes ysseawed ine
 ham : hy come þerto. Hyre holynesse / and hyre
 blysse : long time ich me lykede. Ich yzeȝ to þe
 blyssede heape of *confessours*. amang huam / men
 apostles / and techeres / þet holy cherche mid hare
 techingewereden. and alsuo uramalle heresy / wyþ]-oute
 wem habbeþ yclenzed : sseaweþ. and hy uele habbeþ
 y-taȝt. ssyneþ ase sterren / ine eurelestynde wyþ]-oute
 ende. þer byeþ Monekes þet uor claustres / and uor
 strayte cellen. wel moche / an clyerer þanne þe zonne :
 habbeþ wonynges. Vor blake and uor harde kertles /
 huyter þane þe snaw. and of alle zofthede / and
 nesshede / cloþinge habbeþ an. Vram hare eȝen / god
 wypeþ alle tyeres. and þane kyng hy ssolle ysȝ ine hys
 uayrhede. Alast / to þe uelaȝrede of maydynes ich
 lokede. of huychen / blysse / ssepþe / agrayþinge / and
 melodya. huyche none mannes speche : dingnelyche

Next I turned my
 sight to the order
 of blissful spirits.

Thereafter I saw
 the prophets and
 patriarchs

and the apostles
 sitting on thrones.

I saw the innu-
 merable fellow-
 ship of the holy
 martyrs.

I saw the blessed
 heap of confessors
 and teachers of
 Holy Church.

There were monks
 that shine clearer
 than the sun.

Lastly, I saw the
 fellowship of
 maidens,

and heard their
fair song.

[Fol. 84. a.]

Sleight inquires
of the messenger
concerning the
life of the blessed.

He is told that
they live, enjoy,
love, rejoice,
praise, are swift,
and are in
security.

They live an ever-
lasting life free
from all pain.

Their life is the
sight of the
Trinity.

They taste of
God's counsel and
dooms, and learn
the causes of
things.
They love God
with an infinite
love.
They rejoice in
God and of their
holiness.

They have as
many blessings as
companions,

and their joy is
incomparably
great.

may telle. And hy zonge þane zang : þet non oþer ne
may zynge. Ac and þe zuete smel ine hare regyon /
zuo zuete ys : þet alle manyre zuete smelles ouercompþ.
And to hare benes : oure lhord arist. to alle opren :
zittinde he lhest.' Sleþþe zayþ. 'Hyt lykeþ þet þou
zayst. Ac uor of echen of þe holy ordres / wondres
þou hest y-zed : we byddeþ þet þou zigge ous / huet is
hare dede in mennesse / and huet is þe conuers[ac]ion of
uelazrede : zay ous.' þe wynny[n]gge of þe lyue wyþ-oute
ende zayþ. 'Vor zoþe ich wyлле zygge. þe dede of alle
ine mennesse / ys zeueuald. Hy lybbeþ. hy smackeþ.
hy loueþ. hy byeþ glede. hy heryeþ. hy byeþ zuyfte. hy
byeþ zikere.' Sleþþe zayþ. 'þaz ich zomdel þis onder-
stonde : uor ham þet lhesteþ / of echen zay.' Wynnyngge
of þe lyue wy-oute ende zayþ. 'Zuo by hyt. Hy lybbeþ
be lyue wyþ-oute ende. wyþ-oute enye tyene. wy-oute
enye lessinge. wyþ-oute enye wyþstondynge. Hyre lyf
is þe zyþþe and þe knaulechyngge of þe holy trinity. ase
zayþ oure lhord iesus. þis is þet lyf wyþ-oute ende / þet
hy knawe þe zoþe god / and huam þe zentest iesu crist.
and þeruore ylyche hy byeþ / uor hy y-zyeþ : ase he is.
Hy smackeþ þe redes and þe domes of god. Hy
smackeþ þe kendes / and þe causes / and þe begynny[n]ges
of alle þynges. Hy loueþ god wyþ-oute enye com-
parisoun. uor þet by wyteþ huerto god his heþ y-brozt
uorþ. hy loueþ ech opren : ase ham zelue. Hy byeþ
glede of god onzyginde. hy byeþ glede of zuo moche of
hare oþene holynesse : and uor þet ech loueþ opren ase
him zelue. ase moche blisse heþ ech of opres guode : ase
of his oþene. þeruore by ziker / uor eurych heþ aseuele
blyssen : ase he heþ uelazes. and aseuele blissen to
echen : ase his oþene of alle. and þeruore eureich more
loueþ wyþoute comparisoun god : þet hym and oþre
made / þanne him zelue / and alle oþre. More hy byeþ
glede wyþ-oute gessynge of godes holynesse : þanne of
his oþene / and of alle oþre myd hym. Yef þanne on

onneape nymþ al his blisse. hou ssel he nyme zuo uele
 and zuo manye blyssen? And þeruore hit is yzed. guo
 into þe blysse of þyne lhorde. naȝt þe blisse of þine
 lhorde / guo in to þe. uor hy ne may. þerefter / hy
 herieþ god wyþ-outende / wyþ-oute werynesse. ase hyt
 is y-wryte. Lhord / y-blyssed by þo þet wonyeþ ine
 þyne house / in wordles of wordles: ssolle herye þe.
 Zuyfte hy byeþ. uor huer þet þe gost wyle by: uorzoþe
 þer is þet body. Alle hy byeþ my[3]tuolle. Zykere hy
 byeþ of zuyche lyue. of zuo moche wysdome. of zuo
 moche loue. of zuo moche blysse. of zuyche herynge. of
 zuyche holynesse. þet non ende. non lessyng. non
 uallynge doun ssolle habbe. Lo alyte ich. habbe yzed
 to you. of þan þet ich yzeȝ ine heuene. Naȝt uor zoþe
 ne may zigge / ase ich yzeȝ / ne naȝt ase hy byeþ: ne
 myȝte ysy. Sleȝþe zayþ. 'Vorzoþe ine heuene we onder-
 stondeþ þet þou were. and zoþ þing þer þou yseȝe. and
 zoþ þou hest y-zed.' Strengþe zayþ. 'Huo ssel ous to-
 dele uram cristes loue? tribulacion. oþer zorȝe. and oþre.
 zykere byeþ. uor noþer dyap / ne lyf. and oþre.' Ryȝt
 zayþ. 'Doþ out þane uerste messagyer. hyt ne is naȝt
 riȝt þet he bleue ine þe house / myd þe ryȝtuolle. Vor
 ryȝ[t]uolle loue: deþ out drede.' Strengþe zayþ. 'guo out
 drede. þou ne sselt naȝt by ine oure stedes.' Drede
 zayþ. 'Huet habbe ich mis-do. do. do. ich uor guode
 zede.' Temperancia zayþ. 'Broþen and zostren / ich
 zigge to you. nazmore smacky / þanne be-houeþ. ac
 smacke to sobreté. þou drede / guo out myd guode wylle.
 þole þane dom / þet riȝt heþ y-demd. be auenture þe
 myȝt eft by onderuonge. yef wylnyng of lyf wyþ-oute
 ende / oþerhuyl let of.' þe makyere zayþ. þus / þus /
 nou ssel eurich hys heuynesse / ssake a-way / uram
 drede / to þe loue of þe heuenelyche contraye him-zelue
 wende. Zuo by hit.

The command is,
 'Go into the bliss
 of thy Lord.'

They are swift,
 and the body goes
 where the spirit
 wills it.
 They are secure
 in this life of bliss
 and of love.

Strength asks,
 'Who shall
 separate as from
 Christ's love?'

Right says, Turn
 out the messenger
 Dread,

[Fol. 84. b.]

for love of God
 putteth out fear.

Temperance com-
 mands Dread to
 go out willingly.

Thus let us cast
 off fear and receive
 the love of the
 heavenly king-
 dom.

Understanding distinguishes between a man and a beast. Glorify thee not in other things. Flies surpass thee in swiftness.

The peacock is fairer than thou. God's image consists in thought and understanding.

Man's light consists in purity of thought.

The untrue, the evil, thieves, &c., are dark.

Light exists, but we go away from it.

Sin makes us blind.

The world is blind and wicked.

Christ died for us, and yet was without sin.

Suffer patiently and with a good will.

God made angels as well as small worms.

The one is worthy of heaven, the other of earth.

Yet wouldst thou reprove God if he place the worm in heaven?
But God is not to be reprovèd.

Nammore ne is be-tuene ane manne / and ane beste :
bote ine onderstondynge. Nāzt of oþre þinge ne
gloreþe þe. Of uirtues þe prest þe / of bestes þou ssett
by ouercome. Of zuþfthede þe prest þe / of uelezn þe
worst ouercome. Of uayrhede þe prest þe : hou moche
uayr is ine þe ueþeren of þe pokoce / huerof art þou
more worþ? of godes ssepþe. Huer is godes ssepþe?
Ine þenchinge / and ine onderstondinge. Yef þou
þanne þeruore art betere þanne a best / uor þet þou hest
þenchinge / huerby þou onderstans[t]. þet a best ne may
onderstonde. þer-uore uorzoþe : man is more betere /
þanne a best. Liȝt of man is lyȝt of þoȝtes. Liȝt of
þoȝtes aboue þoȝtes is. and ouergeþ alle þoȝtes. Yet
eft .O. men / ne byeþ nāzt þyestre. ne byeþ nāzt
ontrewe. onriȝtuole. queade. robberes. wrechen. louieres
of þe wordle. þise uor zoþe byeþ þyesternesse. Lyȝt
ne is nāzt awaye : ac ye byeþ awaye / uram lyȝte. þe
blynde ine þe zonne : heþ þe zonne present. ac he is
uram þe zonne. þeruore ne byeþ nāzt þyestre. Yet
eft. þe wordle þyestre. uor þe louyeres of þe wordle.
byeþ þyestre. and þe wordle is quead. uor þo þet wonyeþ
ine wordle byeþ queade. ase a quead hous. nāzt þe
walles : ac þo þet wonyeþ þerinne. Yet eft. crist ne
hedde no þyng hueruore he ssolde sterue : and dyad
he is. þou hest hueruore : and to sterue þou hest
onworþ? wylne myd guod wylle to polye : be þyne of-
seruyng / þet he þolede myd guode wylle. þet he
wolde delyury / uram þe dyape eurelestinde. Yet eft.
be huam þet angel is ymad : be him is ymad þe smale
worm. Ac þe angel is worþy to þe heuene : þe worm
to þe erþe. þe ilke þet made : he dyȝte. Yef he dede
þane smale worm in-to heuene : þe woldest hym wyþ-
nyme. Yef he wolde maki angles of uoule stynkynde
ulesse : þou woldest hym wyþnyme. And nāzt uorþan :
nyxt þan deþ god. and þaȝles he ne is nāzt to wyþ-
nymene. Vor alle men of ulesse ymad : huet byeþ hy

bote wermes? and of wermes / he makeþ angles. Yet	Men are worms,
eft. huych herte me arereþ : ech may y-zy. þet nazt þe	and of worms
heuynesse of ulesses wylle beuore ygreued / auore ualþ /	God makes
ere hit by arered. Ac ech him zelue y-zy bere / þe	angels.
heuynesse of his ulesse : yue wyl be wyþdraþynge. þet	The heart must
he clensy : þet he arere to god. zuo by hit. Hayl godes	be lightened and
moder Marie / Mayde uol of þonke / god by myd þe /	so raised to God.
y-blyssed by þou / ouer alle wyfmen. And y-blyssed	
by oure Lhord iesus / þet zuete ouet / of þyne wombe	
ybblessed. zuo by hit. Mayde / and moder mylde. uor	Maid and Mother
loue of þine childe : þet is god an man : Me þet am zuo	mild, me that am
wylde / uram zenne þou me ssylde : ase ich þe bydde	so wild from sin
can. amen.	me shield. Amen.

NOTES.

Page 1, l. 3, *wycked*. The definite form *wyckede* is required after the definite article.

Page 1, l. 15, *draze*. The prefixed *y* is omitted on account of the preceding *by*.

Page 6, l. 2, *huich* . . . *by*, whatsoever that it may be ; l. 9, *toppe* = above. This preposition is frequently used by Shoreham, and seems peculiar to the Kentish dialect ; l. 18, *oksep* = *acsep* = demands, requires ; *op of zoþe*, oath of truth.

Page 8, l. 6, *be his wytinde* = by his willing = he being willing = willingly ; l. 23, *and*—and, both—and ; l. 25, *yhyealde* = *holden* = bound.

Page 9, l. 12, *arizinges* is used to translate the O. Fr. *moeuementes* ; l. 17, *takinges*, touchings, handlings, O. Fr. *atouchemenz*.

Page 10, l. 1, *ssel* = owes. It has this sense occasionally in Chaucer ; l. 15, *ywyte* . . . *yherd*, known, seen, or heard.

Page 11, l. 2, *his* = her.

Page 13, l. 19, *al to*, O. Fr. *iusqua* ; l. 20, *huer* . . . *made* [*zitte*]. The Fr. is *ou il se sist* ; l. 24, *of-guo*, deserved.

Page 14, l. 22, *huer* . . . *an* = Fr. *ou il aura vescu* ; ll. 28, 30, *sseawynge* renders the Fr. *revelacion*, vision.

Page 16, l. 33, *wyttes* = *wytes*, fault.

Page 17, l. 24, *ouerweninge*, Fr. *sourquidrie* ; l. 25, *folebayrie* = over-boldness ; l. 26, *ydele blisse* = Fr. *veynglorie* ; l. 32, *voulhede*, Fr. *vileynye* = crime, disgrace.

Page 18, l. 4, *ingratitude* = O. E. *unkyndenesse*.

Page 19, l. 12, *renay* = *renegate*, apostate. The Midland copy reads '*he may wel be cleped renegate* ;' l. 2, *ine lokinge*, in custody ; l. 10 from bottom, *deuines* = *devineres*.

Page 20, l. 16, *þe*, the reflexive pronoun = thou thyself.

Page 21, l. 16, *op weninge* = *upweening*; *opnimminge* = *uptaking*, enterprise, and hence presumption. The Fr. text has *sorquidance* (O.E. *surquidrie*) and presumption. See p. 22, l. 2, where *opnimminge* translates Fr. *emprise*; l. 18, *worth*, Fr. *valoir*; l. 19, *may*, Fr. *pooir*; l. 20, *moze*, Fr. *puet*; *conne*, Fr. *savour*; l. 21, *can*, Fr. *set*; *moze*, *pooir*; l. 22, *conne*, Fr. *savour*; l. 26, *onlepihede* = singularity, cf. l. *onlepi*, singular, l. 30. It often signifies only, alone.

Page 22, l. 18, *onworþi*, Fr. *despire* = *despise*, cf. *onworþnesse* and *onworþhede* = Fr. *despit*; l. 20, *bisemers*, mockings, derisions, Fr. *gas*; l. 21, *bismereþ*, Fr. *moke*; l. 31, *take* = *teke* = *may teach*.

Page 23, l. 2, *friinges* = *fryings*. Fr. *fritures*. Stevenson printed *sriinges*, and it is apparently so in the MS.; l. 3, *arizthalf* and *alefthalf* = our modern expression *right and left* = on both sides; l. 6, *folliche yeue* = Fr. *folement doner*, to give foolishly (or as Chaucer would say, *fool-largely*); l. 16, *fole heryinge*, foolish praising = *flattery*, Fr. *vaine loenge*; l. 17, *yhered* = *praised*, from *hery*, *herie*, to praise, line 19; l. 24, *ydeleblisse* = *vain-glory*.

Page 24, l. 4, *aye* = *again* = Fr. *ou devers*, *auorje* = *de par*; ll. 7, 8, *wyt wel . . . of-healde*. Wit, well for to devise (*discern*); good memory well to retain; l. 11, *atempres* = Fr. *atempre*, tempered, moderated, contented; l. 23, *theuedi hap*, Dame Fortune; l. 24, *hare huezet*, her wheel; page 25, l. 34, *sotil*, Midl. Vers. *slizhe*; l. 35, *uoulhedes*, Fr. *ordures*, *halkes*, Fr. *repostailles*.

Page 26, ll. 18, 19, *ne sselt . . . by*. 'Thou shalt never learn what man is until he is where he desires to be'; l. 22, *let*, ceaseth; l. 23, *papelard*, Fr. *papelart*, flatterer, deceiver.

Page 27, l. 4, *calouwe mous*, the bat. Fr. *chauue soriz*; l. 29, *awarzedede* = Fr. *maloite*, schrewd, wicked.

Page 28, l. 34, *hollyche*, Fr. *sainement* = *sainglement* = *entièrement*.

Page 29, l. 30, *werreres* = *werres* = wars.

Page 30, l. 20, 'efterward *wreþe*,' *wreþe* is an error for *hate*. The Fr. text has *haine*.

Page 31, ll. 4, 5, *onlusthede*, Fr. *paresce*; *tyene*, Fr. *anui*; l. 10,

þennliche = thinness, scantiness. The Fr. text has *tenuites*, and the Midland MS. reads *tenderness*. *þonnliche* should evidently be *þenneleche* or *þinneleche* = thin-ness, the *-leche* being the same termination as in knowledge, O.E. *knowleche*; l. 11, *theucliche*, Fr. *ténurement*, Mid. Vers. *slakly*. Stevenson printed *theneliche*. Cf. *theuc* in l. 13.

Page 32, l. 17, *onssriuel*, Fr. *perreceus*. This word does not occur in Bosworth's A. Sax. Dict. It seems to be = *un-shrifel*, Mid. Vers. *recheles*, negligent, careless, from A.S. *scrifan*, to care for; l. 17, *sleuwole* = *sleuþ-wole*, slothful, see *sleawolle* in l. 13; l. 22, *onwoneth*, Fr. *desacoustume*; *on-wone* therefore comes from the O.E. *wone*, habit, custom, wont, and signifies to cease to do what has been customary or habitual; l. 23, *Afterward* . . . *sleuwoliche*. The Fr. has 'Après vient negligence, car qui bien fait delaiement nest pas merueil le sil le fait negliiaument.' Here we see *auerst* = Fr. *delaiement* = delayingly, from A.S. *fyrst*, delay, respite.

Page 33, l. 12, *op-let* = Fr. *sormaine*, fr. *surmener*, '*mal mener, maltraiter*' (Roq.).

Page 34, l. 27, *wynnyng boldeliche*, Fr. *en aquestier ardaument*; *of-healdinge streytliche*, Fr. *en retenir restreignament*; l. 31, *gaueling*, Fr. *usure*; l. 34, *kuedhede*, Fr. *maliginites*.

Page 35, l. 7, *þe heþpes*, Fr. *les montes*; cf. *hezinge*, profit, l. 16; l. 9, *wedde-dyade* = mortgage, Fr. *gage mort*, see *dead-wed*, p. 36; ll. 16, 17, *chapfare makiinde* = covenant (bargain) making; l. 24, *lenep nazt*, &c., i.e. *lendeth not themselves*.

Page 36, l. 6, *time-zettere ontrewe*. Fr. has *termoiers desloiaus*; l. 20, *vendonginge*, Fr. *vendenges*, vendage, vending, sales.

Page 37, l. 20, *seruons*. The Fr. *serians* shows that this word should be *seriions* (constables).

Page 38, l. 27, *tayles, cornees*. Fr. *tailles, coruees*. The latter term signifies a duty on beasts and corn; l. 30, *of hiren* = *du leur* = of theirs.

Page 39, l. 5, *ssepes*, payments, wages, Fr. *loier*; l. 8, *niminges*, Fr. *exactions*; l. 11, *mesteres men*, officials; l. 15, *ac . . . yzed*, but some are continued (above that) in addition to that that is here related; l. 17, *yerne* = *erne* = *earne*, run; l. 23, *playmeres*, Fr. *playntif, bezech-*

inges, Fr. petitions ; l. 25, *playteres*, Fr. auocas ; l. 28, *yulemde* = fugitives ; l. 28, *wyþsettingges*, exceptions = Fr. *barres*.

Page 40, l. 7, *be-uelynge* = defiling = false accusations ; l. 20, *beziðe-zitteres*, Fr. *asseseurs* ; ll. 23, 24, *yhet* = *yhed* = had, Fr. *eu* ; l. 33, *ereges* = Fr. *hereges* = heretics. Stevenson explains this wrongly as witches.

Page 42, l. 7, *denyges* = Fr. *deenez*, deaneries.

Page 44, l. 2 from bottom, *romongours*, Fr. *maskignons* = maquignons, fraudulent dealers, from O. Fr. *ramander*, baisser le prix.

Page 45, l. 9, *hysians* = Fr. *hiziaus*, heralds. *Kempen* = Fr. champions.

Page 47, l. 26, *be hare wytinde*. Fr. a son escient.

Page 48, l. 1, *out of nyede* = unnecessarily.

Page 51, l. 11, *teue*. Stevenson printed *tene*, as if = tin ; but *teue* = *to-eue* = yesterday evening, and it translates the Fr. *dersoir*.

Page 52, l. 13, *huet non* = *al-huet non* = until noon. Fr. *iusquane*. Cf. *al-huet nist*, p. 52, l. 12.

Page 56, l. 8, *ssast* = *sslazst*, slayest ; l. 19, *ich wyllē a lite take of the zennes*, &c., I will a little touch of the sins, &c.

Page 57, l. 1, *euele telle*, Fr. *misconter* ; *contacky*, Fr. *barēter*.

Page 63, l. 10, for *a-mes* read *a mes* = Fr. *mes*.

Page 66, l. 19, *godelinges*, Fr. *maudiscons* ; cf. *godelinge*, p. 65, = Fr. *maudire* ; l. 28, *atwyȝt*, blame, the word *reproueþ* has been erased in the MS.

Page 87, l. 12, *huet hi is y-do* = until they do them ; *huet* = *al-huet* = until ; *is* = *his* = them. Fr. *tant soit parfaits*.

Page 96, l. 14, *in one wytte* = in one sense.

Page 101, l. 6, *pou sselȝt loue*, &c. = Thou owest him love, &c. ; l. 16, *uelazest* = joinest, cf. *uelaze*, accessory ; *uelazrede*, p. 102, companionship, fellowship. See p. 102, l. 12, where *uelazeþ* = joineth.

Page 103, l. 24, *boystoyse*, O.E. *bostwise*, *boisterous*, blustering. This is the earliest approach to the form *bosteous* or *bostous*, which has given rise to *boisterous*.

Page 104, l. 16, *uor þer ne is no gelt*. The Fr. text has, *car il nia nul trespas sement*.

Page 106, l. 29, *out of smak* = out of taste = disagreeable.

Page 108, l. 10, *wyndeþ* = *wyndeþ* = findeth.

Page 111, l. 32, *of hiren*, of herself.

Page 112, l. 15, *greate*, Fr. gros; l. 25, *piecaille ne to chenaille* = cattle nor to dogs. The MS. reads *cheuaille*, which is evidently wrong. The translator seems to have been unable to render these French terms into English.

Page 113, l. 4, *ope*, above. The Fr. has *sor* (sur).

Page 116, l. 21, *refye*, Fr. movoir; *ne rocky*, Fr. crouller; move nor render unsteady; *rocky* = to rock, and is equivalent to the O.E. *wagge* = wag.

Page 120, l. 31, *Ac . . . zone*; *more* is wanted before *þanne*, as the construction is, But wherefore are they called gifts of the Holy Ghost *more* than gifts of the Father and of the Son?

Page 121, l. 23, *þe yefþe of drede is þe doreward to þe greate preste*, The gift of dread (fear) is the doorkeeper to the great crowd; l. 23, *uordeþ*, Fr. esterpe. The Midland MS. reads 'draweþ up.'

Page 123, ll. 14, 15, *hi ous deþ beknaue and to byknaue*, she causes us to know and be known. *Byknaue* = *by yknaue* = be known; l. 21, *dyere oninge*, precious union. Chaucer has *onedin* = united (pret. pl.); ll. 31, 32, Love of hope feeleth the smell and seeketh. Love of Charity taketh, and seeth, and swalloweth, and holdeth; l. 32, *zikþ* = *zizþ* = sees, *zuelzþ* = Fr. gousté, tasteth.

Page 128, l. 21, *ysnes*, irons, fetters, from *ysn* = iron; l. 2 from bottom, *wrikþ* = *wrizþ* = hideth.

Page 129, l. 20, *ca arrieres*. The Mid. MS. renders this phrase by *to-fore*; l. 34, '*Man may longe*,' &c. This quotation occurs in the Religious Poems printed by Wright in the Owl and Nightingale.

Page 130, l. 22, *cornardyes* = *cosnardies*, deceits.

Page 131, l. 4, *calketreppe*, Fr. pieges, see Glossary; l. 5, *anhet*, Fr. embrasee; l. 7, *wyzte*, *uyzte* = fight.

Page 132, l. 21, *anone* is *a-none* = in no.

Page 134, l. 16, *bouerze* is for *borze* = save, not for *bouze* = *boze*, bow, be obedient.

Page 135, l. 25, *þe wyþþe ine the nykke* = the halter (rope) round the neck.

Page 137, l. 3 from bottom, *ssel a3t*, owes aught (anything).

Page 139, l. 14, *ze3þ* = *zekþ*, seeketh ; cf. *wecþ* (l. 2, p. 140) for *we3þ* = weigheth.

Page 140, l. 25, *hassasis*. Thus the word stands in the Fr. and Eng. text. It is our modern word assassin.

Page 141, l. 6, *ingnel*, O. Fr. *ignaus*, O.E. *delyuere*, active.

Page 143, l. 11, *y-zicþ* = *y-zizþ* = seëth ; l. 24, *at lokes* = at Whitsuntide (Pentecost), see p. 163, l. 3 from bottom. *Lok-Sunday* = Whitsunday, occurs in Shoreham's poems.

Page 147, l. 2, *angrice*, Fr. *angoisse* ; l. 3, *aw[r]ec3þ* = *awrekþ* = wreaketh, avengeth.

Page 150, l. 4 from bottom, *boune* = rule, line. This is the word in the Fr. text. D. Michel was evidently unable to translate it. The Midland MS. for *pricke an boune* reads *merk and lyne*.

Page 154, l. 1 from bottom, [*eyse*]. The Fr. text has *eas*.

Page 155, l. 3, *zene3þ* is here plural, and should be written *zene3eþ* ; l. 3, *foruions* is the O. Fr. *foruoions*.

Page 161, l. 14, *deþ auerst*, putteth in delay. See *uerste* = to delay, respite, cause delay. See p. 173, l. 16 ; l. 20, *be strengþe* = forcibly, by force ; cf. *no strengthe* = O.E. *no fors* = no matter ; l. 34, *Vor* = or.

Page 167, l. 25, *erþan þet þe kuen his do an* = ere that (before) that the queen putteth it on ; *his* = her, and refers to *robe*, which is considered as feminine.

Page 171, l. 5 from bottom, *sest geus* ; so the words stand in the Fr. text. The Mid. MS. translates *geus* by *euele plezes* (evil plays).

Page 173, l. 22, *y-kuegt* = *y-kue(n)gt* = O.E. *ykueynt* = quenched. Cf. *dreynt* = drenched, &c.

Page 178, l. 24, *uor wone makeþ maister*. This passage literally signifies 'for habit makes master,' and is equivalent to our phrase, 'practice makes perfect ;' cf. page 181, l. 4, where *yealde wones* = old habits.

Page 182, l. 16, '*be-uleaþ and etheþ* [*h*]are onderlinges, flay and eat their subjects : *be-uleaþ* = *be-uleazeþ* = *be-flayeþ* = flay, fleece, rob.

Page 184, l. 12, *wely-holpe* = *wel y-holpe* = well-holpen (succoured).

Page 187, l. 24, [*di*]aymont. The MS. has *aymont*, but the Fr. text shows that *diaymont* = diamond, is the correct reading.

Page 193, l. 4, *pet* (for *pen* ?) *po* = than those.

Page 194, l. 10 from bottom, *and hol* = *and [is] yhol* = and is safe.

Page 195, ll. 9, 10, *in* = inn, lodging.

Page 196, ll. 1, 2, *in-to þe greade of þe poure* = unto (at) the supplication of the poor ; l. 8, *hedinge* = secresy ; cf. O.E. *hidlinges*, secret places.

Page 198, l. 23, '*comeþ þe*' should be *comeþ ye*. The participle *yblissede* is plural, the singular being *yblissed* ; cf. *acorsede*, in l. 11.

Page 203, l. 5, *ne* = nor, seems wanted after *uondinge*.

Page 204, l. 14, *fortin*. This word is taken out of the French text.

Page 205, l. 21, *hit draẏþ to smac*, maketh it tasty.

Page 207, l. 9 from bottom, *talyinde*, Fr. *contant*.

Page 210, l. 3 from bottom, *God ne is nazt goth to uede mid leaues*, God is not a goat to be fed with leaves.

Page 231, l. 14, *wy-oute* = *wyþ-oute*, without.

Page 237, l. 16, *zikþ* = *ziẏþ* = sees.

Page 241, l. 9, *hed*, an error for *heald*, *held*, esteemed.

Page 244, l. 21, *hihere*, an error for *ihere*, hear.

Page 247, l. 2 from bottom, *and his selt do drinke*, and thou shalt cause them to drink.

Page 248, l. 2, *kuelẏ* = *quelp* = wellet, springeth, or *wells* up.

Page 249, l. 2, *maked* = *makeþ* = makes. The preterite would be *makede* ; cf. p. 248, l. 29.

Page 251, l. 2 from bottom, *is spek* = *ich spek*, I spake.

Page 252, l. 31, *misbylefde* = *misbylefinde* = unbelieving (ones) = unbelievers. Chaucer has *misleved* = *misbeleued* = miscreant ; but *mysbyleuinde* occurs on page 69 of this work.

Page 253, l. 10, *zekþ* = *zekẏ* = seeketh ; l. 11, *uel ine þe aye* = the skin in the egg. The Mid. MS. reads 'straw in the egg.'

Page 254, ll. 16, 19, *ges*, O. Fr. *ges*. Liens pour attacher les oiseaux de proie (Roquefort).

Page 254, l. 23. The pronoun *hare* (their) seems to require *men* instead of *man*.

Page 264, l. 12, *hezliche clom*, a profound silence ; l. 14, *comyde* may be an error for *comynde* = coming (= is about to come), or for *comeþ* = comes = is coming ; l. 22, *chaynen auere*, chains of fire ; *auere* = a fire ; l. 30, *comste* = comest thou ; l. 32, *ysezeþe* = *ysezeþe* = what didst thou see ; l. 34, *brene on-polyinde*, intolerable burning.

Page 265, l. 1, *wantrokiyng* = lack ; *wan* = un, as in O.E. *wantrust*, *wanhope*, &c. ; *trockiyng* = failure, want. The *wan* seems to be intensitive ; l. 18, *yueþ youre* = *yeueþ yeare* = giveth ear ; *your* would signify yours ; l. 27, *helm of helpe* = helmet of salvation ; l. 29, *ryuolliche* = *ryztuolliche* = rightfully, righteously ; l. 35, *hit þingþ þe* = *hit þingþ þet*, it appeareth that.

Page 266, l. 1, *be cas* = perhaps, per-chance ; l. 2, *of-dret* = of dread = adread, afraid ; l. 6, *wylnyng of þe contraye of heuene* = desire of the kingdom (country) of heaven ; ll. 9—11, *Yef . . . stille*. If we, on account of 'God's Dread' and 'Bethinking of Death,' were still (silent), right it is that thee speaking (whilst thou art speaking) we should be much more silent ; l. 13, *myd wylle* = willingly ; l. 20, *Ac and*, but also ; ll. 25, 26, *ine riȝt half zittinde*, on the right hand sitting ; l. 31, *zodes* = *zones* = of the son.

Page 268, ll. 13, 14, '*þaȝ . . . zay*.' Though I understand somewhat of this, (yet) for them that listeneth tell (in detail) of each (of these particulars, i.e. how they live, enjoy, &c., see ll. 11, 12) ; l. 30, *by ziker* = [*hy*] *by[ep]* *ziker* ; they are in security ; l. 32, *ase his ozene of alle* = as is possessed by all.

Page 269, l. 2 from bottom, supply *and* before *to*.

Page 270, l. 4, *þe prest þe* = thou prides thyself ; *uelezn* is an error for *ulezen* = flies ; *þe worst*, thou shalt.

GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

A! ah! 51, 71.

A, on, a þe, on the, 12, 64, 114, 156, 214.

Abandones, free, 247.

Abatye, Fr. *abatre*, to abate, lessen, 28.

A.b.c.e., 1.

Abegge (pret. *aboȝte*), to suffer or atone for, pay for, 73. It corresponds to the later English *abie*; A.S. *a-biegan*.

Abide, *pp.* delayed, 239.

Abyd, *imp.* delay, 173.

Abide, Abyde, await, remain, 51, 113, 194; endure, 166; refrain, 242; A.S. *abidan*, *bidan*.

Abide, Abyde (*pl. pret.*), abode, 13.

Abideþ, Abydeþ, remaineth, 72, 86; look for, await, (*pl.*) 146, 179.

Abidinge, delay, 173.

Abit, Abyt, abideth, waiteth for, awaiteth, 128, 143, 194, 169, 211; bear with, 174.

Ablent, blindeth, 16; *ablende*, to make blind, occurs in R. of Gloucester, 208; Chaucer uses *blende*, pret. *yblent*, in the same sense.

Abod (*pret. of Abyde*), abode, delayed, 173.

Abomynable, 49.

Abot, Abotte, abbot, 178, 219; Abbotes, 67.

Aboue, above, 13, 15, 35.

Aboute, about, 30.

Aboutestondinges, circumstances, 174, 175.

Abstinence, 236.

Abundance, 261.

Abyde. *See* Abide.

Ac, but, 6, 10, 16, *et passim*.

Accidye, sloth, 16.

Accombringe, destruction, ruin, 182. The root of this word is *comber*, as in *encumber*, Du. *komber*, loss, adversity. Ger. *kummer*, trouble. O. Fr. *encombrer*, to hinder, vex, annoy.

- Acorded, accorded, united, 153.
 Acordeþ, agreeth, 60, 147, 151, 153; uniteth, 256.
 Acordi, to accord, agree, 151, 152.
 Acorsed, *pp.* accursed, 66, 138.
 Acorsede, *pret.* accursed; 57, *pp.* *pl.* 189, 198.
 Acounteþ, counteth, 137.
 Acquayntonce, acquaintance, 143.
 Acsede, asked, 178, 190, 208, 222, 239.
 Acest, askest, 207, 209.
 Aceþ, *sing.* asketh, demandeth, prays for, requireth, 53, 54, 99, 109, 180, 209, 221, *pl.* 111, 116, *imp.* 209.
 Acsi, Acsy, Acxy, to ask, demand, require, inquire, claim, 101, 110, 139, 151, 198, 209, 214.
 Acsinge, asking petition, question, 208, 209.
 Acsinges, Acsingges, askings, questions, petitions, 129.
 Acsynge, false claiming, *Fr.* *challenge*, 139.
 Active, 199.
 Adaunteþ, tameth, 167; *Fr.* *dompter*, *donter*, to tame, *daunt*, subdue.
 Adopcion, Adopcioun, adoption, 101, 102, 146.
 Adoun, downwards, 247.
 Adraze, *pp.* drawn, 174, 218.
 Adrayngt = adreynt, *pp.* drowned, drenched, 107, 248.
- Adraynkþ = maketh drink, 251; *A.S.* *a-drencan*, to drench, drown, *pret.* *drencte*, *pp.* *gedrenced*.
 Adrenche, to drown, 50. *A.S.* *adrencan*.
 Adrencheþ, drowneth, 50.
 Adrengþ, gives drink, 92.
 Adreynct, drowned, 239.
 Adreynten, *pl. pret.* drowned, 50.
 Aduenture. *See* Auenture.
 Aduersari, Adversarie, 109, 170, 238.
 Aduerseté, Aduersité, Adversetes, 27, 30, 68, 84, 125, 168, 181, 182.
 Afaited, feigned, 212; *O. Fr.* *afaiter*.
 Affayted, trusting, 75.
 Affeccoun, affection, 151.
 Afrounti, to be offended, 229; *Fr.* *affronter* (from *Lat.* *frons*, the forehead).
 Age, 5.
 Agelt, sinneth, trespasseth, offendeth or sinneth against, transgress, 5, 19, 65, 125.
 Agelt, *pp.* sinned, 20.
 Agelte, to sin, commit trespass, 15; *A.S.* *agyltan*, to offend, sin against.
 Agelteþ, *pl.* sin, 6, 72.
 Agerse = a gerse, in grass, 36; *A.S.* *gers*, *gærs*.
 Aginne, Agynne, to begin, 32, 168, 197. *A.S.* *agynnan*.

- Aginnynge, Aginninge, Agynninge, beginning, 16, 31, 166, 197.
- Agonne, *pp.* begun, 165.
- Agrayped, *pp.* prepared, 14, 56, 89, 244; ready, 140; established, 147.
- Agraypeþ, directs, orders, advises, 81, 119, 125, 138, 140; deck, *pl.* 176, 195, 216.
- Agraypi, to prepare, set in order, array, dress, direct, 55, 76, 148, 173; to ornament, 216, 258; to set (sail), 183; O.N. *greiða*, to make ready.
- Agraypinge, *sh.* adorning, 229, 258.
- Agraypinges, decorations, ornaments, 176, 216, 226.
- Agrund, on the ground, 91.
- Ak, Ake, but, 6, 18, 55, 62, 69, 97. *See* Ac.
- Akse, ask, 184.
- Aksede, asked, 239.
- Akseþ, asketh, demands, requires, 13, 18, 103, 109, 163, 208, 222.
- Aksinge, asking, 197, 198.
- Aksy, ask, 113; *see* *Acsi*, *acsy*.
- Akþ acheth, 51.
- Al, *adj. sing.* all, 13; *sing.*, 15.
- Al, *adv.* quite; al uol, quite full, 191; al ripe, quite ripe, 28; al quic, quite alive, 67.
- Al alsuo, just as, 66.
- Alast, lastly, last, 69, 118.
- Ald, old, 16, 48, 104, 124, 219.
- Alday, Aldaye, *adv.* all day, 75.
- Ale = Alle, 233.
- Aleste, on the left. Alefthalf, on the left side (on the other side), 23, 38.
- Alfpeny, halfpenny, 193.
- Algorisme, calculation, compilation, numbering, 1.
- Alhuet = until, unto, 26, 33, 36, 51, 74, 109.
- Alizt, Alyzt, enlighteneth, lighteneth, 77, 81, 88, 105, 115, 121, 122, 185, 249; kindleth, 66.
- Alizt, Alyzt, *pp.* enlightened, 105, 109, 201.
- Alizte, Alyzte, to enlighten, 109; A.S. *alihtan*, to enlighten.
- Alizte, Alyzte, *pp. pl.* enlightened, 201, 243.
- Alizteþ, enlighteneth, 204, 205; maketh bright, beautiful, 229.
- Aliztynge = alighting, enkindling, incitement, 221.
- Aliztynges, passions, 204.
- Alle, *adj. pl.* all, 1, 5, 6, 10, *et passim*.
- Alle, *pron.* all, 10, 11.
- Allen (to), all, 145, 188.
- Allone, alone, 142.
- Almizti, almighty, 1, 5, 12.
- Almoner, 190.
- Alneway, always, 84, 178.
- Al on, the same, all one, 259.
- Aloseþ, make famous, 199.
- Alosi, to render famous, re-

- nowned, 183. Cf. O.E. *los*, fame, Fr. *los*.
- Alouer, everywhere, 81.
- Alouwe, Alowe, to praise, to be praised, 95, 227, 233; O. Fr. *alouer*, to praise, from Lat. *laus*.
- Alozed, famed, 16.
- Else, as, 8, 15.
- Else-moche-ase, Also-moche-ase, Alzo-moche-ase, as much as, 15, 19, 28; A.S. *alswá*, also; for the form *al-se*, cf. O.E. *who-se* = who so.
- Alsuo, Alzuo, also, 51, 57.
- Alpa3, although, 19.
- Alperuerst, first of all, 27, 51. *Alper* = *aller*, A.S. *alre*, *gen. pl. of all*.
- Alperworst, worst of all, 17.
- Al-to, unto, 1, 13, 14, 215.
- Altogidere, all to gather, 59.
- Al-wet = *alhuet*, until, unto, 197.
- Aly3t, Aly3te. See Ali3t, Ali3te.
- Amang, among, 65, 103.
- Amanzinge, cursing, excommunication, 189; O.E. *amanse*, to curse, from A.S. *amansumian*, lit. to disjoin, and hence to excommunicate.
- Amaystreþ, mastereth, overpowereth, 129.
- Ambicion, 17, 22.
- Amended, *pp.* 30.
- Amendement, 32, 83, 148.
- Amendes, amercements, fines, debts, 37, 38, 113; amends, corrections, 147, 148, 180.
- Amendi, to amend, 30, 31, 39, 40, 74.
- Amendinge, amendment, 31, 170, 179, 180.
- Amerd, marred, spoiled, 124, 125, 217; O.H. Ger. *marrjan*, to hinder, make void; Du. *merren*, to obstruct.
- Amerreþ, *pl. mar*, spoil, 130, 203, 204, 220, 229.
- Amerþ, Amerrþ, 205, 217.
- Ames, a but? 62.
- Amesured, moderated, tempered, 258.
- Amesureþ, moderates, tempers, 252.
- Amidde, Amide, amid, 128, 143.
- Amonesteþ, admonishes, 8, 101, 102, 128, 145, 195.
- Amote, ant, emmet, 141; A.S. *æmet*.
- Ampayri, impair, 10; Fr. *empirer*, to make worse, from Fr. *pis*, *pire*, worse; Lat. *pejor*.
- Amydde, 95. See Amidde.
- An, and, 4, 6, 7, 8, *et passim*.
- An, Ane, A, *prep.* on, in, 1, 7, 14, 51, 156, 214.
- An, *adv.* on, 167, 244; A.S. and O. S. *an*.
- An, Ane, *art. a*, 11, 14, 15, 18, 25, 29, 31, 37, 43, 50, *et passim*; *acc.* 161.
- Anajt, nought, 59.

- Ancheysoun, Ancheysoun, reason, cause, 47, 258, 259; Fr. *enchaison*.
- And = *an*, if, 65.
- Andzuerede, answered, 190.
- Ane, one, 117.
- Aneuen, at last, 168.
- Anfermi, affirm, 152.
- Anginnynge, beginning, 31.
- Angle, angel, 20, 21.
- Angles, angels, 20, 21.
- Angrice, hurt, harm, 146.
- Angrisi, terrify, hurt, harm, 146.
A.S. *agrysan*.
- Anhand, in hand, 22, 164.
- Anhaste, in haste, 31, 45, 60, 68, 70, 189.
- Anhez, on high, high, 85, 95, 125; upwards, 45, 46.
- Anhezep, increases, is increased, 49.
- Anhezi, exalt, elevate, raise, 23; from O.E. *hez*, high; A.S. *heg*, *heah*, high.
- Anhet, heated, kindled, 108, 131; A.S. *On-hætan*, to heat, inflame.
- Anhoned, hanged, 241, cf. Eng. *an-hanged*.
- Anhongeþ, hangeth, 51.
- Anhong, to hang; A.S. *anhón*, to hang.
- Anhyaldi, Anhyealde, *pp.* = *an-healde* = *an - halden*, withholden, forbidden, 152.
- Anioynj, to enjoin, 172.
- Anlich, like to, 186.
- Anliche, Anlyche, image, likeness, 145.
- Anlicned, Anlycned, Anlikned, Anlykned, compared, likened, like to, 61, 66, 101, 227, 232.
- Anlicnesse, Anliknesse, Anlycnesse, likeness, 87, 88, 100, 101, 105, 111, 145, 201, 244; A.S. *an-lic nes*.
- Anlicny, Anlykny, to be like to, resemble, 101; compare, 157, 261.
- Anliknep, Anlyknep, is like to, 16, 32, 81; compareth, 91; are like to, 242.
- Anlyke, alike, 227. |
- Anone, in none, 132.
- Anoþerne (*acc.*), another, 162.
- Anoþre, *def.* another, 25, 175.
- Anoþren, Anoþrene (*acc.*), another, 91, 155, 175, 186, 249.
- Anoþres, anothers, 197.
- Anoy, *sb.* 267.
- Anoylinge, anointing 14.
- Anoyþ, annoyeth, 162; It. *annoiare*, from Lat. *in odio*.
- Ansuere, answer, 194, 214.
- Ansuereþ, Ansurede, answered, 178, 208, 239.
- Ansuereþ, answer, 56, 264.
- Ansuerie, Ansuerye, Answer, to answer, 67, 213.
- Ansuerieþ, 159.
- Ant, and, 68.
- Antempered, attempered, 224.

- The author seems to confound the *an* in this word with the *an* or *a* in *anhongi*, *anhezî*, &c.
- Anpayri, impair, 237.
- Anuenymed, envenomed, poisoned, 50.
- Anuenymep, poisons, 27.
- Aparceiuy, to perceive, 131.
- Aparceyuep, perceive, 57.
- Apayrep, impairs, 237.
- Apeluchier, 253.
- Apert, Aperte, open, clear, plain, 11, 134, 203.
- Aperteliche, openly, 13, 26, 59, 70, 96, 162, 201, 244.
- Apocalipse, 14, 183.
- Apostate, 19.
- Apostel, 41, 213.
- Apropred, appropriated, 40, 41, 120, 235.
- Aqueme, to please. *See* Queme.
- Aquench, *imp.* quench, 130.
- Aquencp, quencheth, 207.
- Aquitti, acquit, set free, 137.
- Aquyked, *pp.* kindled, 203, from *quyk* = quick, alive.
- Aquyttep, acquit, release, pay, 36.
- Arblast, Arblaste, arbalast, 47, 71.
- Arbytres, arbitress, 154.
- Archangle, 1.
- Archer, 45.
- Ardontliche, ardently, 51.
- Aredy, Already, ready, 121.
- Arere, raise up, elevate, stir up, excite, 31, 61, 65, 74, 178, 179, 210; *imp.* 156, 217; *subj.* 217.
- Arerede, Arered, *pret.* and *pp.* raised, 14, 24, 86, 200, 203, 239.
- Arerep, raiseth, 23, 85, 129; raise, *pl.*, 66, 125; exaggerate, 136.
- Arznesse, timidity, slowness, 32; A.S. *earg*, inert, timid, evil.
- Arizt, Aryzt, aright, 70, 74.
- Arizt-half; Aryzt-half; on the right side, on the one side, on this side, 23, 38, 40.
- Arise, *inf.* 35; *imp.* 51; *pp.* arisen, 24, 121.
- Arisep, *sing.* ariseth, 52; arise, *pl.*, 57.
- Arist, ariseth, lusteth, 30, 47, 49, 50, 186.
- Arize, arise. *See* Arise.
- Arizep, arise, *pl.*, 56.
- Arizinge, resurrection, 13, 14; rising, 52; lustful emotions or desires, 11; emotion, 147.
- Arizinges, lusts, 9.
- Armes, 162, 165, 265.
- Armeþ, armeth, 25, 111, 180.
- Armure, 170, 203, 240.
- Arn, eagle, 61; A.S. *earn*.
- Aros, arose, 7, 13, 173.
- Arrogance, 21.
- Art, 65.
- Article, 12; articles, 252.
- Arwe, arrow, 66.
- Asayd, tried, essayed, 117, 142.
- Asayled, *pp.* assailed, 157.
- Asaylede, *pret.* assailed, 249.

- Asaylep**, assaileth, 17, 31, 157, 166, 168, 181, 182.
Asayli, to assail, 169.
Asaylinges, assaults, 84, 117, 166, 207.
Asayp, essayeth, 168.
Ascaped, escaped, 166.
Ascapep, **Askapep**, escapeth, flee away, 180, 209, 210.
Ascapie, **Askapie**, escape, 56, 131, 172.
Ase, as, 6, 7, 8, *et passim*.
Ase-moche-ase, as much as, 9, 97.
Ase-wel, as well, 256.
Aslaky, to slacken, 253.
Aslepe, asleep, 199.
Asoyli, absolve, 172.
Asoyny, to strive, busy, 242.
Aspid, **Aspide**, espied, seen, 142, 191.
Aspiep, **Asepiep**, look after, watch, 253, 255.
Aspiinges, watchings, spyings, 117.
Aspiþ, spieth, 173.
Assencion, 213.
Asterue, kill (by depriving of food), 240.
Asterued, starved, enfamished, 240.
Astonep, astonish, 130.
Astonie, astonish, 126, 257; *astonish* is Fr. *estonner* (Lat. *at-tonare*, to thunder at), to astonish, amaze; but *astonie*, O. E. *stounie*, to dull the senses, is from the A.S. *stunian*, to strike, stun.
Astorep, victualet, 112.
Astorie, store up, victual, 136. R. of Gloucester uses *as-tore*, to store (a place), ll. 375, 385; Fr. *estorer*, to erect, build, garnish; Lat. *instaurare*, to repair, renew.
Astranglede, strangled, 48.
Astranglep, strangleth, 65.
Astrangli, to strangle, 50.
Astrup, destroys, 17 = *astrudep*? A.S. *strúdan*, to rob, spoil, ravage.
Asummed, reached the summit, completed, 168.
Atamed, subdued, 152.
Ate, at, 13, 14, *et passim*.
Ate-laste, lastly, 104.
Atempres, **Attempre**, temperate, moderated, 24, 153, 254.
Aténende, **Ate-ende**, lastly, 128, 162.
Ate-uerste, firstly, 127.
Ape, on the, 242.
Atrayt, O.Fr. *atrayt*, continuously, protractedly, 50.
Atuytinge, blame, reproof, 194.
Atuytinges, reproaches, 194.
Atwytt, reproacheth, reproveth, 66.
Atwyte, **Attwyte**, to reproach, reprove, *twit*, 198; A. S. *æt-witan*, *witan*, to blame.

- Atwytinge, reproaching, twitting, 65, 194.
- Auarice, 16, 34, 38, 102, 147.
- Aube, priest's vesture, 236. This word is the same as *alb*, a white robe.
- Auenture, adventure, hap, chance, 18, 20, 27, 168.
- Auer, a-fire, on fire, 205.
- Auere, fiery, 264.
- Auerst, delayingly, in delay, 32, 161; A.S. *fyrst*, *first*, a space of time, delay, *respite*.
- Auerst, *adv.* first, 5, 20, 32, 46.
- Auocat, advocate, 127.
- Auonceþ, advanceth, 68.
- Auonci, to advance, 82.
- Auontage, advantage, 209, 210.
- Auore, before, 271.
- Auoreye, Auorye, towards, with, before, against, as regards, as to, 1, 18, 24, 124, 129, 168, 172, 186, 207, 213, 222. *Auoreye* = *auore-aye*; *auore* = before; *aye* = again, towards.
- Auoud, avowed, acknowledged, 101.
- Auouerie, Auoerie, adoption, 101, 146; Fr. *avouer*, to avow; Lat. *advocare*.
- Autorité, authority, 147, 221.
- Awakede, woke, 128, 199.
- Awarȝede, shrewd, wicked, cursed, 27; A.S. *awerged*, accursed.
- Awrecþ, Awrekþ, wrekeþ, taketh vengeance, punishes, 68, 73, 115, 147. *See* Wreke.
- Awreke, *pp.* punished, 74, 83.
- Awreke, avenge, punish, 9, 59, 76.
- Awrekinge, vengeance, 8.
- Awynne, regain, 85.
- Ayans = *ayens*, against, 6.
- Ayder = *either*, each, 53.
- Aye = *ayen*, against, 1, 5, 6, 7, *et passim*; as to, 24; towards, 146.
- Ayeaward, on the contrary, 49.
- Ayen, back, again, 36, 56, 58, 85; against, 170.
- Ayen-bite, remorse, 1.
- Ayens, against, 6, 18, 29, 98, 115; towards, 156, 163.
- Ayen-uallinge, apostasy (again-falling), 116.
- Ayen-ward, Aye-ward, on the contrary, 48, 49, 56.
- Ayen-weȝe, again-weigh, consider, 57.
- Ayen-wyȝte, down-bearing, 247.
- Ayen-yefte, Ayen-yefþe (again-gift), recompense, 120.
- Ayen-yerne, recur, run to, 220. *See* Yerne.
- Azenkte, *pret.* caused to sink, 49.
- Azet, setteth, setteth out, 140.
- Aze wel, as well, 89.
- Azide, aside, 216.
- Aȝt, ought, 194.
- Aȝt, owe, 137.

B

- Bal, ball, 179.
 Balance, balance, peril, 30, 91.
 Bald, for *beald*, bold, 105.
 Barat, bargain, also fraud, deceit, 39, 46, 61, 75, 82; O.Fr. *bareter*, to lie, cheat, beguile; Sp. *baratar*, to truck, exchange.
 Bargayn, unfair dealing, 9; O.Fr. *barguiner*, to chaffer, also to wrangle, haggle.
 Baronage, 58.
 Baronyes, 38.
 Baroun, 38.
 Barouns, 38, 85.
 Baselycoc, basilisk, 28; Gr. *βασιλικος*, a king. This form of the word is used by Chaucer in the "Persones Tale."
 Batayle, battle, 83, 117, 167, 249.
 Batayles, 91.
 Baþeþ, bathes, 167.
 Baylifs, bailiffs, 122; Lat. *bajulus*, Mid. Lat. *bajula*, 1, a bearer; 2, a nurse; 3, a tutor. From *bajulus* comes Fr. *bailli*.
 Baylyes, the jurisdiction of a *bailiff* (a term once applied to persons holding high offices, as regents, &c.); hence a kingdom, 26.
 Bayþ, buys, 23, 76, 90, 91, 194, 241. See Begge, to buy.
 Be, by, 1, 6, 7, 8, *et passim*; for, 13; though, 12; A.S. *be*, *bi*, *big*.
 Beat, beateth, 30, 69, 116.
 Beate, to beat, 210, 236.
 Bea3, bowed, 239; A.S. *bugan*, *beogan* (*pt.* *beah*, *beag*, *pp.* *bogen*, *bugen*).
 Beca3t, *pp.* beguiled, ensnared, 54, 125.
 Becharme, charmeth, 257.
 Beches, beech trees, 23.
 Beclepieþ, Beclepp, embraceth, 88.
 Beclepieþ, *pl.* plead for, 40.
 Becleppe, to embrace, clip, 46; A.S. *be-clyppan*.
 Becleppe, to raise a clatter, 66; A.S. *clappan*, to clap, move; cf. O.E. *clappe*, talk.
 Becleppeþ, clasps, embraces, 15.
 Becleppinge, embrace, 96.
 Beclept, *pp.* embraced, 15.
 Beclepte, *pret.* embraced, 240.
 Becom, became, 6, 240.
 Becomeþ, *pl.* become, 78, 92.
 Becomþ, becomes, 19, 43, 51, 91.
 Bed, prayed, 191, 215; A.S. *bæd*, *pret.* of *biððan*, to pray.
 Bed, 31; obliq. cas. *bedde*, 177.
 Bedeaweþ, bedeweþ, moisteneth, 95, 116.
 Bedele, messenger, 37.
 Bedeles, 39, 43; A.S. *bydel*, a preacher, messenger; Eng. *beadle*.
 Bedes, prayers, 141; A.S. *béd*, a prayer.

- Begge, to buy, 17, 23, 36, 41, 44, 78, 83; to redeem, 95; A.S. *bycgan*, to buy.
- Beggeres, beggars, 36.
- Beggeþ, buys, 36, 44, 139; buy, *pl.* 39, 41.
- Begginge, buying, 38.
- Beginne, to begin, 150.
- Beginneþ, *pl.* begin, 17, 66, 119.
- Beginnynge, Begynnynge, beginning, 70, 72, 76, 97.
- Beginþ, Begynþ, begins, 51, 65, 67, 88, 99, 108, 131, 181.
- Begynneþ, *pl.* 17.
- Begonne, 2 pers. pret. sing. beganst, 71.
- Begyled, *pp.* beguiled, 76.
- Begyleþ, beguileth, 16.
- Behat, promises, 64, 170, 179, 181, 183, 201; A.S. *behátan*, to promise, vow (pret. *behát*, *pp.* *behaten*).
- Beheste, promise, vow, 67, 144, 225; A.S. *bihæst*.
- Behestes, *pl.* of *beheste*, 98.
- Behinde, Behynde, behind, 10, 45, 130.
- Behofsam, needful, 99, 192; A.S. *behóftan*, to behove, to need.
- Behorewed, defiled, dirtied, 237.
- Behot, promises, 97, 179. *See* Behat.
- Behote, *inf.* to promise, 162.
- Behote, *pp.* promised, 13, 65, 67; vowed, 231.
- Behoteþ, promiseth, 40, 42; *pl.* promise, 65.
- Behotinge, entreaty, 207.
- Behotinges, *pl.* of *behotinge*, 40, 42.
- Behouede, *pret.* behoved, 128.
- Behoueþ, behoveth, 58, 79.
- Beknaulechinge, confession, acknowledging, 32, 77.
- Beknaust, confesest, 100.
- Beknawe, *beknow*, confess, 69, 123, 132; A.S. *be-cnáwan*, to know.
- Beknaweþ, *pl.* acknowledge, 132.
- Beknawynge, knowledge, 126.
- Bekneu, acknowledged, 215, 216.
- Beleaue, Beleue, Byleaue, belief, 2, 11, 14, 19, 29, 72, 106, 123.
- Beleaue, Beleue, Bileaue, believe, 12, 13, 151, 203.
- Belefþ, believeth, 19, 139, 151.
- Beloكة, comprehended, 97; A.S. *belucan*, to lock up, enclose.
- Beles, boils, 224; Du. *buile*, boil, swelling.
- Beleuinge, abiding, continuing, 176. *See* Bleue, Bleuinge.
- Belongeþ, appertain to, 12, 17.
- Beloukþ, includes, 99.
- Bench, 130.
- Bend, bond, tie, 48 (tie of marriage), 220.
- Bendes, bonds, 77; A.S. *bend*, a bond, band.
- Bene (*f*), prayer, petition;

- Benen, *pl.* prayers, petitions, 3, 99, 102, 114. A.S. *ben*.
- Benefices, 42, 96.
- Benefices, benefits, 96.
- Benes, prayers, petitions, 25, 51, 74, 90, 97, 105, 180.
- Beneþe, beneath, 108, 126.
- Benime, Benyme, to rob, deprive of, steal, 39, 59, 68, 79, 86, 117, 181. *See* Nime, Nyme.
- Benimþ, Benymþ, Benimeþ, Benymeþ, *3rd pers. sing.* and *pl.* of *benime*, 23, 29, 32, 38, 39, 68, 76, 77, 79, 86, 108, 218, 223, 248.
- Benome, taken from, 143.
- Benoteþ, employs, uses, 90 ; A.S. *notu*, use ; *bi-niotan*, to enjoy ; *notian*, make use of, employ.
- Bequide, bequest, will, 112 ; A.S. *be-cwéðan*, to bequeath ; *cwide*, a testament, judgment.
- Bekuydes, bequests, wills, 38.
- Berdone, burden, 84, 141.
- Bere, a bear, 14, 15, 60.
- Bere, to bear, 8, 21, 56, 83, 118 ; wear, 90 ; enjoy, possess, 101.
- Bere, *1st p. sing.* bear, 64 ; *2nd p. sing.* borest, 20 ; *subj. pres.* may bear, 217.
- Bere, barley, 141 ; A.S. *bere* ; barley = bere + lic (older forms, *barlic*, *berelich*) ; the *lic* = A.S. *leac* = plant, leek ; cf. *garlick*, *hemlock* (old form *hemlic*).
- Bere-blisse, Bear-bliss, 72.
- Bereþ, Berþ, bears, produces, 8, 20, 29, 78, 88, 97, 195, 217 ; *pl.* bear, 97, 231.
- Berieles, tomb, sepulchre, 12, 26, 228 ; A.S. *byrgels*, a sepulchre.
- Berinde, bearing, 96, 144.
- Beringe, birth, 130, 213.
- Beringe, burial, 5.
- Berke, to bark at, 179.
- Bernde, burnt, 242.
- Berne, to burn, 163, 173, 225 ; *subj. pres.* 212.
- Bernes, barns, 30 ; A.S. *bern*, (= *bere-ern*, a store-house for barley).
- Berneþ, Bernþ, *sing.* burns, *pl.* burn, 43, 74, 204, 206, 229.
- Bernide = Berninde = burning, 211.
- Berninde, Bernynde, burning, 49, 73, 107, 173, 203, 205, 207.
- Bernindeliche, ardently, 31.
- Berninge, *sb.* burning, 205, 206.
- Bernston, brimstone, 49, 130.
- Berobbeþ, *pl.* rob, 39.
- Berþe, save, preserve, 197, 251.
- Besme, broom, 172 ; A.S. *besma*, a broom, *besom* ; *besmas*, rods ; S. Prov. Eng. *bissam*, the heath plant.
- Besmet, Besmetted, defiled, besmuted, 32, 229 ; A.S. *besmitan*, to besmut, defile.
- Besnewed, made white as snow,

- 81; *besnewed* seems to stand for *besneawed*.
- Besset = be-shut, enclosed, 94; included, 97; A.S. *scyttan*, to lock up.
- Beset, shut, 231; kept secure, 232. See *Ssete*, to enclose, 263.
- Best, beast, 4, 14, 51; obliq. case, *beste*, 2, 14, 15.
- Besterlinge, emotions, 263.
- Bestes, beasts, 82.
- Bestrepeþ, Bestrepp, root up, 123, 127, 144, 150, 185, 201; A.S. *bestrypan*, to strip.
- Bet, better, 195.
- Betake, *pp.* assigned, 198; taken, 247; A.S. *betæcan*, to assign, commit.
- Betakeþ, *pl.* assign, 36; give, 235.
- Betere, better, 7, 16, 24, 100, 102.
- Betocneþ, Betokneþ, *sing.* and *pl.* betokeneth, betoken, 15, 203, 222, 236.
- Betoke, *subj.* should give, 89, 134.
- Betokned, *pp.* betokened, 199, 203, 236.
- Betoknede, *pret.* betokened, 236.
- Betuene, Betune, between, 66, 210.
- Beþ, bath, 74; A.S. *bæð*, *bepian*, to bathe.
- Beþench, *imp.* remember, *bethink*, 130, 146.
- Beþenche, remind, 101; *bethink*, 174, 178; repent, 172; A.S. *bepencan*.
- Beþenchep, *imp.* bethink, consider, 81, 242.
- Beþenchinge, *bethinking*, memory, remembrance, 105, 188, 203; repentance, thought, forethought, 183, 184, 233.
- Beþengþ, *bethinks*, remembers, considers, reminds, 18, 100, 152, 177, 246.
- Beþohte, bethought, 156.
- Beualle, befall, 107, 118.
- Beualle, *pp.* befallen, 49.
- Beualþ, befalls, 174.
- Beuealde, befolded, wrapped, 188; A.S. *befealden*, befolded.
- Beueleþ, *pl.* defile, 228.
- Beuelst, defilest, 230.
- Beuelþ, defileth, 178, 229; A.S. *befulan*, to defile; *befyled*, defiled.
- Beuelynge, defamation, false accusation. It signifies, literally, defiling, 40.
- Beuil, befell, 191.
- Beulaþeþ, flay, hence to fleece, rob, plunder, 38; A.S. *beflean*, *pret.* *beflóg*, to flay.
- Beuleaþ, *pl.* *beuleaþeþ*, rob, fleece, 182, 218; see *Beulaþeþ*.
- Beuleþ, *pl.* avoid, 61.
- Beulynge, be-flying, eschewing, avoiding, 121.
- Beuloþe, *pl. pret.* avoided, renounced, 77, 78.

- Beuly, Beuli, to fly from, flee, avoid, 9, 15, 60, 74, 86, 121, 139, 178, 179, 205 ; A.S. *befleon* (*beflēogan*), to flee away, escape.
- Beulyȝþ, Beulyȝt, avoideth, 73, 75, 136, 226.
- Bewepe, to weep.
- Bewepþ, beweepeth, 51.
- Beyende, beyond, 165.
- Beyete, begotten, 130, 147, 224 ; A.S. *be-gétan* (pt. *begeat*, pp. *begeaten*), to beget.
- Bezeche, beseech, 194.
- Bezecheþ, Bezechip, *pl.* beseech, 98, 106, 115.
- Bezechinge, petition, 97, 116.
- Bezechinges, petitions, 97 ; complaints, 39.
- Bezекþ, beseecheth, 117.
- Bezenge, singe, 230 ; A.S. *besengan*, to singe.
- Bezengþ, singes, 230.
- Bezет, placed, beset, 102, 152.
- Bezest, besetteth, 213.
- Bezette, *inf.* to beset, occupy, 214.
- Bezetteþ, besetteth, 207.
- Bezide, beside, 105, 126, 220, 240.
- Bezuyke, *pp.* beguiled, 76 ; A.S. *beswican*, to beguile, deceive ; O.E. *swike*, to deceive, *swikere*, a deceiver.
- Bezuykere, traitor, 171.
- Bezuykinge, Bezuykyngе, treason, 28, 43 ; deceit, 61.
- Bezuykiinges, Bezuykynges, frauds, 23, 61.
- Bezyinge, be-seeing, forethought, 183, 184.
- Bi, be, 49, 105, 135, 136, 163, 177, 220.
- Bide = *bidde*, *imp.* pray, 210.
- Bidde, we, let us pray, 127 ; *2nd pers subj.* 114.
- Bidde, Bydde, pray, entreat, sup-plicate, 1, 5, 7, 49, 52, 87, 99, 194, 207, 209, 210, 211, 212 ; A.S. *biddan*.
- Biddeþ, prayeth, 211.
- Biddeþ, Byddeþ, *pl.* pray, 99, 113, 114, 116, 117, 210, 219 ; *imp.* 209.
- Biddinde, praying, 219.
- Biddinge, command, 12 ; entreaty, 194.
- Biddinges, Biddynges, commands, 38, 42 ; prayers, 219.
- Bied, Bieþ, Byeþ, are, 138, 157, 200, 204.
- Bihote. *See* Behote.
- Biginnynge, beginning, 138.
- Bileauе, Byleauе, Byleue, belief, 19, 176, 186.
- Bint, binds, 15, 33.
- Bisemere, scorn ; *pl.* *bisemeres*, *bisemers*, mockings, derisions, 22, 52, 58, 156 ; A.S. *bismér*, reproach, mockery.
- Bisemereþ, mocketh, 22 ; A.S. *bismerian*, to mock, insult.
- Bisihede, care, 228.

Bisiuol, busi-ful, officious, 226.
 Bissop, bishop, 189.
 Bissopes, Bissoppes, Bissoppe, 189, 191, 236.
 Bissopriches, bishopricks, 42.
 Bist, biddest, 209.
 Bisy, busy, officious, 58.
 Bisyhede, Bysihede, Bysyhede, labour, care, 164, 228; pas-time, 231.
 Bit, Byt, prayeth, asketh, 110, 114, 116, 134, 209, 211, 218, 222.
 Bit, biddeth, 116, 145.
 Bite, *sb.* bite, morsel, 223.
 Biter, Byter, *sing.* bitter, 82, 211.
 Bitere, *pl.* bitter, 83.
 Biterhede, Byterhede, bitterness, 28.
 Biternesse, bitterness, 15, 139, 172.
 Biteþ, *pl.* bite, 70.
 Bitinde, biting, pungent, 143.
 Bualþ, befalls, 57.
 Blame, 23.
 Blameþ, blameth, 17, 137.
 Blamyþ, *pl.* blame, 59, 79.
 Blasfemeþ, blaspheme, 30.
 Blasfemie, to blaspheme, 70.
 Blasfemies, Blasfemyes, blasphemies, 45, 69.
 Blasfemye, blasphemy, 57, 69.
 Blauþ, puffs, 32.
 Blawe, blow, 168.
 Blaweþ, *pl.* blow, 24.

Bleche, pale, 53; A.S. *blác*, pale; *blácan*, to fade, bleach. The root still exists in *blight*.

Blechest, hurtest, 147.

Blecheþ, injures, defaces, 40, 115; harms, injures, 238; A.S. *blæco*, spot; *blatch*, a blotch. Shoreham uses *blokne*, to be disfigured.

The thridde day he (Christ) aros aȝeyn
 Of the throuȝ (tomb) ther men hine
 leyde, in tokene

That, man, thi body arise schel

Of deithe nanmore to *blokne*. (p. 4.)

Blefde, Blefte, remained, 12, 59, 190.

Blefþ = *bi-leveþ*, remains, abides, 30, 47, 91, 177; A.S. *be-léfian* (pret. *beléþde*), to leave.

Bleften, *pl.* remained, 189.

Blench, change, 130; *Blench* is the soft form of *blink*.

Blendeþ, *pl.* make blind, 33; A.S. *blendian*, to blind.

Blest, blast, 203; A.S. *blást*, blast.

Blepeliche, joyfully, quickly, readily, 20, 50, 65, 100, 102, 177.

Blepelaker, more quickly, readily, 69, 140, 180; A.S. *bliðe*, blithe, joyful.

Bloue = *bileue*, to remain, continue, endure, 120, 203, 225, 245; persevere, 232; remain in (curl), 177; A.S. *beléfian*, to leave. See Blefde, Blefte. The

- O.E. *bileve*, *beleve*, signifies to remain, abide, continue.
- Bleuindeliche, perseveringly, 141, 208.
- Bleuinge, abiding, continuance, dwelling, 47, 72; perseverance, constancy, 215, 232.
- Blisfolle, blissful, 75, 118.
- Blisse, Blysse, Blysee, *f.* bliss, 14, 71, 90.
- Blissede, *adj. def.* blessed, 70, 87.
- Blissen, blessings, blisses, 93.
- Blisses, blessings, 77.
- Blissinge, blessing, 97, 183, 243.
- Blissings, blessings, 97.
- Blisuol, blissful, 148.
- Blisuolle, *def. f.* blissful, 118, 186.
- Blisuolliche, blissfully, 94.
- Blipe, glad, 87, 132; ready, eager, 85.
- Blod, blood, 1, 41, 87; *obliq. case*, *blode*, *bloode*, 107, 111.
- Blody, bloody, 46.
- Blondere, flatterer, one who speaks *blandly*, 61.
- Blonderes, flatterers, 60, 61, 177.
- Blondinge, flattery, 10, 57, 75.
- Blondingges, 141. "With *blanding* ne with *boste*." Shoreham's Poems, p. 14.
- Blynde, *pl.* blind, 56.
- Blyssedhede, bliss, 97.
- Blyssinges, blessings, 97.
- Boc, book, 1, 2, 5, 14, 70, 124.
- Bocherie, butchery, slaughter, 64.
- Fr. *boucher*, from *boc*, a goat.
- Boc-house, library, 1.
- Bocle, buckle, 236.
- Bodi, body, 236.
- Bodilich, bodily, 200.
- Bodiliche, Bodylyche, *adj. pl.* bodily, 90, 119, 212.
- Bodye, body, 10, 14.
- Bodyes, bodies, 8.
- Bodylich, *adj. sing.* bodily, 72; corporeal, 111, 146.
- Bok, book, 42.
- Bokes, books, 42, 61.
- Bolde, *pl.* bold, forward, 216.
- Boldeliche, *adv.* boldly, 34, 63.
- Bontep, bolteth, sifteth, 93; cf. S. Prov. Eng. *bunt*, to sift corn; Eng. *bunting*, from Bret. *bunta*, Eng. *bunt*, to knock, push.
- Bor, boar, 69.
- Bord, Borde, table, 235.
- Bore, *pp.* born, 221.
- Borgesye, citizenship, 161.
- Borgeys, Borgeyse, burgess, citizen, 161, 216.
- Boryeis, citizen, 161.
- Boryinde, piercing, 66; A.S. *bórian*, to bore.
- Borzep, take in pledge, 36.
- Bosme, bosom, 163.
- Bost, beast, 71.
- Bosyne, sound, 137; A.S. *bysen*, command.
- Bote, but, only, except, 5, 22, 65, 72.
- Boterel, toad, 187.

- Bote-yef, except, 6, 7, 10, *et passim*.
 Botme, bottom, 140 ; A.S. *botm*.
 Botoun, button, 86, 134.
 Bouerȝe = borȝe, save, 134.
 Bougeren, heretics, 258.
 Bougre, heretic, 19.
 Bougres, heretics, 69, 134 (it is derived from the *Bulgarians*, a Slavonian tribe).
 Boundes, limits, 207.
 Boune, O.Fr. a reed, rule, 150.
 Bourdedest, jestedest, 20.
 Boure, chamber, 226 ; A.S. *búr*.
 Bouȝe, to obey, be obedient to, bow to, 8, 20, 21, 68, 140.
 Bouȝeȝ, *pl.* obey, 143 ; *sbj.* 68 ; A.S. *bugan*, to bend.
 Bouȝinde, prone, *lit.* bending to, 157.
 Bouȝ, *imp.* obey, 194.
 Bouȝinge, *sb.* bending, inclining, 153.
 Bouȝȝ, inclineth, 154 ; obeys, 20, 140, 141.
 Boȝ, bough, 2, 3, 4, 17, 65 ; boȝe, *obliq. case*, 22, 23, 58.
 Boȝes, boughs, 3, 4, 17, 65, 68, 191, 219.
 Boȝe, bow, 45.
 Boȝen, *pret. pl.* obeyed, 84.
 Boȝsam, obedient, 59. This word still exists, in *buzom*, O.E. *boghsam*, *bughsom*.
 Boȝsamliche, obediently, 70.
 Boȝsamnesse, obedience, 101, 140, 147, 217.
 Boȝte, bought, 133.
 Boȝȝ, Bouȝȝ, obeys, 184.
 Boystoyse, boisterous, 103.
 Brayinde, howling, roaring, 73.
 Bread, bread, 113 ; *obliq. c.* breade, 113, 235.
 Breȝ = breaks, 40.
 Brech-gerdel, a girdle, 205.
 Bredale, bridal, wedding, 118, 223.
 Bredales, marriages, 75.
 Brede, breadth, 105.
 Bredgome, bridegroom, 233.
 Brek, broke, 16.
 Breke, to break, 51, 52, 116.
 Breken, *pt. pl.* broke, 64, 213. ;
 Brekeȝ, *pl.* break, 41.
 Brekȝ, breaks, 7, 8, 16, 41, 178.
 Brekinge, breach, 48, 261.
 Brekynde, brittle, breaking, 82.
 Bren, bran, 210.
 Brengē, *imp. pl.* bring ye, 1.
 Brengē, to bring, 87.
 Brengēȝ, *pl.* bring, 33, 83.
 Brengȝ, brings, 118, 128, 141, 218.
 Brenston, brimstone, 73.
 Bres, brass, 203.
 Bridel, *obliq. case*, bridle, 249, 254.
 Briȝt, bright, pure, 74.
 Briȝte, *adj. pl.* pure, 73, 108.
 Briȝte, *adv.* clearly, 72.
 Briȝtliche, brightly, clearly, 150, 200.
 Briȝtnesse, Bryȝtnesse, brightness, 81, 82, 143, 200.

- Broches, brooches, 229.
 Bronches, branches, 9.
 Brondes, brands, 205, 240.
 Brotel, brittle, 129 ; A.S. *breotan*,
 to bruise, break ; O. Norse,
 briota.
 Brotelhede, brittleness, poverty,
 130.
 Broperhede, Bropperrede, brother-
 hood, 110, 146.
 Bropren, brethren, 101, 102, 149.
 This form is used by Shoreham.
 Brozte, brought, 118, 190.
 Bryad, bread, 107, 110, 111.
 Bryest, breast, 175.
 Bryesten, breasts, 247.
 Buones, bones, 64, 148.
 Burdes, jests, 56 ; Fr. *bourde*, a
 jest ; Bret. *bourd*, deceit, joke.
 Busse, bush, 28.
 By, to be, 7, 14, 88 ; is, 7, 14,
 16, 85 ; are, 9.
 Byad, offered, 41 ; A.S. *beád*,
 from *beóðan*, to offer.
 Byat, beateth, 100.
 Bydde, Bidde, to pray for, 98, 99,
 113, 114.
 Byddynges, Byddinges, prayers,
 petitions, 100 ; entreaties, 40.
 Byddeþ, *pl.* pray, 107, 109, 113,
 116, 117, 118.
 Byeam, beam.
 Byenne, to be, 131, 169.
 Byet, Byeþ, are, 1, 3, 6, 8, 66, *imp.*
 188.
 Byet, begetteth, 181.
 Byete, *subj.* beat, 191.
 Byetinge, begetting, 216.
 Bygginge, beginning, 11.
 Byinge, being, 82, 103.
 Byknaue, acknowledge, confess,
 123, 182.
 Bylefþ, believeth, 19.
 Byleue, Byleaue, belief, 11, 12,
 19, 69, 101, 112, 114.
 Bynime, rob, deprive of, 39.
 Bynt, Byndeþ, bindeth, binds,
 77, 97.
 Byrie, bier, 258.
 Bysemeres, scorns, derision, 63.
 Bysi, busy. *See* Bisye.
 Bysihede, Bysyhede, diligence,
 care, anxiety, 55, 93 ; occupa-
 tion, amusement, 231.
 Bysihedes, occupations, 165.
 Bysinesse, labour, trouble, care,
 56.
 Bysye, *pl.* busy, officious, 226.
 Byt, bites, 61, 62, 66.
 Byt, biddeth, prayeth, 29, 110,
 135.
 Byter, bitter, sour, 82, 129.
 Bytere, *pl.* 150.
 Byteþ, *pl.* bite, 61.
 Byþ = byeþ, are, 17, 26, 102.
 Byuealde, befolded, 8.
 Byuly, avoid, 134.
 Byzylyche, busily, 79.
 Cachie, catch, to drive out or
 from, 178 ; O.Fr. *chacier*,
 cachier ; cf. modern phrase

- 'caught off.' See Glossary
 to 'Genesis and Exodus.'
 'Cacchyn, away, fugo, agito,
 abigo, effugo.' Pr. Parv.
 Calices, chalices, 41.
 Calketreppen, pits or snares, 131 ;
 A.S. *calca-trippa*, trap, snare ;
 cf. Fr. *chausse-trappe*, caltrap,
 tribulus, murinus (Wr. Voc.
 140), K. Alys, l. 60, 70. See
 note on this word in Promp-
 torium, vol. i. p. 59.
 Calowe-mous, bat, 27 ; A.S. *calu*,
caluw, bald ; O.H. Ger. *chula-*
wer, bald. The bat is some-
 times called a *reremouse*, from
 the A.S. *hrère*, raw.
 Can, knows, 58, 94, 135.
 Candele, *f.* candle, candelie, 102,
 206.
 Caorsins, Sarasins, usurers, 35.
 Capiteles, chapters, 1.
 Capiteles, capitals, 43.
 Capons, 38.
 Cardinales, Cardinals, *adj. pl.* car-
 dinal, head, 3, 123, 124.
 Cardinals, *sb.* 124.
 Carkeþ, produces, 230.
 Caroyne, carrion, 86.
 Carten, carts, 35.
 Cartere, carter, 160.
 Cas, case, chance, as in *be-cas* =
 perchance, 36, 42, 70, 115.
 Castel, Castele, castle, 1, 43,
 121, 154 ; *pl.* casteles, 149.
 Catel, wealth, 35, 36 ; O.Fr. *catel*, *chatel* ; Lat. *capitale*.
 Cause, 224.
 Cedre, cedar, 131.
 Cellen, cells, 267.
 Chaceþ, drives, 171.
 Chald, Cheald, cold, chilled, 47,
 138, 152, 170 ; A.S. *ceald*,
cald, cold.
 Challenge, false claim, 34.
 Challengeþ, *pl.* accuse, 43 ; O.Fr.
chalengier ; Lat. *calumniari*.
 See Glossary to Hampole's P.
 of C.
 Chalis, chalice, 167.
 Chambren, chambers, 224.
 Chancelier, chancellor, 243.
 Chapele, chapel, 56.
 Chapfare, Chapuare, chaffer, un-
 fair dealing, 34, 35, 44, 90,
 120 ; *pl.* cheapfares, 36, 45.
 Chapfari, *vb.* to chaffer, trade,
 162 ; A.S. *ceáp*, a bargain,
 sale ; *ceáþian*, to buy ; *férian*,
 to bear, carry.
 Chapitele, Chapitle, chapter, 136,
 220.
 Chapman, merchant, 77, 158 ;
pl. chapmen, 76.
 Chapuare, chaffer, 191.
 Chargeþ, loadeth, 97 ; see R. of
 Gl. 13, 416.
 Charitable, 145.
 Charite, 79 ; *pl.* charites, 83.
 Charmeres, charmers, 69.
 Charmes, 43.
 Chast, Chaste, chaste, 203, 221.

- Chastete, Chastetee, 4, 159, 181, 202.
- Chasteþ, chastise, 17, 69, 100, 147, 156.
- Chasthede, chastity, 230.
- Chasti, to chastise, chasten, 8, 148, 153, 221; O.Fr. *chastier*.
- Chastinge, chastening, chastisement, 68.
- Chastisement, 17.
- Chastliche, chastely, in purity, 221.
- Chaynen, Chaines, chains, 214, 264.
- Cheake, cheek, 248.
- Chealde, *pl.* cold, 242.
- Cheap, cheape market, 36; 'grat cheap,' 'greate cheape,' abundant, plentiful, 256. Cf. *cheep*; pretium. Pr. Parv.
- Cheapfare, chaffer, 35, 36. See Chapfare.
- Cheapfares, chaffers, bargains, 36, 45.
- Cheas, chose, 77.
- Cheaste, chiding, strife, 30, 65, 66; *pl.* cheastes, 57, 138; A.S. *ceast*, strife, dispute, contention. See Piers Plough. l. 8946.
- Chef, chaff, 62, 137, 138; *obliq. case*, cheue, 210; A.S. *ceaf*; O. Dutch *kaf*.
- Cheker, chess-board, 45, 46.
- Chele, chill, cold, 75; A.S. *cēle*; O.H.Ger. *chuoli*; *pl.* Cheles, 124.
- Chenaille, O.Fr. dogs, 112.
- Cherche, church, 7, 8.
- Cherchen, churches, 30, 43.
- Cherchetounes, church-towns, 41.
- Cherl, churl, 76; A.S. *ceorl*; O. Dutch *keerl* (vir, rusticus); *pl.* cherles, 112.
- Ches, chess, 52.
- Cheue, chaff, 210. See Chef.
- Chewynge, *sb.* chewing, 111.
- Chide, 67.
- Chidinge, *sb.* chiding, strife, 30, 65, 66.
- Chiere = *chere*, cheer, 155, 193; O.Fr. *chère*, countenance, entertainment, cheer.
- Chiese, Chise, Chyese = *cheose*, 86, 93, 101, 165; A.S. *ceósan*, to choose; O.Sax. *kiosan*.
- Chieseþ, *pl.* choose, 45.
- Child, *neut.* 58, 84; *obliq. case*, childe, 82.
- Childbedde, 224.
- Childhede, childhood, 82.
- Childhedes, childishnesses, 207.
- Childi, to bring forth a child, 224. See Orm. 156. *Childin*, parere (Pr. Parv.).
- Chinne, chin, 50.
- Chise, choose, 93.
- Chomberier, chamberer, 171.
- Chombre, chamber, room, 215.
- Chonge, change, 104.
- Chongeþ, changeth, 129; *pl.* change, 42.
- Chongi, to change, 104.

- Chonginde, changing, 104, 105, 120.
- Chyaste = *cheaste*, strife, 67.
- Chyese, choose, 86.
- Chyest, chooseth, 126.
- Chyewe = *cheowe*, to chew, 111 ; A.S. *ceowan*, O.H. Ger. *chiuwan*, to chew.
- Chyezop, *pl.* choose, 165.
- Chyazinge = *cheosinge*, election, 42.
- Cite, city, 49 ; *pl.* cites, 43, 149.
- Clauen, claws, 61 ; A.S. *clā* ; O.Sax. *clawa* ; O.H. Ger. *chloa* ; *pl.* *chlauen*, claw.
- Claustres, cloisters, 267.
- Clene, clean, pure, 73.
- Clenlich, Clenliche, *adj.* clean, 45, 216.
- Clenliche, cleanly, in purity, 6, 48, 76, 120, 138.
- Clennesse, purity, 75, 201, 202.
- Clensi, Clensy, to cleanse, purify, 75, 137, 271 ; A.S. *clensian*.
- Clenzep, cleanseth, 73, 74, 88, 106, 171.
- Clepede, called, 190.
- Cleper, clapper (of a mill), 58 ; O.Dutch, *kleppen*, pulsare, sonare.
- Clepest, callest, 100.
- Clepep, calls, 17, 21, 22, 26, 58, 72, 78, 79, 81, 168.
- Clepiep, *pl.* call, 69, 72, 74, 112, 164.
- Clepie, to call, 42, 43, 64 ; A.S. *cleopian*, *clypian*, to call.
- Clepiyp = *clepyep*, call, 111.
- Cleregye, Clergie, Clergye, clergy, learning, 16, 18, 71, 78, 81, 90.
- Clergyes, sciences, 89.
- Clerek, Clierk, clerk, scholar, 23, 25, 49, 78.
- Clerekes, Clerkes, Clierkes, scholars, 39, 42, 46, 78.
- Clernesse, clearness, brightness, 95.
- Cleuiinde, Cleuiynde, cleaving, persistent, lasting, convincing, 54, 98, 107 ; A.S. *cleofian* ; O.H. Ger. *chleben*, cleave, stick to.
- Cleuiyndeliche, completely, 103.
- Cliepep = *clepep*, calls, 125.
- Cliene, clean, 224.
- Clier, Clyer, Clyre, clear, 24, 78, 104, 159, 167 ; O.Fr. *cler*.
- Clierliche, Clyerliche, clearly, 88, 155, 174, 243.
- Clifp, Clyfp, climbs, 131, 132, 145, 219 ; A.S. *clifan*, to adhere to ; O.N. *klifa*, scandere.
- Cf. O.E. *claveren*, to climb ; Dutch *klaveren* ; Dan. *klavre*, to climb.
- Clieue, Clyue, to climb, 23, 26, 89, 127, 162.
- Cluien, *pret. pl.* climbed, 126.
- Clieup, *pl.* climb, ascend, 164, 246.

- Clom, silence, 266. *See* Clomsed,
 in Glossary to Hampole.
 Cloþ, cloth, 45 ; *obliq. case*, cloþe,
 188 ; *pl.* clothes, 47, 128.
 Cloþede, *pt.* clothed, 133.
 Cloþeþ, *imp.* clothe, 265.
 Cloþinge, *sb.* clothing, 154, 165.
 Cloystre, cloister, 151, 242.
 Cloysters, 67.
 Clyrer, clearer, 267.
 Coccou, Cockou, cuckow, 22, 59.
 Col, coal, *obliq. case*, cole, 82,
 126, 205 ; *pl.* coles, 205 ; A.S.
col.
 Collacious, 155.
 Colour, Colur, Colurs, 15, 62, 81,
 177.
 Colrik, 157.
 Colt, Colte, 185, 220.
 Coluer, Colure, dove, 142 ; A.S.
culfre, a dove, pigeon ; O.E. *pl.*
colueren.
 Coluer-hous, dove-cote, 142.
 Com, came, 26 ; *imp. sing.* 185.
 Come, *inf.* to come, 87, 98 ; *subj.*
pl. 93, 116 ; *imp. pl.* 137.
 Comen, *pl. pret.* came, 130.
 Comene, *gerund*, to come, 106,
 152.
 Comeþ, *pl.* come, 27, 91, 92.
 Cominde, Comynde, coming, 264.
 Comyde=Comynde, coming, 264.
 Commun, Comun, Commune, com-
 mon, 37, 48, 102, 147.
 Communliche, commonly, 145,
 146.
 Communy, to share, 102.
 Comparer, 243.
 Comparisoun, 81, 92, 235.
 Compassion, 148.
 Complexion, 157.
 Comst, comest, 239.
 Comste, comest thou, 264.
 Comþ, Comeþ, cometh, come, 18,
 19, 26, 51, 87, 89, 161.
 Comunliche, commonly, 145.
 Comynge-aȝen, return, 87.
 Conceyueþ, conceiveth, 136.
 Condecendre, condescend, 157.
 Condicion, 173.
 Condicions, conditions, 172.
 Condueþ, leadeth, 122.
 Confermi, Confermy, confirm, 109,
 121.
 Confermeþ, confirm, 105, 106,
 122.
 Conferminge, confirming, 14.
 Confessour, 172.
 Confort, comfort, 96, 142.
 Conforted, 160.
 Conforteþ, comforts, 111, 160,
 161.
 Conforti, to comfort, 160.
 Confusion, Confuzion, 229.
 Conioun, 76.
 Conne, *inf.* to know, can, be able,
 21, 70, 73, 94, 98, 104, 117,
 130, 148 ; *pl.* 46, 58, 59,
 82, 86, 100, 126, 132 ; *2nd*
pers. 118 ; A.S. *cunnan*.
 Conneþ, *pl.* know, 249.
 Connynge, knowledge, 115, 122.

- Consayle, 122.
 Consentede, *pret.* 249.
 Consentemens, Consentement,
 consent, 11, 19.
 Consenti, to consent, 10, 73, 117,
 170, 176.
 Consenting, 117, 176.
 Conspiracions, conspiracies, 23.
 Constance, constancy, 167.
 Contac, Contak, contest, dispute,
 15, 40; *pl.* Contakes, 63.
 Contemplacion, 204, 247.
 Contemplatif, Contemplatiue, 199,
 247.
 Contrarie, Contrarye, contrary,
 14, 136, 151.
 Contraries, 123.
 Contrarious, 28.
 Contraye, country, 130.
 Conuersacioun, 96, 112, 241.
 Coppes, cups, 30.
 Corage, courage, 164.
 Corde, 58.
 Corn, 62, 140; *pl.* cornes (grains),
 233.
 Cornardyes, deceits, 130.
 Cornees (*O.Fr.*), customs or duties
 on corn and cattle, 38.
 Cornyeres, corners, 124.
 Coroune, crown, 168, 169.
 Corounede, *pl.* crowned, 234.
 Corounes, crowns, 15, 116, 169.
 Corsinge, Corsynge, cursing, 28,
 97.
 Cort, court, 137, 256.
 Cortays, courteous, 112; *O.Fr.*
 cortois.
 Cortayseliche, Corteisliche, courte-
 ously, 106, 118, 160, 195.
 Comp. Cortayslaker, 163.
 Cortaysie, Cortaysye, courtesy,
 civility, 36, 97, 98.
 Corneys, courteous, 21, 22, 35,
 113. *See* Cortays.
 Corneysye, Corteyzie, courtesy,
 75, 118; *pl.* corneysyes, 162.
 Cortoys, courteous, 100, 188.
 Corrupeion, 227.
 Corrupt, 82.
 Cost, 58, 113, 119, 137, 176;
 O.Dutch kost, sumptus, expen-
 sum.
 Costes, expenses, 40.
 Costnede, cost, 145.
 Costneþ, costeth, 75, 121.
 Costningge, expense, 151.
 Costuolle, dear, expensive, 229.
 Cosyn, Cosyne, cousin, 89.
 Cou, cow, 56; *pl.* Ken, 191.
 Couaitise, Couaytise, Couaytyse,
 covetousness, 2, 11, 16, 34,
 125, 154.
 Couaytous, Couaytouse, covetous,
 80, 136, 154, 197.
 Couche, 171.
 Couent, convent, 110, 219. *Cf.*
 Covent Garden.
 Coueytise, covetousness, 137.
 Coupe, cup, *pl.* coupes, 35.
 Coustouse, expensive, dear, 228;
 O.Fr. coust, expense, cost.
 Coupe, could, knew, 105, 126, 133.

- Coupen, Copen, *pl.* could, knew, 78, 168.
- Crammeles, crumbs, grains, 253.
- Crane, 56.
- Crayme, Creyme, chrism, cream, 41, 93.
- Credo, creed, 12.
- Creft, *obliq. case*, craft, art, power, 35, 45, 90, 116, 157; A.S. *craft*, O.Fris. *kraft*.
- Creftes, handicrafts, 178.
- Crete, cradle (cf. mod. Eng. *crate*), 137. Crate is generally derived from Lat. *crates*, wicker or hurdle work. It. *crate*, a hurdle; but *crete*, a cradle, may be from A.S. *crata*, a cart.
- Cristen, *sing.* Christian, 93.
- Cristendom, Cristendome, Christendom, christening, Christianity, 64, 101, 145.
- Cristene, *sing. def. form*, Christian, 165.
- Cristene, *pl.* Christian, 79, 93, 114, 145.
- Cristesmesse, Christmas, 213.
- Cristni, to christen, baptize, 107.
- Cristninge, christening 14, 74, 107, 119.
- Crokede, *pl.* crooked, 224.
- Croki, to crook, curl, 177.
- Crouche, cross, 111.
- Crouchen, crosses, 41.
- Crueteté, 15.
- Cryepe, = *creope*, creep, move, 107; A.S. *creopian*.
- Curiouseliche, curiously, carefully, 176.
- Daies, days, 198.
- Damezele, damsel, 72.
- Damnede, 51.
- Damneþ, condemns, 115.
- Damni, condemn, damn, 137.
- Danes = deanes, vales, dales, 39, 59; *dean*, A.S. *den*, *denu*, is a common element in local names in the S. of England.
- Dar, dare, 32, 67, 70, 83.
- Daye (*obliq. case* of day), 7, 13, 14.
- Dayes, days, 7, 13.
- Daynede, deigned, 76, 126.
- Dayneþ, deigneth, 18, 196.
- Dazes, messe dazes, days, 214.
- Deade, *pl.* dead, 86.
- Deadlich, deadly, 47, 223.
- Deadwed, mortgage, 36.
- Deaþe (*obliq. case*), death, 87, 129; *deaþes* (*gen. sing.*), 130; A.S. *deadþ*.
- Deau, dew, 91, 136, 144; A.S. *deaw*.
- Deawe (*obliq. case*), dew, 91.
- Decendeþ, descendeth, 123.
- Decendi, to descend, 123.
- Deceyued, deceived, 79.
- Deceyui, to deceive, 82.
- Deciple, disciple, 13, 96.
- Dedbote, satisfaction, amend, 32, 33; A.S. *dæd-bot*.
- Dede, did, put, placed, caused,

- 78, 86, 114, 133, 211, 216.
 Dede, *sb.* deed, 10, 12, 21, 74.
 Deden, *pret. pl.* did, caused, made, 72, 78, 181.
 Dedes, deeds, 10, 73, 137.
 Dedest, didst, 21.
 Defaced, obliterated, 190.
 Defayled, wearied, overcome (with weariness,) 33.
 Defaute, lack, want, 33, 73, 261 ; *pl.* defautes, 73, 78, 108, 131, 132.
 Defendeþ, defends, excuses, 22, 61.
 Defendeþ, *pl.* defend, excuse, 38, 69.
 Defendi, to defend, 157.
 Defouled, defiled, 167.
 Defoulent, defileth, 182.
 Defouli, defile, 221.
 Degres, Degrez, degrees, 123, 267.
 Del, deal, part, 17, 86, 175 ; A.S. *dæl*.
 Dele, to separate, 76 ; A.S. *dælan*.
 Deles, Delles, divisions, parts, 17, 50, 60, 153 ; properties, 125.
 Delices, delights, 24.
 Deliteþ, delighteth, 47.
 Deliti, Delyty, to delight, 82, 91.
 Deliure, *imp.* deliver, 110, 118.
 Deliured, Delyured, *pp.* delivered, 87, 118.
 Deliurede, *pret.* delivered, 95, 128.
 Deliuri, Delyuri, to deliver, 12, 13, 103, 117, 198.
 Deliureþ, delivereth, 128.
 Deliureonse, liberty, 86.
 Delles, parts, 164.
 Delue, delve, dig, undermine, 108 ; A.S. *delf-an*, to dig, delve.
 Delyty, to delight, 82.
 Delyury, to deliver, 270.
 Demde, judged, 175.
 Deme, to *deem*, judge, decide, discriminate, 13, 74, 76, 82, 126 ; A.S. *déman*, to judge.
 Demere, judge, 12, 62, 131, 138 ; A.S. *démere*.
 Demeres, judges, 39, 215, 227.
 Demþ, judgeth, deemeth, 27, 28, 74, 125, 138.
 Demynges, opinions, censures, 27.
 Denyes, deaneries, 42.
 Depe, to dip, 106 ; A.S. *depan*.
 Depþ, dippeth, 107.
 Derie, to hurt, 126, 166 ; A.S. *derian*, *derigan*, to hurt, harm, annoy.
 Deriynde, hurtful, injurious, 63.
 Derne, secret, 143 ; A.S. *dyrne*.
 Derrer, dearer, 36.
 Derye, to hurt, injure. *See* Derie.
 Deryinde, hurtful, injurious, 63.
 Des, dice, 45.
 Descendeþ, descends, 123.
 Descrieueþ, *pl.* describe, 168.
 Deserited, disinherited, 30.
 Desert, Dezert, 67, 131, 240.
 Desertesoun, desertion, 48.
 Desgised, distinguished, 97.
 Desgyzeþ, disguiseth, 158.
 Desiri, to desire, 244.

- Desordene, inordinate, 46.
 Despayred, 34.
 Despendi, to spend. Despendeþ,
 spendeth, 19, 41, 53, 187.
 Despenſe, ſpending, coſt, 21, 55.
 Deſpit, contempt, deſpiſing, de-
 ſpite, 19, 20, 21, 69.
 Deſputede, 79.
 Deſſpendoure, almoner (treas-
 urer), 190.
 Deſt, doſt, 118, 129, 159.
 Deſtempringe, diſtempering, 153.
 Deſtincti, diſtinguiſh, 152.
 Deſtorbe, diſturb. Deſtorbed,
 diſturbed, 212. Deſtorbeþ, diſ-
 turbs, 179.
 Deſtorbinge, diſturbance, 225.
 Deſtrud, deſtroyed, 30.
 Deſtrue, to deſtroy, 28, 117.
 Deſtrueþ, Deſtruþ, deſtroyeth,
 deſtroy, 35, 36, 43.
 Deſtraccion, 10.
 Dette, debt, 35, 120, 135, 222.
 Dettes, debts, 113, 115.
 Deþ, doeth, cauſeth, placeth, 31,
 58, 67, 97, 102 ; ‘deþ aye,’
 breaketh, doth againſt, 57.
 Deuines = deuineres, diuiners, 19.
 Deniſi, deuſe, name, tell, 73, 100,
 103, 144.
 Deuocion, Deuocioun, 33, 107,
 136, 210, 226.
 Deuouteliche, deuoutly, 134, 211,
 215, 225.
 Diaknen, deacons, 190.
 Diaymont, diamond, 187.
 Dich, ditch, 57.
 Diciplines, 240.
 Diere, Dyere, dear, beloved, 36,
 44 ; dearly, 194.
 Dierþe, dearness, ſcarcity, 256.
 Dieuel, Dyeuel, devil, 15.
 Difference, 10, 210.
 Digneliche, worthily, 20.
 Diligence, 238.
 Diligent, 32, 220.
 Diligentliche, diligently, 70.
 Dingneté, dignity, 24, 112, 119,
 145.
 Dingnetes, Dyngnetes, dignities,
 26, 42.
 Dingneſte, worthieſt, 109.
 Dingnelyche, worthily, properly,
 267.
 Diſcord, 43, 75, 157.
 Diſcordance, 259.
 Diſcrecion, 242, 256, 255.
 Diſete = Diſeſe, ſorrow, grief, 57.
 Diſordene, inordinate, immoder-
 ate, unreſtrained, 34, 48.
 Diſordenliche, immoderately, 55,
 259.
 Diſpendede, expended, 128.
 Diſpendeþ, } paſs the time, ſpend,
 Deſpendeþ, } 7.
 Diſpoyly, ſpoil, rob, 45.
 Diſſiplines, diſciplines, 236, 250.
 Diſſuol, diſhful, 120.
 Diſtemperance, diſtempering, 153.
 Diuers, obſtinate, 68.
 Diuers, Diuerſe, diuerſe, different,
 15, 42, 124, 244.

- Diuerses, *pl.* various, 162.
 Diuerseþ, differs, 124.
 Diȝt, orders, directs, prepares, 11, 24, 124, 147, 222.
 Diȝte, to order, direct, ordain, separate, put from, 210 ; A.S. *diht*, a disposing, ordering ; *dihtan*, to order, arrange.
 Diȝte, should distribute, 147.
 Diȝtere, director, 100 ; A.S. *dihtere*.
 Diȝteþ, *pl.* direct, adorn, 7, 47.
 Diȝtinge, decoration, adorning, 24, 47, 215.
 Diȝtinges, divisions, 17.
 Do, put, cause, 210 ; 247.
 Do, *pp.* done, 68, 124.
 Dobleþ, dobleþ, doubleth, 22, 48.
 Doere, deer, 135.
 Doinde, doing, 194.
 Dol, division, 112. *See* Del.
 Doles, divisions, 17.
 Dolue, should delve, break into, 263.
 Dom, *obliq. case*, Dome, doom, judgment, opinion, 6, 10, 13, 37, 74 ; justice, equity, 113, 124, 127, 148 ; A.S. *dóm*.
 Domb, dumb, 1, 179.
 Dombe, *pl.* dumb, 56.
 Domes, verdicts, 40.
 Domesman, judge, 115.
 Domesmen, judges, 38, 44.
 Done, to do, to be done, 8, 9, 11, 68, 74.
 Dong, *obliq. case*, Donge, dung, 61, 75, 77, 81, 137, 216.
 Donghel, dunghill, 81, 230.
 Dore, door, 210, 255.
 Doreward, doorkeeper, 121, 263.
 Dorilot, 177.
 Dorre, Dorren, *pl.* dare, 22, 32, 78.
 Dorste, *pl.* durst, 143.
 Dorstest, durst, 73.
 Doþ, *pl.* doth, place, set, cause, 69, 72, 73.
 Doumb, Doumbe, dumb, 51, 224.
 Doust, dust, 26, 108.
 Doȝ, dough, 205.
 Doȝter, daughter, 26.
 Doȝtren, daughters, 140.
 Draf, dreggs, 93.
 Dragoune, 174.
 Draye, dry, 137, 240.
 Draȝe, to draw, lead to, lead out, 10, 12, 77, 79, 137, 186.
 Draȝe, *pp.* drawn.
 Draȝþ, draweth, leadeth, 15, 43, 100 ; taketh away, 40, 41 ; treats, 45.
 Draȝþ, *pl.* draw, lead, 43, 147.
 Draȝþe, treatise, 251, 260.
 Drede, fear, 4, 32, 74.
 Drede, doubt, 105.
 Dredeþ, *pl.* dread, fear, 74, 84, 86, 138.
 Dreduol, dreadful, fearful, cautious, timid, 14, 15, 16, 22, 70, 144.
 Dreduolle, *pl.* fearful, 116 ; terrible, 42, 70 ; horrible, 189.

- Dreduoller, more fearful, more cautious, 117.
 Drench, *sb.* drink, 130.
 Drenche, to drink; 3rd *sing.* Dringþ, 251, 248.
 Dret, dreadeth, 26, 34, 116, 125, 203.
 Drinkeres, drinkers, 47.
 Drineþ, drinketh, 137, 245, 247.
 Drinkþ, drinketh, 95, 251.
 Drinkeþ, *pl.* drink, 248.
 Dronke, *pp.* drunken, 75, 107, 127, 247.
 Dronkehede, drunkenness, 260.
 Dronkenese, drunkenness, 248.
 Drope, drop, 75, 91, 92, 189.
 Dropen, drops, 84, 92.
 Dropes, drops, 92.
 Dro3, drew, led out, 13.
 Dro3en, treated, 164.
 Druzþe, drought, 68.
 Dryfþ, driveth, 75.
 Dryngþ, drencheth, 248.
 Dyacne, deacon, 190.
 Dyad, Dyead, *s.* dead, 12, 71, 82.
 Dyad, dead, 126.
 Dyade, *pl.* dead, 13, 30.
 Dyade, *obliq. case*, 263.
 Dyadlich, Dyeadlich, *s.* mortal, deadly, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 12, 73, 110, 144.
 Dyadliche, Dyeadliche, *pl.* and *def. form* of the *adj.*, 9, 70, 113.
 Dyadliche, Dyeadliche, *adv.* deadly, 6, 7, 86, 225.
 Dyaf, deaf, 1.
 Dyakne, deacon, 225.
 Dyaknes, deacons, 235.
 Dyamod, = Dyamond, diamond.
 Dyaþ, Dyeaþ, *obliq. case*, Dyaþe, dyeaþe, 7, 12, 13, 23, 27, 69, 70, 71, 72, 86, 95.
 Dyau, deau, dew, 144.
 Dyaue, Dyeaue, deaf, 189, 211, 224.
 Dyead, dead, 240.
 Dyeadlich, mortal, 244, 247.
 Dyere, dear, precious, 36, 68, 79, 123.
 Dyere, *adv.* dearly, 73, 133, 194.
 Dyep, Dyepe, deep, 211, 264.
 Dyepenesse, deepness, depth, 105, 211.
 Dyeuel, devil, 15, 65.
 Dyeuele, *obliq. case*, 1, 16, 19, 86.
 Dyeules, devil's, 77.
 Dyeulen, Dyeules, devils, 17, 73, 83, 86.
 Dyuers, obstinate, hard, 68.
 Dyuerse, *pl.* divers, 73.
 Dy3te, disposed, ordained, 270.
 Ealde, *def.* old, 169; A.S. *eald*, old. *See* Ald.
 Ealde, *pl.* old, 102, 166.
 Ealdinge, becoming old; 95, A.S. *ealdian*, to grow old.
 Eare, ear, 189.
 Earen, ears, 204, 249.
 Ech, *obliq. case* Eche, each, 11, 12, 17, 18, 62, 71, 104.

- Echedaye, each day, 16,
 Echedayes, *adv.* daily, 112.
 Echen (of, to, ine), each, 11, 13,
 63, 119, 121, 122, 124, 125,
 147.
 Eddre, adder, serpent, 26, 61,
 150 ; A.S. *æddre*.
 Eddren, serpents, 61, 203.
 Edefie, 197.
 Eft, Efte, again, 12, 13, 33, 71,
 80.
 Efter, after, 66.
 Efterþan, afterwards, 24.
 Efterward, afterward, 24, 25.
 Eftsone, Eftzone, eftsoon, 73, 229.
 Elde age, old age, 11, 69, 71,
 220 ; A.S. *elldo*, *yldo*.
 Eldeste, eldest, 6, 104.
 Eldringes, elders, 35, 118 ; A.S.
ealdor, an elder.
 Eles, O.E. *owels*, awls, 66 ; A.S.
æl, *ál*, *awel*, an awl, needle,
 hook.
 Elifans, elephant, 224.
 Elleshuer, elsewhere, 211.
 Elmesse, alms, 17, 76.
 Elmessen, *pl.* alms, 198.
 Emcristen = O.E. *evencristen*,
 fellow-christian, 10, 199 ; A.S.
em. (in comp.) even.
 Emeroydes, emeralds, 77.
 Emne, even, 151 ; A.S. *emne*.
 Emni, to make equal to, 16 ; A.S.
emnian.
 Emparement, becoming worse,
 148.
 Emperour, Emperur, 71, 78, 100,
 101.
 Empire, Empirite, empire, 85.
 Emti, empty, 143 ; A.S. *emtig*.
 Emteþ, empties, 58.
 Enchauntemens, enchantinents,
 43.
 Encheysones, Enchesons, causes,
 205, 206.
 Encheysoun, Enchesoun, Enchei-
 soun, Encheyson, reason, cause,
 68, 205, 206, 217.
 Endaunture, taming, 220.
 Ende, end, death, 33, 68.
 Endi, Endy, to end, 110, 113, 115.
 Endinge, death, end, 31, 71.
 Englis, English, 1.
 Englisse, *pl.* 5.
 Engrined, ensnared, entrapped,
 154. *See* Grine.
 Eni, Eny, *sing.* any, 16, 21, 89,
 115 ; *obliq. case*, enie, 119.
 Enie, Enye, *pl.* any, 5, 21, 68.
 Enlefte, eleventh, 14, 49 ; A.S.
endlufon, eleven ; *endlyfta*,
 eleventh.
 Enne, *acc.* one, 129, 244 ; A.S.
æn, one.
 Ennelepi, single, 75, the same
 145 ; A.S. *ænlepig*, *ánlepig*,
 each, every, singular.
 Ententifyche, attentively, 210.
 Entremes, entrées, 56.
 Entremetti, meddle with, 152.
 Enuenimed, Enuenymed, poison-
 ed, 27, 203.

- Enuenameþ, Enueymeþ, poisons, 26, 62.
- Enuie, Enuye, envy, 7, 16, 26, 67, 75.
- Enuious, *sing.* 27.
- Enuiouse, *pl.* 27.
- Eppel, apple, *obliq. case*, epple, 64, 82, 84.
- Ereges, O.Fr. heretics, 40.
- Eresye, heresy, 69.
- Eretiks, heretics, 182.
- Ermitage, hermitage, 250.
- Eritage, heritage, 36, 39, 101, 102.
- Erl, earl, 71, 86.
- Erles, 224.
- Errour, 69, 70.
- Erþan, before that, 160.
- Erþe, earth, 2, 5, 12, 67, 89.
- Erþlich, earthly, terrestrial, 75.
- Erþliche, *pl.* earthly, 6, 149, 250.
- Erye, Erie, to *ear*, 214 ; A.S. *erian*, till, plough, ear.
- Esssse, ash, 137.
- Est, eatest, 54.
- Et, *imp.* eat, 50.
- Ete, to eat, 50, 51, 95.
- Etene, to eat, 51, 146.
- Eteres, eaters, 47.
- Eteþ, *pl.* eat, 54, 61.
- Eth, eateth, 51, 52, 53, 95 ; *imp.* 54.
- Ethe, Ethene, to eat, 52, 177.
- Ethen, *pret. pl.* ate, 206.
- Etheth, *pl.* eat, 182.
- Etinge, eating, 56.
- Euel, Euele, *sing.* evil, 85 ; disease, 202.
- Euele, *pl.* evil, wicked, 20, 66, 69 ; *adv.* badly, wickedly, 68, 110.
- Eueles, evils, ills, diseases, 153, 224.
- Euelwyl, malice, 114.
- Eure, ever, 48, 71.
- Eurebleuinge, eternity, 105. *See* Bleue.
- Eurich, Eurych, every, 268.
- Eureichen, Eurichen, *acc.* every one, 146.
- Eurelestinde, everlasting, 95, 97, 104.
- Euremo, evermore, 5, 13, 14, 55.
- Eurinne, *acc.* everyone, 136.
- Ewangelist, 230.
- Exameneþ, examines, 184, 256.
- Examined, 137.
- Examini, to examine, 153.
- Excuseþ, excuses, excuse, 33, 61, 69.
- Excusi, to excuse, 7.
- Exequitours, executors, 38.
- Exil, 215.
- Eyder, either, each, 66.
- Eyr, 62.
- Eyren, eggs, 174. *See* Aye.
- Eyrs, heirs, 102, 107.
- Eyse, ease, pleasure, 48, 24, 94.
- Eyses, pleasures, 204.
- Eysy, to ease, please, 82.
- Eze, eye, 75, 81.
- Ezen, eyes, 19, 75, 81.

- Eyzte, eight, 45.
 E3tende, E3tende, eighth, 2, 10.
 Faileþ, fails, 186.
 Faili, to fail, 209.
 Failinde, failing, slothful, 32.
 Faly, to fail, 173.
 Fauc, scythe, 251.
 Fauour, 230.
 Faylep, *sing.* & *pl.* fails, fail, 33, 68, 171, 210.
 Fayl3, to fail, 32, 195.
 Fayntise, deceit, 26.
 Fel, fierce, savage, 66.
 Felhede, fierceness, 29, 159.
 Fellaker, more fiercely, 174.
 Felle, *def.* fierce, 66, 50; fierce one, 30; *superl.* Felliste, 61.
 Feller, fiercer, 61.
 Felonie, Felonye, felony, crime, 30, 67, 149, 150.
 Felonyes, crimes, 66.
 Feloun, felon, wretch, 29, 30.
 Feruent, 121.
 Feste, feast, entertainment, 156.
 Festes, feasts, 7, 26, 41, 213.
 Feure, fever, 29.
 Fiaunce, affiance, confidence, trust, 164.
 Fiebble, Fyeble, feeble, 31.
 Fiebles, feeble ones, 148.
 Fieblene, *acc.* feeble, 227.
 Filosofo, Filozofe, philosopher, 164, 126.
 Filosofie, philosophy, 164.
 Figure, 234.
 Fisician, Fisicien, physician, 143, 172.
 Fisike, Fizike, physic, 53, 54.
 Flatour, flatterer, 257.
 Flatours, flatterers, 257.
 Flechchi, to flinch; waver, 253.
 Fleumatike, phlegmatic, 157.
 Flom, Flum, 95, 202, stream.
 Flour, flower, 230.
 Flour, 210.
 Floureþ, flowers, 28.
 Flouringe, bloom, flowering, 36.
 Fol, Fole, foolish, 22, 23, 26, 46, 64, 68.
 Fol, fool, 59, 205.
 Foleant, foolish, 244.
 Folebayrie, *O.Fr.* ambition, 17.
 Foles, fools, 86, 164, 212.
 Folie, folly, 70.
 Folies, Folyes, 10, 16, 52, 66.
 Folliche, foolish, 23, 43, 64.
 Folliche, foolishly, 141.
 Fornayse, furnace, 205.
 Fornicacion, 4, 6, 47.
 Forre, *O.Fr.* doubly, 59. This word is adopted from the *Fr.* text.
 Forriers, harbingers, 195.
 Fourme, form, 87, 220.
 Friinges, fryings, 23.
 Froteþ, *sub.* rubs, 155.
 Frut, fruit, 38.
 Fructefide, 234.
 Fyeble, feeble, 157.
 Fyeblesse, feebleness, 33, 69.
 Fyebleste, feeblest, 148.

- Gabbeþ, *pl.* talk, chatter, 69 ;
 A.S. *gabban*, to scoff.
 Gadereþ, *pl.* gather, 101.
 Gaderi, to gather, collect, 120,
 133.
 Gaderinge, gathering, 192.
 Gamelos, chameleon, 62.
 Ganglinde, jangling, chattering,
 226.
 Gardin, Gardyne, 94, 97.
 Gardins, 38.
 Gardyner, 94.
 Gauel, usury (exorbitant), 9, 35 ;
 A.S. *gafof*, tax, tribute.
 Gaueleres, money-lenders, usurers,
 35, 36, 135.
 Gauelinge, Gaelynge, usury, 34,
 35.
 Gauelockes, fetters, 207.
 Gelt, sin, trespass, guilt, 30, 104 ;
 Gelte, *obliq. case*, 74 ; Geltes,
 offences, 15.
 Gelti, Gelty, guilty, 175.
 Geme, game, gambling, 34, 45,
 46.
 Gememen, gamblers, 63.
 Gemene, game, play, 46.
 Gemenes, games, 45, 213.
 General, 14.
 Generalliche, generally, 9, 14, 16,
 17.
 Generalliche, catholic, 14.
 Gentil, Genty, 2, 75.
 Gentillesse, nobility, 89.
 Gentylete, 89.
 Gentile, *pl.* 89.
- Gerde, gird, 236.
 Gerdel, girdle, 236 ; *obliq. case*,
 girdle, *pl.* gerdles, 236.
 Gerlondes, garlands, 71.
 Germayn (broþer), 146.
 Gernier, Gerniere, garner, 191.
 Gerse, Gerze, grass, 28, 121. *See*
 Agerse.
 Gerten, *pl.* girded, 236, 254.
 Ges, a short strap with ring at-
 tached round the feet of a
 hawk, 254 ; Fr. *gects*, from
 Lat. *jacere*, to cast.
 Gest, goest, 129, 130.
 Gest, guest, stranger, 249.
 Geþ, goes, 56, 57.
 Gibet, gibbet, 128.
 Gily, Gyly, to beguile, deceive,
 15, 157, 238.
 Ginnes, snares, 54, 77, 131 ; Fr.
 engin, engine, instrument ;
 O.Fr. *engin*, fraud, craft.
 Ginninge, Ginninyge, Ginnynge,
 beginning, 12, 14, 16, 28, 32,
 100.
 Gled, glad, 265 ; *pl.* glède, 268.
 Glède, to rejoice, 265.
 Gledþ, rejoiceth, gladdens, 27,
 81.
 Gledieþ, *pl.* be glad, rejoice, 238.
 Glediynde, rejoicing, 267.
 Gledlaker, the more gladly, 113.
 Gledliche, gladly, 54, 59, 187.
 Glednesse, gladness, 27, 238, 265.
 Gledye, to gladden, rejoice, 266.
 Gledyeþ, rejoice, 258.

- Gles, glass, 76, 82.
 Gloreffe, 270.
 Glorifieþ, glorifies, glories, 25.
 Glose, 187.
 Glotonye, Glotunye, gluttony, 248.
 Glotoun, glutton, 50, 53, 248.
 Glotoune, Glotounes, 50, 52, 55.
 Glotounliche, gluttonly, 111.
 Glotounye, Glotunye, Glotony, 16, 50, 52, 55, 157.
 Glu, cement, 246.
 Godeleþ, *pl.* slander, 66.
 Godelinge, slander, evil speaking, 65.
 Godelinges, slanderers, 66.
 Godhede, 12.
 Godspelle, gospel, 28, 50.
 Godspellere, Godspellere, evangelist, 2, 12, 13, 14.
 Gost, Goste, ghost, spirit, 12, 54 ; Gostes, *pl.* 159.
 Gostlich, *sing.* spiritual, 27, 29, 87.
 Gostliche, *pl.* 7, 8, 21, 41.
 Gostliche, ghostly, spiritually, 7.
 Goth = *got*, goat, 210.
 Goye, joy, 226.
 Graate, great, 133.
 Grace, 10, 15 ; graces, 17, 79.
 Graciously, 24.
 Granteþ, Graunteþ, grants, 7, 225.
 Grantinge, Grauntinge, granting, consent, 10, 11, 47, 211, 212.
 Grantinges, Grauntinges, con-
 sents, 47.
 Grat, great, 17, 18, 19.
 Grater, Gratter, greater, 36, 79, 116.
 Grateste, Gratteste, greatest, 41, 44, 88, 140.
 Gratliche, greatly, 47, 156.
 Gratne, *acc.* great, 238.
 Grayns, 230.
 Greate, Greate, *pl.* great, 19, 25.
 Greaten, *dat. pl.* great, 139.
 Gredden, *pl.* cried, 212.
 Grede, cry, boast, 22, 31, 212 ; A.S. *grædan*, to cry, call, say.
 Gredeþ, proclaim aloud, 148.
 Gredinge, cry, 212 ; Gredynges, talking, chattering, 266.
 Greneþ, becomes green, 95.
 Grenhede, greenness, 28, 94, 97.
 Greny, to become green, 95, 97.
 Grese, 205.
 Gret = *gredeth*, crieth, 56.
 Greueþ, grieves, 142.
 Greui, to grieve, 39.
 Greuousliche, grievously, 47.
 Greynere, garner, 140.
 Grihond, Gryhond, greyhound, 75.
 Grines, snares, 77. *See* Gryn.
 Grislich, horrible, 49, 74.
 Grocheþ, murmurs, 30, 34, 68.
 Grochi, to murmur, grudge, 67, 68.
 Grochindeliche, grumblingly, grudgingly, 193.
 Grochinge, Grouchinge, murmur-

- ing, 2, 34, 43, 54, 57, 67.
 Grochinges, 67.
 Gromes, men, grooms, 210 ; A.S. *guma*, a man ; O.E. *gome*.
 Grond, Grounde, Grunde, ground, 1, 23, 34, 246.
 Groniyng, groaning, 264.
 Grunny, to grunt, groan, 67.
 Gryhond, greyhound, 75.
 Gryn, snare, trap, 47 ; A.S. *grin*.
 Guo, go, 32, 60.
 Guod, Guode, *sb.* good ; also goods, wealth, money, 5, 6, 10, 13, 14, 41, 61.
 Guod, *adj.* good ; *obliq. case*, guode, 2, 6.
 Guoden, *dat. pl.* 72.
 Guodcheap, cheap, 44.
 Guod-doere, benefactor, 135.
 Guode, *pl.* good, 10, 51 ; *def.* 2.
 Guodes, goods, 2, 4, 18, 247.
 Guodhede, goodness, 79, 233.
 Guodne, *acc.* good, 238.
 Guodnesse, goodness, 18, 29, 99.
 Guodnesses, *pl.* 18.
 Guoinde, going, passing, temporal, 120 ; wayfarer, 196.
 Guoinge, *sb.* going, 254 ; *pl.* Guoinges, 231.
 Guonne, to go, 226.
 Guos, goose, 32.
 Guop, *pl.* go, 7, 34, 52.
 Gyly, deceive, 238.
 Gynnes, plans, devices, 28. *See* Ginnes.
- Ha, he, 10, 12, 23, 30, 49, 56.
 Habbe, to have, 5, 7, 9, 10, 11.
 Habbe, *1st pers. sing.* have, 24, 71.
 Habbeþ, *pl.* have, 8, 14, 22, 25, 32.
 Haf = half, behalf. *See* Half.
 Half, side, hand, 1, 13, 72.
 Halke, corner, retreat, 210 ; A.S. *heal*, angle, corner ; Halkes, *pl.* 143.
 Halle, hall, 102.
 Halt, holdeth, esteems, 15, 18, 19, 23, 26, 128 ; observes, 196.
 Haluede, half-part, half, 36.
 Halues, halves, divisions, 16.
 Haljede, hallowed, 40.
 Halzen, holy ones, saints, 6, 13, 14, 72.
 Halzen, holy one, 97, 72, 219 ; A.S. *halga*, a saint.
 Halþeþ, hallows, 106, 237.
 Halzi, Halzy, to hallow, 7, 237 ; A.S. *hālgian*.
 Ham, them, 5, 8, 13, 14, 50.
 Ham-zelue, themselves, 5, 16, 40.
 Hand, *fem.* 149 ; *obliq. case*, Honde ; *pl.* Honden, 235.
 Handleþ, handle, 235.
 Handlinge, handling, touching, 46.
 Hap, fortune, chance, 76.
 Hard, Harde, severe, 189.
 Harder, 174.
 Hardi, Hardy, 16, 83, 123.

- Hardiesse, Hardyesse, boldness, 83, 162.
 Hardiliche, Hardyliche, boldly, hardily, 18, 75, 143, 208, 233.
 Hardnesse, severity, hardship, 236, 240.
 Hardylaker, more boldly, 60.
 Hare, her, 76, 181.
 Hare, their, theirs, 72, 73, 144.
 Hare, to them, 116.
 Harkni, to hearken, 63.
 Harmi, Army, to harm, 9, 10, 11, 23, 63, 82.
 Harmuol, Harmuolle, injurious.
 Harnesses = hardnesses, hardships, 181.
 Harten = hearten, hearts, 223.
 Hassassis, assassin, 140.
 Haste. *See* An-haste.
 Hastede, made haste, 174.
 Hasteliche, hastily, 173.
 Hasti, to hasten, 174.
 Hastif, hasty, 183, 184.
 Hat, commands, 8, 78.
 Hateden, *pl.* hated, 72.
 Hatie, to hate. *See* Hatye.
 Hatieþ, *pl.* hate, 43, 114.
 Hatte, is called, 1, 133, 150.
 Hatye, to hate, 73, 74, 101.
 Hatyeþ, *pl.* hate, 72.
 Hauber, 171.
 Hauded, head. *See* Heaued.
 Haudeliche, capital, 15.
 Hauded-zennes, head sins, deadly sins, 16.
 Hauene, haven, 183.
 Hazard, 171.
 Healde, hold, keep, observe, esteem, 5, 53, 65, 132, 160.
 Healdeþ, *pl.* hold, 145.
 Heap, Heape, collection, quantity, 130; assembly, 267.
 Heaued, *obliq. case*, Heauede, head, 1, 2, 16, 57.
 Heaueden, Heaudes, heads, 2, 14, 15, 16.
 Hed = hield = held, 241.
 Hedde, had, 7, 13, 14, 15.
 Hedde, hid, 129.
 Hedden, had, 31, 77, 126.
 Heddest, hadst, 58.
 Hede, heed, caution, 32, 155.
 Hede, to hide, 44, 163.
 Hedeþ, *pl.* hide, 41.
 Hedinge, secrecy, 196. Robert of Gloucester used *huding*, secrecy. Cp. O.E. *hidels*, hiding place, lair.
 Heg, hedge, 232, 240.
 Hel, *obliq. case*, Helle, hill, 5, 82, 103.
 Held, healed, 148.
 Helden, *pl.* healed, 96.
 Hele, heal, 129.
 Hele, to hide, 175. Heleþ, *pl.* cover, 180; A.S. *hēlan*, to cover.
 Helle, hell, 13, 15.
 Helles, hills, 59, 143.
 Helm, helmet, 265.
 Helpe, to help, 42, 102.
 Helpe, *sb.* helpe, 65.

- Helpinde, helping, 30, 62, 63.
 Helpþ, helps, 147.
 Helsny, entreat, 253 ; A.S. *healsian*, 1.
 Helt, covereth, 177.
 Help, heals, 144.
 Helpe, salvation, 265.
 Hennen, hens, 38.
 Her, *imp.* hear, 181.
 Her, *obliq. case*, Here, hair, 181.
 Herbergeries, innkeepers, har-
 bourers, 39.
 Herberzi, to harbour, entertain,
 199.
 Here, hair, 176, 177. *See* Her.
 Here, hair cloth, 227.
 Heresye, 267.
 Hereþ, *pl.* hear, 59.
 Hereþ, praises, 136.
 Heretike, 19.
 Heretiks, 134.
 Herie, Herye, to praise, 23, 52,
 55, 78, 212; A.S. *hërian*.
 Herieþ, *pl.* praise, 10.
 Heriynge, praises, 39, 267.
 Herkneres, hearkeners, listeners,
 58.
 Hert, hart, 216.
 Herte, heart, 3, 6, 8, 10.
 Herten, hearts, 46, 68.
 Heruest, harvest, 86.
 Herye, to praise, 78.
 Heryeþ, *pl.* praise, 108, 268.
 Heryinge, Heriynge, praise, 23,
 134.
 Heryinges, praises, honours, 267.
 Hes, hare, 55.
 Hest, (thou) hast, 20, 21, 31, 71.
 Heste, behest, command, 2, 5, 6,
 7, 8, 9 ; A.S. *hies*.
 Hestes, behests, commands, 5, 11,
 15, 103, 234.
 Het, hath, 90, 174.
 Het, commanded, 5, 239 ; A.S.
hátan (*pret. hiet*), to com-
 mand, ordain.
 Hete, heat, 55. Hetes, heats,
 124.
 Heþ, hath, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15.
 Hette, Hetten, was called, 41,
 48, 67, 124, 184.
 Heued, Heaued, head, 31.
 Heuedes, heads, 15.
 Heuene, heaven, 6, 12, 13.
 Heuenelyche, heavenly, 269.
 Heuenryche, Heaven-kingdom.
 Heui, Heuy, heavy, 31, 44, 140.
 Heuiness, heaviness, 4, 31.
 Hewe, cry, 195.
 Heyrone, 193.
 Hez, *sing.* Heze, *def. form &*
pl. high, 7, 16, 23, 25, 48, 60.
 Heze, *adv.* high, 23, 24, 26.
 Hezemen, great men, nobles, 36.
 Hezere, higher, 44, 122, 133.
 Heze se, the high (open) sea, 182.
 Hezeste, Hezest, highest, 25, 109,
 247.
 Hezeþ, exalts, exaggerates, 136.
 Hezinge, profit, usury, 35.
 Hezliche, chiefly, principally, 5,
 26, 27 ; profound, 264.

- He3nesse, highness, exaltation, 97, 105 ; height, 89.
 He3nesses, highnesses, exalted stations, 24, 208.
 He3pe, height, 24.
 He3pes, profits, 35.
 Hi, she, 7, 16, 28, 37.
 Hi, they, 3, 8, 12, 13, 20.
 Hider, hither, 140.
 Hidouse, horrible, 161.
 Hidousliche, horribly, 6.
 Hiealdeþ, *pl.* hold, 160.
 Hier, here, 18, 116.
 Hiere, Hihere, to hear, 177, 244.
 Hiereþ, *pl.* hear, 256.
 Hierine, herein, 232.
 Hierst, hearest, 210.
 Hierþ, hears, 209.
 Hierpe, hearing, 54.
 Hild, held, 206, 226.
 Him, himself, 5, 6.
 Him-zelf, 5, 6, 34 ; *obliq. case*, Him zelue, 15, 21, 22, 24, 38.
 Hine, him, 7, 16, 31, 52.
 Hire, them, 6, 10, 13, 16, 19, 32, 35.
 Hire, *gen.* her, 24, 37, 49, 217.
 Hiren, (of) her, 111.
 Hiren, theirs, 38, 60.
 His, Hise, them, 5, 11, 15, 17, 24, 26, 27, 28, 32, 36, 37, 38, 40, 55, 58.
 His, Hise, her, 54, 58, 64, 97.
 Hit, it, 1, 8, *et passim*.
 Hoc, hook, 121.
 Hod, Hode, consecration hood, 235.
 Hodes, hoods, 49.
 Hogges, hogs, 89.
 Hokes, hooks, 264.
 Hol, whole, healthy, 51, 129.
 Hole, *pl.* whole, 148.
 Holen, whole ones, 205.
 Holer, more wholesome, 251.
 Holinesse, Holynesse, 25, 49.
 Hollyche, wholly, entirely, 28.
 Holylaker, more holily, 7.
 Holyer, whoremonger, 51 ; O.Fr. *houler*.
 Holyhede, holiness, 247.
 Holyliche, Holylyche, holily, 74, 102, 221.
 Holyiste, holiest, 54.
 Holywryt, 77.
 Hond, hand, *obliq. case*, Honde, 19.
 Hond, hound, *obliq. case*, Hounde, 55, 75, 155, 156 ; *pl.* Hondes, Houndes, 70, 179.
 Honden, hands, 31, 47.
 Hondred, hundred, 55, 234.
 Hondredazte, hundredth, 234.
 Hondredsipe, Hondredziþe, hundred times, 124.
 Hondreduald, hundredfold, 191.
 Honeste, honest, decent, 222, 229.
 Honestliche, fairly, beautifully, 47.
 Honger, hunger, 75.
 Hongeþ, *pl.* hang, 40.
 Hongi, Hongy, to hang, to be hanged, 31, 57, 137, 218.

- Hony, honey, 60.
 Hope, trust, expectation, desire,
 5, 6, 12, 19, 29.
 Hopeþ, trusts, 207.
 Hopye, to hope, 89.
 Hor, filth, 228 ; *obliq. case*, Hore,
 229 ; A.S. *Horu*, filth.
 Hord, treasure, 185, 241 ; A.S.
 Heord.
 Hordeþ, treasures up, 182.
 Hordom, whoredom, 79.
 Hordyere, treasures, 121 ; A.S.
 Heordere.
 Hore-uroste, hoar frost.
 Horling, whoremonger, 52.
 Hornes, 14, 15, 32.
 Hors, *neut.* horses ; *obliq. case*,
 Horse, 35, 140.
 Hosebound, husband, 239.
 Hosiynge, Hosiinge, wearing
 hosen, 154, 177.
 Hot, 139.
 Hotep, commands, 122. *See*
 Behat.
 Hotere, commander, lawgiver, 109.
 Hotestre, hostess, 53.
 Hotinge, exiling, banishment, 148.
 Hou, how, 2, 3, 17.
 Hous, *obliq. case*, House, *pl.*
 Houses, 41, 43, 172.
 Housebonde, Housebondes, 48.
 Huader, whether, 51.
 Huam, whom, which, 9, 16, 18,
 20, 148.
 Huan, whom, 17.
 Huanne, when, 6, 8, 11, 103.
 Huannes, whence, 115, 264.
 Huas, whose, 38, 60, 101.
 Hue, how, 47.
 Huer, where, 6, 13, 14.
 Hueran, whereon, 176.
 Huer-by, whereby, 24, 26.
 Huerine, Huerinne, Huerynne,
 wherein, 23, 31, 44, 109.
 Huermide, wherewith, 23, 176.
 Huer-of, whereof, 13, 16, 17, 24.
 Hueronder, where under, 221.
 Hueroppe, where up, 251.
 Hueroore, where for, 3, 80, 123.
 Huet, what, whatever, 4, 9, 20,
 26, 27, 34.
 Huet, lo ! 51, 59.
 Huete, wheat, 139, 141.
 Huetene, wheaten, 82.
 Huezal, wheel, 24, 76.
 Huich, Huych, which, whatso,
 such ; *pl.* Huiche, Huyche,
 6, 38, 45, 52, 57, 100, 107,
 115.
 Huichen, Huychen, *dat. pl.*
 which, 7, 15, 91, 98.
 Huider, Huyder, whither, 115,
 129.
 Huiderward, whitherward, 131.
 Huile, Huyle, while, whilst, 7.
 Huils, whilst, 139.
 Humours, 129.
 Huo, who, 5, 7, 8, 10, 24.
 Huose, whoso, 110.
 Huyt, white ; *pl.* Huyte, Hwite,
 181, 228.
 Hy, she, 17, 26.

- Hy, they, 1, 3, 16.
 Hyalde, hold, 21, 54, 206, 220.
 Hyane, hyena, 61.
 Hyap, Hyeape, heap, 139, 159.
 Hyealde, to hold, esteem, 53, 54,
 58, 138, 154 ; to be observed,
 11 ; contain, 225 ; *pres. subj.*
 23, 59 ; *pret. subj.* 147, 166.
 See Healde.
 Hyealdeþ, *pl.* support, 35 ; be-
 lieve, 134 ; hold, 145.
 Hyelde, *pl.* held, 27.
 Hyeldeþ, *pl.* hold, 124.
 Hyer, *imp.* hear, 257.
 Hyer, here, 66, 163.
 Hyer-be-uore, herebefore, 59.
 Hyere, to hear, 70, 154.
 Hyerere, hearer, 256.
 Hyere-zigginge, hearsay, 117.
 Hyerþ, hears, 256.
 Hyerþe, hearing, 231, 240, 256.
 Hyezinges, exaggerations, 63.
 Hyre, to hear, 231.
 Hyre, their, theirs, 72, 96.
 Hysians, heralds, 45.

 Iangli, to talk, chatter, 214.
 Iangledest, chatterest, 20.
 Icinge, *itching*, avarice, 16.
 Idi t, ordered, directed, 214 ;
 decked, 216.
 Ientilmen, gentlemen, 190.
 Iguo, gone, 242.
 Ieu, Jew, 43.
 Illestþ, lasteth, 209.
 Ilich, iliche, like, 87, 202.

 Ilke, same, 88.
 Illore, lost, 241.
 Imad, made, 145.
 Ine, Inne, in, 203.
 Inguoinge, entrance, prelude, 72,
 105.
 Inhonest, dishonourable, 220.
 Inhonestliche, indecently, 177.
 Innocence, 141, 181.
 Inpacienc, impatience, 67.
 Inwyt, Inwytt, conscience.
 Iogelour, 172.
 Ioie, Ioye, joy, 75, 156.
 Ioliuete, Iolyuete, jollity, 53.
 Ioine, Ioyne, 77, 88.
 Iornaye, journey, 253.
 Ioissep, Ioysssep, rejoices, 25.
 Ioyaus, jewels, 206.
 Iowele, Ioyel, jewel, 112, 156.
 Irchouon, urchin, hedgehog, 142.
 Ire, anger, 147.
 Iroted, rooted, 247.
 Iualþ, befalls, 54.
 Iuele, to feel, 131.
 Iueles, jewels, 77.
 Iuggi, to judge, 130.
 Iustise, justice, 153.
 Izi, Izy, to see, 164, 173, 243.
 Izyzt, sees, 196.
 Izez, saw, 158.

 Kan, can, knows, 22, 99 ; Kanst,
 21.
 Karoles, carols, 71.
 Kechene, kitchen, 171.
 Kembe, to comb, 177.

- Kempe, soldier, champion, *pl.*
 Kempen, 45, 50.
 Ken, Kenne, kin, 22, 37, 42, 48, 66.
 Ken, kine, 191.
 Kende, Kennd, kind, nature, 18, 37, 61, 189.
 Kendelich, Kendeliche, natural, 24, 47, 90.
 Kenrede, kindred, 89.
 Kessinge, Kesinge, kissing, *pl.* Kessinges.
 Kest, kisses, 46, 90, 161.
 Keste, to cast ; Keste, cast, *pret.* ; Kest, casts, 66, 99, 171.
 Keste, kissed, 245.
 Kestinge, casting, 22.
 Kete, kite, 52.
 Klene, clean, pure, chaste, 5, 106.
 Klenliche, cleanly, chastely, 26, 140.
 Klennesse, cleanness, purity, 205.
 Klensy, to cleanse, 235.
 Klerek, clerk, 42.
 Knaulechinge, Knawlechinge, knowledge, 106, 132, 200.
 Knawþ, knows, 26, *pl.* Knaweþ, 70.
 Knewen, *pl.* knew, 246.
 Kniȝt, Knyȝt, knight, 36.
 Knyȝthod, knighthood, 82, 161.
 Knotte, knot, 253.
 Kuead, Kued, Kueade, Kuede, *adj.* bad, wrong, sinful, *sb.* sin, evil, wickedness, 6, 8, 11, 14, 17, 38, 39, 51, *pl.* Kueades, Kuedes, 17, 26, 52.
 Kueadhedes, Kuedhede, evils, sins, 101.
 Kueadlich, Kueadliche, Kuedliche, wickedly, badly, sinfully, 5, 6, 8, 9, 40, 41.
 Kueadnesse, Kuednesse, sin, wrong, 10, 40.
 Kueaduol, Kueduol, sinful, 182.
 Kueme, to please, 21, 197 ; Kuemp, pleases, 228. *See* Queme.
 Kuemynge, pleasing, 26.
 Kuen, Kuen, Quen, queen, 80.
 Kuelȝ = kuelp, wells up, 248.
 Kuenche, to quench, 204.
 Kuencþ, quenches, 62.
 Kuik, Quik, Kuikke, Quicke, alive, living, evident, 67, 98, 134, 146.
 Kuit, kuyt, quit, free, *pl.* Kuytte, kuitte, 41.
 Lac, fault, 62.
 Lackes, faults, defects, 32, 33, 136, 177, defilement, 201.
 Lackeþ, fails, 210.
 Lamb, *obliq. case*, Lombe, 232, 236 ; *pl.* Lambren, lambs, 138.
 Lang, long, *obliq. case*, Longe, 99, 170, 218.
 Langnesse, longness, length, 105.
 Langour, 93.
 Large, liberal, 21, 23 ; Larger, 24.
 Largeliche, largely, liberally, 37, 77, 147

- Largesse, liberality, 102, 159, 188.
 Laste, Lasten, (ate) at last, 49, 239.
 Laudes, 51.
 Launde, plain, 216.
 Layde, laid, 149.
 Layt, light, 66.
 Layþ, lays, 41.
 Laze, law, 5, 7, 169.
 Lazes, laws, 97.
 Leade, lead (plumb-line), 150.
 Leas, lost, 85.
 Leat, bowed, 239.
 Leaue, *obliq. case* of Leaf, 1; Leaues, 57, 59.
 Leawede, Lewede, *lewd*, laymen, 39, 42, 46, 237.
 Leazinge, lie, 62.
 Leazings, Lezinges, lies, *leasings*, 2, 58, 62, 63.
 Leazinges = *leazings*, lies, 61.
 Leche, physician, surgeon, 129.
 Lecherie, 9, 17, 41; Lecheries, 31.
 Lecherous, 111.
 Lechurs, 55.
 Lecherusly, 128.
 Lechi, to heal, 174.
 Led, *imp.* lead, 116, 262.
 Ledde, *pl.* led, 96.
 Lede, to lead, pass, 44.
 Ledep, *pl.* lead, pass, use, 50, 53.
 Ledinde, leading, enjoying, 168.
 Lefthalf, leftside, 152.
 Leþþ, liveth, 69, 134.
 Leþþ, believes, 182.
 Legge, to lay, 149. A.S. *legan*.
 Leme, limb, 47, 115; Lemes, 6, 9.
 Lemman, beloved, 230.
 Lenden, loins, 46, 236. A.S. *lendenu*.
 Lende, lent, 37.
 Lene, to lend, 35.
 Lenere, lender, 35.
 Leneþ, *pl.* lend, 35, 36.
 Leng, *imp.* delay, 194.
 Lenge, to delay, prolong, 173.
 Lenger, longer, 56.
 Leninge, *sb.* lending, 35.
 Lenten, 175.
 Lenþ, lends, 6, 135.
 Lenynde, lending, 35.
 Lere, loss, 36, 46.
 Lesse, Les, less, 2, 28, 90, 118.
 Lesseþ, lessen, depreciate, 28, 136.
 Lesse, to lessen, 175, 267.
 Lessoun, 135; Lessouns, 56.
 Lest, Leste, least, 36, 44, 84, 90.
 Lesnesse, forgiveness, 14, 263.
 Lessynge, diminution, lessening, 268.
 Leste, to endure, 84.
 Lestynde, lasting, 84.
 Let, lead, 51, 115, 185.
 Let, letteth, 31, 181.
 Let, leaves, ceases, 17, 26, 97, 111, 212, 269.
 Lete, to let, permit, 56, 73.
 Lete, to leave, forsake, give up, 74, 78, 117, 165.

- Leteþ, let, *pl.* 40, 42.
 Leteþ, forsake, leave, 6, 77, 165.
 Lettre, lettres, 1, 40.
 Leth, leadeth, 200.
 Leuayne, leaven, 205.
 Leue, Leueþ, 60, 86, 89.
 Leue, dear, beloved, 113.
 Leve, Leueþ, live, lives, 54, 62, 74, 93, 141.
 Leuede, lived, 71.
 Leued, Leuedy, *pl.* Leuedys, 47, 67.
 Leuere, rather, liever, 31.
 Leuest, livest, 194.
 Leueth, lives, 214.
 Leuinge, remainder, 73.
 Lewed, Lewede, layman, laity, 25.
 Lezere, gleaner, 86.
 Lezenges, lies, 63.
 Leze, to laugh, 161.
 Lezers, liars, 19.
 Lezinge, laughing, 161.
 Lezze, to laugh, 111. *See* Lhezze.
 Lhade, to lade, 178.
 Lhapwynche, lapwing, 61.
 Lhapþ = lheapþ, leaps, jumps, 66, 155.
 Lheape, to run, spring, jump, 27, 89, 93, 156.
 Lheapeþ, *pl.* leap, run, 140.
 Lhene, lean, 53, 189.
 Lhest, listens, 61, 268.
 Lheste, to listen, 70, 133, 199, 229.
 Lhestepþ, *pl.* 268. *AS. lhistan,* to listen.
 Lhestninge, listening, 258.
 Lheuc, slow, loath, 31. *A.S. wlaec,* slack, remiss.
 Lheucliche, lukewarmly, slow, 31.
 Lheuedi, Lheuedy, lady, 24, 53, 57, 64.
 Lheuedyes, ladies, 215.
 Lhezinges, laughter, 63.
 Lhezþ, laughs, 93.
 Lhezze, to laugh, 58, 214. *A.S. hlihan* (pret. hloh).
 Lhip, lhiep, leapt, 45.
 Lhord, lord, master, husband, *obliq. case,* Lhorde; *pl.* Lhordes, 1, 6, 7, 20, 37, 54, 221.
 Lhordinges, lords, 67.
 Lhordssip, Lhordssipe, lordship, 54, 68.
 Lhoude, loudly, 212.
 Lhoue, *obliq. case,* loaf, 82.
 Libbe, Libbeþ, live, 28, 32, 34, 53, 70, 74.
 Libbinde, Libinde, living, 13, 73, 74, 149.
 Libelles, 40.
 Licnesse, Liknesse, likeness, pattern, 49, 92.
 Licuol, pleasing, delightful, 217.
 Liese, lose, 214.
 Lierne, *imp.* learn, 73.
 Lierni, to learn, 209.
 Lif, *obliq. case,* Liue, life, 72.
 Ligge, to lie, 31, 223.

- Likerouses, pleasant, delightful, 47, 54.
- Likeþ, pleases, is pleasing, 63, 187.
- Liki, to please, 215.
- Likinde, Likynde, pleasing, 62, 63, 126, 214.
- Likinge (*pl.* Likinges), pleasure, delight, 23, 46, 248.
- Likneþ, resembles, 88.
- Likni, to delight in, 245.
- Liky, to delight in, 177.
- Line, Linene, linen, 178, 236.
- Lingne, line, 160.
- Lioun, lion, 17.
- Lipars, leopards, 131.
- Lippen, lips, 210, 211.
- Lite, little, 28, 31, 43.
- Litel, little, 29.
- Lip, lieth, 31, 55, 83.
- Lizliche = liztyliche, easily, 249.
- Lizte, light, little, 11, 99.
- Lizte, Lizte, light, 270.
- Lizter, easier, 78.
- Lizthedes, levities, 207.
- Liztlaker, easier, sooner, 229.
- Liztyliche, Liztyliche, easily, quickly, venially, 6, 9, 63, 115, 183, 255.
- Loc, lock, 255.
- Lodesmanne, pilot, 140.
- Lodlakest, most loathsome, 49.
- Lodliche, obscene, 257.
- Lodlichhede, loathsomeness, 203.
- Loke, look, behold, 97, 129.
- Lokede, kept, 18, 204, 235 ; looked, 242. *See* Loki, Loky, observed.
- Lokeden, *pl.* looked, 245.
- Lokere, guardian, 21 ; *pl.* Lokeres, 220, 222.
- Lokes, locks, 151.
- Lokes, Whitsunday, 143, 163, 213.
- Al here joyen a *lok* Sounday,
And alle the that me aspye may,
That hyre and (on) erthe felle,
Al fram Crystes ascencioun
Al-wat (until) comthe hyre assumpcioun
To thyssere louny schelle.
Shoreham's Poems, p. 127.
- Lokest, keepest, 93.
- Lokeþ, look, 26, 89.
- Lokeþ, keeps, 213, 248.
- Loki, Loky, to keep, be kept, observe, keep guard, beware, keep from, protect, save, 5, 7, 8, 11, 39, 41, 42, 53.
- Loki, Loky, look, 43, 89 ; regard, consider, 195 ; *A.S. locian.*
- Lokinde, keeping, observing, 232.
- Lokinge, Lokynge, Lokingge, care, custody, award, decision, 8, 19, 65, 128, 158 ; 'to þe lokinge of,' as regards, 108, 109.
- Lokinge (ayen), looking back, 242.
- Lokinges, looks, 242, 245.
- Lombe, lamb, 236.
- Lompe, *obliq. case* of Lamp, 233.
- Lompen, lamps, 189, 218, 233.
- Londe, *obliq. case* of Land, 37 ; *pl.* Londes, 36.
- Lone, loan, 35, 36.
- Longaynes, corners, 212.

- Longe, *adv.* long, 205.
 Longe, on account of, 266.
 Loren, lost, 235.
 Los, fame, 26, 28, 63, 116, 141,
 Fr. *los*.
 Losengeri, deceit, lies, 10, 23.
 Lost, *obliq. case* Loste, *pl.* Lostes,
 lust, desire, pleasure, 24, 46,
 72, 78, 82, 91, 92.
 Losteþ, pleasures, 246.
 Lostuol, *lustful*, pleasing, pleasant,
 desirable, 80, 94, 110, 244.
 Lostuolle, Lostfolle, pleasant,
 desirable, 91 ; delicious, 158,
 204.
 Lostuoller, more pleasant, 92.
 Lostuolliche, greedily, 51.
 Louede, Loueden, loved, 52, 230.
 Louerede, love, 3, 145, 146.
 Loui, Louie, Louy, Louye, to
 love, 6, 31, 55, 62, *et passim*.
 Louieþ, Louyeþ, loves, love, 6, 61,
 78, 210, 270.
 Louiinde, Louiynde, loving, 75,
 145.
 Louriinde, louring, 256.
 Louyeres, lovers, 270.
 Lozeniour, liar, 22.
 Loz, Loze, low, 105, 138, 139,
 140 ; *comp.* Lozer, 175 ; *superl.*
 Lozeste, 119, 122.
 Lozeþ, diminishes, is lessened,
 humbles, 49, 136, 246.
 Loznesse, humility, 246.
 Lozy, to lower, lessen, depreciate,
 humble, 28, 216.
 Luxurie, 157.
 Lyad, lead, 141.
 Lyazinge, leasing, lies, 63.
 Lyckestre, lickster ; translates Fr.
 lecheresse, 56.
 Lyeaf, leaf, 62.
 Lyeas, lost, 203.
 Lyeasinge, lie, 60, 175.
 Lyeaue, leaf, 1.
 Lyeaues, leaves, 57, 96.
 Lyerne, Lierne, *imp.* learn, 70, 72,
 233.
 Lyernest, learnest, 73.
 Lyerneþ, Lyernieþ, learn, 36, 53,
 74, 75, 122, 133.
 Lyerni, Lyerny, to learn, 2, 34,
 70, 99, 135, 161.
 Lyese, to lose, 40, 57.
 Lyesinges, lies, 10, 57.
 Lylest, loseth, 33, 49, 52, 129.
 Lyeue, *obliq. case* of Lief, dear,
 117, 213.
 Lyexneþ, lies, 66.
 Lyezeþ, lose, 117, 149.
 Lyeze, lie, 218.
 Lyezeþ, Lyezeþ, lie, belie, 10, 22,
 44, 52, 56, 63, 129, 133.
 Lyezinge, lying, 63, 143.
 Lyzere, liar, 58, 62, 256.
 Lye3þ, lies, 63.
 Lyf, life, 70, 71 ; *obliq. case*, Lyue,
 93.
 Lyfnop, livelihood, sustenance,
 138.
 Lykede, delighted in, 267.
 Lykerous, pleasant, 95.

Lykeþ, is like, 81.
 Lykeþ, delights, 178.
 Lyky, to delight in, 127.
 Lykynde, pleasing, 80.
 Lykyng, likeness, 81.
 Lykynges, pleasures, 112.
 Lylle, 230.
 Lynx, 81.
 Lyte, little, 36.
 Lyþ, lies, 52.
 Lyȝtliche, lightly, easily, 104.

 Mageste, majesty, 266.
 Magnamitie, 163, 164.
 Magnificence, 164, 168.
 Maimes, maims, sores, 135.
 Maine, Mayne, retinue, servants,
 household, 139.
 Maister, master, *pl.* maistres, 76,
 200.
 Make, *masc.* mate, 226.
 Maked = *makeþ*, makes, 249.
 Maki, Maky, to make, 27, 40,
 44, 47, 154.
 Makiere, Makyere, maker, creator,
 251, 267.
 Makiinde, Makinde, making, 35,
 42.
 Makyng, Makiyng, making,
 creation, creature, 1, 92, 218.
 Malancolien, Melancolien, melan-
 choly (one), 253.
 Malice, 26.
 Man, *obliq. case* Manne, *pl.*
 Men, *gen. pl.* Manne, 8, 9, 11,
 21, 24, 31.

Manere, Maniere, Manire, Manyere
 (*pl.* Maneres, Manyeres), man-
 ner, mode, way, 6, 14, 15, 19,
 21, 23, 37, 146.
 Manhede, Manhod, Manhode,
 manhood, homage, 12, 19, 118,
 145.
 Manie, Manye, *pl.* many, 26, 31,
 165.
 Mankende, mankind, 1.
 Manslaȝþe, Manslaȝte, *pl.* Man-
 slaȝþes, manslaughter, homi-
 cide, 8, 30, 54, 57, 115.
 Manzinge, excommunicate, curs-
 ing, 148, 189. *See* Amanzinge.
 Marcat, Markat, market, *obliq.*
 case, Markatte, 23, 36, 42.
 Marchons, merchants, 36, 39.
 Mares, marshes, 250.
 Mariage, Mariages, 39, 148.
 Marissi, to marry, 220.
 Markes, bounds, limits, 223.
 Martire, Martires, 53, 73, 83, 166.
 Martired, 111.
 Martirement, martyrdom, 77.
 Materie = *Matiere*, matter, 49,
 118, 136.
 Matyns, 51.
 Maugre, 69.
 Mawe, to mow, 214.
 Mayden, *pl.* Maydenes, Maydines,
 12, 15, 48, 98, 118, 218.
 Maydenhod, maidenhood, 228,
 231.
 Mayne, family, household, domes-
 tics, 30, 129.

- Mayster, Maystre, master, 35, 68, 97.
 Maystresse, mistress, 34, 206.
 Maystrie, mastery, 91, 92, 169.
 Maze, maw, stomach, 56.
 Me, one, they, 17.
 Mede, reward, payment, *pl.*
 Medes, 35, 42, 90, 169.
 Medi, to reward, 146.
 Medicine, Medicines, 22, 69.
 Medles, quarrels, 41, 66.
 Meduol, meritorious.
 Mele, meal, flour, 93.
 Melk, milk, 137, 177.
 Melle, mill, 24, 58, 141.
 Melodie, Melodya, 151.
 Melte, melted, 171.
 Memorie, 104.
 Menestrals, minstrels, 192.
 Menet, mint, 241.
 Menetime, meantime, 36.
 Meniynges, meanings, thoughts, 230.
 Mennesse, communion, fellowship, 14, 268; A.S. *ge-mœnnes*.
 Mentel, mantle, 188, 221.
 Merci, Mersi, 28, 29, 137.
 Merciuol, merciful, 189.
 Mere, mare, 185.
 Merite, merit, 134.
 Merss, marsh, 251.
 Mes, mess, dish, 55, 56.
 Mesayse, Mezayse, Meseyse, uneasiness, sorrow, poverty, 185, 191; to displease, 58.
 Messenger, Messagier, Messagyer, messenger, *pl.* Messagieres, Messagyers, 151, 195, 211.
 Messages, 122, 189.
 Messe, mass, 20.
 Messe-daye, mess-day, 175.
 Messen, masses, 31, 32.
 Messinges, messes, dishes, 71.
 Mest, *adv.* most, 23, 26.
 Meste, *adj.* most, 72, 89.
 Mesteres, officials, 39.
 Mestier, craft, 187.
 Mestyres, offices, 122; works, operations, 167.
 Mesure, Mesures, measure, moderation, 44, 51, 52, 53, 252.
 Measureþ, moderates, 254.
 Mesuri, to moderate, 252.
 Met, dreams, 128.
 Metal, 139.
 Metals, 167.
 Mete, Metes, meat, food, meats, 9, 29, 51.
 Meteles, dreams, 164.
 Meteres, dreamers, 32.
 Metinge, dream, 143.
 Metinges, dreams, 32, 77, 92.
 Meyster, practice, 65.
 Mezel, leper, 202; Mezels, *pl.* 224.
 Mid, Myd, Myde, with, by, 5, 10, 12, 43, 44.
 Middel, Midel, Mydle, mean, 78, 136, 249; *superl.* Midliste, 122.
 Middelguodes, Myddelguodes, middle goods, 136.

- Milde, Mylde, meek, 133 ; *comp.*
 Milder, 24, 204.
 Mildehede, Myldehede, meekness,
 110, 133.
 Mildeliche, Mildelyche, meekly,
 135.
 Mildenesse, Myldenesse, meek-
 ness, 65, 131.
 Mildi, to make mild, become
 meek, 177.
 Miracle, Miracles, 56, 134.
 Misbeleuing, unbelief, 134.
 Misbilleue, unbelief, 13.
 Misbylefde, Misbyleuinde, un-
 believing, 69, 252.
 Misdede, misdeed, *pl.* Misededes,
 113, 114, 135.
 Misdeþ, misdoes, acts wrongly,
 114.
 Misdø, sin, err, 19, 113, 115,
 136.
 Misdoere, 8, 132.
 Misdoinge, 157.
 Misdøþ, *pl.* misdo, sin, 100.
 Misfalles, *sb.* misfortunes, 84.
 Misgeþ, goes wrong, 94.
 Misleueeþ, disbelieve, 180.
 Misliki, displease, 257.
 Misnimþ, mistakes, errs, 160.
See Nime.
 Misnimyng, error, 109.
 Mispayþ, displeases, 50.
 Misprayse, mis-praise, 136.
 Mis-ret, advises badly, mis-advise,
 184.
 Mis-sayþ, Mis-zayþ, mis-says,
 slanders, defames, 8, 28, 62, 69.
 Mis-sede, Mis-zede, slandered,
 defamed, 132, 133.
 Mis-serued, served badly, 20.
 Mis-sigge, Mis-zigge, mis-say,
 slander, defame, 57, 189. *See*
 Zigge.
 Mis-sigger, Mis-ziggere, slan-
 derer ; *pl.* Mis-siggeres, Mis-
 ziggere, 256, 257.
 Mis-siggeþ, Mis-ziggeþ, *pl.* slander,
 10, 70, 193.
 Mis-sigginge, Mis-zigginge, mis-
 saying, slander, defamation,
 65, 66.
 Misual, misfortune, 30, 86, 182.
 Misualle, to turn out badly, mis-
 befall, 193.
 Miswende, to turn aside, go
 astray, 253 ; *pl.* Miswendep, 22,
 40, 52, 67, 136 ; *sing.* Miswent,
 18, 27, 62.
 Mis-ziggere, slanderer ; *pl.* Mis-
 ziggere, 61, 136, 177.
 Miȝt, mightest, 57, 179.
 Miȝte, *vb.* might, 31 ; *pl.* Miȝten,
 42, 52, 55.
 Miȝte, *sb.* might, 7, 15.
 Miȝti, mighty, 103.
 Miȝtuol, powerful, 130, 237.
 Mo, more, 118, 135.
 Moche, Mochel, much, great, 7, 9,
 21, 57, 119, 181 ; to moche,
 exceedingly, 14.
 Mochelhede, Mochelnesse, great-
 ness, fulness, abundance, ex-

- travagance, 93, 117, 204, 218.
 Moder, mother, 8, 89.
 Modren, mothers, 67.
 Molde, mould, 95.
 Momenes, Momenettes, idols, 6, 239.
 Mone, moon, 82.
 Monek, Moneke, monk, 219, 239.
 Moneye, Monaye, 26, 62.
 Mongenel, a warlike instrument for battering down walls, 116.
 More, more, greater, 7, 18.
 Moreþ, increases, exaggerates, 28, 60, 175.
 Mori, Mory, to increase, 45, 79, 175, 176.
 Morsel, *pl.* Mosseles, 24, 56, 248.
 Mortyer, mortar, 116.
 Morþen, morning, 46, 108.
 Mostard (seed), 143.
 Mot, may, must, 52, 137.
 Mot, Mote, speck; *pl.* Motes, 108, 175.
 Moþe, mouth, 256.
 Moydrer, murderer, 171.
 Moþe, Moþen, may be able, 10, 15, 21, 31, 86, 92.
 Muekliche, meekly, 65.
 Multepliest, 218.
 Multiplieþ, 190.
 Musi, Musy, Muzy, to wonder, muse, amuse, 47, 104, 231.
 Myde, with, 50.
 Myny, to mine, dig, 108.
 Mysnyme, mistake, 55. *See* Nime.
 Mysnymb, mistaketh, 83.
 Mys-sigginge, slander, defamation, 66.
 Myþten, *pl.* might, 58, 165.
 Myþtest, mightest, 104.
 Myþtuol, mighty, 83; *pl.* myþtuolle, 269.
 Nakedliche, nakedly, openly, 174.
 Namecophede, Namecouphede, renowned, fame, 25; A.S. *nam-cuð*, renowned.
 Nameliche, especially, 21, 44.
 Namore, Nanmore, no more, 27, 49, 187.
 Nase, nose, 204.
 Naturel, natural, 18.
 Napemo, neverthemore, 41.
 Nayle, nail, 43.
 Naþ = naþt, not, 222, 246.
 Naþt, not, 18.
 Nawerelles, nowhere else, 210.
 Nebsseft, image, likeness; A.S. *neb*, face.
 Nele, Nelle, *ne wile*, will not, 31, 56, 71.
 Nemeþ = nimeþ, takes, 92.
 Nemneþ, names, 103.
 Nemni, Nemny, to name, mention, 49, 57, 164; A.S. *nemnan*.
 Nenne, *acc.* none, 22, 30, 48.
 Nere, were not, 20, 86.
 Nes = *ne wes*, was not, 26, 66, 72.
 Nesshede, delicacy, softness, 267.
 Netlen, Nettlen, nettles, 156, 230.

- Nette, Nettes, net, nets, 77, 170.
 Neþ, hath not, 84, 210.
 Neuerte, never-to, never yet, 99.
 Neure, never, 26.
 Neuremo, nevermore, 71.
 Newehedes, novelties, 151.
 Newen, (of the) new, 99.
 Newne, *acc.* new, 162.
 Neþebores, Neþeboures, Neþybores,
 Neþeboures, neighbours, 30, 36,
 38.
 Neþen, nine, 45.
 Neþende, ninth, 38, 45, 49.
 Neþleþ, approaches, 105 ; A.S.
 neah-læcan, to approach.
 Nhesse, Nesssse, soft, 153 ; A.S.
 hnæsc, soft, delicate, *nesh*.
 Nhesseþ, makes soft, 94.
 Nhicke, neck, 138, 216.
 Nice, foolish, 59.
 Niede, Nyede, business, need,
 necessity, emergency, *pl.* Nieves,
 Nyedes, 30, 31, 36, 39, 52,
 63, 73, 95, 142, 151, 152, 168.
 Nieuol, Nieuolle, needful,
 necessitous, 36, 95, 110, 112,
 134, 151, 193.
 Nieþ, Nyeþ, -nigh, near, 51, 76.
 Comp. Nier, Nyer, nearer, 234.
 Nim, *imp.* take, 54.
 Nime, Nyme, should take, 55,
 148, 155 ; A.S. *niman* (pret.
 nam).
 Nime, Nyme, to take, 37, 67, 77.
 Nimene, to take, 165, 166, 195.
 Nimere, taker, 248.
 Nimeþ, *pl.* take, 35, 38.
 Niminge, Nyminge, taking, un-
 dertaking, 21, 164 ; exactions,
 39.
 Niminges, undertakings, 183.
 Nimþ, Nymþ, takes, 22, 24, 30,
 32, 37, 49, 50.
 Nipinges, niggards, 154.
 Nixt, Nixte, Nyxte, next, neigh-
 bour, 30, 78, 79, 122, 182.
 Nizt, Nyzt, night, 51, 52 ; *obliq.*
 case, Nizte, 52.
 Noble, 87.
 Nobleliche, nobly, 55.
 Noblesse, nobleness, 20, 22, 24,
 59, 60.
 Nobleste, 92.
 Nolde, *sing.*, Nolden, *pl.*, would
 not, 64, 132, 173.
 Noldest, wouldst not, 146.
 Nole, Nolle, Nolleþ, will not, 35,
 38, 39, 59, 60, 64, 79, 134, 209.
 Nom, took, 45, 87, 88.
 Nome, *pp.* taken, 204.
 Nome, *pl.* took, 97.
 Non, None, no, none, 29, 64.
 Non, noon, 32.
 Nonen, none, 68, 134, 152, 157.
 Norice, nurse, 161.
 Noriches, nurses, 60.
 Norissede, nourished, 96.
 Norisseþ, Norisset, nourisheth,
 21, 83, 140, 167.
 Norrissinde, Norrissynde, nourish-
 ing, 95, 112.
 Norissinge, nourishing, 112.

- Norissy, Norrisi, to nourish, 127, 154.
- Norture, 112, 113.
- Norþene, northern, 256.
- Not = *ne wot*, knows not, 25.
- Notaryes, 40.
- Note, profit, 247, 256 ; A.S. *notu*, *nyt*, utility.
- Noteþ, flourishes, 260 ; A.S. *notian*, to use, enjoy.
- Noþer, neither, 130, 134.
- Noþing, not-at-all, no wise, 192.
- Noty, to note, 118.
- Nou, now, 87.
- Noyse, 66 ; Noyses, 266.
- Novices, 155.
- Novis, novice, 155.
- Nykeren, mermaids, syrens, 61.
- Nykke, neck, 135 ; *pl.* Nykken, 56.
- Nymst, takest, 110, 111.
- Nyteþ, ne witeth, know not, 72.
- O, one, 186.
- Obedience, 140.
- Ofaced, questioned, tried, 153.
- Ofdret, afraid, 266.
- Office, offices, 122, 124, 125.
- Official, 37.
- Offre, offer, 194 ; Offrede, offered, 193.
- Ofguo, deserved, 13.
- Ofguoinge, deserving, merit, 215.
- Ofhalt, restrains, refrains, 178.
- Ofhealde, Ofhyealde, to keep back, withhold, restrain, re-
frain, 9, 24, 38, 46, 177 ; *pp.* 254.
- Ofhealdeþ, Ofhyaldeþ, keep back, withhold, 38, 39, 41, 78.
- Ofhealdinge, *sb.* withholding, 34.
- Ofhild, restrained, 190.
- Ofrendes, offerings, 41.
- Ofringe, offering, 229.
- Ofserved, deserved, 131.
- Ofserueþ, deserves, 222.
- Ofseruinge, deserving, merit, 114.
- Oftake, overtake, 43.
- Oftyned, very angry, 66.
- Oksen, oxen, 243.
- Okseþ = *akseth*, ask, demand, 54, 109.
- Oly, oil, 136.
- Olyfont, elephant, 84.
- On, one, 9, 48 ; 'al on' = the same, 15.
- Onarmed, unarmed, 170.
- Onbint, Onbynt, unbinds, 97.
- Onblissed, unconsecrated, 41.
- Onboþsam, disobedient, 21.
- Onboþsamnesse, disobedience, 33.
- Onbynde, unbind, 172.
- Onbyndeþ, *pl.* unbind, 40.
- Onchargeþ, unloads, 97.
- Onclenlich, Onclenliche, uncleanly, impure, 42.
- Onclennesse, uncleanness, 203.
- Onconnynde, ignorant, *unknowning*, 59.
- Onconnynge, ignorance, 131.
- Onconnynghede, Onconnyndhede, ignorance, 33, 40.

- Oncoupe, *uncouth*, strangers, 37, 45, 214.
 193, 253.
 Ondelfþ, digs up, 61.
 Onder, under, 12.
 Onderbere, support, 84.
 Onderlinges, underlings, subjects, 39.
 Ondernime, undertake, 83, 123.
 Ondernimþ, surprises, 173.
 Onderstanst, understandest, 270.
 Onderstant, understands, 56, 129, 130.
 Onderstonde, to understand, 14 ; undertake, 131 ; *pp.* 14, 57 ; *pret.* Understod ; *subj.* Understode, 138 ; *imp.* Understand, 129. Onderstondeþ, *pl.* 79.
 Onderstandinge, Onderstondingge, understanding, 24, 56, 113.
 Onderuangþ, receives, 33, 65, 143.
 Onderuinge, Onderuyngge, *pl.* received, 101, 267.
 Onderuonge, to receive, 14, 100 ; *pp.* received, 14.
 Onderuongeþ, *pl.* receive, 38, 42.
 Onderuonginge, receipts, income, 37, 172.
 Onderuot, underfoot, 85, 184.
 Onderzekþ, searches out, 184.
 Ondeþ, opens, 189.
 Ondo, undo, 106, 107, 136.
 One, alone, 103, 104.
 Onen, *dat.* one, 101, 102, 190.
 Onest, honest, decorous, decent, 45, 214.
 Onestete, decency, 53, 224.
 Oneþ, unites, 88.
 Onhede, unity, oneness, solitude, 79, 142.
 Oninge, Onynge, union, concord, 65, 67, 135, 153 ; *pl.* Onynges, 67.
 Onjoini, unjoin, 107.
 Onkende, unkind, unnatural, 188.
 Onknawyndliche, unknowingly, 175.
 Onleak, unlocked, opened, 67.
 Onlepi, Onlepy, Onelepi, one, same, single, 12, 13, 14, 21, 73, 88, 101.
 Onlepihede, singularity, 21.
 Onlepiliche, Onlepilyche, only, 55, 76, 175.
 Onlosthede, disinclination, sloth, 31, 153, 163.
 Onlosti, idle, 170, 174.
 Onlyche, only, 265.
 Onneapes, Onnyeaþe, scarcely, hardly, 15, 18, 19, 28, 29, 174, 182.
 Onpayþ, displeases, 50.
 Onriȝt, unright, 39, 221.
 Onriȝtuol, Onriȝtuolle, wrong, unlawful, 39, 270.
 Onssriuel, careless, 32.
 Onspekynde, ineffable, 266.
 Ontodelinde, indivisible, 266.
 Ontrewe, untrue, unfaithful, dishonest, 18, 36, 37, 270.
 Ontreuþe, untruth, 17, 218.

- Ontreweliche, untruly, dishonest-
 ly, 44.
 Onþank, displeasure, 69.
 Onþoliynde, Onþolyinde, intoler-
 able, 265. *See* þolie.
 Onwoneþ, discontinues, 32.
 Onworþ, *sb.* shame, displeasure,
adj. poor, hateful, mean, 35,
 49, 132, 215, 270.
 Onworþe, *imp.* despise, 196.
 Onworþede, despised, 77.
 Onworþest, despisest, 20.
 Onworþeþ, despises, 8, 34, 79.
 Onworþhede, contempt, 29, 175.
 Onworþi, unworthy, to hold un-
 worthy, despise, 22, 64, 84,
 162; A.S. *unworþian*, to dis-
 honour.
 Onworþlych, unworthy, 132.
 Onworþnesse, contempt, 9, 168.
 Onwri, discover, lay bare, 174.
See Wraye, Wri.
 Onwriþ, opens, 58.
 Onwriþe, uncovered, 244.
 Onwryþe, openly, 88, 112.
 Onwytt, folly, 82, 83.
 Onwythede, folly, 19.
 Onwytynde, unwittingly, 37.
 On-zauwed, unsaved, lost, 184.
 Onzyginde, invisible, 268.
 Op, Ope, up, above, over, upon,
 39, 54, 236, 240.
 Oparizinge, ascension, 213.
 Opbere, upbear, support, 30.
 Openede, opened, 96.
 Openi, to open, 130.
 Openliche, openly, 65, 73.
 Ophebbet, heave (lift) up, 217.
 Opinions, 69.
 Oplet, to starve, 33.
 Opnimminge, Opnymynge, under-
 taking, enterprise, 22, 83, 84.
 Opnome, uptaken, possessed, 143.
 Oppe, open, 253.
 Oprisinge, resurrection, 227.
 Opriþt, upright, 56.
 Op þet, upon that, so that, 232.
 Opweninge, overweening, pre-
 sumptuous, 21.
 Opwexeth, grow up, increase, 75.
 Ordaynede, 7.
 Ordayneþ, Ordeyneþ, 29, 123,
 153, 260.
 Ordayni, Ordeyni, to set in order,
 subject to, 94, 152, 263.
 Ordenliche, Ordeneliche, orderly,
 temperately, 125, 151.
 Ordinance, 125.
 Ordine, orderly, not inordinate,
 153, 259.
 Ordre, order, 48.
 Oreysonne, Oreyssonnes, prayer,
 prayers, 51.
 Orible, Orrible, horrible, 43, 137.
 Orped, valiant, 183.
 Ost, host, 67.
 Oþ, oath, 6, 64; *obliq. case*, oþe,
 65; *pl.* oþes, 64.
 Oþer, or, 9, 10.
 Oþer, other, second; *pl.* oþre, 6,
 89.
 Oþerlaker, otherwise, 91, 94.

- O^{per}huil, O^{per}huy^l, sometimes,
 21, 30, 40.
 O^pren, *dat. pl.* 136.
 O^prene, O^prenne, *acc. other*, 8,
 9, 10, 11, 21, 27, 28, 29, 30,
 66, 175.
 O^ueral, everywhere, 25, 35, 173.
 O^uercom, overcame, 169.
 O^uercome, *inf.* 167, 168.
 O^uercominge, victory, 169.
 O^uercom^þ, overcomes, 117, 149,
 169.
 O^uer-dede, excess, 55.
 O^uerdoinge, excess, 258, 260.
 O^uerge^þ, overgoes, surpasses, 34,
 112, 252.
 O^uerguop^þ, *pl.* surpass, overgo,
 212.
 O^uerliche, O^uerlyche, above, 123.
 O^uerlinge, ruler, 8, 122, 141,
 147.
 O^uerpraup^þ, overthrows, 168.
 O^uerprawe^þ, *pl.* overthrow, 136.
 O^uerwenere, presumptuous (one),
 21, 22; *pl.* O^uerweneres, 59.
 O^uerweninde, overweening, 169.
 O^uerweninge, presumption, 17,
 21, 29.
 O^uer-yern^þ, transgresses, over-
 runs, 323. See *Yerne*.
 O^uet, fruit, 27.
 O^ule, owl, 27.
 O^ure, hour, 54.
 O^ure, our, ours, 19.
 O^ures, prayers, 112.
 O^urnemens, ornaments, 140.
 O^us, us, 117.
 O^utguinge, outgoing, 190.
 O^utkestinge, out-casting, offshoot;
pl. Outkestinges.
 O^utnime, O^utnome, O^utnome,
 except, 221, 250.
 O^utrage, O^utrage, extraordinary
 thing, excess, extravagance;
pl. outrages, 19, 54.
 O^uxi, to ask, 114.
 O^uyle, oil, 93.
 O^uynement, ointment, 93.
 O^uze, O^uzen, O^uzene, own, 17, 21,
 22, 28, 39, 48.
 O^uzeneres, proprietors, owners, 37.
 O^uzninge, possession, 37.
 O^uz^þ, owneth, 9.
 P^aci, P^asi, to pass, pass away,
 191, 214.
 P^aciencie, 166.
 P^aneworpe, pennyworth, 90.
 P^ans, pence, 190.
 P^arfite, perfect, 185.
 P^arfitlyche, perfectly, 144.
 P^arti, to part, 107.
 P^artiner, partner, 253.
 P^asinde, passing, temporal, 209.
 P^asindeliche, temporally, 172.
 P^assion, Passioun, 142.
 P^atroyllart, provincial, 211.
 P^aye, to please (*sing.* pay^þ, *pl.*
 paye^þ), 182, 216.
 P^ayenes, pagans, 235.
 P^ayinges, pleasings, 216.
 P^ayse, peace, 162.

- Paysible, Payzible, peaceable, 261.
 Penonce, penance, 221.
 Peregrinage, pilgrimage, 187.
 Perilousliche, perilously, 254.
 Perle, pearl (of the eye), 158.
 Perseuerance, 208.
 Perseuerantliche, perseveringly, 210.
 Pese, peace, 261.
 Pesen, *pl.* pease, 120.
 Pette (*oblig.* case of *pet*), pit, 207.
 Peþ, Peþe, path, 127, 185.
 Pilgrime, 253.
 Pine, torment; *pl.* Pinen, torments, 130, 131, 265.
 Pineþ, torments, 141.
 Piteus, Pitous, piteous, merciful, 144, 150.
 Plait, pleading, law-suit, 39.
 Plastres, 148.
 Playneres, plaintiffs, 39.
 Playni, to complain, 132, 190.
 Playteres, advocates, 39.
 Playtinge, pleading, 162.
 Playty, plead, 99.
 Plenté, plenty, 161.
 Plenteliche, plentifully, 105.
 Plezes, plays, sports, 207, 214.
 Poer, power, 170.
 Pokoc, Pokoce, peacock, 257, 270.
 Pond, pound, 190.
 Porchaceþ, 176, 219.
 Porchaci, Purchaci, to purchase, obtain, or earn a living, 193, 195.
 Porpos, purpose, 209.
 Pors, Porse, purse, 187, 188.
 Poruaye, Porueye, to foresee, provide for, 152.
 Poruayeþ, Porueyþ, provide for, distribute, 145.
 Poruayþ, provides for, 138.
 Porueynde, taking thought for, 265.
 Porueyonce, prudence, 156.
 Possessioun, 149, 150.
 Posst, Posste, post, 148, 207.
 Poty, to put, 135.
 Poudres, powders, 148.
 Pouer, power, 164.
 Pouer, Poure, poor, *pl.* Poueren, 190.
 Pourehede, poverty, 138.
 Pourehede, poorness, 130, 216.
 Pouri, to pore, 177.
 Pouringe, lookinge, 177.
 Pourpre, purple, 229.
 Poyns, points, 160.
 Praysy, Prayzy, to praise, 134, 135, 152, 227; *pl. pres.* Prazep, 143; *pret.* Prayzede, 243.
 Prechinge, 191.
 Prede, pride, 258.
 Prekieþ, prick, 230, 257.
 Prekiinde, pricking, 148.
 Prekiynges, Prekyinges, prickings, stings, 203.
 Prelat, prelate, *pl.* Prelas, 175.
 Presense, presence, 161.
 Present, Presont, 189, 218.
 Preste, proudest, 267; pridet, 270.

- Prestliche, readily, 140.
 Presumcion, 182, 195.
 Prette, prided, 258.
 Preus, brave, 83.
 Pris, value, price, 234.
 Priueliche, secretly, 225.
 Prodeþ, *pl.* pride, 79.
 Profiti, to profit, 126.
 Prou, profit, 85.
 Proudliche, proudly, 168.
 Proudoul, proud, 217.
 Prouesse, Prowesse, 162, 164.
 Prous, bold, hardy, 83.
 Provi, to prove, 158.
 Pryente, print, mark, 81.
 Punissi, to punish, 148.
 Purgi, to purge, 132.
 Purte, purity, 202.

 Qualites, 153.
 Quarel, arrow, 71.
 Quaynte, gay, 89.
 Quaynteliche, gaily, 47.
 Quead, Qued, bad. *See* Kuead.
 Queayntese, Qeyntise, craft, deceit, 38, 90.
 Queme, to please. *See* Kueme.
 Quemep, please, 149.
 Quemþ, pleases, 231.
 Quen, queen. *See* Kuen.
 Quereles, quarrels, 83, 142.
 Querne, mill, 181; A.S. *cweorn*.
 Quic, alive, living. *See* Kuic.
 Quit. *See* Kuit.

 Rage, 141.

 Rasour, razor, 66.
 Rape, early, soon, 52; *comp.* Rapre, rather, sooner, 61, 71, 120, 140.
 Raymi, to accuse, 44; A.S. *reo-mian*, to cry out.
 Rearde, speech, sound, 24, 211; A.S. *reard*.
 Rebel, rebellion, 68.
 Rebele, *v.* rebel, 28.
 Rebours, rebellious, 68.
 Recorde, 142, 203.
 Recorder, 55.
 Recordi, Recordy, to record, call to mind, 21, 59, 208.
 Recordinge, 55.
 Recreyd, recreant, 195.
 Red, Rede, counsel, advice, conspiracy, 23; *pl.* Redes, 9, 10, 23, 89, 165, 183, 184.
 Redde, advised, 184.
 Rede, to counsel, 38, 104, 154.
 Rederes, advisers, 184.
 Reforme, 81.
 Rafter, rafter, 175.
 Refye, to move, shake, 116; A.S. *reafian*, to seize.
 Reg (*obliq. case*, Regge), back, 116, 133, 177; A.S. *rig*.
 Regne, reign, kingdom, 85.
 Regne, to reign, 67.
 Rekeni, Rekeny, to reckon, 35, 37, 173, 214.
 Rekeninge, Rekenynge, account, 35, 171, 214.
 Religioun, 41.
 Relikes, 64.

- Remedie, 207.
 Remenont, remnant, 100.
 Remue, to remove, 104.
 Renable, reasonable, 95, 163.
 Renay, Reney, apostate, 19.
 Renaye, Reneye, deny, forsake, disbelieve, 19.
 Renayrie, apostasy, 19.
 Rene, rain, 130.
 Renoyre, Ronoyrye, unbelief, apostasy, 17.
 Rentes, revenue, 37, 41, 144.
 Repente, 238.
 Repentonce, 201.
 Resemble, 59.
 Respit, 39.
 Resse, a rush, 253; A.S. *resce*.
 Reste, to rest, 7, 31, 119, 260.
 Restede, 7.
 Resteuol, Restuolle, contemplative, 199.
 Resye, to quake, resound, 23.
 Ret, advises, 22, 184, 187.
 Ret, reads, 147, 231.
 Reule, rule, 150.
 Reule, to rule, 124.
 Reupe, Rewpe, mercy, pity, 186, 189.
 Reupevol, merciful, 116, 186, 188, 195.
 Reven, sheriffs, reeves, 37, 39, 43.
 Reverence, 20.
 Reverte, 128.
 Reward, regard, 74.
 Rewpeuolle, merciful, 198.
 Ribaud, ribald, 51, 127.
 Ribaudie, Ribaudy, ribaldry, 128, 203, 220.
 Ribaus, *pl.* of Ribaud, a ribald, 192.
 Riche, kingdom, 197; A.S. *ryce*.
 Richesse, riches, 24, 77.
 Ridings, ridings, 24.
 Rine, rain, 49.
 Riotouse, 170.
 Ripe, to reap, 214.
 Rizt, Rizte, Ryzte, right, 8.
 Riztes, 40.
 Riztuol, just, equitable, 44, 105, 135, 196.
 Riztuolliche, equitably, rightfully, 196, 201.
 Riztuolnesse, Riztnesse, rightfulness, righteousness, 3, 29, 124, 154.
 Robbere, robber, 39, 79.
 Robbi, to rob, 39.
 Robbynges, thefts, 39.
 Roberie, Roberye, robbery, 9, 34.
 Robes, 24.
 Roche, rock, 142.
 Rocky, to rock, 116.
 Rod, rode, cross, 1, 114.
 Romongours, horse-dealers, 44.
 Rond, round, 1.
 Ronsoune, ransom, 35.
 Roppes, entrails, 62; A.S. *roppas*.
 Rote, root, 34, 95; *pl.* Roten, 34, 35, 68, 116.
 Roted, rotten, 205.
 Roþer, rudder, 160.

- Rotie, Rotye, to rot, decay, 32, 205.
 Ruby, 76.
 Ruieles, rules, 97.
 Russoles, *rissoles*, cakes made in the frying-pan, from O.Fr. *ris-soler*, to fry, 253.
 Rybaus, 259.
 Ryche, kingdom, 66.
 Rynde, rind, 99.
 Ryote, rote, 99.
 Ryȝtnesse, righteousness, 266.
 Ryȝ-uolliche = ryȝt-uolliche, rightfully, 265.

 Sabat, sabbath, 7.
 Sacrefices, 187.
 Sacrement, *pl.* Sacremens, 14, 40, 48, 238.
 Sacreȝ, makes sacred, 235.
 Sacrifice, 187.
 Sacrilege, 34, 40.
 Safyr, sapphire, 76.
 Salamandre, 167.
 Sanguine, 157.
 Sanynt, Saynt, saint, 262.
 Satisfaccion, 32.
 Savour, 138.
 Sauf, safe, 36.
 Sause, sauce, 55.
 Sautere, psalter, 27.
 Sayn, Sanyn (for *Saynt*), saint, 1, 2, 12, 14.
 Saysine, Sayzine, possession, 144, 149.
 Scalede, having the *scall* or scab, 224.
 Scarse, scant, 53, 54.
 Scarsliche, niggardly, 34.
 Scarsnesse, niggardliness, 159.
 Scele, Scele, skill, reason, 11, 12, 18, 53, 54.
 Sceluol, Sceluolle, skilful, reasonable, 51, 169, 259.
 Scin, Scinne, skin, 44, 137, 230.
 Sc londre, slandre, 6.
 Schluse, Sluice, 255.
 Scoffe, scorn, ridicule, 128.
 Scolde, to scald, 66.
 Scole, school, 34.
 Scolere, scholar, 39.
 Scome, scum, 44.
 Scorne, *pl.* Scornes, 22, 74, 128.
 Scorne, to scorn, 22.
 Scornere, *pl.* Scorneres, 63, 177.
 Scorni, to scorn, 211.
 Scorpoun, 62.
 Scot, payment, 51 ; A.S. *sceat*.
 Scriveyns, scriveners, 44.
 Seculeres, *pl.* Seculeer, 215.
 Sembleȝ, *pl.*, resemble, 176.
 Semblont, pretence, 27, 137.
 Sengle, single, 48, 175.
 Sentense, opinion, 69.
 Sercle, circle, 141.
 Sergond, Sergont, Seriont, servant, officer, *pl.* Sergons, Serions, 32, 33, 35, 39, 188.
 Sermon, Sermoun, 20, 138.
 Servi, Seruy, to serve, 5, 6, 24, 54, 79, 225.
 Service, 7, 20.

- Seruons = seriions, servants, officers, 37.
- Simple, 134.
- Simpleliche, simply, 134.
- Simplesse, simplicity, 140.
- Simulacion, 23.
- Skele, reason, cause, 6, 7, 8, 38 ; *pl.* Skeles, 80, 117.
- Skeluol, reasonable.
- Skeluolliche, reasonably, with reason, 6.
- Slac, slack, slow, 32.
- Slacnesse, slowness, idleness, 33, 138, 159.
- Slaze, to slay (*3rd pers. sing.* Slazþ), 8, 34, 61, 89, 174.
- Slazþe, slaughter, death, 90.
- Sle, Sleā, to slay, 48, 223.
- Sleauþe, Sleawþe, Sleuþe, sloth, 16, 31, 34, 40, 67, 157, 163.
- Sleauuol, Sleauuolle, Sleawol, slothful, 170, 174.
- Slep, sleep, 31, 264.
- Slepe, to sleep, 29, 51.
- Slepp, sleeps, 56, 127.
- Slepinde, sleeping, 158.
- Sleuuol, Sleawolle, Sleuuolle, slothful, 31, 32, 34, 67.
- Sleuuolliche, slothfully, 32.
- Sleze, *adj.* prudent, 265.
- Slezþe, sleight, craft, prudence, 18, 78, 118, 124, 265.
- Slyt, slides, 149.
- Smac, Smak, taste, relish, 33, 82, 83, 106, 245 ; *pl.* Smackes, 112.
- Smackinde, tasting, relishing, 245, 260.
- Smacky, to taste, 247, 269.
- Smakeþ, taste, relish, 92, 106.
- Smal, small, 74, 137 ; *pl.* Smale, 23, 130.
- Smalliche, *adv.* minutely, 111 ; A.S. *smealice*.
- Smel, smell, 123, 177.
- Smerie, to smear, anoint, 60 ; A.S. *smérian*.
- Smeringe, anointing, 148.
- Smeryels, Smeriels, ointment, 187, 217 ; A.S. *smérels*.
- Smit, smites, 30, 116.
- Smite, sound, voice, 140.
- Smijes, carpenters.
- Smot, smote, 48.
- Snaw, snow, 267.
- Snegge, snail, 32 ; A.S. *sneg-el*, snail.
- Snode, morsel, 77, 111 ; *pl.* Snoden, 218 ; A.S. *snid*, from *sníðan*, to cut.
- Sobre, 254.
- Sobreliche, soberly, 248, 265.
- Sobrete, sobriety, 4, 254.
- Sodaynliche, suddenly, 64, 248.
- Soffre, suffer, 139.
- Soigneus, busy, 155.
- Solaci, to please, 63, 213.
- Solas, solace, 72, 108.
- Solemnes, *pl.* Solemn, 224.
- Solempne, solemn, 225.
- Somblont, pretence, 211.
- Somme, sum, 261.

- Somoni, to summon, 87, 104.
 Sophistrie, 65.
 Sopiere, supper, 133.
 Sostene, Sostyne, to sustain, 35,
 38, 39, 45, 56, 57, 104.
 Sostinonce, 54, 139.
 Sotil, subtle, crafty, *pl.* Sotyls,
 26, 59, 82, 99.
 Sotilliche, subtly, 26, 46, 99.
 Sotylhede, subtlety, 117.
 Soucouri, to succour, 186.
 Soudeurs, soldiers, 146.
 Soupi, to sup, 52.
 Soverayn, 189.
 Sovi, Sovy, to save, 98, 162, 226.
 Spacialliche, specially, 252.
 Spade, 108.
 Spari, to spare, abstain, 157, 224.
 Speche, speech, 21.
 Special, 15, 16, 94.
 Specialliche, specially, 2, 7, 16,
 69.
 Spek, spake, 251.
 Speke, to speak, 33 ; *3rd pers.*
sing. Spekeþ, Speckþ, speaks, 10,
 34, 56, 126 ; *pl.* Spekeþ, 18.
 Spekeman, spokesman, 60, 99.
 Spekenne, to speak, 94, 103, 104,
 109.
 Spekinde, speaking, 226.
 Spekinge, speaking, speech, 50.
 S pelle, story, gospel, 5, 6, 57,
 58, 109.
 Spendere, expender, treasurer,
 190.
 Spendinge, expense ; *pl.* Spend-
 inges, 21, 34, 37.
 Sperringe, a sparrow, 52 ; A.S.
spearwa.
 Spille, to destroy, 232 ; *3rd pers.*
sing. Spilþ, 182, 212.
 Spirituallyche, spiritually, 14.
 Spipre, spider, 164.
 Sposayles, espousal, wedding,
 189, 235.
 Spotty, blemished, faulty, 192.
 Spousbreche, adultery, 37.
 Spouse, 10, 118.
 Spousedede, espoused, 118.
 Spoushod, marriage, 10, 43, 185.
 Spousy, to marry, 225.
 Spousynge, marriage, 227.
 Sprede, to spread, 29.
 Spret, spreads, 23, 131.
 Ssake, to shake, 4, 116.
 Ssame, shame, 8 ; *pl.* Ssamcs,
 21, 82.
 Ssamie, to be ashamed, 229.
 Ssamnesse, shame, 142.
 Ssamuest, Ssamueste, modest,
 193, 216, 222.
 Ssamuol, shameful, 117.
 Ssamuolliche, shamefully, 181.
 Ssarnbodde, sharn-bude, a dung
 beetle ; A.S. *scéarn*, dung, 61.
 Ssarp, sharp, 165.
 Ssarpnesse, sharpness, penance,
 142, 165, 186.
 Ssast = *sslazst* = *slazst*, slayest,
 56.
 Ssat = *sseat*, shot, 45.
 Sseawere, a mirror, 84, 177.

- Sseawinge, revelations, appearance, 2 ; *pl.* Sseawyniges, 14.
 Sseawy, ssewy, to show, 56, 73, 100 ; *pt.* Sseaweþ, 21, 26, 110 ; *pret.* Sseawede, 13.
 Ssed, Ssede, shade, shadow, 77, 95, 97, 137.
 Ssedde, shed, 1, 107.
 Sseduy, to take shade or shelter, 97.
 Ssefþes = ssepþes, forms, 62.
 Ssel, (1.) shall, 2, 5, 104 ; (2.) owes, ought, 113, 115, 145, 214.
 Sseld, shield, 1, 167.
 Sselt, shalt, 5, 129.
 Ssende, to destroy, confound, ruin, 28, 126, 148 ; *3rd pers. sing. pres.* Ssent ; A.S. *scendan*.
 Ssep, Ssepe, sheep, 50, 88, 137, 192.
 Ssepe, reward, pay, hire, 33, 40, 86, 113, 146 ; *pl.* Ssepes, wages, 39. Chaucer uses *Shype* (Parson's Tale) in the same sense ; cp. A.S. *sceoppa*, a treasury.
 Ssepinges, forms, creatures, 64, 108, 245.
 Sseppere, creator, 6, 7, 18, 145.
 Ssepþ, giveth reward, 209.
 Ssepþe, creature, form, 5, 6, 81, 151, 270 ; *pl.* Ssepþes, 13, 64, 84, 112 ; A.S. *sceppan*, to form ; *sceaft*, creature.
 Sserte, shirt, 190.
 Sset, shuts, 186, 218.
 Ssette, to shut, 179, 188 ; *pret.* Ssette, 189.
 Ssette-pors, a shut-purse, 187.
 Ssetteles, bars, 94 ; A.S. *scyttel*, lock, bar, bolt.
 Ssrewees, mirrors, 176.
 Ssewy, to show, 44, 69. *See* Sseawy.
 Ssewynge, appearance, 36. *See* Sseawinge.
 Ssine, to shine, 188.
 Ssinþ, shines, 64.
 Ssip, Ssipe, ship, 112, 129.
 Ssipmen, shipmen, sailors, 60, 140.
 Ssmak, taste, 83.
 Sso, shoe, 220.
 Ssoinge, shoes, 154.
 Ssofþ, shoves, 174.
 Ssolde, should, 12 ; *2nd per. sing.* Ssoldest ; *3rd pl.* Ssolden, 6, 12, 20.
 Ssolle, Ssollen, *pl.* shall, 1, 3, 5, 8.
 Ssop, created, 87.
 Ssornede, scabby, 224. *See* Ssarnbode.
 Ssort, Ssorte, short, brief, 81, 98, 99, 189.
 Ssorthede, brevity, 99.
 Ssortlaker, more briefly, 252.
 Ssortliche, briefly, 24, 79, 99, 123.
 Ssrede, to clothe, 90, 258 ; A.S. *scriýdan*, to clothe.
 Ssredinge, clothing, 177, 258.
 Ssrewe, wretch, 32.

- Ssriſte, Ssryfte, Ssriſſe, ſhriſt, 4,
14, 20, 31, 32.
Ssriſſ, ſhrives, 174.
Ssriue, *p.p.* ſhriven, 174.
Ssriuere, confessor, 174.
Ssriuſteuader, father confessor,
38, 155.
Ssriue, Ssryue, to ſhrive, confeſs,
5, 32, 70, 132.
Ssrof, ſhrove, confeſſed, 178.
Ssroud, covering, dreſs, 258.
Ssyetere, ſhooter, archer, 174.
Ssylde, to ſhield, 271.
Ssyne, to ſhine, 267.
Ssynynde, ſhining, 76.
Stable, 83.
Stablen, ſtables, 210.
Stages, 122.
Stale, ſtealing, theft, 9.
Stape, ſtep, 3, 47 ; *pl.* Stapes, 32,
46.
Stas (*pl.* of Stat), ſtates, 28.
Stat, ſtate, 7, 28, 48.
Steaz, aſcended, 13, 213 ; A.S.
ſtigan (*pret.* *ſtáh*), to aſcend.
Stech, Stechche, piece, *pl.* Stech-
ches, 62, 111 ; A.S. *ſticce*.
Stede, place, 7, 140.
Stedeueſt, ſtedfaſt, 84, 116, 232.
Stedeueſtliche, ſtedfaſtly, 11, 86,
105, 233.
Stedeueſtneſſe, ſtedfaſtneſſ, 83,
164.
Stef, ſtaff, *pl.* Steues, 156.
Stefhede, ſtiffneſſ, ſtrength, 263.
Stefliche, ſtrongly, 258.
Stele, to ſteal, 79 ; *2nd per. ſing.*
Stelſt, 38 ; *3rd ſing.* Stelþ, 23,
37 ; *pl.* Steleþ, 26, 37.
Stempe, to ſtumble, 206. *Stumpe*
occurs in this ſenſe in Owl and
Nightingale.
Stench, ſtink, 248.
Stene, to ſtone, 213.
Stepſe, 23, 180.
Sterie, to ſtir, direct, endeavour,
173, 186.
Sterre, ſtar, 164.
Sterren, ſtars, 267.
Sterue, to die, 2, 70, 143 ; *pl. 2nd*
ſing. Sterfſt, 71 ; *3rd ſing.*
Sterfþ, 54, 71 ; *3rd pl.* Ster-
ueþ, 36, 71 ; *ſubj. pret.* Storue,
54 ; *pret.* Sterf, 70.
Steruinde, dying, 75.
Steruinge, death, 10, 73, 95, 165.
Steve, ſtaff, 156. *See* Stef.
Stillehede, ſolitude, 142.
Stilliche, ſecretly, 65.
Stinkinde, Stynkynde, ſtinking,
32, 49, 81, 189.
Stole, ſtool, 239.
Ston, ſtone, 1 ; *pl.* Stones, 140.
Stonchi, to ſtaunch, 73, 110.
Stondinde, ſtanding, 170 ; ſtiff,
216.
Stoppi, to ſtop, 257.
Stor, incenſe, 211 ; A.S. *ſtor*.
Storue, Storuen, died, 12, 67.
See Sterue.
Stoupi, to ſtoop, bend, 151.
Strait, Strayt, Strayte, 54, 78, 130.

- Straitliche, Straytliche, Streytliche, straitly, strictly, 7, 18, 34, 171.
- Strang, strong, 16; *pl.* Stronge, 83.
- Stranger, stronger, 168.
- Stranglaker, more strongly, 17, 25, 88, 116.
- Stranglakest, most strongly, 157.
- Strangliche, strongly, firmly, 15, 127, 212.
- Strayny, to restrain, 263.
- Strechche, to stretch, 103.
- Streme, Streame, stream, 72.
- Strenger, stronger, 170.
- Strengþe, force, 3, 45, 161; no strengþe = no fors, no matter, 51.
- Strengþi, to strengthen, 86, 180.
- Strepe, to strip, 98, 105.
- Strif, Stryf, strife, dispute, 23, 57, 66.
- Striui, to strive, dispute, 65.
- Striuinde, striving, 154.
- Stryfinge, strife, 57.
- Strok, stroke, 34.
- Stude, Studie, Studye, to study, 24, 34, 70, 78, 232.
- Substance, 113.
- Substanciel, Substancieler, 113.
- Sudyakne, Supdeakne, subdeacon, 225, 235.
- Suspiciouses, *pl.* suspicious, 226.
- Sustyleneþ, *pl.* sustain, 57.
- Symoniaks, 41.
- Symony, 34, 41, 42.
- Tables (commandments), 5.
- Tables, games of hazard, 45, 52.
- Take, to give, 22; touch upon, 56; 3rd *sing.* Takþ, 175.
- Takinges, touchings, handlings, 9, 10, 46.
- Tale, number, estimation, 11, 108, 234.
- Talyinde, tale-bearing, 207.
- Tauerne, 56.
- Tauernyer, a tavern-keeper, 44; a tavern-goer, 51.
- Tayles, duties, tollage, 38.
- Te, to, 172.
- Tealde, told, 239.
- Techches, habits, bad habits, 32, 136.
- Teche, to teach; 3rd *sing.* Tekþ, 6, 49; *pl.* Techeþ, 8.
- Techinge, teaching, 68.
- Tedrazynge, detraction, 61.
- Telle, to number, reckon, 17, 21.
- Telleres, narrators, 58.
- Tellinge, numbering, 1.
- Telþ, tells, 62.
- Temperance, 4, 124.
- Tempeste, 73.
- Tempreþ, tempers, 254.
- Tende, tenth, 2, 11, 13.
- Tendes, tithes, 41.
- Tendre, tender, 77, 148.
- Teppe (*obliq. case* of Tep), a tap, 27.
- Terestre, 50.
- Terme, 33.
- Teþ, teeth, 67.

- Teue = *to eue*, yesterday evening, 51.
- Tezele, tile, 167.
- Tidynges, tidings, 58.
- Tiene, to annoy, weary, 34. *See* Tyeni.
- Timlich, Timliche, timely, temporal, 19, 30, 44, 52.
- To, too, 6.
- To-ayens, against, 6, 10, 26, 158.
- To-brekeþ, *pl.* break in pieces, 64.
- Tobreþ, breaks in pieces, 6.
- Tobroke, broken in pieces, 30.
- Tocleue, burst in pieces, 50, 56.
- Tocne, Tokne, a token, sign, 226.
- Tocnen, Toknen, tokens, signs, 10, 69, 216.
- Todele, to divide, separate, distinguish, distribute, 2, 17, 80 ; Todel (*imp.*) 73, 74 ; *pp.* Todelde, 83, 86 ; *pret.* Todelde, 226, 164 ; To-dele we, let us depart, 72.
- Todelinge, division, separation, 3, 72, 189.
- To-delþ, divides, separates, distinguishes, 16, 17, 119.
- To-dizt, explained, rendered, 164. *See* Dizte.
- Todiztinge, division, 72.
- To-drazinge, detraction, 57, 62.
- To-draþ, detracts, depreciates, 62.
- Togidere, Togydere, together, 43, 67.
- To-heawe, to hew to pieces, 62 ; to-heauþ, curtails.
- Tokne, token, 68, 177.
- Toknen, tokens, signs, 2.
- Tckninge, sign, 50.
- Tol, toll, 192.
- To-moche, very much, 14.
- Tomochelhede, excess, 248.
- Tonge, tongue, 24, 50.
- Tongen, tongues, 22, 142.
- Tonne, a tun, barrel, 27, 167.
- Tonnen, tuns, 35.
- Toparte, to divide, distribute, 170.
- Toppe, above, 6, 106, 163.
- Torment, *sb.* 29, 79 ; *pl.* Tormens, 73, 166, 167.
- Tormente, *v.* 53.
- Tornement, Tornoyment, a tournament, 46, 101, 117, 252 ; *pl.* Tornemens, Tornoymens, 166, 252.
- Topan, to that, 56.
- Toualþ, falls back, perishes, 33, 184.
- Tounes, towns, 30.
- Touore, before, 7.
- Tour, tower, 23, 47.
- Toyans, Toyeans, Toyens, against, towards, 20, 86.
- Tozte, taught, 96, 149.
- Trau, Traw, Traue, Trawe, Trauwe, tree, 28, 57, 95, 201, 202.
- Trauail, *sb.* labour, 130.
- Trauailinde, running, 167.
- Trauayli, to labour, oppress, 33, 39, 171.
- Traues, Trawes, trees, 25, 94, 95.

- Traysoun, treason, 37.
 Tresor, Trezor, treasure, 57, 96.
 Tresoriere, treasurer, 231.
 Tretable, tractable, 94, 167.
 Trete, to treat, 142.
 Trewe, true, 101.
 Treueliche, Treweliche, Triewe-
 liche, truly, 79, 134, 169.
 Treuþe, Trewþe, truth, troth, 221,
 256.
 Triacle, remedy, medicine, 17,
 144.
 Trobli, Troubli, to trouble, 104,
 150.
 Trone, throne, 266.
 Trossinge, tressing of hair, 176.
 Trost, *imp.* trust, 241.
 Trosti, to trust, 242.
 Truffles, jests, 56, 58.
 Truont, a beggar, 174 ; *pl.* Tru-
 ons, 194.
 Tuay, Tuaye, two, 1, 30, 67.
 Tuelf, twelve, 2, 11.
 Tuelfte, twelfth, 14.
 Tuo, two, 2.
 Turle, turtle dove, 226.
 Tuyes, Tuies, twice, 35, 36.
 Tuyg, a twig, 22 ; *pl.* Tuygges,
 Tuyegges, 17, 41.
 Tuyste, to twist, 159.
 Tyares, Tyeares, Tyeres, tears,
 74, 83, 173, 267.
 Tyene, anger, grief, disinclination,
 31, 66, 124 ; A.S. *teóna*.
 Tyeni, Tyeny, to grow weary of,
 73, 99, 142, 161 ; A.S. *teonan*.
 Tymlich, Tymliche, temporal, 2.
 Tyrans, tyrants, 182.
 þa, *f.* the, that, 33.
 þan, *dat.* that (man), 23.
 þan, those, 21, 265.
 þane, þanne, *acc.* the, 27, 34, 66.
 þank, thanks, 18.
 þanne, than, then, when, 12, 16,
 18, 20, 30.
 þannes, thence, 12.
 þaz, though, 9.
 þazles, yet, nevertheless, 6, 8, 9.
 þe, thou-thyself, 54.
 þeauwes, þeawes, practices, habits,
 17, 78, 131 ; A.S. *þéaw*.
 þellich, þelliche, this, these, such,
 7, 8, 9, 10, 27, 266 ; A.S.
þyllíc, þylc, the like. It is pro-
 bable that the *pl.* *þelliche*, O.E.
þelke, has been confounded with
 A.S. *þa ylca*, the same.
 þenche, to think, 47, 55 ; *imp.*
 Thench, 20 ; þengst, *2nd per.*
sing. 214 ; *3rd s.* þengþ, 18,
 65, 92.
 þenchinde, thinking, 212.
 þenchinge, thought, 6, 72, 212.
 þer, there, where, 1, 5, 6, 58.
 þerhuile, þerhuils, þerhuyl, whilst,
 139, 217.
 þerles, windows, 204 ; A.S. *þórel*,
 a hole.
 þermide, therewith, 127.
 þerne, for þesne, *acc.* this, 94,
 111, 113, 214.
 þerteyens, there-against, 11,

- þes**, *m.* this, 53, 65, 150.
þet, *rel.* that, 1, 14, 19.
þet, the *article neuter*, the, 2, 14, 16, 19, 181.
þet oþer, second, 16.
þet-to-þan, in order that, 170.
þewes, customs, habits, 79.
þider, thither, 140.
þieffe, theft, 9.
þierne, a maid servant, 129.
þiesterliche, darkly, 244.
þiesterneſſe, darkness, 201.
þieſtre, dark, 159; A.S. *þeoſter*.
þineþ, *þingþ*, appears, 18, 108, 143, 164.
þinen (of), thine, 194.
þis (*dat.* *þiſe*, *þiſen*), 2, 6, 7, 44, 121.
þis, *þiſe*, **þes**, these, 1, 7.
þo, *f.* the, that, 1, 12, 13.
þo, *pl.* the, those, 8, 9, 13.
þo, when, 141.
þole, *imp.*, suffer, endure, 117.
þolemodneſſe, patience, endurance, 68, 132, 183, 185.
þolie, *þolye*, to suffer, endure, 12, 22, 33, 74, 162; A.S. *þolian*.
þolyng, *þolyng*, endurance, suffering, 157, 163, 164.
þolynde, enduring, 167.
þon, those, 11, 12, 135.
þondre, thunder, 130.
þonke, *þonkes*, thanks, 18, 55, 262.
þonki, *þonky*, to thank, 6, 7.
þorn-hog, hedge-hog, 66.
þorſt, thirst, 73, 96.
þorþ, through, 81.
þoſ, *þoſ*, thus, 39, 184.
þoume, thumb, 43.
þouſend, *þouzen*, *þouſond*, 67, 75, 77, 268.
þoȝt, *þoȝte*, thought, 6, 9.
þrauwe, *þrawe*, to throw, 139, 152.
þrawþ, *þraupþ*, throws, 17, 23, 179.
þreapni, *þreapny*, to threaten, reprove, 97, 162, 184; A.S. *þreapian*.
þreapning, *þreapnyng*, threatening, 38, 65, 66, 72.
þrel, *pl.* *þrelles*, thrall, slave, 19, 67, 86, 87.
þreldom, *þreldome*, slavery, bondage, 86, 87.
þreſtes, crowds, hosts, 183.
þreu, threw, 133.
þri, three, 2, 3, 7; *þriſiþe*, three times, 234.
þridde, third, 2, 12.
þries, thrice, 35, 36.
þrin, therein, 167.
þrittazte, thirtieth, 234.
þritti, thirty, 141, 234.
þrote, throat, 14.
þyef, *obliq. case*, *þyeve*, thief, 37, 263; *pl.* *þyeues*, 37.
þyefþe, theft, 38, 192.
þyeſter, *þyeſtre*, dark, 45, 264, 266, 276; A.S. *þeoſter*.
þyeſterneſſe, darkness, 189.

þyues = þyeues, thieves, 254.

Uader, father, *pl.* Uaderes, 155.

Uaderlease, Uaderlyese, fatherless, 188, 193.

Uair, Uayr, Uaire, Uayre, fair, 16, 27, 81.

Ualle, to fall, 29, 31.

Ualþ, falls, 66 ; Ualleþ, *pl.* fall, 69.

Ualouwe, to fade, 81.

Uals, Ualse, false, 6, 10, 18.

Ualse, to forge, 40, 62.

Ualsere, a falsifier, 62.

Ualshede, falsehood, 10, 39, 63.

Ualsliche, Ualslyche, falsely, 28, 64.

Ualsne, *acc.* false, 24.

Uand, found, 57, 181.

Uanite, vanity, 77.

Uanni, to fan, winnow, 139.

Uare, to fare, 1.

Uayreþ, becomes fair, 95 ; makes fair, 232.

Uayrhede, beauty, 16, 18, 75.

Uayrliche, fairly, smoothly, 1, 59.

Ueawe, few, 162, 254.

Uedde, fed, 96, 190.

Uede, to feed, 199.

Uelaze, fellow, participator, accessory, 36, 37, 67.

Uelaze, to join, share, participate, 101, 102, 256.

Uelazrede, fellowship, communion, 9, 10, 14, 38.

Ueld, Uelde, Uelden, filled, 55, 233.

Ueld, Uelde, field, 81, 131.

Uele, Uelen, many, 5, 13, 102, 103 ; *uelesiþe*, *ueleziþe*, many times, 20, 257 ; *ueleuald*, many fold, 212.

Uele, to feel, 154, 180.

Uelinge, feeling, 241.

Uelle, skin, 210.

Uelle, to fill, 77, 92.

Uelleþ, *pl.* fill, 44.

Uelþ, feels, 23, 25, 131.

Uelþ, fills, 58.

Uelþe, filth, 56, 61, 81.

Uend, Uiend, Uyend, enemy, fiend, devil, 1, *et passim*.

Uendonginge, vendage, sale, 36.

Uenial, Uenyal, 16, 73.

Uenim, Uenym, 17, 22.

Uenimouse (*pl.* Uenimouses), 27, 171.

Uer, Uere, fire, 30, 65, 66, 74.

Uer, far, 133, 143.

Uerliche, suddenly, hastily, 55, 130.

Uerlichhede, haste, 55 ; A.S. *fær*, sudden ; *færlíce*, suddenly.

Uerre, far, distant, 204.

Uerri, to put at a distance, remove, 178 ; A.S. *feorrian*.

Uers, verse, 128.

Uerst, Uerste, first, 1, 2, 31.

Uerste, to delay, 173 ; A.S. *fyrst*, interval ; *fyrstan*, to give respite.

- Uerpe, fourth, 2, 3.
 Uerþinge, farthing, 193.
 Uest, Ueste, fast, 50, 91, 178.
 Ueste, to fast, 51, 52.
 Uestemens, vestments, 41.
 Uestinges, fasts, 33, 51, 52.
 Uestliche, fast, firm, 166, 252, 243.
 Uestnesse, firmness, stability, 104, 107.
 Uestni, to fasten, strengthen, establish, 106, 117, 213.
 Uet, feet, 14, 15.
 Uet, Uette, fat, 35, 53.
 Uete, *oblig.* case of Uet, a vat, vessel, 199.
 Ueteres, fetters, 128.
 Ueth, feedeth, 241.
 Ueperen, feathers, 270.
 Uetteþ, *pl.* fatten, 241.
 Uice, 27.
 Uif, five, 46.
 Uifte, Uyfte, fifth, 2.
 Uil, Uile, Uyl, Uyle, vile, 82, 132, 180.
 Uil, fell (*pl.* Uille, Uillen), 16, 67, 98.
 Uilayn, Uileyn, Uileyne, wicked, disgraceful, vile, 59, 194.
 Uile, Vile, oil, 93.
 Uile, will, 152.
 Uiles, *pl.* vile, 76.
 Uileynie, Uileyneye, Uileynye, disgraceful conduct, wickedness, 18, 31, 75.
 Uileynlaker, more wickedly, 64.
 Uileynliche. Uileynlyche, wickedly, 64, 69.
 Uilhede, vileness, 130.
 Uilliche, vilely, shamefully, 133.
 Uinde, Uynde, to find; *2nd pers. sing.* Uinst; *3rd pers. sing.* Uint, 38, 39, 74, 207.
 Uingre, finger, 5, 63.
 Uisage, 45.
 Uiss, Uisse, fish, 50, 110, 170.
 Uissere, fisherman, 60, 238.
 Uipele, fiddle, 105.
 Uiȝt, Uiȝte, fight, 131, 169.
 Uiȝte, to fight, 15, 157.
 Uiȝtinde, fighting, 219.
 Uiȝtinge, fighting, fight, 37, 170, 181.
 Ulateri, to flatter, 61.
 Ulatours, flatterers, 256.
 Ulaȝe, *pp.* flayed, 73.
 Uleaȝ, fled, 130, 141.
 Uledde, Uledden, fled, 204.
 Uless, Ulesse, flesh, 9, 31, 47, 80, 110, 180.
 Ulesslich, Ulessliche, Ulesslyche, fleshly, carnal, 10, 35, 42, 87, 176.
 Uleþ, flies, flieth, 25, 41.
 Uleȝe, fly, 136.
 Uleȝen, flies, 39, 58, 270.
 Ulindre, moth, 206. This is connected with *flutter* and *flutter*.
 Cp. Prov. E. *flinder*, *flutter*, fragment; Prov. Ger. *flandern*, to flutter.
 Uliȝþ, Ulyȝþ, flies, 165, 206, 254.

- Ulod, Ulode, flood, 247.
 Uly, to fly; Ulyeþ, *pl.* fly, flee, 254.
 Ulyinde, flying, 66, 71.
 Ulynte, flint, 136.
 Unonynge, discord, 65.
 Uol, Uolle, full, complete, 1, 28, 44, 96, 156, 160, 259.
 Uole, Uolk, folks, people, 15, 43, 122.
 Uoldest, completest, 270. *See* Uoldo.
 Uoldo, perfect, perfected, 28, 96, 234.
 Uolhede, fulness, complete, 119.
 Uolkerede, people, 196.
 Uolle, Uolnesse, fulness, 133, 266.
 Uolleres, fullers, 167.
 Uolliche, Uollyche, fully, 73, 78, 267.
 Uolmad, perfect, 28, 260.
 Uolserue, to serve fully, 33.
 Uolueid, Uoluelde, fulfilled, 88, 96, 149.
 Uoluelle, to fulfil, 64, 93.
 Uoluellinde, perfect, 88, 113.
 Uoluellinge, completion, 260.
 Uoluelþ, fulfils, 7, 83, 122.
 Uolþeþ, follows, 12, 24, 36.
 Uolþi, Uolþy, *imp.* Uolþe, follow, 74, 83, 166.
 Uolþinde, Uolþynde, following, 1, 2.
 Uon, foes, 255.
 Uondere, temper, 116.
 Uondi, Uondy, to tempt, 15, 46, 116, 170; A.S. *fandian*.
 Uondinge, Uondynge, Uondingge, temptation, 1, 25, 31, 116, 168, 176.
 Uor, for, 1, 2.
 Uorbegge, to atone for, 78.
 Uorbere, to forbear, abstain, 148.
 Uorberinge, forbearing, abstinence, 148, 205.
 Uorberne, to consume, 225.
 Uorberned, Uorbernde, consumed, burnt, 30, 67, 265.
 Uorbernþ, consumes, 74.
 Uorberþ, forbears, bears with, 115.
 Uorbisne, Uorbysne, *pl.* Uorbisnen, example, 46, 47, 87, 89, 237; A.S. *fórebysen*.
 Uorbode, forbidden, 8, 9, 45.
 Uorbyet, forbids, 6.
 Uordeþ, does away with, destroy, 121. *See* Uordo.
 Uore-yzede, aforesaid, 190.
 Uorkest, cast forth (as dead).
 Uorlay, lay with, ravished, 230, 231.
 Uorleas, lost, 181, 184.
 Uorlet, forsakes, forsook, left, 184, 259.
 Uorlete, to leave, forsake, forgive, 126, 165, 262; A.S. *forlætan*.
 Uorlore, lost, ruined, 11, 14, 128.
 Uorlorene, *pl.* lost, ruined, 13, 14.
 Uorlyese, to lose, 57.
 Uorlyesinge, Uorlyezinge, loss, 156, 243.

- Uor-roted, Uor-rotede, rotten, decayed, 148, 205.
 Uorspeche, prologue, preface, 2, 105, 165.
 Uorte, for to, until, 220.
 Uorþ, forth, 119.
 Uorþan, because, 181.
 Uorþenche, to repent, forthink, 5, 29, 125, 159.
 Uorþenchinde, repenting, 4, 20, 28, 32, 178.
 Uorþenchinge, repentance, 73.
 Uorþingþ, repents, 27, 29, 62.
 Uorþrawe, overthrow, 86.
 Uorwerde, bargain, 36 ; A.S. *foreweard*.
 Uoryaf, forgave, 114.
 Uoryef, *imp.* forgive, 110, 114.
 Uoryefþ, forgives, 28, 112, 179.
 Uoryet, forgets, 18.
 Uoryet, *imp.* forget, 73.
 Uoryete, to forget, 6, 46, forgotten, 115.
 Uoryeteþ, *pl.* forget, 6, 78.
 Uoryetinde, forgetful, 32.
 Uoryetinge, forgetfulness, 18, 32, 33.
 Uoryeue, to forgive, 29.
 Uoryeuenesse, forgiveness, 32, 113, 179.
 Uorzake, to forsake, 48, 195.
 Uorzakþ, Uorzazþ, forsakes, 18, 43, 221.
 Uorzede, aforesaid, 190.
 Uorzok, forsook, 77.
 Uorzoke, forsaken, 179.
 Uorzope, forsooth, 16, 79.
 Uorzualz, devoured, 67.
 Uorzuelze, to devour, 15, 56, 111, 174, *pl.* Uorzuelzeþ, 52.
 Uorzuelþ, Uorzuelzþ, devours, 17, 111.
 Uorzuerie, perjure, forswear, 6.
 Uorzueriinge, perjury, 57.
 Uorzuolze, *pp.* devoured, 111, 206.
 Uorzuorene, perjured, 19.
 Uorzuyþ, devours, 61.
 Uot, foot, 56, 127.
 Uoul, Uoule, foul, 22, 25, 35.
 Uoulhede, crime, disgrace, dishonour, 25, 75.
 Uoulliche, foully, wickedly, 41, 194.
 Uounde, *pp.* found, 83.
 Uour, four, 3.
 Uourtazte, fortieth, 4, 13.
 Uourti, forty, 13, 67.
 Uox, fox, 151.
 Uoþel, bird, 71, 178.
 Uoþelere, fowler, 254.
 Uoþeles, birds, 105.
 Uram, from, 7, 12.
 Ureme, advantage, profit, 43, 69, 94, 117 ; A.S. *freme*.
 Uremuol, advantageous, beneficial, 80.
 Urend, Uriend, Uryend, friend, 30, 67.
 Urendrede, friendship, 149.
 Urete, to eat, devour, 39.
 Ureþie, to keep free or holy ; A.S. *freodian*, *fridian*.

- Uri, to deliver, 262.
 Uri, Ury, free, 86.
 Uridom, Urydom, freedom, 1, 41, 85, 87.
 Uriliche, Urilyche, freely, 70, 86.
 Urind = Uriend, friend, 96.
 Uriwyl, free will, 86.
 Urostes, frosts, 108.
 Us, use, 55.
 Usi, Usy, to use, 48, 79.
 Uyealdirde, folding, 239.
 Uyend, enemy, devil, 75, 117.
 Uynde, to find, 1, 31, invent, 24.
 Uynt, finds, 31.
 Uyzte, to fight, 117.

 Waki, Waki, to watch, 52, 263.
 Wakinde, waking, watching, 158.
 Wakinge, vigil, 33, 52, 232.
 Walewe, to wallow, 126.
 Wanhope, despair, 29, 34.
 Wantrokiyng, lack, want, 265 ;
 A.S. *trucan*, to fail, abate.
 Waste, 19.
 Wayn, profit, advantage, 43.
 Waynye, to diminish, 88 ; A.S.
 wanian.
 Wayte, to watch, lie in wait,
 121, 179.
 Waytinge, watching, 15.
 Waze, wave, 206 ; A.S. *wæg*.
 Wed, pledge, 36, 102, 113 ; A.S.
 wæd.
 Wed-dyad, Wedde-dyad, mort-
 gage, 35.
 Weder, weather, 129.
 Wedercoc, vane, 180.
 Wefde, altar, 112. *See* Wyefde.
 Wel, very, 16, 22.
 Wellen, wells, 80.
 Wel-wilynde, well-wisher, friend,
 112.
 Wende, Wenden, thought, 108.
 Wende, to turn, go, 6, 13, con-
 vert, 90.
 Wendeþ, *pl.* turn, go, 60.
 Wendinge, Wendynge, departure,
 separation, 70, 71.
 Wene, to think, 179.
 Weneþ, *pl.* think, 21.
 Wenst, weenest, 129.
 Went, turns, 69, 180.
 Wenþ, thinks, 21, 22, 128.
 Wenynge, thought, 113.
 Wepindeliche, weepingly, 192.
 Wepþ, weeps, 93.
 Wereden, protected, 266.
 Wereþ, guards, 124.
 Wereþ, becomes weary, 17.
 Weri, Wery, (1) to become
 weary, 33, 99. (2) weary, 84.
 Werie, to guard, 129, 182 ; A.S.
 werian.
 Werihede, weariness, 33.
 Worm, reptile, worm, 137, 215,
 216.
 Wormene, of worms, 216.
 Wermethe, worm-eaten, 229.
 Wernde, denied, 189 ; A.S. *wyr-*
 nan, to refuse.
 Werre, war, 30, 43.
 Werren, wars, 239.

- Werreres = *werres*, wars, strife, 29.
 Werreþ, wars against, opposes, 17, 18.
 Werri, to war against, oppose, 29, 57.
 Werye, to defend, protect, 69, 170.
 Wes, was, 7, past existence, 104.
 Wesse, to wash, 171.
 Wessinge, washing, 178.
 Wesst, washes, 202.
 Westen, knew, 72.
 Weter, water, 66, 74, 98.
 Wetery, to water, 96, 98.
 Weued, altar, 167. *See* Wyefde.
 Wexe, to grow, 95 ; grown, 26.
 Wexeþ, *pl.* grow, increase, 23.
 Wext, grows, 3, 18.
 Weyuerindemen, wayfaring men, travellers, 39.
 Weze, to weigh, 44, 91, 255, 256.
 Wezþ, weigheth, 255.
 Wichen, Wychen, witches, 19, 40.
 Wile, Wyle (*3rd pers. sing.*), will, *pl.* Willeþ, 16.
 Willinge, willingness, 9.
 Wilni, Wylny, to desire, 35, 36.
 Wiluolliche, willingly, *wilfully*, 140.
 Winne, to profit, 90.
 Wisliche, wisely, 210.
 Wip-begge, redeem, 186.
 Wip-bozt, redeemed, 186.
 Wip-cleped, recalled, 189.
 Wipdraze, to withdraw, 28.
 Wlaffere, a silly babbler, 262.
 Wlatiinge, Wlatiynge, disgust, 178, 192, 216 ; A.S. *wlatian*, grieve, loathe.
 Wlatuol, hateful, disgusting, 241.
 Wod, Wode, mad, 56, 140.
 Wode, wood, 23, 96.
 Wodewe, widow, 48, 190.
 Wodewen, Wodewon, widows, 193, 225.
 Wodewhod, widowhood, 48, 185.
 Wodhede, madness, rage, 17, 18.
 Woke, week, 7, 212.
 Wolde (*pl.* Wolden), would, 16, 52.
 Woldest, wouldst, 73.
 Wolle, wool, 137.
 Wombe, belly, Womben, *pl.* 53.
 Wonde, wound, 174, 217.
 Wonden, wounds, 148.
 Wonderliche, Wonderlyche, wonderfully, 14, 267.
 Wonderuol, Wonderuolle, wonderful, 15, 266.
 Wondrinde, wondering, 266.
 Wone, habit, custom, 6, 22, 38 ; A.S. *wune*.
 Woneþ, accustoms, 7.
 Wonie, Wonye, to dwell, 48, 54, 87, 109 ; to accustom, 220 ; A.S. *wunian*.
 Woniynge, Wonyinge, dwelling, abode, 149, 267.
 Wop, weeping, 71, 93, 265 ; A.S. *wóp*.

- Wordle, world, 7.
 Wordleliche, worldly, 164, 210.
 Workinde, working, 206.
 Workuol, active, 199.
 Wors, worse, 20.
 Worsi, to become worse, 33.
 Worþ, 'is worþ,' signifies, 7; avails, 206.
 Worþ, shall be, 74.
 Worþ, Worþe, worthy, fit, 23, 74.
 Worþ, value, 82.
 Worþe, to be worþe = to avail, 90.
 Worþssipe, Worssipe, honour; *sb.* worship, 8, 18, 20, 75, 104.
 Worþssipie, Worssipie, to honour, worship, 5, 6, 8, 75.
 Worþssiphede, honour, esteem, 49.
 Worþssiplich, honourable, 80.
 Worþssipliche, Worssipliche, honourably, 54.
 Worþssipuol, honourable, 80, 83, 259.
 Worþuolle, honourable, 16.
 Wose, Woze, mud, 87, 89, 186; vapours, 186; A.S. *wase*.
 Wot, knows, 9, 10.
 Wounden, wounds, 266.
 Woze, wall, 72.
 Wrang, wrong, 208.
 Wraye, to bewray, betray, 175; A.S. *wrégan*.
 Wrechchen, wretches, niggards, 187, 188, 189.
 Wreche, Wreche, a wretch, 25, 30, 31, 70, 129.
 Wreche, vengeance, 45.
 Wrek, thrust out, 189, 215; A.S. *wrécan*, to exile (pret. *wréc*).
 Wrench, craft, deceit, 129.
 Wreþ = Wreþþ, hides, 61.
 Wreþe, wrath, 8, 30.
 Wreþeþ, is angry, 17, 34.
 Wreþi, Wreþþi, to make angry, be angry, 8, 60, 232.
 Wreþuolle, angry, enraged, 30.
 Wrikþ, Wriþþ, hides, 128.
 Writ, writes, 5.
 Wrongliche, wrongfully, 8.
 Wroþ, angry, 22.
 Wroþe, badly, 20.
 Wry, hide, cover, 258; A.S. *wrígan*.
 Wryeþ, hide, 61, 175.
 Wychche, witch, 41.
 Wychecreft, witchcraft, 43.
 Wychkedhede, Wyckedhede, wickedness, 43, 114.
 Wyed-hoc, weed-hook, hoe, 121.
 Wyefde, Wyeued, altar, 14, 236; A.S. *weofod*.
 Wyf, *neut.* wife, woman, 9, 181.
 Wyfman, woman, 10, 11.
 Wyfmen, Wymmen, women, 10, 32.
 Wylhede, will, 164.
 Wylles, desires, 138.
 Wyllesuol, wilful, 263.
 Wyllieþ, *pl.* desire, 142.
 Wylni, Wylny, to desire, 9, 10, 11, 34, 243.

- Wylninge, Wylnyng, desire, 11, 22, 30, 47, 72, 85, 176.
 Wyluolle, wilful, willing, 162.
 Wyn, wine, 27.
 Wyngen, wings, 217.
 Wynne, gain, obtain, *sing. 2nd pers.* Wynst, *3rd pers.* Wynþ, 17, 46, 102.
 Wynnynge, gain, 23, 24.
 Wynynde, prevailing, 108.
 Wypi, to wipe, 161.
 Wysen, modes, 62.
 Wyshede, wisdom, 68.
 Wysliche, wisely, 94, 172.
 Wyste, knew, 98, 173.
 Wyt, Wytte, wit, wisdom, sense, 11, 16, 52, 53.
 Wyte, to chide, blame, 69 ; A.S. *witan*.
 Wyte, Wytene, to learn, to know, to wit, 1, 5, 39, 72 ; A.S. *witan*.
 Wytie, Wytie, to keep, preserve, keep from, to heed, 212, 229 ; to guard, 122, 166, 174.
 Wytinde, Wytynde, knowing, 'by his wytinde,' he being aware, knowingly, 6, 8, 21.
 Wytindeliche, knowingly, 8, 18, 65, 175.
 Wytleas, witless, 86.
 Wytnesse, witness, 10, 13.
 Wytte, out of his wytte, out of his wits, 68.
 Wytuol, intelligent, wise, 150.
 Wyþclepie, to recall, 215. *See* Clepie.
 Wyþdraze, to withdraw, abstain, cease, forbear, 9, 52, 53, 138.
 Wyþdrazes, abstinences, 240.
 Wyþdrazing, abstinence, 205.
 Wyþdrazst, withdrawest, 58.
 Wyþdrazþ, withdraws, 151, 254.
 Wyþdroze, should withdraw, 264.
 Wyþerweze, re-weigh, 137.
 Wyþhalt, withholds, 9, 249.
 Wyþinne, within, 10.
 Wyþnime, Wyþnyme, Wyþnime, to blame, reprove, err, 137, 220, 255, 270.
 Wyþnimminge, Wyþnymynge, reproof, error, 82, 120, 148, 154.
 Wyþnimþ, Wyþnymþ, reproves, 17, 22, 69, 129.
 Wyþnymynge, reproaches, 66.
 Wyþscore, separate, 254.
 Wyþsettingges, exceptions, 39.
 Wyþstant, withstands, opposes, 22.
 Wyþstonde, to oppose, 84, 265.
 Wyþstandinge, opposition, 2, 22, 29, 268.
 Wyþþe, rope, 135.
 Wyþzigge, deny, contradict, 175.
 Wyþzigginge, denial, contradiction, 52, 109, 153, 233.
 Wyui, to wive, marry, 228.
 Wyzte, weight, 44.
 Yaf, gave, 5, 50, 79.
 Yalde, old, 7.
 Yalp, boasted, 208 ; A.S. *gilpan* (pret. *gealp*).

- Yarmed, armed, 83, 164.
 Yarn, ran, 191.
 Ybake, baked, 112.
 Ybeate, beaten, 236.
 Ybede, asked for, 117.
 Ybernde, burnt (one), 116.
 Yblent, blinded, 72, 201, 223.
 Ybleued, remained, dwelt, 72, 225.
 Yblissede, *pl.* blessed, consecrated, 41.
 Ybore, born, 17.
 Yborȝe, saved, protected, 3, 5, 41, 121, 205; A.S. *beorgan*, to save, protect (pret. *beorh*, pp. *gebor-gen*).
 Yborȝinge, salvation, 201.
 Ybounde, bound, 22, 145.
 Yboȝt, bought, 144.
 Ybroȝt, brought, 269.
 Yby, been, 31, 178.
 Ybyate, beaten, 239.
 Ycarked, loaded, 138, 142.
 Ycharged, loaded, 127, 260.
 Ychonged, changed, 242.
 Ychosene, *pl.* chosen, 68.
 Yclenzed, Yclienzed, cleansed, 74, 267.
 Ycleped, Yclieped, called, 3, 18, 73, 104.
 Ycliue, Yclyue, climbed, 26, 133; Du. *kleveren*, to climb.
 Ycome, come, 262.
 Ycomparisoned, compared, 81.
 Yconceyued, conceived, 221.
 Yconfermed, Yconfirmed, 106, 146.
 Ycontined, continued, 39.
 Ycontyened, Ycontinent, contained, 118, 260.
 Ycoroured, crowned, 267.
 Ycorumped, corrupted, 140.
 Ydammed = Ydamned, damned, 137.
 Ydampned, damned, 78.
 Ydel, in vain, empty, 5, 131.
 Ydel-blisse, vain glory, 17.
 Ydel-honded, empty-handed, 218.
 Ydelliche, in vain, 80.
 Ydelnesse, idleness, vanity, 48, 74, 164.
 Ydemd, deemed, judged, 12, 137.
 Ydept, dipped, 106.
 Ydiȝt, Ydyȝt, prepared, ordered, 20, 112, 197; decked, 47, 217.
 Ydo, done, 30.
 Ydobbed, dubbed, 83.
 Ydoblede, Ydobbled, doubled, 230, 249.
 Ydolue, broken through, 263.
 Ydraȝe, drawn, 31; treated, 133.
 Ydred, afraid, 104.
 Ydronke, drunk, 51.
 Yeaf, gave, 81.
 Yealde, old, 79, 97.
 Yealdeȝ, grows old, 75.
 Yealden, *pl.* old, 184.
 Yeare, ear, 137, 211.
 Yearen, ears, 154.
 Yeast, east, 124.
 Yeden, went, 74, 166, 233.
 Yef, *imp.* give, 101.

- Yef, if, 5, 21.
 Yefst, givest, 93.
 Yefþ, gives, 22.
 Yefþe, gift, 3, 4, 24, 35.
 Yeld, *imp.* pay, 253.
 Yelde, to yield, give, pay, restore,
 1, 18, 31, 38.
 Yeldere, debtor, 163, 262.
 Yeldinde, indebted, 169.
 Yeldinge, debt, 115, 262.
 Yelpe, to boast, 79. *See* Yalp.
 Yelpere, boaster, 22.
 Yelpingge, Yelpinge, boast, 22,
 58, 59.
 Yelpþ, boasts, 22, 34, 59.
 Yelst, restoredst, paidst, 38, 166.
 Yelt, yields, restores, gives, 18,
 81, 124, 253.
 Yeme, take care of, preserve, 7 ;
 A.S. *gyman*.
 Yeme, care, notice, heed, 24, 54.
 Yemere, sad, 215 ; A.S. *geomor*,
 sad.
 Yend, yonder, 256.
 Yer, year, 1, 110.
 Yerd, rod, stem, 95.
 Yere, ear, 28.
 Yeren, ears, 48, 257.
 Yerne, to desire, 74.
 Yerne, to run, 27, 39, 55 ; A.S.
 yrnan, to run (*pret. arn ; pp.*
 urnen).
 Yerninde, running, 207.
 Yerninge, running, 255 ; revolution,
 141.
 Yernþ, runs, 50, 51, 75, 84, 204.
 Yerþe, earth, 8.
 Yesteneuen, yester evening, 51.
 Yeue, to give, 7, 23, 212.
 Yeuene, *ger.* to give, 114.
 Yeuere, giver, 120, 194.
 Yeuyngge, giving, 120.
 Yexilid, exiled, 20.
 Yfayled, failed, 71.
 Yfloured, flowery, 136.
 Yfryd, fried, 111.
 Ygelt, gilded, 233.
 Ygelt, sinned, trespassed, 26.
 Ygert, girded, 236.
 Ygoyned, joined, 247.
 Ygraunted, granted, 264.
 Ygreued, grieved, 260.
 Yguo, gone, 142.
 Ygyled, beguiled, 124.
 Yhalþede, hallowed, 40, 106,
 235.
 Yharmed, harmed, 238.
 Yhealde, Yhyealde, Yhyalde,
 bound, holden, esteemed, 32,
 68, 69.
 Yhed, hidden, 109, 139, 227.
 Yhende, near, 212.
 Yherberþed, harboured, lodged,
 130, 195.
 Yherd, heard, 97.
 Yhere, to hear, 20.
 Yhered, praised, honoured, 23,
 96, 104.
 Yherþ, hears, 25, 27, 56.
 Yhet, had, 40, 177.
 Yhoded, hooded, consecrated, 49,
 235.

- Yhol, Yhole, whole, 62, 126, 171, 220.
- Yhole, hidden, 26, 109, 221.
- Yholliche, Yhollyche, wholly, 109, 127, 227.
- Yholnesse, wholeness, 230.
- Yholpe, holpen, helped, 184.
- Yhote, called, 118, 199.
- Yhuyted, Yhuited, made white, 178, 228.
- Yhyalde, Yhyealde, bound, 8.
- Yhyer, *imp.* hear, 72.
- Yhyerd, heard, 20.
- Yhyere, to hear, 257.
- Yhyereþ, *pl.* hear, 122.
- Yhyerþ, hears, 62.
- Ykarked, loaded, 246.
- Ykend, conceived, 12, 263.
- Ykest, cast, 108.
- Yknaup, knows, 251.
- Yknaue, to know, 82 ; known, 104.
- Ykuegt=Ykuenct, quenched, 173.
- Ykuenct, quenched, 186, 265.
- Yleaue, permission, 50.
- Yleaue-nymyng, leave-taking, 112.
- Ylefde, believed, 191.
- Yleft, remained, 173.
- Ylefþ, believes, 60, 69, 222.
- Ylefþ, remains, 50.
- Ylend, gave, lent, 19, 36, 90.
- Ylengd, prolonged, 198.
- Ylest, lasts, endures, 83, 168.
- Yleste, to last, persevere, 28, 68, 71.
- Ylete, left, forsaken, 115, 193, 235.
- Yleue, to live, 93.
- Yleue, to believe, 11, 19, 69, 72, 82, 242.
- Yleued, believed, 242.
- Yleued, lived, 130.
- Ylich, Ylych, alike, like, *pl.* Yliche, 62, 65, 88.
- Ylike, same, 224.
- Yloked, kept, guarded, protected, awarded, 7, 20, 67, 70, 191.
- Ylore, lost, 45, 129, 226.
- Yloze, lied, lessened, humbled, 65, 144.
- Ylyerned, learned, taught, 70.
- Ylykned, likened, 234.
- Ylyky, to please, 109.
- Ymad, made, 7, 84.
- Ymage, 87.
- Ymarissed, married, 48, 220.
- Ymaymed, crippled, 135, 141.
- Ymengd, mixed, 196.
- Ymerd, purified, 94.
- Ympen, branches, 94, 95.
- Ymylded, meekened, 117.
- Ymyned, mined, 108.
- Yne, in. *See* Ine.
- Ynemned, named, 66, 79, 266.
- Ynewed, renewed, 107.
- Ynome, seized, taken, 45, 144, 204.
- Ynorissed, nourished, 130, 205.
- Yno3, enough, 22.
- Yno3amendment, repentance, 171.
- Yno3bote, restitution, penance, 4, 180.

- Ynoȝliche, sufficiently, abundantly, 55, 210.
 Yobliged, bound, 113.
 Yok, yoke, 255.
 Yolde, *pp.* of Yelde, requited, 73.
 Yonge, young, 48.
 Yongne, *acc.* young, 162.
 Yordayned, ordained, 24.
 Youre = Yeare, ear, 265.
 Yourne, *pl.* ran, 96. *See* Yerne.
 Ypasid, past, 59, 113.
 Ypayd, pleased, 50, 177 ; payed, 163.
 Ypeynt, painted, 26.
 Ypined, Ypyned, tormented, suffered, 213, 263.
 Ypiȝt, established, confirmed, 199, 253.
 Ypoerisie, 17, 26.
 Ypocrite, 26.
 Yporchased, purchased, 35.
 Ypraysed, praised, 21.
 Yprimsened, clothed, adorned, 188.
 Ypunnyssed, punished, 74.
 Yqueme, please, 228. *See* Kueme.
 Yquenct, quenched, 205, 240.
 Yrauissed, ravished, 143, 231.
 Yre, wrath, 101.
 Yreaued, taken away, 143.
 Yredliche, readily, 1.
 Yredy, ready, 173.
 Yroted, rooted, 107, 230.
 Yrymed, rhymed, 99.
 Yserued, deserved, 115.
 Ysez, saw, 156, 264.
 Yseze þe, sawest thou, 264.
 Ysi, to see, 21, 54.
 Yslaze, slain, 58.
 Ysliked, Yslyked, made sleek or smooth, 99, 212.
 Ysmaked, ysmacked, tasted, 93.
 Ysmered, smeared, anointed, 93.
 Ysmoȝed, smoothed, 57.
 Ysnes, irons, 128.
 Ysoȝe, seen, 264.
 Yspeke, spoken, 69, 87.
 Yspild, destroyed, 75, 129.
 Yspoused, espoused, married, 221.
 Yssape, made, 87, 100.
 Ysseawed, Yssewed, shown, 44, 76, 109.
 Yssed, shed, 239.
 Ysset, shut, 154.
 Yssored, shored, 207, 218.
 Yssred, clothed, 188.
 Yssruie, shriven, 70.
 Ystole, stolen, 58.
 Ystrengþed, strengthened, 201.
 Ystriued, disputed, 164.
 Ysyep, *pl.* see, 217.
 Ytake, taken, 75.
 Ytald, told, 24, 70.
 Ytaȝt, Ytoȝte, taught, 54, 254.
 Ytempred, tempered, 257.
 Ypoled, suffered, 182.
 Yponked, thanked, 196.
 Yþorsse, thrashed, 139 ; struck, 266.
 Yualle, might befall, 36 ; fallen, 157.
 Yualþ, falls, causes, befalls, 258.

- Yuarzed, farrowed, 61; A.S. *fearh*,
a farrow, litter.
- Yuayred, made fair, 107, 200.
- Yue = *Yeue*, give, 271.
- Yued, fed, 141.
- Yueld, felled, struck, 50, 143,
249.
- Yuelded = Yuelde, filled, 246.
- Yuele, to feel, 83, 92, 131.
- Yuelþ, feels, 31, 128.
- Yuerred, removed, 240. *See* Verri.
- Yuestned, confirmed, strengthened,
105, 107, 109, 221.
- Yueþ, *imp.* give, 265.
- Yuinde, to find, 30, 48, 64, 130.
- Yulemed, fugitive, 39.
- Yuo, foe, foes, 76, 171.
- Yuolzed, followed. *See* Uolzi.
- Yuon, foes, 197.
- Yuonde, found, 186.
- Yuonded, tempted, 117.
- Yuorþed, nourished, 186; A.S.
fordian, to aid, assist.
- Yuounde, found, 92.
- Yuo3te, *pp.* fought, 176.
- Yuryd, set free, 86; delivered,
293.
- Yvzed, used, 115.
- Ywent, turned, 24, 88; gone, 164;
come to pass, 262.
- Ywer, wary, 100.
- Ywesse, washed, 107, 112, 236.
- Ywetered, watered, 131.
- Ywonded, wounded, 148.
- Ywoned, wont, 90, 106.
- Yworþe, be, become, 262; come
(to nothing), 40.
- Yworþssiped, worshipped, hon-
oured, 81.
- Ywrethed, made angry, 161, 171.
- Ywre3e, Ywri3e, hidden, covered,
covert, 37, 96, 210. *See* Wri3.
- Ywryte, written, 217.
- Ywry3e, covered, 66.
- Ywry;eliche, secretly, 37.
- Ywyl, will, 94, 217.
- Ywylned, desired, 76, 80.
- Ywyte, to learn, notice, know,
24, 29, 57, 70; *pp.* known, 10.
- Ywyte, preserve, 212; guard,
241. *See* Wytie.
- Yyeue, given, 20, 79.
- Yyolde, paid, restored, 120, 163,
191.
- Yyoyned, joined, 260.
- Yzawe, sawn, 255.
- Yzed, said, 20, 34, 39, 74; called,
93.
- Yzen, Ysen, iron, 139, 167, 217.
- Yzendred, purified, 251.
- Yzene3ed, Yzen3ed, sinned, 21,
173, 221.
- Yzet, set, ordained, 7, 167; set,
131, 213.
- Yzeþ, see, 36, 72.
- Yze3, saw, 2, 118; *pl.* Yze3e, 126,
156.
- Yze3e, sawest, 20; *subj.* saw,
33.
- Yze3en, *pl.* saw, 212.
- Yzi, Yzy, Ysy, to see, 24, 27, 70,
73, 157.

- Yzist, Yzixt, Yzyxt, seest, 73, 80, 101.
 Yzi3, see, 185.
 Yzi3t, Yzi3p, Yzy3p, sees, 22, 25, 81, 85, 114, 115, 130, 157.
 Yzo3e, seen, 10, 173, 184.
 Yzyenne, to see, to be seen, 108, 228, 238.
 Yzyep, Yzyzp, sees, see, 53, 56.
 Yzyep, Yzy3p, Yze3p, sees, see, 27, 46, 72, 75.

 Zalt, salt, 242.
 Zang, song, 60, 61, 68.
 Zaulé, soul, 14, 105.
 Zaulen, Zaulés, souls, 1, 113, 264.
 Zawe, sow, 43, 214.
 Zay, say, 1, 8, 103.
 Zayde, said, 103, 185.
 Zayl, sail, 183.
 Zaynte, Zaynt, saint, 12, 13.
 Zayst, sayest, 70, 102.
 Zay3p, says, 6, 14.
 Ze, sea, 14, 37.
 Ze, he, 117.
 Zeade, Zeayde, said, 96.
 Zech, Zeche, sack, 50, 81, 216.
 Zeche, to seek, 22, 38, 74, 94, 184; *imp.* Zech, 184.
 Zed, sad, firm, 83.
 Zed, seed, 143, 216.
 Zede, said, 59, 89.
 Zek3p, seeks, 123, 184.
 Zele, sell, 241.
 Zelf, self, 59.
 Zelle, to sell, 36, 138.

 Zellere, seller, 45.
 Zelle3p, *pl.* sell, 36.
 Zelp, sells, 24, 36, 51.
 Zelue, self, same, 41, 45, 102.
 Zeluer, Zelure, silver, 6, 35, 36.
 Zen, sin, 262.
 Zende, to send, *imp.* Zend.
 Zenezere, sinner, 33, 60, 114.
 Zenezep, sins, 4, 6, 8, 19.
 Zenez3i, to sin, 20, 45, 63.
 Zeng3p, sings, 229.
 Zenne, sin, 2, 6, 15.
 Zennes, Zennen, sins, 7, 9, 115.
 Zent, sends, *3rd sing.* 73.
 Zenuol, Zenuolle, sinful, 15, 59, 90, 113.
 Zep, sap, 96.
 Zet, sets, 7, 62, 124.
 Zet, sat, 96.
 Zete, *imp.* place, 254.
 Zeterday, Saturday, 7, 213.
 Zetnesse, stability, 104.
 Zetnesses, bounds, 223.
 Zette, to set, place, appoint, 6; *pret.* appointed, ordained, 11, 12, 13, 95; sat, 199.
 Zeppe, since, afterwards, 14, 47, 48, 100, 242.
 Zeue, seven, 3, 4, 14.
 Zeuende, seventh, 2, 3, 7, 9.
 Zeuenti, seventy, 1.
 Zeuezi3e, seven times, 201.
 Zeueuald, sevenfold, 268.
 Ze3, saw.
 Ze3e, should see, 173.
 Ze3en, *pl.* saw, 204.

- Zi, see, 156.
 Ziden, sides, 151.
 Zigge, to say, 4, 5, 6, 7, 16, 91.
 Ziggere, sayer, 134.
 Zigginge, Zigginge, saying, 19,
 49, 58, 135.
 Zik (*pl.* Zike), sick, 148.
 Ziker, Zikere, certain, sure, con-
 fident, 13, 64, 93, 94, 268.
 Zikerliche, securely, confidently,
 certainly, 64, 94, 125, 182 ;
comp. Zikerlaker, 194.
 Ziknesse, sickness, 16, 22.
 Zikp, sees, 123.
 Zinge, to sing, 22, 267.
 Ziþe, time, 20, 21, 74.
 Zittinde, Zittynde, sitting, 266.
 Zix, six, 21.
 Zixsiþe, Zixziþe, six times, 133,
 234.
 Zixte, sixth, 2, 3, 32.
 Zixti, sixty, 234.
 Zixtiazte, sixtieth, 234.
 Ziþ, sees, 11, 34.
 Ziþe, sight, 46 ; revelation, 133.
 Zobbinge, sobbing, 211.
 Zoft, soft, 31, 47.
 Zofthede, softness, delicacy,
 Zom, Zome, some, 7, 15.
 Zomdel, somewhat, 90, 268.
 Zomping, something, 33.
 Zomere, summer, 131.
 Zonday, Sunday, 7, 41.
 Zondes, messengers, 87 ; A.S. *sand*,
 message.
 Zone, son, 11, 12, 48.
 Zone, soon, 42.
 Zonges, songs, 68.
 Zonne, sun, 27, 81.
 Zonnebyam, sunbeam, 108.
 Zop, sop, 107.
 Zorer, sorer, 238.
 Zorzuol, Zorzuolle, Zoruolle,
 sorrowful, poor, 34, 54, 59,
 132, 147.
 Zorþe, sorrow, anger, 15, 27, 70,
 194.
 Zorþuollaker, Zoruollaker, more
 sorrowful, 90.
 Zorzy, to sorrow, be angry ; 3rd
sing. Zorþeþ, 71, 108.
 Zoster, sister, 89.
 Zostren, sisters, 265.
 Zoþ, Zoþe, true, truth, 2, 6, 12,
 32, 76, 79.
 Zophede, truth, 105.
 Zopliche, truly, 74.
 Zoþnesse, truth, fidelity, 29, 44,
 65.
 Zopuolliche, truly, 133.
 Zopziggere, soothsayer, a speaker
 of truth, 256.
 Zouep, sucks, 136.
 Zouke, suck, 60, 91.
 Zoure, sour, 76, 82, 227.
 Zoureþ, sours, 205.
 Zoutere, shoemaker, 66.
 Zouþ, south, 124.
 Zoþten, sought, 80.
 Zuech, Zueche, such, 156, 244.
 Zuelþ, swallow, taste, 50, 55, 82 ;
 A.S. *swelgan*, to swallow.
 Zuelþþ, swallows, 106, 123.
 Zuelþynge, taste, 91.

- Zuere, neck, 156 ; A.S. *sweora*.
 Zuere, swear, 6.
 Zuerie, Zuerye, to swear, 7, 44, 56, 64.
 Zueriinge, Zueriynge, swearing, 63.
 Zuerþ, swears, 6.
 Zuete, sweet, 1, 68.
 Zuetliche, sweetly, 61, 111.
 Zuetnesse, sweetness, 55, 92.
 Zuich, Zuyct, Zuiche, Zuyche, Zuichen, such, 8, 10, 14.
 Zuo, so, 1, 14, 86.
 Zuolþ, plough, 242 ; A.S. *sulh*, a plough.
 Zuor, swore, 45.
 Zuord, Zuorde, sword, 43, 48.
 Zuot, sweat, 2, 31, 96.
 Zuyetnesse, sweetness, 145.
 Zuyñ, swine, 126.
 Zuyñkere, toiler, 90.
 Zuyft, swift, 141, 268.
 Zuyfter, swifter, 66.
 Zuyfthede, swiftness, 78.
 Zuyftliche, swiftly, 140.
 Zuyñch, toil, 83.
 Zuyñche, to toil, swink, 171.
 Zuyþe, hastily, 111.
 Zuyþer, faster, 61.
 Zwope, sweep, 109.
 Zy, she, 102.
 Zyalde, sold, 215.
 Zycnesse, Zyknese, sickness, 95, 96.
 Zyenue, to see, 150, 231.
 Zyeþ, *pl.* see, 16.
 Zyez = Zyeþ, see, 244.
 Zygge, to say, 69.
 Zynde, seeing, 71.
 Zyke, sick, 82, 266.
 Zyker, Zykere, secure, 75, 78.
 Zykp = Zyþ, sees, 91.
 Zykynges, sighs, 99, 171.
 Zynge, to sing, 105.
 Zyp, see, 75, 88.
 Zyzt, sees, 161.
 Zyzte, sixth, 2.
 Zyuetyesse = Zuyetnesse, sweetness, 93.

ADDITIONS.

- Brene, burning, 264.
 Dorilot, head-dress, 177.

ADDITIONS AND CORRECTIONS FOR THE SOCIETY'S TEXTS, 1866, &c.

[Printed on one side only, to allow of each slip being cut off, and gummed in the Text to which it refers.]

12. THE WRIGHT'S CHASTE WIFE.

p. 23, col. 2. *Sieyngylle*. Compare Cotgrave's '*Farasse*, the coarsest' Hempe, *Swingle-foot* herds, course towe.'

p. 25, l. 3, *a nonne henne* means *a nun's hen*. Mr Lumby knows the phrase "As white as a Nun's hen," for anything excellent and free from faults; the fowl being as spotless as its mistress. "This phrase occurs in Wilson's *Arte of Rhetorique*, 1562. He says :—I knewe a priest that was as nice as a Nonnes Henne. When he would saie Masse, he would neuer saie *Dominus vobiscum*, but *Dominus vobicum*.' *Notes & Queries*, 3 S. x. 169; cf. p. 215." W. W. Skeat. It is also in Ray: see Bohn's *Handbook of Proverbs*, p. 186, 'As nice as a nun's hen.'

Mr Oswald writes to Mr Furnivall, "Are you aware that ALFRED DE MUSSET has very charmingly treated the subject of your *Wright's Chaste Wife*, combining it with that of Cymbeline, in his *Barberine*?"

Mr Fitzedward Hall sends "*the Tooti Nameh*, or *Tales of a Parrot*, in the Persian Language, with an English Translation," London reprint 1801; in which, at pp. 43-8 is a story like that of *The Chaste Wife*. A soldier's wife sends her husband to travel, and gives him a fresh nosegay that will remain fresh till she commits a bad action. A nobleman, whose service the soldier enters, sends one of his cooks to seduce the soldier's wife. She stretches a bed over a dry well, and drops the cook in. A second is served in the same way. Then the nobleman comes with the soldier. The cooks, who have lost their beards from bad living, are dressed as girls to serve at table, are questioned by the nobleman, and tell him their story. He is reproached by the wife, "was abashed, and asked forgiveness for his offences."

A similar Marathi tale is current in Bombay, Mr Moreswar Atmaram says. Professor Goldstücker says the story is not in any old Sanskrit work, so far as he knows, and though it may have an Eastern origin, he thinks it more probably found its way to the East from the West, and was disseminated in a later Sanskrit translation, or version, of foreign stories got from missionaries and traders.

14. KING HORN, &c.

Glossary, p. 129, col. 1, *crude*, move; cp. *crowd-le*, to crawl as a crab. Jamieson.

p. 130, col. 1, *erndinge* may be errand, *i.e.* journey. "Christ give thee good journey, and bring you safe home again."

Evening; as men wrote *at þe noke*, when they meant *at þen oke*, so here *þin euening* is written for *þi neuening*?

p. 135, col. 1. *Nabit* more probably means 'he abides not, endures not': cf. 'I can't abide it.' Cf. also *abit*=abides, endures, *Religious*, &c. *Poems*, p. 240.

15. RELIGIOUS, POLITICAL, AND LOVE POEMS.

Sir F. Madden in *Syr Gawayne*, p. lxx., notes as in MS. Rawlinson, C. 86, in the Bodleian Library, copies of these three Poems: Nos.

9. "Thys is Goddis owne compleynte;" a Poem in eleven stanzas of twelve lines each, fol. 67.

10. [*Quia Amore Languet*]. A Poem by Lydgate, being a Lamentation of the Virgin on Christ's Passion; No. 201 of Ritson's list of Lydgate's Works, *Bibl. Poet.*, fol. 69 b. Begins 'In a tabernacle of a towre.'

13. A Poem in eleven twelve-line stanzas, of which the burden is "*Filius Regis mortuus est.*" fol. 74 b. Begins "As Jhesu rewlithe myne recheles mynde."

P. xvi. l. 13, *hell*. The Saturday Review of Dec. 22, 1866, p. 765, col. 1, says that I clearly misconceive this; it should be *Purgatory*. A Romanist friend long ago assured me that the Pope's Mother could not possibly have been admitted into Purgatory, because she had murdered her two children and died impenitent as to these crimes. Purgatory being only for the penitent, Hell was the place that Gregory's Mother must have gone to. Compare Hampole, Pricke of Conscience, p. 72, l. 2631.

Bot many soules þat er save,
Ar þai com to blis, payne by-hoves have
In purgatori, and duelle þar-in
Until þai be clensyd of al syn
þat er schrywen and noght clensed here,
And þar be fyned als gold þat shynes clere.

The descriptions in the text, l. 48-75, p. 85, and the lines

Among oþur prayeres þey ben good
To brynge sowles fro helle flode

seemed to bear out my friend's assertion; and the statement in the *Stacyons* that Masses sung in *Scala Cæli* would bring souls from Hell, through Purgatory, into Paradise, was consistent with this. The question turns, I believe, on whether strangling one's two children and concealing the crime, is a venial sin, sending the Murderess to Purgatory, or a mortal one, when unrepented of, sending her to Hell. To a Saturday Reviewer accustomed to a weekly slaughter of innocents, and to mistakes, I do not wonder that the offence seems venial. Having been a father, I hold the crime mortal, and believe the 'misconception' complained of, not to be mine. F. J. F.

P.S. The very Rev. Daniel Rock, D.D., has just favoured me with the following note on the point, showing that Hell, and not Purgatory, must have been the place: "A woman guilty of fornication and child-murder, dying unshriven, unassailed, and unsorrowing for such deadly sins, is lost for ever. No prayers, no alms-deeds, no masses will have any effect on her behalf, having, as you state it, left this world without any sorrow, even at the last moment, for such tremendous crimes that cry to heaven for vengeance.

"St Gregory's Trental and the Indulgence of '*Scala Cæli*' have been most egregiously misrepresented, under several points of view. The reported vision of St Gregory's mother in hell is a mere fable. The mother of that great Pope was Sylvia, a holy woman in life and in death, which happened to

her in a house of religion which she had founded. The Trental of St Gregory came into use from the saint being inspired with the knowledge that a monk, for a sin, not a deadly one, but only venial, was suffering the smarts of Purgatory. He bade one of the monks of the monastery say mass every day for a month, on the last day of which the suffering dead monk appeared to the living one who had said the 30 masses for his soul, and told him he was, by the mercy of God won for him by the holy sacrifice, freed from pain. Mind, from the pain of Purgatory—a place of temporary cleansing pain—not from the pains of hell, out of which when once therein there is no coming.¹

"Our Henry VII. got for his chapel in Westminster Abbey, the indulgence of '*Scala Caeli*,' all the conditions of which are enumerated in the bull printed in Dugdale's Monasticon, new edition, t. i., p. 320, whereby you will see that whether applicable to the living or the dead, it must be only to those '*vere penitentibus, et confessis* : ' a condition attached to all indulgences."

Glossary. Mr Skeat sends what follows : "*Chast* probably means *chasten*, compel. See Wright's *Piers Plowman*, p. 72, vol. 1, where MS. Vernon reads *Be chastet* with yerdes, and MS. Trin. Coll., Cambridge, reads *Be chastised* with yerdes.

Coignage is perhaps 'acquaintance': *cogneau* knowne. Cotgrave.

Cochoure : for l. 26 read 76. Does the word mean 'one who lies in bed ?'

Coucheur, a bed-fellow. Cotgrave.

Curste in text, p. 86, l. 99, is no doubt for *Crafte*.

Dienly, probably *dignely*, worthily.

Elenge, is 'strange.' That's the regular meaning of it. Used in Kent. [Near Ramsgate a peasant told me *elenge* was used for *lonely*. J. R. Lumby.]

Lotleschipe. Surely it is the name of some *good quality*, like *fairness* and *sweetness* in the context. Why not 'purity ?' Cf. A.S. *hlutornes*, purity. The A.S. verb *a-hlytran*, to purify, would easily yield a sb. *hlutor-scipe*, of which *lotelshipe* would easily be a corruption. Or, again, try *lewte-ship*, = loyalty, if there be such a word, but that would be a hybrid, and so less likely.

Lassun, is 'lessen.'

with wind we *blowen*, (blow out, increase—)

with wind we *lassun*.

The whole poem runs in contrasts.—

Mynne, occurs also at p. 104, l. 50.

Sarpeler, cf. Cotgrave's '*Serpillere*, A Sarpier, or Sarp-cloth ; a piece of course Canuas to packe vp things in.'

Sity, p. 31, l. 4, may be Chaucer's '*schiten* schepperd.' Prol. Cant. Tales, l. 506, ed. Wright.

Trokys, thirst ? Cf. A.S. *truca*, to faint. German *trockene*, dryness ? Dutch *droog*, dry.

Wanne is *when* ; & *Were* is *where*.

Wese is perhaps 'ooze out ;' A.S. *wós*, ooze, juice.

Ykid = known, is certainly right."

¹ That the Middle Age belief of some persons was different, see the *Stacyons*, as above, and this *Trental*.

16. BOOK OF QUINTE ESSENCE.

Glossary. *Hierapigra Galieni*. Compare *Reliquiæ Antiquæ*, v. 1, p. 195.

Bot fryst the body most purget ben
Wyth *jorepygra Galyen*,
Other wyth summe good purgacion
That is of hot complexion

18. HALI MEIDENHAD.

p. 2. *Before How, l. 4 from foot, insert this translation.* "What ease!
The authority that these ladies have!"

20. HAMPOLE'S SHORT TREATISES.

A revised text of the *Officium et Legenda de vitâ* of Richard Rolle de Hampole printed in the Preface, will shortly be issued, and the former one should then be cancelled.

P. 2, l. 8, *for* merghly *ere read* merghlyere

P. 7, l. 2; P. 31, l. 35, *for* antre, antir, *read* autre, autir.

P. 7, l. 6, *for* 'quod' *read* 'quod.'

P. 11, l. 3, Strike out [noghte] and *for laude read* lande—

P. 15, l. 32, *for* descrynede *read* descryuede—and *in Gloss.*

P. 34, In Latin Text *for* pregrauamur, pregrauari *read* peregrinamur, peregrinari; *for* idcirco *read* ideo.

P. 35, l. 19, and in Glossary, *for* vnkouande *read* vnkonande.

P. 36, l. 31, and in Gloss., *for* taicle *read* triacle—

P. 34, l. 9, *for* guet *read* gret.

P. 36, l. 6 from bottom, *dele* comma after 'awene'

Glossary.

For Rewe *read* reuc (vide Text). Under

Byhouys: *for* adv. &c. *read* impers. verb, behoves—nedys byhouys, necessarily behoves.

Myssawe: *read* quasi mys-sawe, ill speech, contumelious language.

For Nennenyd *read* neuenyd

Okyre: add, Old Norse *okr*, from *auka*, to increase. H. Coleridge.

Ouer-heghede: *read* 'lifted too high'.

Quemfull, *after* 'heartly,' *read* 'pleasant.' A.S. *cweman*, to please.

Rufyngs, *before* 'talkings,' *read* 'noisy, boisterous,' *dele* sayings.

Ruysand: *for* raising *read* praising. Mr R. Morris suggests that the MS. *f* is miswritten for *j*, and that the word is *rusyngs*. See Gloss. to Hampole's Pricke of Consc. "Rosyng sb. 7070. Sc. *rusyng*, boasting, from *ros*, to praise, boast. Sc. *ruse*, Swed. *rosa*, to praise, Icel. *hrosa*, Dan. *rose*."

Wyssyng. *for* 'knowing' *read* 'making to know'

25. STACIONS OF ROME. There is another copy of this in the Additional MS. 22,283, the British Museum incomplete duplicate of the Vernon MS.

In compliance with Section 108 of the
Copyright Revision Act of 1976,
The Ohio State University Libraries
has produced this facsimile on permanent/durable
paper to replace the deteriorated original volume
owned by the Libraries. Facsimile created by
Acme Bookbinding, Charlestown, MA



2002

The paper used in this publication meets the
minimum requirements of the
American National Standard for Information
Sciences - Permanence for Printed Library
Materials,
ANSI Z39.48-1992.



